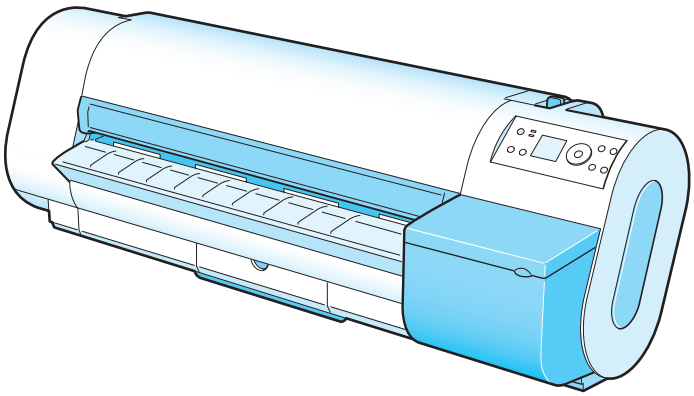
Canon

Large Format Printer

imagePROGRAF

iPF720

User Manual



ENG

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Contents

Introduction 1

How to use this manual 1

About This User Manual 1
Searching Topics 3
HTML Version of the Manual for Printing 5

Printer Parts 13

Printer parts 13

Front 13
Back 14
Top Cover (Inside) 15
Carriage 16
Ink Tank Cover (Inside) 17
Control Panel 18

Control Panel 20

Control Panel 20
Turning the Printer On and Off 22
Printer Modes 24
Switching Modes 29
Printer Menu Operations 31
Main Menu Operations 33
Menu Structure 37
Main Menu Settings 50
Main Menu Settings (During Printing) 62
Submenu Display 65
Status Print 67

Optional accessories 73

Roll Holder Set 73
IEEE 1394 (FireWire) Expansion Board 73

Printer Specifications 74

Specifications 74
Basic Environmental Performance 78
Print Area 79

Basic Printing Workflow 80

Printing procedure 80

Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets 80
Loading and Printing on Rolls 82
Loading and Printing on Sheets 86
Printing from Windows 89
Printing from Mac OS X 90

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Canceling print jobs 92
Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel 92
Canceling Print Jobs from Windows 93
Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X 94

Handling Paper 96

Paper 96
Types of Paper 96
Paper Sizes 101
Handling rolls 104
Selecting the Paper Source 104
Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) 105
Specifying the Paper Length (Roll) 106
Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder 107
Loading Rolls in the Roll Holder Slot 109
Loading the Roll in the Printer 110
Removing the Roll from the Printer 113
Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder Slot 114
Removing a Roll from the Roll Holder 114
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper 115
Feeding Roll Paper Manually 118
Detection of the Remaining Roll Paper 119
Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls 120
Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls 122
Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically 126
Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls 127
Roll Holder Set 128
Attaching Accessories to the Roll Holder 129
Handling sheets 131
Selecting the Paper Source 131
Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet) 132
Loading the Sheet in the Printer 133
Manually Loading Paper to the Position for Printing 136
Removing the Sheet 137
Clearing a Jammed Sheet 138
Output Stacker 140
Using the Output Stacker 140

Working With Various Print Jobs 142

Printing Photos and Images 142
Printing Photos and Images (Windows) 142
Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X) 144
Printing Photos and Images (Windows) 146
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X) 148

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing CAD Drawings 151
Printing CAD Drawings 151
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) 152
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS X) 153
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) 154
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) 156
Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings 159
Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings (Windows) 160
HP-GL/2 Printing 162
Printing Office Documents 163
Printing Office Documents 163
Printing Office Documents (Windows) 164
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X) 166
Using the Printer With a Color imageRUNNER 168
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER 168
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) 168
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X) 170

Enhanced Printing Options 172

Adjusting Images 172
Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver 172
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) 174
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X) 177
Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing 180
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) 183
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X) 185
Choosing Paper for Printing 188
Choosing a Paper for Printing 188
Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) 189
Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet) 190
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver 191
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) 192
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) 194
Printing enlargements or reductions 196
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size 196
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) 197
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) 199
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width 202
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) 203
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) 205
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value 208
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) 209
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X) 211
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER 214
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) 214
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X) 216

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing at full size 218
Printing on Oversized Paper 218
Printing at Full Size (Windows) 220
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X) 222
Borderless Printing at Actual Size 225
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) 227
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) 229
Borderless Printing 232
Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size 232
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) 234
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) 236
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width 239
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) 241
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) 243
Borderless Printing at Actual Size 246
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) 248
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) 250
Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes 253
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) 253
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) 254
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X) 258
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes 261
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) 262
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X) 266
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet 268
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other 268
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) 270
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X) 272
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously 274
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) 275
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X) 277
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet 279
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) 280
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X) 282
Printing Posters in Sections 285
Printing Large Posters (Windows) 286
Centering originals 288
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls 288
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) 289
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X) 291
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets 294
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows) 295
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X) 297
Conserving roll paper 299
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees 299
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) 300
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X) 302

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins 305
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) 306
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X) 308
Checking Images Before Printing 311
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing 311
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows) 313
Checking the Layout Before Printing (Mac OS X) 315
Other useful settings 316
Printing With Watermarks 316
Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows) 317
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation 319
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows) 320
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X) 322
Using Favorites 325
Using Favorites (Windows) 326
Using Favorites (Mac OS X) 328
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing 329
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows) 330
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X) 331
Windows Software 333
Printer Driver 333
Printer Driver Settings (Windows) 333
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) 335
Confirming Print Settings (Windows) 337
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows) 339
Using Favorites (Windows) 341
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) 343
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows) 345
Main Sheet (Windows) 347
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Windows) 350
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows) 351
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows) 352
Color Adjustment Sheet: Color (Windows) 353
Matching Sheet (Windows) 355
Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome (Windows) 357
Page Setup Sheet (Windows) 359
Paper Size Options Dialog Box (Windows) 361
Layout Sheet (Windows) 362
Page Options Dialog Box (Windows) 364
Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows) 365
Favorites Sheet (Windows) 366
Utility Sheet (Windows) 368
Support Sheet (Windows) 369
Device Settings Sheet (Windows) 370
Settings Summaries Dialog Box (Windows) 371
Status Monitor 372
imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 372

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Digital Photo Front-Access 373
Digital Photo Front-Access 373
PosterArtist 374
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals 374
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows) 375
Device Setup Utility 377
imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 377
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 377
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 378

Mac OS X Software 379

Printer Driver 379
Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X) 379
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) 380
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) 382
Checking the Layout Before Printing (Mac OS X) 384
Using Favorites (Mac OS X) 385
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X) 386
Main Pane (Mac OS X) 387
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Mac OS X) 389
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X) 390
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X) 391
Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X) 392
Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X) 394
Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X) 395
Utility Pane (Mac OS X) 397
Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X) 398
Support Pane (Mac OS X) 399
Printmonitor 400
imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh) 400

Network Setting 401

Network Setting 401
Network Environment 401
Configuring the IP Address on the Printer 403
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 404
Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel 405
Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands 406
Using RemoteUI 407
Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings 408
Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings 410
Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings 411
Specifying Printer-Related Information 413
Configuring the Communication Mode Manually 414
Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur 415
Initializing the Network Settings 416

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Network Setting (Windows) 417
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows) 417
Sharing the Printer in Windows 418
Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings 420
Specifying the Printer's Frame Type 422
Specifying NetWare Print Services 424
Specifying NetWare Protocols 427
Configuring NetWare Network Settings 429
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 430
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 430
Network Setting (Mac OS X) 431
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh) 431
Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings 432
Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh) 433
Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh) 436
Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh) 438

Hard Disk 439

Hard Disk 439
Printer Hard Disk Operations 439
Saved Print Jobs 441
Saving Print Jobs Sent from Sources Other than the Printer Driver 444
Saving Print Jobs 445
Do Not Save Print Jobs in the Common Box 448
Managing Queued Jobs (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs) 449
Setting Passwords for Personal Boxes 452
Naming Personal Boxes 456
Displaying a List of Saved Jobs 460
Printing a List of Saved Jobs 464
Printing Saved Jobs 465
Moving saved jobs 470
Displaying Details of Saved Jobs 475
Renaming Saved Jobs 479
Deleting Saved Jobs 484
Checking the Free Hard Disk Space 488
Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk 490

Adjustments for Better Print Quality 491

Adjusting the Printhead 491
Correcting Print Misalignment 491
Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically 491
Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually 493
Adjusting the Printhead Orientation 495
Adjusting the Printhead Height 497
Adjusting the feed amount 498
Adjusting the Feed Amount Automatically 498
Adjusting the Feed Amount Manually 501

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjusting the Measurement Scale for Better Accuracy 504
Adjusting the Vacuum Strength 506

Maintenance 507

Ink Tanks 507
Ink Tanks 507
Replacing Ink Tanks 508
Checking Ink Tank Levels 513
When to Replace Ink Tanks 514

Printheads 515
Printhead 515
Checking the Print Quality 515
Improving the Print Quality 515
Checking for Nozzle Clogging 516
Cleaning the Printhead 517
Replacing the Printhead 518

Cutter Unit 525
Cutter Unit 525
Replacing the Cutter Unit 526

Maintenance Cartridge 528
Maintenance Cartridge 528
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge 528
Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity 535
When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge 536

Cleaning the Printer 537
Cleaning the Printer Exterior 537
Cleaning Inside the Top Cover 538
Cleaning the Paper Retainer 540
Cleaning the Printhead 541

Other Maintenance 542
Preparing to Transfer the Printer 542
Updating the Firmware 546

Troubleshooting 547

Frequently Asked Questions 547
Frequently Asked Questions 547

Problems Regarding Paper 549
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper 549
Clearing a Jammed Sheet 552
Roll paper cannot be inserted into the Paper Feed Slot 554
Cannot Load Sheets 554
Paper is not cut neatly 554
Paper cannot be cut 554

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing does not start 555
The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up 555
The Printer Does Not Respond Even if Print Jobs are Sent 555
The Display Screen indicates the system is filling with ink 555
The printer stops during a print job 556
An error message is shown on the Display Screen 556
The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper 556
The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving) 556
Problems with the printing quality 557
Printing is faint 557
Paper rubs against the Printhead 558
The edges of the paper are dirty 559
The surface of the paper is dirty 560
The back side of the paper is dirty 560
Printed colors are inaccurate 560
Banding in different colors occurs 561
Colors in printed images are uneven 562
Image Edges are Blurred or White Banding Occurs 562
The contrast becomes uneven during printing 562
The length of printed images is inaccurate 563
Documents are printed crooked 563
Documents are printed in monochrome 563
Line thickness is not uniform (Windows) 563
Lines are misaligned 563
Thin lines are not printed after switching to Economy Printing mode 564
Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper 564
Cannot print over a network 565
Cannot connect the printer to the network 565
Cannot print over a TCP/IP network 565
Cannot print over a NetWare network 566
Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks 566
Installation problems 567
The IEEE 1394 Driver Cannot Be Installed Correctly 567
Removing Installed Printer Drivers 568
HP-GL/2 problems 569
With HP-GL/2, printing is misaligned. 569
Lines or images are missing in the HP-GL/2 data that was printed. 569
Lines Are Printed Too Thick or Thin During HP-GL/2 Printing 569
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed in monochrome (or color). 569
Printed Colors in Line Drawings are Inaccurate During HP-GL/2 Printing 569
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed 6 mm larger than specified 570
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed at maximum size, even if a standard size is specified 570
HP-GL/2 printing takes a long time. 570
The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving) 570

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Other problems 571
The printer does not go on 571
If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound 571
Messages advising to check the maintenance cartridge are not cleared 571
The printer consumes a lot of ink 572
Ink Level Detection 572

Error Message 575

Responding to Messages 575
Responding to Messages 575
Error Messages 576
Messages regarding paper 578
Paper Mismatch 578
Papr Type Mismatch 578
Papr Size Mismatch 578
Paper size not detected. 579
Insufficient paper for job 579
This paper cannot be used. 579
Roll printing is selected. 580
Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded. 580
The roll is empty. 580
No sheets. 581
Sheet printing is selected. 581
Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded. 581
Cannot feed paper. 581
Paper jam. 582
Paper loaded askew. 582
Cannot detect papr 582
Leading edge detection error. 583
Cannot feed paper. 583
Cannot cut this paper. 583
End of paper feed. 583
Rel lever is in wrong position. 583
Borderless printng not possible. 584
Messages regarding ink 585
Ink insufficient. 585
No ink left. 585
Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected. 586
Ink Level: Check 586
No ink tank loaded. 586
Ink tank error. 586
Messages regarding printing or adjusment 587
Use another paper. 587
Cannot print as specified. 587
Cannot adjust band. 587
Cannot adjust printhead. 587

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Messages regarding printheads 588
Cannot adjust printhead. 588
Cannot adjust band. 588
PHead needs cleaning. 588
Problem with Printhead 588
Printhead error 589
Execute printhead cleaning. 589
Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge 590
No maintenance cartridge. 590
Prepare for maint cart replacement. 590
No Maintenance Cartridge capacity. 590
Maintenance cartridge full. 590
Maintenance cartridge problem. 590
Messages regarding the hard disk 591
Hard disk error. 591
File read error. 591
Mail box full. 591
Mail box full. Now printing without saving data. 591
Mail box nearly full. 591
Mail box full. Delete unwanted data 591
Mail box full. Cannot save. 592
Messages regarding HP-GL/2 593
This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2. 593
GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full. (xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904) 593
GL2: W0502 The parameter is out of range. 593
GL2: W0504 This command is not supported. 593
Other Messages 594
GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number) 594
ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) 594
Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) 594
Top cover is open. 595
Carriage Cover is open. 595
Prepare for parts replacement. 595
Parts replacement time has passed. 595
Unknown file. 595
Multi-sensor error 595

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Introduction

How to use this manual

About This User Manual

- Symbols

  The following symbols are used in this User Manual to indicate safety information and explanations on restrictions or precautions in use.

	Important	Indicates important information that must be followed when using the printer. Be sure to read this information to prevent printer damage or operating errors.
	Caution	Indicates caution items for which operating error poses a risk of injury or damage to equipment or property. To ensure safe use, always follow these precautions.
	Note	Indicates helpful reference information and supplemental information on particular topics.

- Button names and user interface elements

  Key and button names on the control panel and user interface elements in software (such as menus and buttons) are indicated as follows in this User Manual.

Control panel buttons	Example: Press the **OK** button.
Control panel messages	Example: **Head Cleaning** is displayed.
Software interface items (Menus and Buttons)	Example: Click **OK**.
Keyboard keys	Example: Press the Tab key.

- Part names

  Names of printer parts are indicated as follows in this User Manual.

Printer part names	Example: Open the Top Cover.

- Cross-reference

  Other pages or manuals that provide related information are indicated as follows in this User Manual.

Cross-reference in the same User Manual	Example: see “Turning the Printer On and Off”. (→P.22)
Cross-reference in related manuals	Example: See the Paper Reference Guide.
Other cross-reference	Example: See the printer driver help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Figures and software screens
  - Figures in this User Manual may be different from the actual appearance of the printer in some cases.
  - Screens depicted in this User Manual for the printer driver or other software may be different from the actual screens because of subsequent updates.
  - Windows XP screens are used in explanations of Windows operations in this User Manual.
- Trademarks
  - Canon, the Canon logo, and imagePROGRAF are trademarks or registered trademarks of Canon Inc.
  - Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
  - Macintosh is a registered trademark of Apple Inc. in the United States and other countries.
  - Other company and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.
- Copyright

  © 2008 Canon Inc.
  - Unauthorized reproduction of this User Manual in whole or part is prohibited.
- May we request

  Thank you for understanding the following points.
  - The information in this User Manual is subject to change without notice.
  - We strive to ensure accuracy of information in this User Manual, but if you notice errors or omissions, please contact us.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

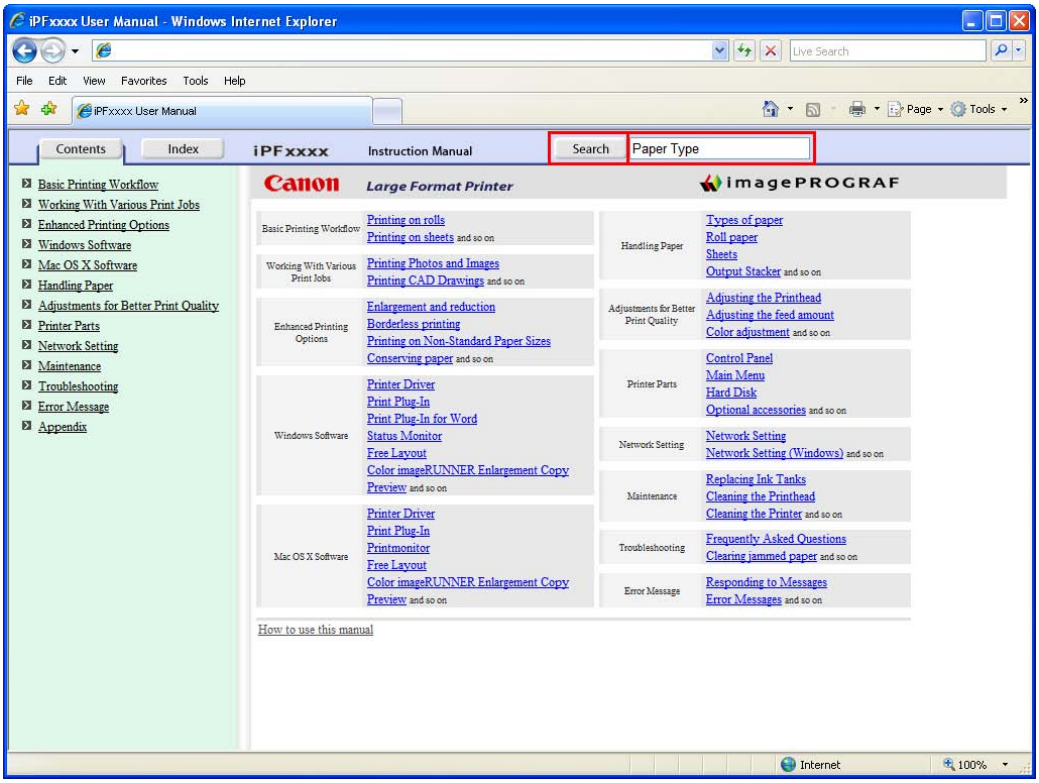
Searching Topics

You can find information in topics of this User Manual by searching for relevant terms.

1. Enter a term and click the **Search** button.

Note

- To search for multiple terms at once, enter a space between each term.

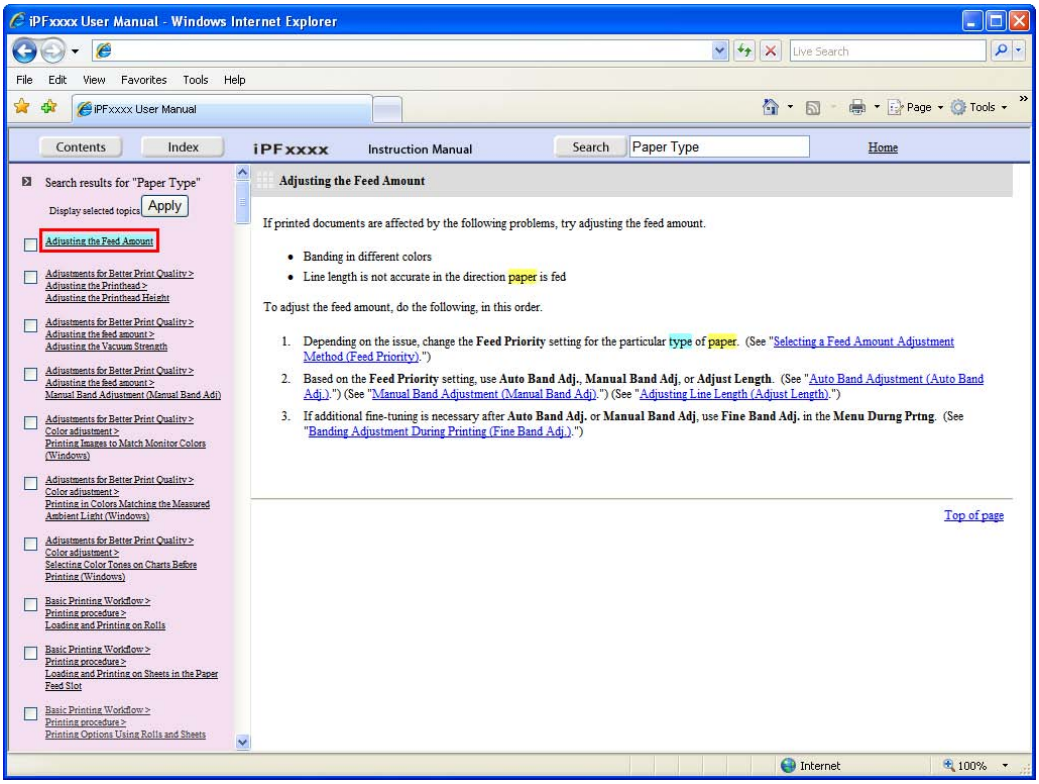


Search results are listed at left.

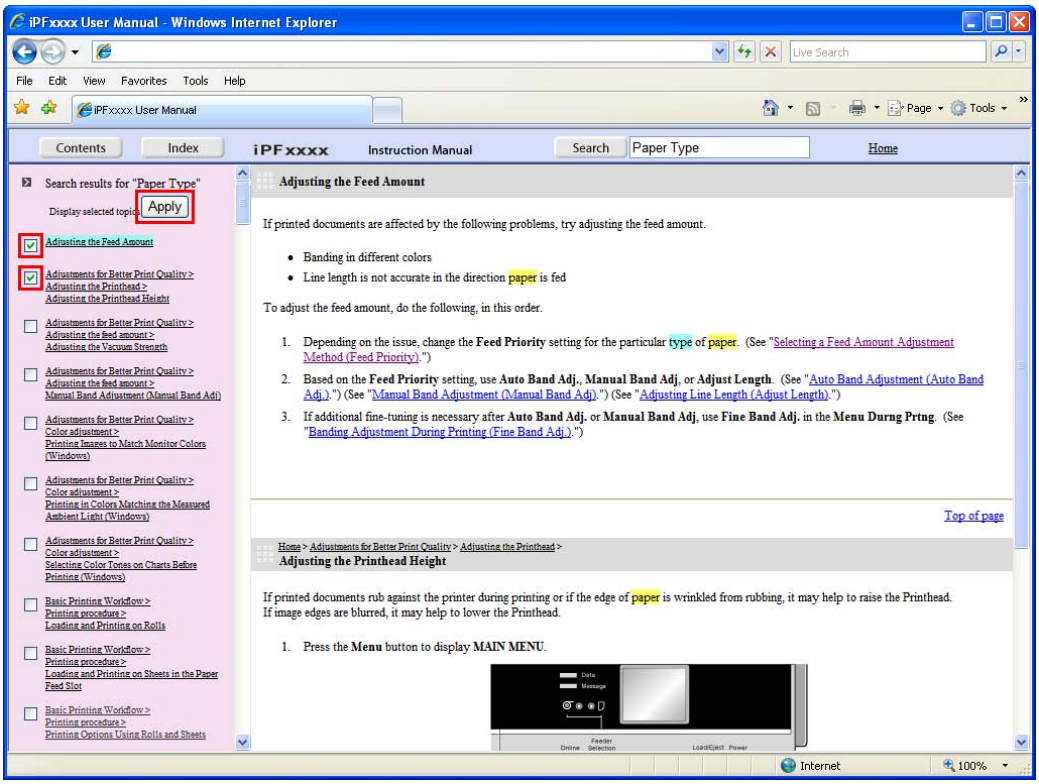
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Click a topic you want to read.

The terms you searched for will be highlighted in the topic.


iPFxxxx User Manual - Windows Internet Explorer
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help
iPFxxxx User Manual
Contents
Index
iPFxxxx
Instruction Manual
Search
Paper Type
Home
Search results for "Paper Type"
Display selected topics
Apply
Adjusting the Feed Amount
Adjusting the Feed Amount
If printed documents are affected by the following problems, try adjusting the feed amount.
Banding in different colors
Line length is not accurate in the direction paper is fed
To adjust the feed amount, do the following, in this order.
Top of page
Internet
100%

To review multiple topics at once, select the check box of desired topics and click the **Apply** button.


iPFxxxx User Manual - Windows Internet Explorer
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help
iPFxxxx User Manual
Contents
Index
iPFxxxx
Instruction Manual
Search
Paper Type
Home
Search results for "Paper Type"
Display selected topics
Apply
Adjusting the Feed Amount
Adjusting the Feed Amount
If printed documents are affected by the following problems, try adjusting the feed amount.
Banding in different colors
Line length is not accurate in the direction paper is fed
To adjust the feed amount, do the following, in this order.
Top of page
Adjusting the Printhead Height
If printed documents rub against the printer during printing or if the edge of paper is wrinkled from rubbing, it may help to raise the Printhead.
If image edges are blurred, it may help to lower the Printhead.
Press the Menu button to display MAIN MENU.
Internet
100%

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

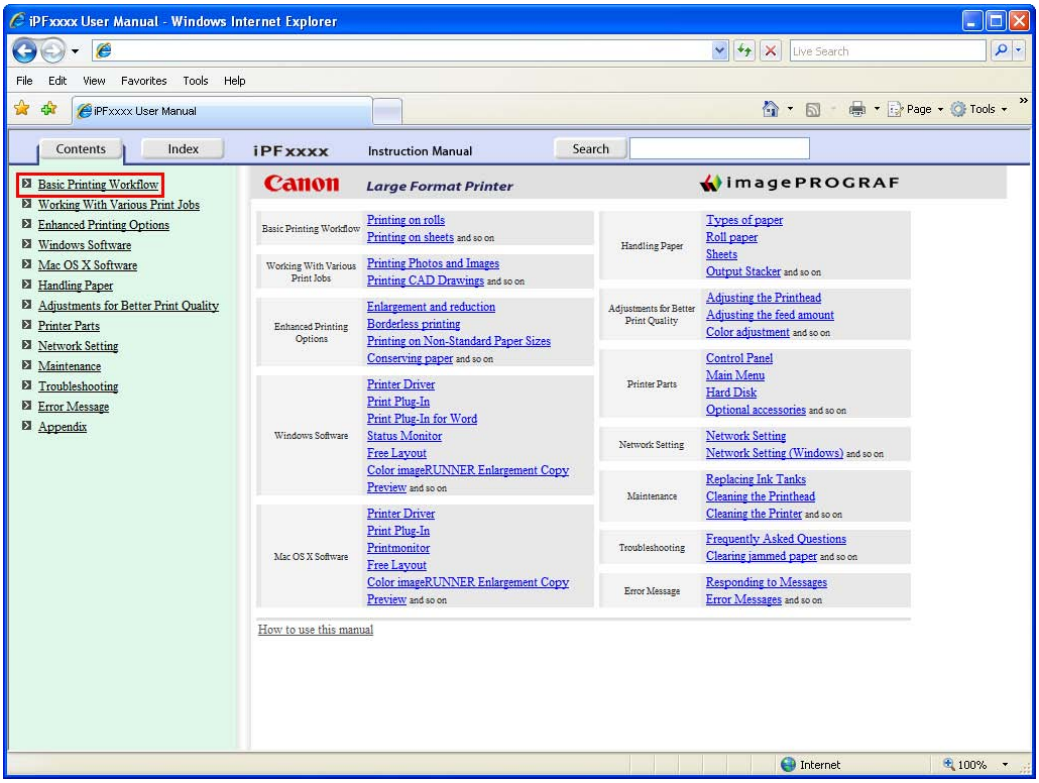
HTML Version of the Manual for Printing

You can select a group of topics in the table of contents or individual topics in this manual for printing.
The following procedure describes how to do this, using the information in **Basic Printing Workflow** as an example.

Printing a group of topics in the manual

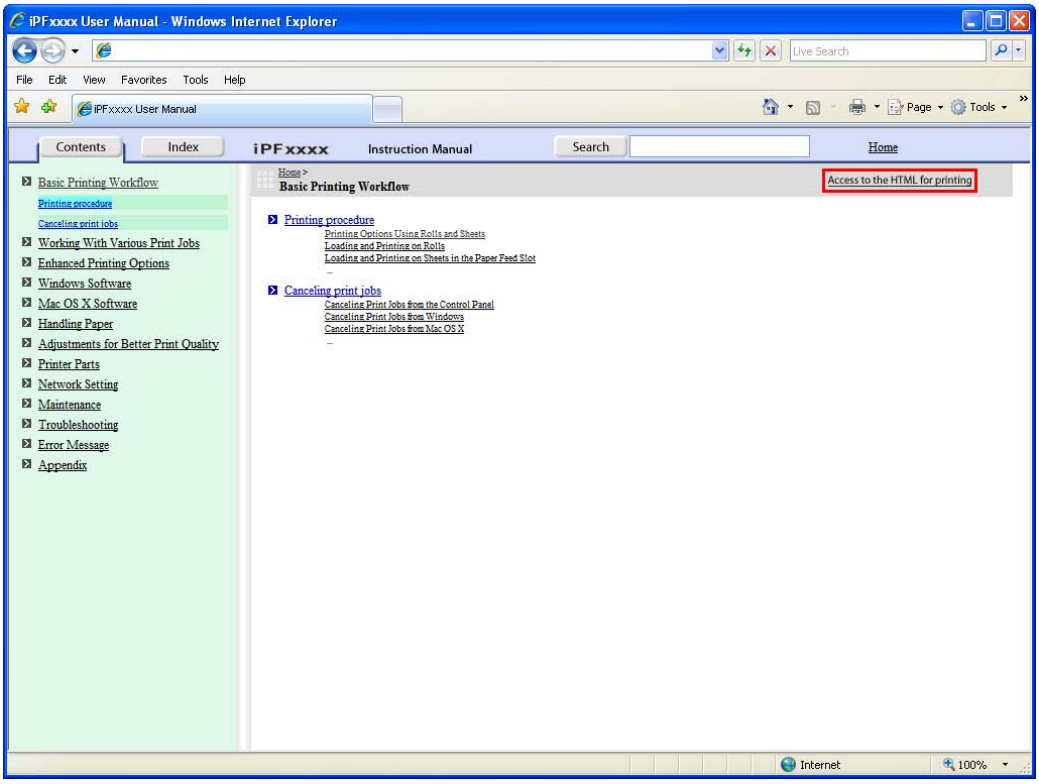
When you access printable HTML versions of the content from section titles in the table of contents, you can specify a group of topics to print.

1. Click a section title in the table of contents. Here, **Basic Printing Workflow** is used as an example.

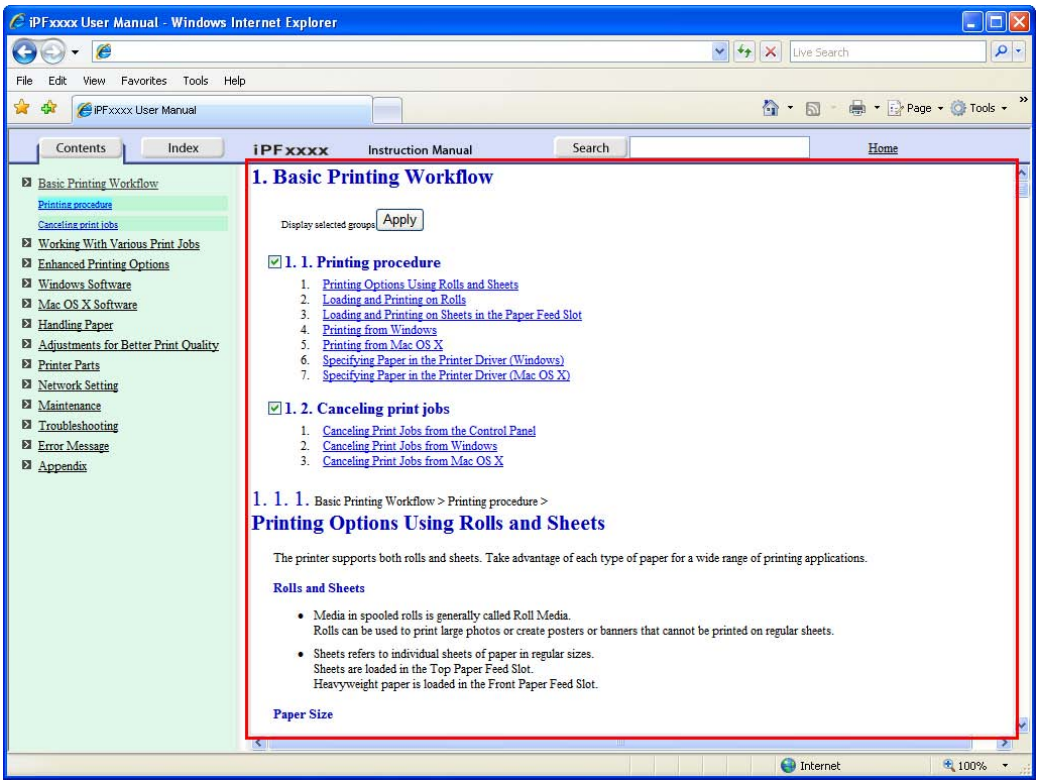


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Click **Access to the HTML for printing** in the title area.

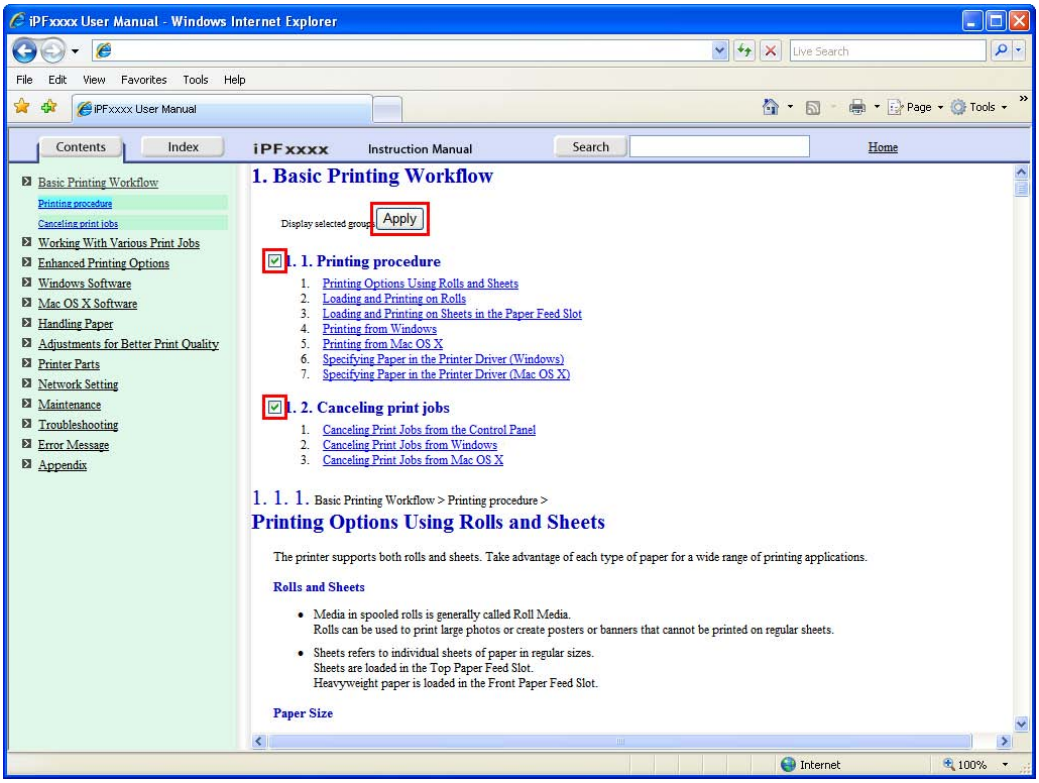


The topics in **Basic Printing Workflow** are displayed together in HTML format, ready for printing.


iPFxxxx User Manual - Windows Internet Explorer
1. Basic Printing Workflow
Display selected groups
Apply
1. 1. Printing procedure
1. Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
2. Loading and Printing on Rolls
3. Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Paper Feed Slot
4. Printing from Windows
5. Printing from Mac OS X
6. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)
7. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)
1. 2. Canceling print jobs
1. Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel
2. Canceling Print Jobs from Windows
3. Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X
1. 1. 1. Basic Printing Workflow > Printing procedure >
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
The printer supports both rolls and sheets. Take advantage of each type of paper for a wide range of printing applications.
Rolls and Sheets
Media in spooled rolls is generally called Roll Media.
Rolls can be used to print large photos or create posters or banners that cannot be printed on regular sheets.
Sheets refers to individual sheets of paper in regular sizes.
Sheets are loaded in the Top Paper Feed Slot.
Heavyweight paper is loaded in the Front Paper Feed Slot.
Paper Size

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

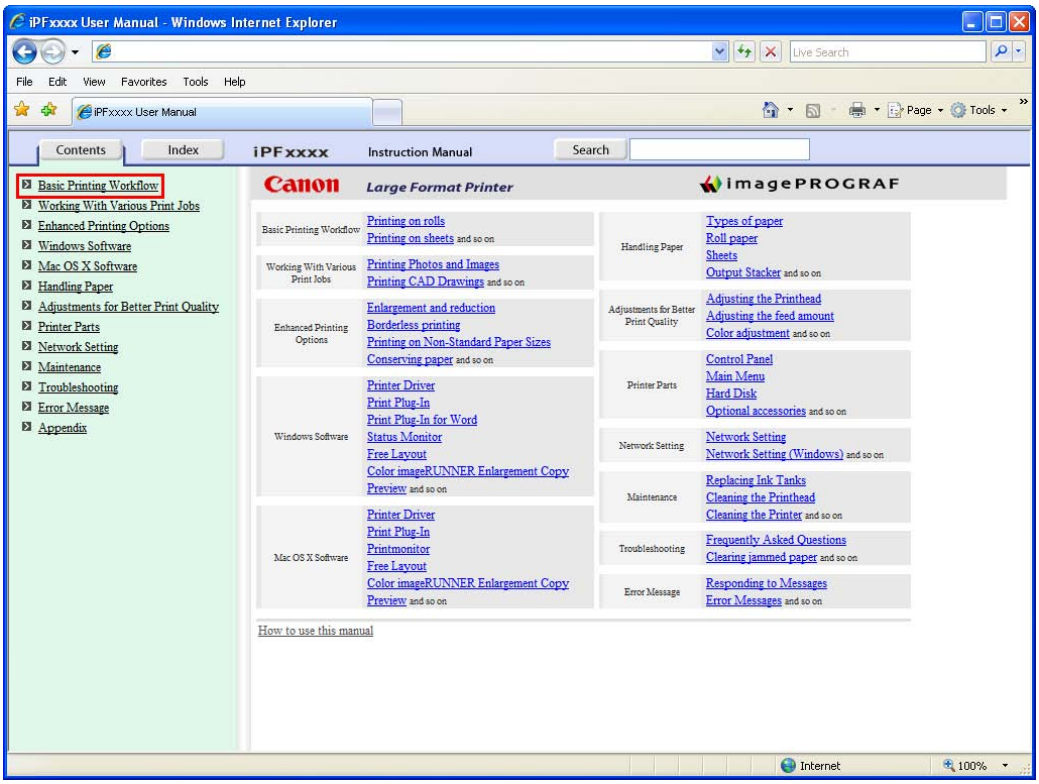
3. Clear the sections you will not print and click the **Apply** button.


iPFxxxx User Manual - Windows Internet Explorer
Contents
Index
iPFxxxx
Instruction Manual
Search
Home
Basic Printing Workflow
Working With Various Print Jobs
Enhanced Printing Options
Windows Software
Mac OS X Software
Handling Paper
Adjustments for Better Print Quality
Printer Parts
Network Setting
Maintenance
Troubleshooting
Error Message
Appendix
1. Basic Printing Workflow
Display selected groups
Apply
1. 1. Printing procedure
1. Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
2. Loading and Printing on Rolls
3. Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Paper Feed Slot
4. Printing from Windows
5. Printing from Mac OS X
6. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)
7. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)
1. 2. Canceling print jobs
1. Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel
2. Canceling Print Jobs from Windows
3. Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X
1. 1. 1. Basic Printing Workflow > Printing procedure >
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
The printer supports both rolls and sheets. Take advantage of each type of paper for a wide range of printing applications.
Rolls and Sheets
Media in spooled rolls is generally called Roll Media.
Rolls can be used to print large photos or create posters or banners that cannot be printed on regular sheets.
Sheets refers to individual sheets of paper in regular sizes.
Sheets are loaded in the Top Paper Feed Slot.
Heavyweight paper is loaded in the Front Paper Feed Slot.
Paper Size

Printing a group of individual topics in the manual

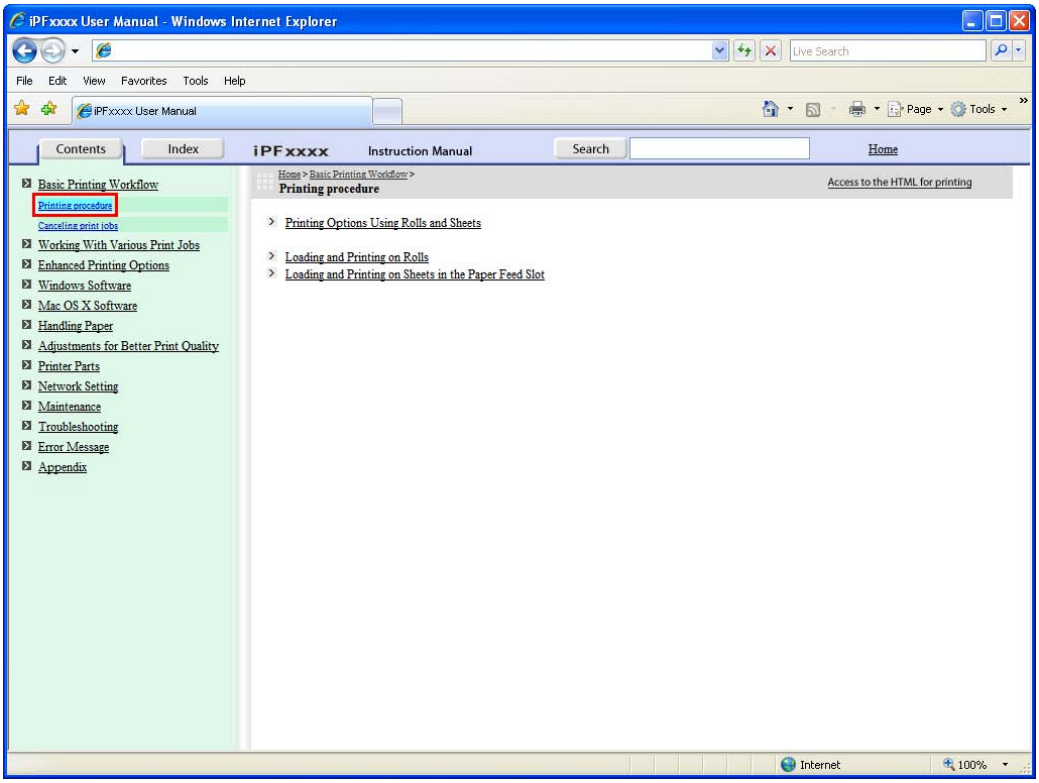
When you access printable HTML versions from subtitles in the table of contents, you can specify a group of topics to print.

1. Click a section title in the table of contents. Here, **Basic Printing Workflow** is used as an example.

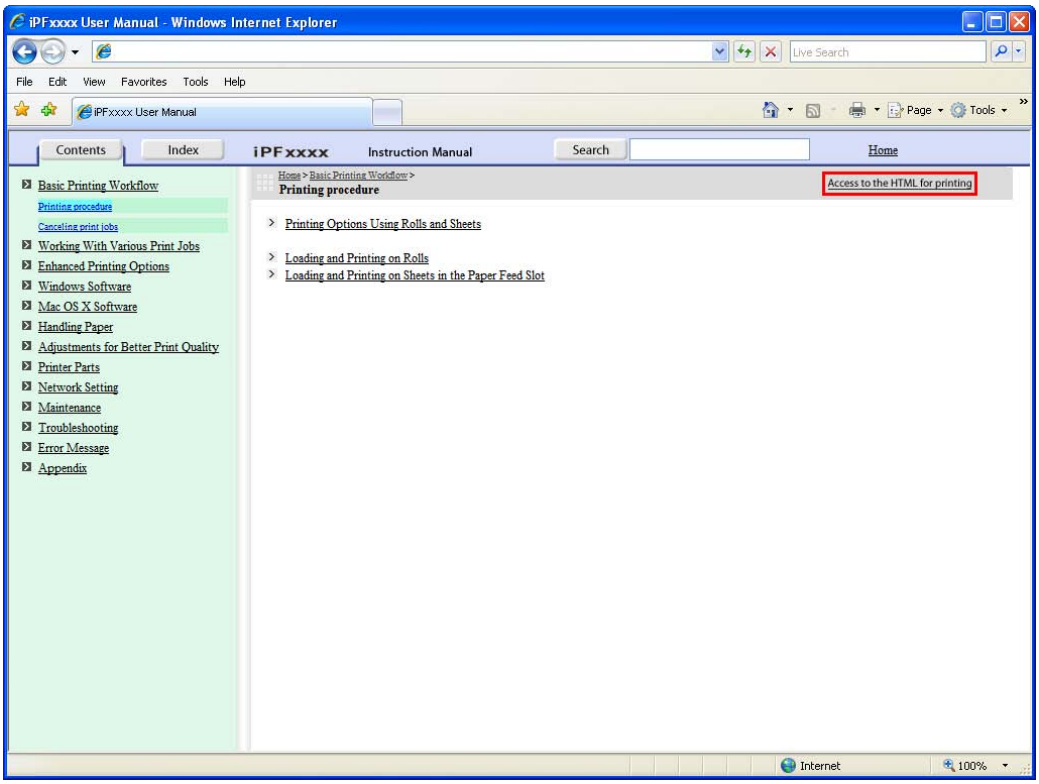


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Under **Basic Printing Workflow**, click **Printing Procedure**.

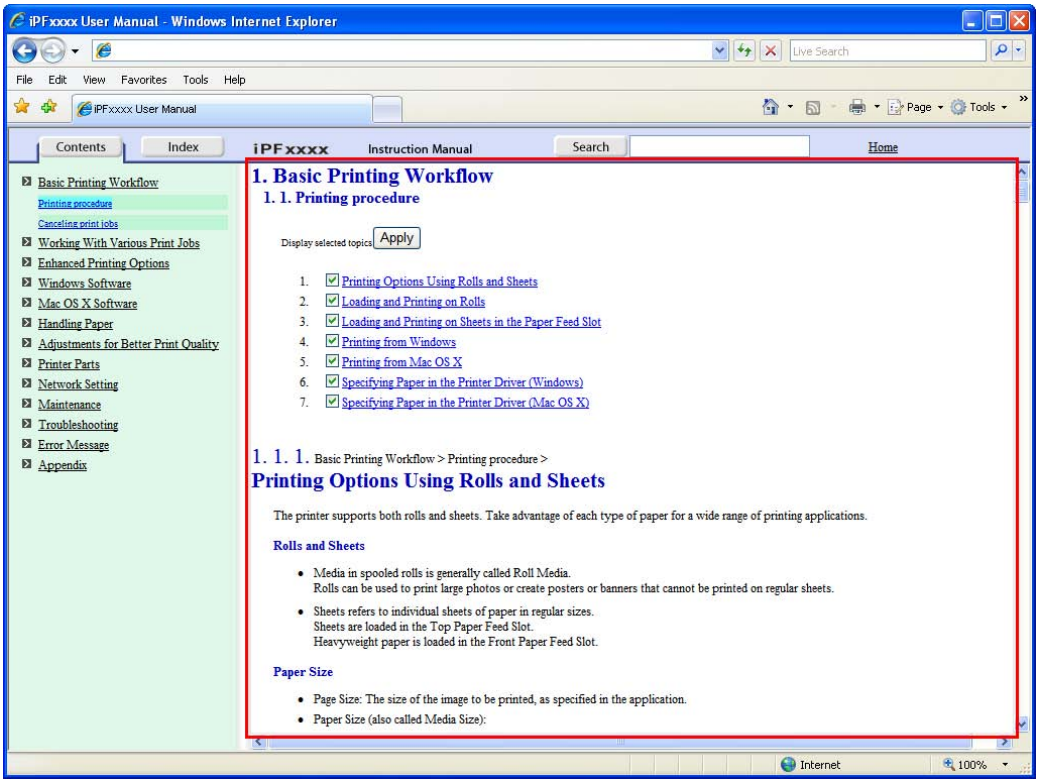


3. Click **Access to the HTML for printing** in the title area.

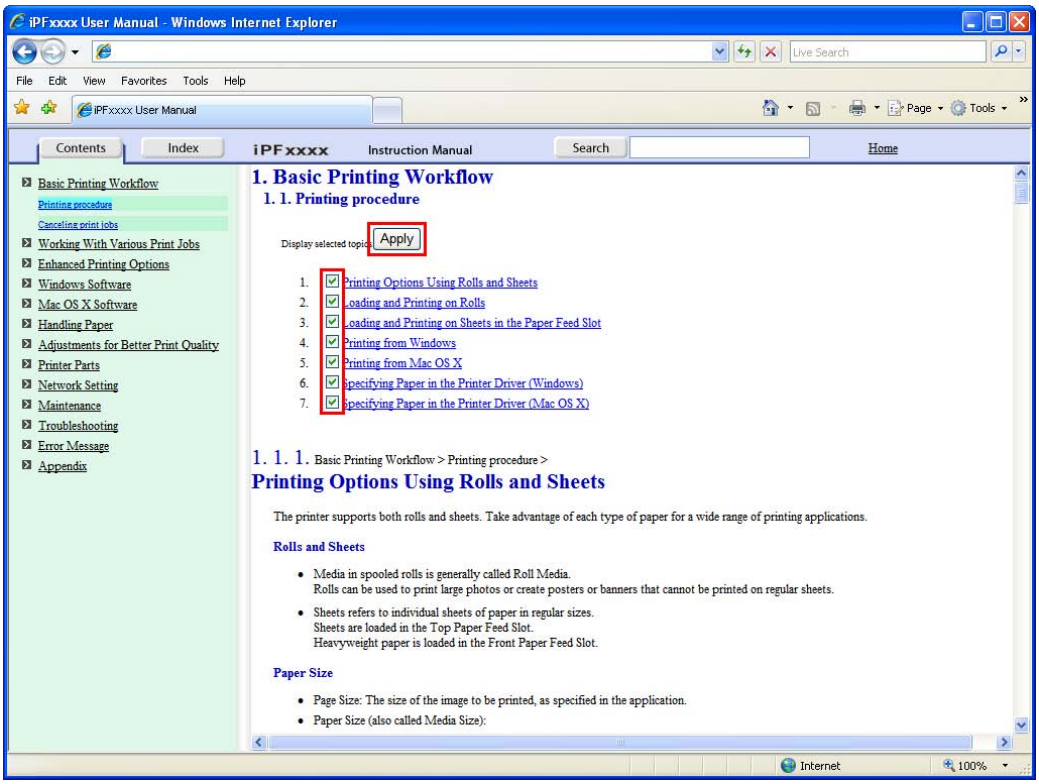


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

The topics in **Printing Procedure** are displayed together in HTML format, ready for printing.


iPFxxxx User Manual - Windows Internet Explorer
Contents
Index
iPFxxxx
Instruction Manual
Search
Home
Basic Printing Workflow
Printing procedure
Canceling print jobs
Working With Various Print Jobs
Enhanced Printing Options
Windows Software
Mac OS X Software
Handling Paper
Adjustments for Better Print Quality
Printer Parts
Network Setting
Maintenance
Troubleshooting
Error Message
Appendix
1. Basic Printing Workflow
1. 1. Printing procedure
Display selected topics
Apply
1. Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
2. Loading and Printing on Rolls
3. Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Paper Feed Slot
4. Printing from Windows
5. Printing from Mac OS X
6. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)
7. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)
1. 1. 1. Basic Printing Workflow > Printing procedure >
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
The printer supports both rolls and sheets. Take advantage of each type of paper for a wide range of printing applications.
Rolls and Sheets
Media in spooled rolls is generally called Roll Media.
Rolls can be used to print large photos or create posters or banners that cannot be printed on regular sheets.
Sheets refers to individual sheets of paper in regular sizes.
Sheets are loaded in the Top Paper Feed Slot.
Heavyweight paper is loaded in the Front Paper Feed Slot.
Paper Size
Page Size: The size of the image to be printed, as specified in the application.
Paper Size (also called Media Size):

4. Clear the topics you will not print and click the **Apply** button.


iPFxxxx User Manual - Windows Internet Explorer
Contents
Index
iPFxxxx
Instruction Manual
Search
Home
Basic Printing Workflow
Printing procedure
Canceling print jobs
Working With Various Print Jobs
Enhanced Printing Options
Windows Software
Mac OS X Software
Handling Paper
Adjustments for Better Print Quality
Printer Parts
Network Setting
Maintenance
Troubleshooting
Error Message
Appendix
1. Basic Printing Workflow
1. 1. Printing procedure
Display selected topics
Apply
1. Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
2. Loading and Printing on Rolls
3. Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Paper Feed Slot
4. Printing from Windows
5. Printing from Mac OS X
6. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)
7. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)
1. 1. 1. Basic Printing Workflow > Printing procedure >
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
The printer supports both rolls and sheets. Take advantage of each type of paper for a wide range of printing applications.
Rolls and Sheets
Media in spooled rolls is generally called Roll Media.
Rolls can be used to print large photos or create posters or banners that cannot be printed on regular sheets.
Sheets refers to individual sheets of paper in regular sizes.
Sheets are loaded in the Top Paper Feed Slot.
Heavyweight paper is loaded in the Front Paper Feed Slot.
Paper Size
Page Size: The size of the image to be printed, as specified in the application.
Paper Size (also called Media Size):

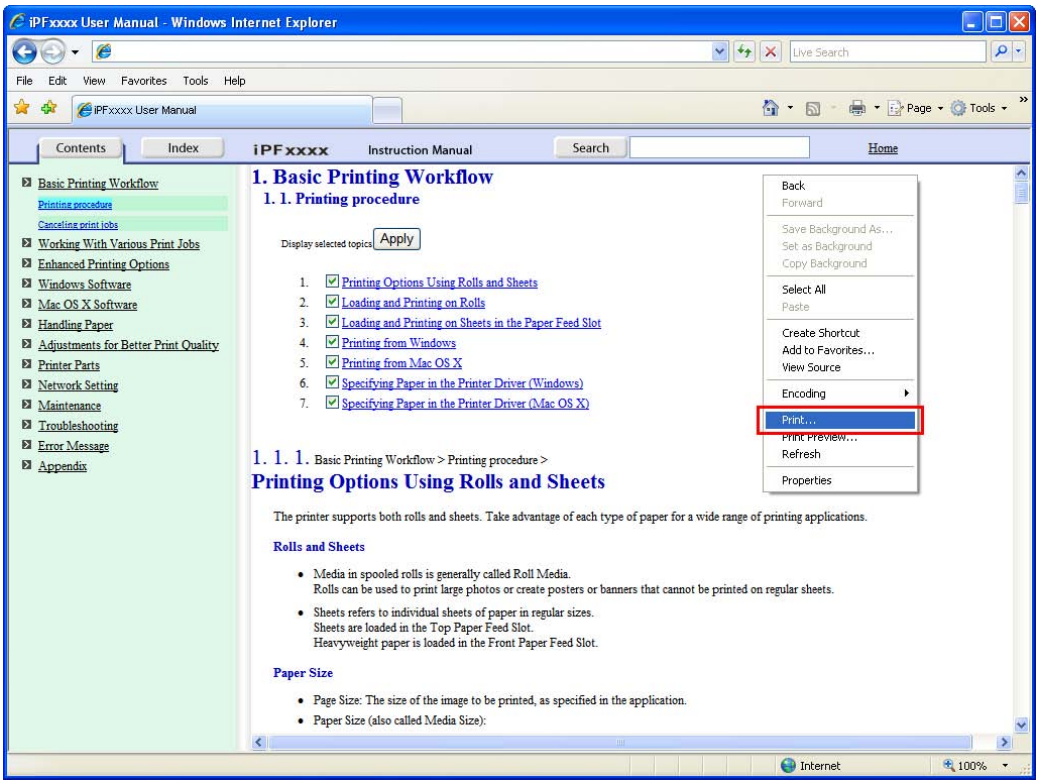
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing selected topics

Print selected topics as follows.

1. Access the printing dialog box as follows, depending on your computer's operating system.
   - Windows

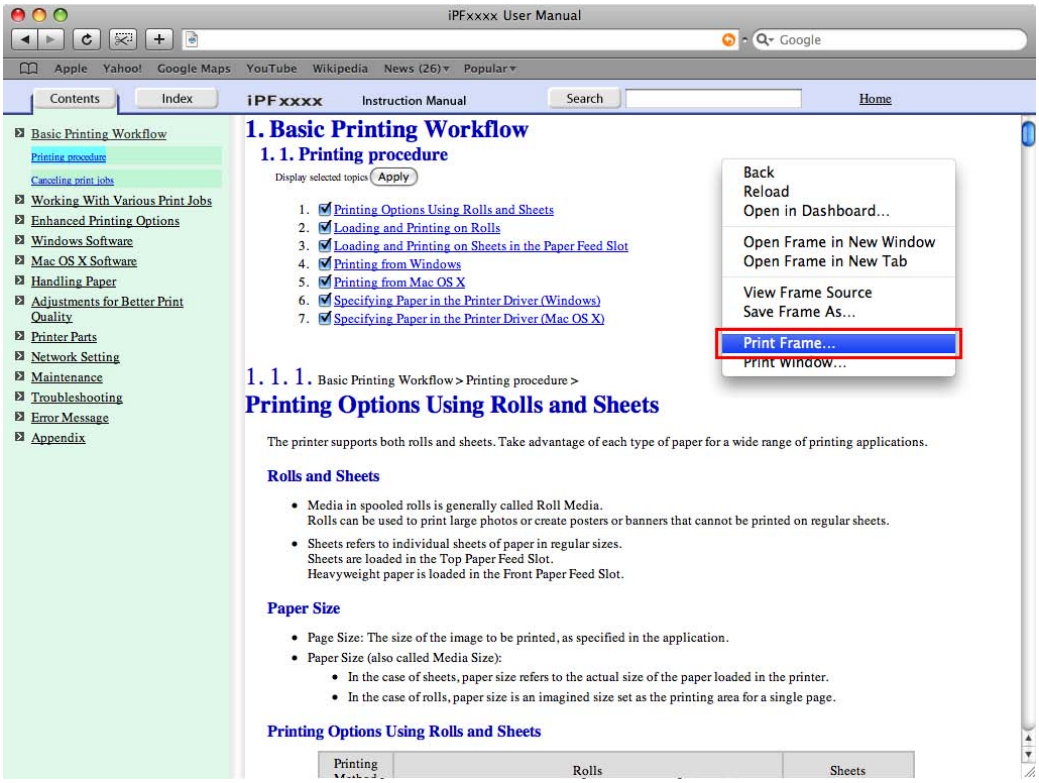
     In Windows, right-click anywhere in the explanation area except on a figure or a link.In the shortcut menu, click **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.


iPFxxxx User Manual - Windows Internet Explorer
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help
iPFxxxx User Manual
Contents
Index
iPFxxxx
Instruction Manual
Search
Home
Basic Printing Workflow
Printing procedure
Canceling print jobs
Working With Various Print Jobs
Enhanced Printing Options
Windows Software
Mac OS X Software
Handling Paper
Adjustments for Better Print Quality
Printer Parts
Network Setting
Maintenance
Troubleshooting
Error Message
Appendix
1. Basic Printing Workflow
1. 1. Printing procedure
Display selected topics
Apply
1. Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
2. Loading and Printing on Rolls
3. Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Paper Feed Slot
4. Printing from Windows
5. Printing from Mac OS X
6. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)
7. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)
1. 1. 1. Basic Printing Workflow > Printing procedure >
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
The printer supports both rolls and sheets. Take advantage of each type of paper for a wide range of printing applications.
Rolls and Sheets
Media in spooled rolls is generally called Roll Media.
Rolls can be used to print large photos or create posters or banners that cannot be printed on regular sheets.
Sheets refers to individual sheets of paper in regular sizes.
Sheets are loaded in the Top Paper Feed Slot.
Heavyweight paper is loaded in the Front Paper Feed Slot.
Paper Size
Page Size: The size of the image to be printed, as specified in the application.
Paper Size (also called Media Size):
Back
Forward
Save Background As...
Set as Background
Copy Background
Select All
Paste
Create Shortcut
Add to Favorites...
View Source
Encoding
Print...
Print Preview...
Refresh
Properties
Internet
100%

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

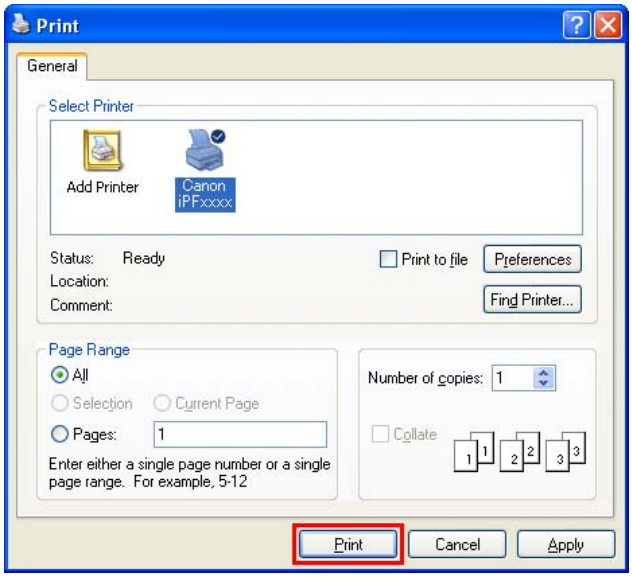
- Macintosh

  On a Macintosh computer, click anywhere in the explanation area except on a figure or a link while holding the Ctrl key. In the shortcut menu, click **Print Frame** to display the **Print** dialog box.


iPFxxxx User Manual
Contents
Index
iPFxxxx
Instruction Manual
Search
Home
Basic Printing Workflow
Printing procedure
Canceling print jobs
Working With Various Print Jobs
Enhanced Printing Options
Windows Software
Mac OS X Software
Handling Paper
Adjustments for Better Print Quality
Printer Parts
Network Setting
Maintenance
Troubleshooting
Error Message
Appendix
1. Basic Printing Workflow
1. 1. Printing procedure
Display selected topics
Apply
1. Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
2. Loading and Printing on Rolls
3. Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Paper Feed Slot
4. Printing from Windows
5. Printing from Mac OS X
6. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)
7. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)
Back
Reload
Open in Dashboard...
Open Frame in New Window
Open Frame in New Tab
View Frame Source
Save Frame As...
Print Frame...
Print Window...
1. 1. 1. Basic Printing Workflow > Printing procedure >
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
The printer supports both rolls and sheets. Take advantage of each type of paper for a wide range of printing applications.
Rolls and Sheets
Media in spooled rolls is generally called Roll Media.
Rolls can be used to print large photos or create posters or banners that cannot be printed on regular sheets.
Sheets refers to individual sheets of paper in regular sizes.
Sheets are loaded in the Top Paper Feed Slot.
Heavyweight paper is loaded in the Front Paper Feed Slot.
Paper Size
Page Size: The size of the image to be printed, as specified in the application.
Paper Size (also called Media Size):
In the case of sheets, paper size refers to the actual size of the paper loaded in the printer.
In the case of rolls, paper size is an imagined size set as the printing area for a single page.
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
Printing
Rolls
Sheets

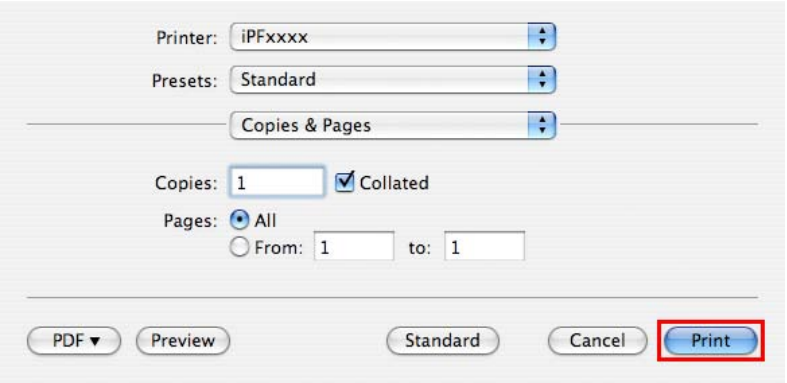
2. Specify conditions as needed, and then click **Print** (Windows) or **Print** (Macintosh).

- Windows



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Macintosh



Note

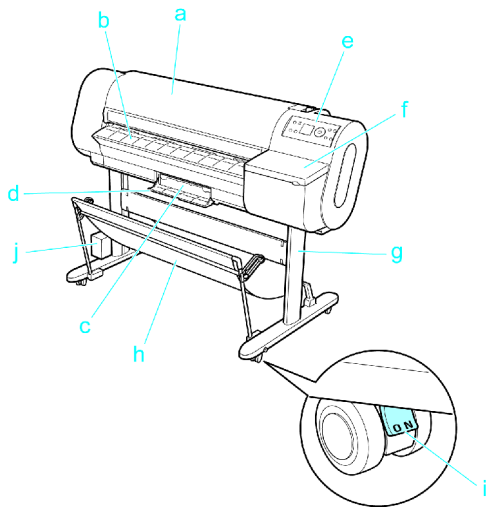
- To print only individual topics that are displayed, use this method.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printer Parts

Printer parts

Front



a. Top Cover

Open this cover to install the Printhead, load paper, and remove any jammed paper from inside the printer as needed. (→P.15)

b. Ejection Guide

Supports paper as it is ejected to prevent it from rising.

c. Maintenance Cartridge

Ink used for maintenance purposes such as head cleaning is absorbed. (Replace the cartridge when it is full.)

d. Maintenance Cartridge Cover

Open this cover to replace the Maintenance Cartridge.

e. Control Panel

Use this panel to operate the printer and check the printer status. (→P.18)

f. Ink Tank Cover

Open this cover to replace an Ink Tank. (→P.17)

g. Stand

A stand that holds the printer. Equipped with casters to facilitate moving the printer.

h. Output Stacker

A cloth tray that catches ejected documents.

i. Stopper

Locks the Stand casters.

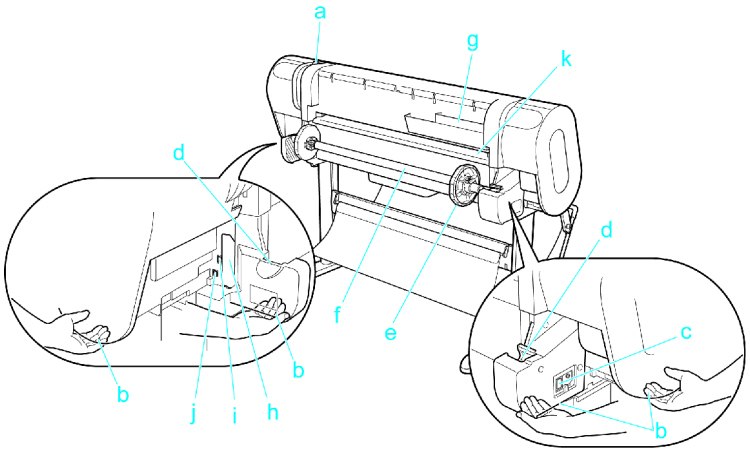
Always release the Stopper before moving the printer. Moving the printer while the Stopper is locked may scratch the casters or the floor.

j. Accessory Box

For storing printer accessories.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Back



a. Release Lever

Releases the Paper Retainer. Push this release lever back before loading paper or cleaning inside the printer.

b. Carrying Handles (Four Positions)

When carrying the printer, hold it by these handles under both sides.

c. Power Supply Connector

Connect the power cord to this connector.

d. Roll Holder Slot

Slide the Roll Holder into this guide slot.

e. Holder Stopper

Secure the roll on the Roll Holder with this part.

f. Roll Holder

Load the roll on this holder.

g. Accessory Pocket

Holds printer manuals, assembly tools, and other items.

h. Expansion Board Slots

Install an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board, as desired.

i. Ethernet Port

Connect an Ethernet cable to this port. The lamp is lit if the Ethernet cable is connected correctly and communication is possible between the computer and printer.

j. USB Port

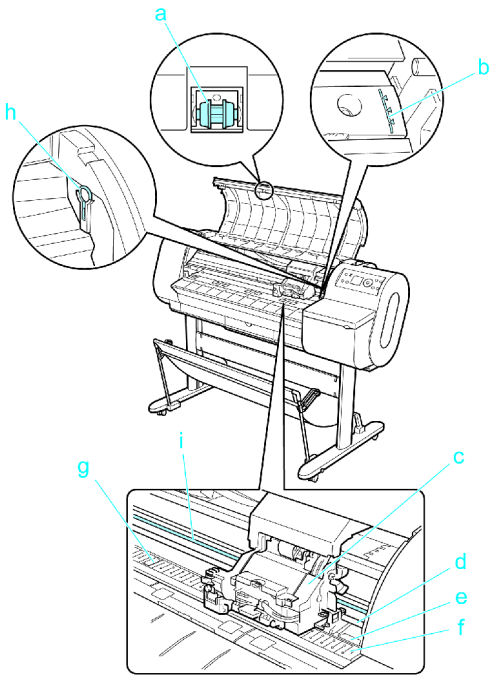
Connect a USB cable to this port. (Compatible with USB 2.0 High Speed mode)

k. Paper Feed Slot

When loading a roll, insert the edge of the roll here.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Top Cover (Inside)



a. Top Cover Roller

Prevents paper from rising when ejected.

b. Paper Alignment Line

Align paper with this line when loading it.

c. Carriage

Moves the Printhead. The carriage serves a key role in printing. (→P.16)

d. Carriage Shaft

The Carriage slides along this shaft.

e. Paper Retainer

Important in supplying the paper. This retainer holds paper as it is fed.

f. Platen

The Printhead moves across the platen to print. The Vacuum holes on the platen hold paper in place.

g. Borderless Printing Ink Grooves

These grooves catch ink outside the edges of paper during borderless printing.

h. Cleaning Brush

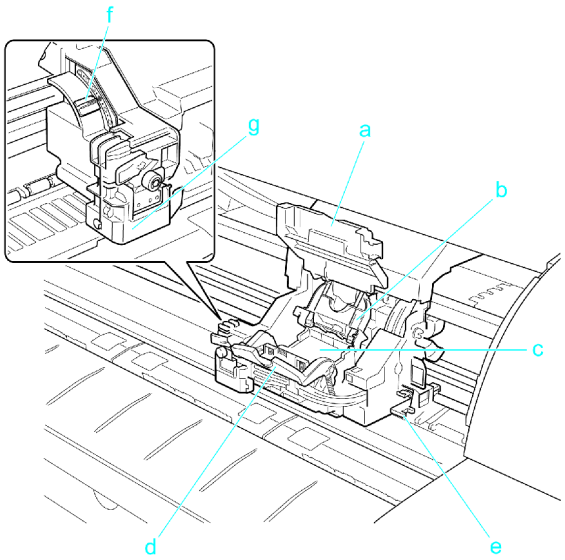
When cleaning inside of the Top Cover, use this brush to sweep away paper dust on the Platen.

i. Linear Scale

The linear scale serves a key role in detecting the Carriage position. Be careful not to touch this part when cleaning inside the Top Cover or clearing paper jams.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Carriage



a. Carriage Cover

Protects the Carriage.

b. Printhead Fixer Cover

Holds the Printhead in place.

c. Printhead

The printhead is equipped with ink nozzles. It is a key part of the printer.

d. Printhead Fixer Lever

Locks the Printhead Fixer Cover.

e. Shaft Cleaner

Prevents the Carriage Shaft from becoming dirty.

f. Angle Adjustment Lever

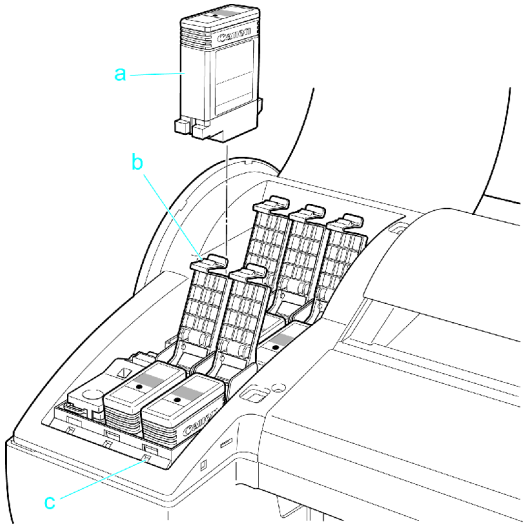
Use this lever to fine-tune the printer to correct misalignment of printed lines.

g. Cutter Unit

A round-bladed cutter for automatic paper cutting. The cutter blade is retracted inside when not cutting.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Ink Tank Cover (Inside)



a. Ink Tank

Cartridges of ink in various colors.

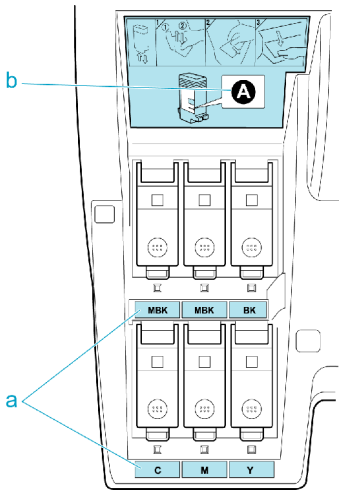
b. Ink Tank Lock Lever

A lever that locks the Ink Tank in place and protects it. Open or close the lever when replacing an Ink Tank.

c. Ink Lamp (Red)

Indicates the state of the Ink Tank as follows when the Ink Tank Cover is opened.

- On
  On: The Ink Tank is installed correctly.
- Off
  Off: No Ink Tank is installed, or the ink level detection function is disabled.
- Flashing Slowly
  Not much ink is left.
- Flashing Rapidly
  There is no more ink.



a. Ink Color Label

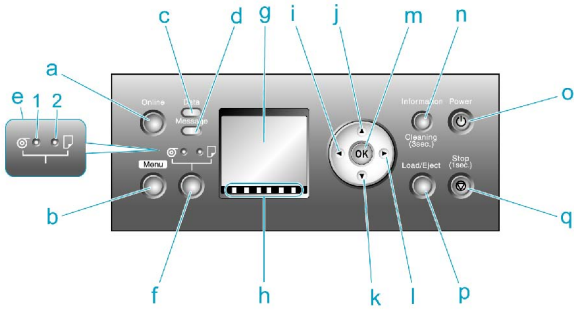
Load an Ink Tank corresponding to the color and name on these labels.

b. Ink Set

An Ink Tank that can be used in the printer is labeled with a white letter “A” in a black circle on the side. When purchasing an Ink Tank, make sure an “A” is printed on the label. (→P.507)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Control Panel



a. **Online** Button (Green)

Switches the printer online and offline. (→P.29)

- On
  The printer is online.
- Flashing
  The printer is switching modes.
- Off
  The printer is offline.

b. **Menu** Button

Displays the main menu of the printer. (→P.50)

c. Data lamp (Green)

- Flashing
  During printing, the Data lamp flashes when the printer is receiving or processing print jobs. This lamp flashes when the print job is paused or the printer is updating the firmware.
- Off
  There are no active print jobs when the Data lamp is off.

d. Message lamp (Orange)

- On
  A warning message is displayed.
- Flashing
  An error message is displayed.
- Off
  The printer is off or is operating normally.

e. Paper Source Section

After you press the **Feeder Selection** button, the lamp for your chosen paper source is lit.

1. **Roll Media lamp** (Green)
   - On
     Indicates that a roll is selected as the paper source.
   - Off
     Indicates that a sheet is selected as the paper source.
2. **Cut Sheet lamp** (Green)
   - On
     Indicates that a sheet is selected as the paper source.
   - Off
     Indicates that a roll is selected as the paper source.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

f. **Feeder Selection** Button

Switches the paper source. Each time you press this button, the paper source switches between the roll and the sheet, and the corresponding lamp on the Paper Source Section is lit.

g. Display Screen

Shows the printer menu, as well as the printer status and messages.

h. Color Labels

These labels indicate the Ink Tank colors. The labels correspond to the ink levels on the Display Screen.

i. ◄ Button

Menu mode: Press this button to display the menu one level higher.

j. ▲ Button

Offline mode: Press this button to rewind the roll manually. (→P.118)

Menu mode: Press this button to display the previous menu item or setting value.

k. ▼ Button

Offline mode: Press this button to feed the roll manually in the direction of ejection, as needed. (→P.118)

Menu mode: Press this button to display the next menu item or setting value.

l. ► Button

Menu mode: Press this button to display the menu one level lower.

m. **OK** Button

In Menu mode, press this button to confirm or execute the selected item or setting. Press this button if the Display Screen indicates to do so.

n. **Information** Button

Displays printer submenus. Press this key to display information about ink, paper, and so on. (→P.65)

You can also hold down this button for three seconds to clean the Printhead (**Head Cleaning A**).

o. **Power** Button

Turns the printer on and off. (→P.22)

p. **Load/Eject** Button

By pressing this button, you can check instructions on loading and removing paper. Instructions for loading paper are shown on the Display Screen if pressed when no paper is loaded, and instructions for removing paper are shown if paper is loaded.

q. **Stop** Button

Hold down for at least a second to cancel print jobs in progress or end the ink drying period.

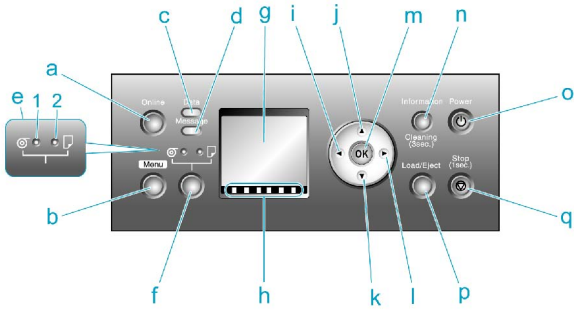
Note

- In Sleep mode, you can press any button except the **Power** button to bring the printer online again.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Control Panel

Control Panel



a. **Online** Button (Green)

Switches the printer online and offline. (→P.29)

- On
  The printer is online.
- Flashing
  The printer is switching modes.
- Off
  The printer is offline.

b. **Menu** Button

Displays the main menu of the printer. (→P.50)

c. Data lamp (Green)

- Flashing
  During printing, the Data lamp flashes when the printer is receiving or processing print jobs. This lamp flashes when the print job is paused or the printer is updating the firmware.
- Off
  There are no active print jobs when the Data lamp is off.

d. Message lamp (Orange)

- On
  A warning message is displayed.
- Flashing
  An error message is displayed.
- Off
  The printer is off or is operating normally.

e. Paper Source Section

After you press the **Feeder Selection** button, the lamp for your chosen paper source is lit.

1. **Roll Media lamp** (Green)
   - On
     Indicates that a roll is selected as the paper source.
   - Off
     Indicates that a sheet is selected as the paper source.
2. **Cut Sheet lamp** (Green)
   - On
     Indicates that a sheet is selected as the paper source.
   - Off
     Indicates that a roll is selected as the paper source.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

f. **Feeder Selection** Button

Switches the paper source. Each time you press this button, the paper source switches between the roll and the sheet, and the corresponding lamp on the Paper Source Section is lit.

g. Display Screen

Shows the printer menu, as well as the printer status and messages.

h. Color Labels

These labels indicate the Ink Tank colors. The labels correspond to the ink levels on the Display Screen.

i. ◄ Button

Menu mode: Press this button to display the menu one level higher.

j. ▲ Button

Offline mode: Press this button to rewind the roll manually. (→P.118)

Menu mode: Press this button to display the previous menu item or setting value.

k. ▼ Button

Offline mode: Press this button to feed the roll manually in the direction of ejection, as needed. (→P.118)

Menu mode: Press this button to display the next menu item or setting value.

l. ► Button

Menu mode: Press this button to display the menu one level lower.

m. **OK** Button

In Menu mode, press this button to confirm or execute the selected item or setting. Press this button if the Display Screen indicates to do so.

n. **Information** Button

Displays printer submenus. Press this key to display information about ink, paper, and so on. (→P.65)

You can also hold down this button for three seconds to clean the Printhead (**Head Cleaning A**).

o. **Power** Button

Turns the printer on and off. (→P.22)

p. **Load/Eject** Button

By pressing this button, you can check instructions on loading and removing paper. Instructions for loading paper are shown on the Display Screen if pressed when no paper is loaded, and instructions for removing paper are shown if paper is loaded.

q. **Stop** Button

Hold down for at least a second to cancel print jobs in progress or end the ink drying period.

Note

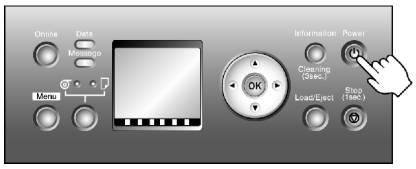
- In Sleep mode, you can press any button except the **Power** button to bring the printer online again.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

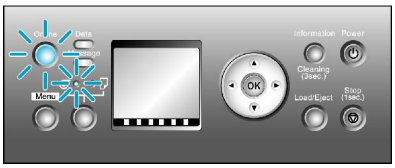
Turning the Printer On and Off

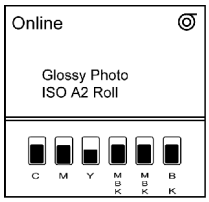
Turning the printer on

1. Press the **Power** button to turn on the printer.
   The printer will now start up.
   After the Display Screen shows the Canon logo, **Starting up... Please wait.** is displayed.



2. The printer goes online in preparation for printing after startup, and the Online lamp and paper source section lamp remain lit.





The printer will not go online in the following situations. Take action as needed.

- The Top Cover is open
  Close the Top Cover.
- The Ink Tank Cover is open
  Close the Ink Tank Cover.
- The Printhead is not installed
  Install the Printhead. For the instruction, see “Replacing the Printhead”. (→P.518)
- Ink Tank is not installed
  Install the Ink Tanks. For the instruction, see “Replacing Ink Tanks”. (→P.508)
- If “ERROR” is shown on the Display Screen
  Turn off the printer and contact your Canon dealer.
- The Online lamp and Message lamp are not lit (even once), and nothing appears on the Display Screen
  Make sure the printer is plugged in correctly. Check the connection at the plug and electrical outlet.
- No paper is loaded
  Load paper. (→P.82) (→P.86)

Important

- Starting the printer when it is connected via the USB cable to a Macintosh computer that is off may cause the computer to start up at the same time. To prevent this, disconnect the USB cable before starting the printer. Connecting the printer to the computer via a USB hub may solve this issue.

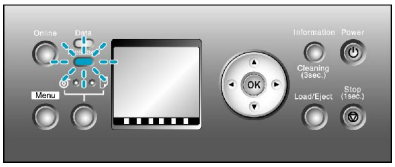
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Turning the printer off

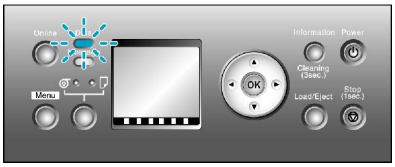
Important

- Never turn the printer off or unplug it during a print job. This could damage the printer.

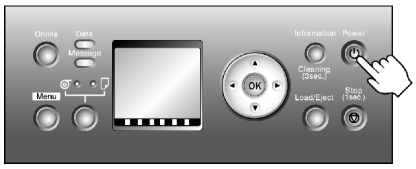
1. Make sure no print jobs are in progress.
   If the Message lamp is flashing, check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.576)



   If the Data lamp is flashing, the printer is receiving a print job. Turn off the printer only after printing is finished.



2. Hold down the **Power** button for more than a second.



   After **Shut Down.. Please Wait..** is shown on the Display Screen, the printer shuts off.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printer Modes

Printer modes are classified as follows and described in this topic.

- Modes (→P.24)
- Mode transition (→P.25)
- Online, and state of the Control Panel (→P.26)
- Offline, and state of the Control Panel (→P.27)
- Menu mode, and state of the Control Panel (→P.28)
- Submenu mode, and state of the Control Panel (→P.28)

Modes

The printer has five modes as follows:

- Online

  The printer is ready to receive jobs sent from the computer. Jobs sent from the computer are processed immediately. If jobs are received in other modes, they are printed the next time the printer goes online.
- Offline

  Any jobs sent from the computer are held without being processed.

  While the printer is offline, you can feed or cut roll paper manually.

  The printer goes offline automatically if jobs cannot be processed, such as if errors occur.
- Menu mode

  Menus are displayed on the printer, and you can select, set, or execute menu items. Any jobs sent from the computer are held without being printed.
- Submenu mode

  Submenus are displayed regarding ink and paper information. Jobs can be received and printing is possible while submenus are displayed and the printer is online. In other modes, any jobs sent from the computer are held without being printed while submenus are displayed.
- Sleep mode

  The printer is in power-saving mode. The printer automatically enters Sleep mode to conserve power if it is idle for a specific period (by factory default, five minutes), that is, if no print jobs are received or buttons are pressed while all covers are closed.

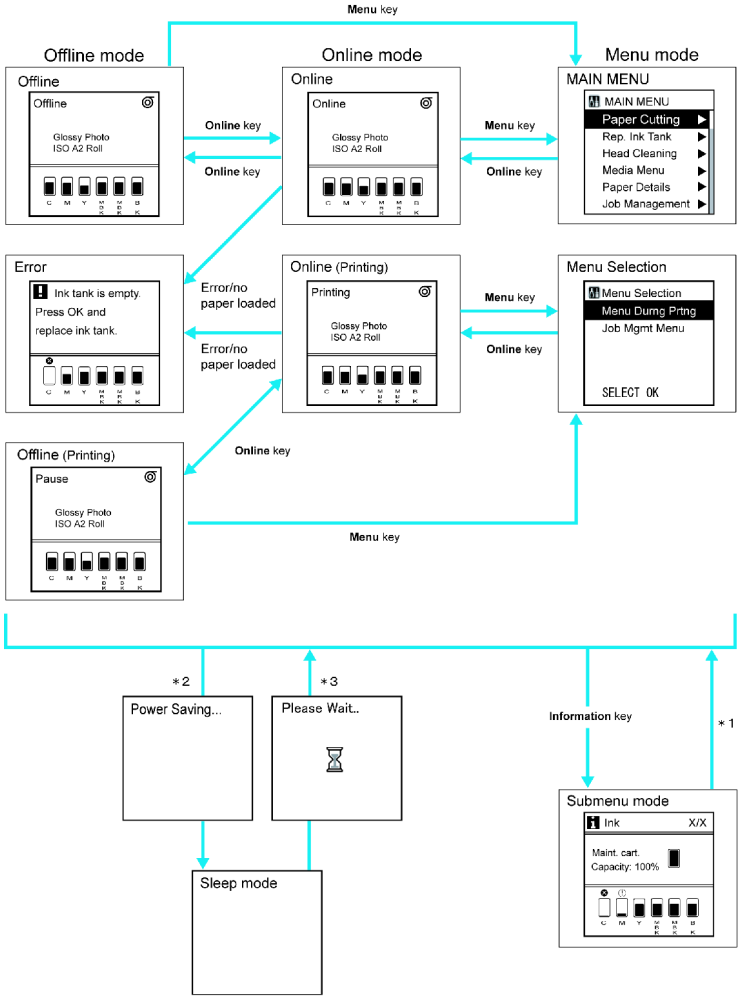
  You can specify the period before the printer enters Sleep mode in the **Sleep Timer** menu. (→P.50)

  If any print jobs are received when the printer is in Sleep mode (after it was originally online), the printer goes online and prints the jobs.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Mode transition

The printer mode transitions are as follows:



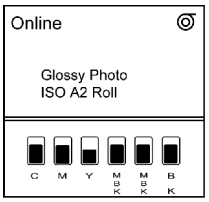
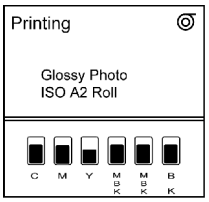
*1: When submenus are displayed, you can press any button other than the **Information** button to return to the previous mode.

*2: The printer automatically enters Sleep mode if it is idle for a specific period (by factory default, five minutes), that is, if no print jobs are received or buttons are pressed while all covers are closed. However, it does not enter Sleep mode while error messages are displayed.

*3: In Sleep mode, the printer can be restored to the previous state by pressing any button. Sleep mode is also terminated if a print job is received or a command is issued from RemoteUI.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Online, and state of the Control Panel

Not printing	Printing in progress (receiving or processing print jobs)
	

Display Screen

- Top Level of the Display Screen
  The printer status is displayed here. The selected paper source is indicated by an icon in the upper-right corner.
  Any warning messages are displayed here on lines 2-4. Take action as needed. (→P.576)
- Middle Level of the Display Screen
  The first and second lines display the paper type and size.
- Bottom Level of the Display Screen
  Here, the remaining ink level is indicated. (→P.513)

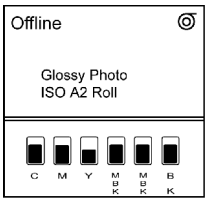
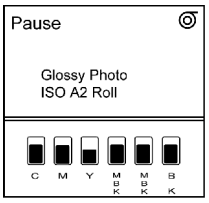
Control Panel

- Online lamp
  Lit when the printer is online.
- Data lamp
  Flashes when print jobs are being received or processed.
- Message lamp
  Lit when warning messages are displayed.

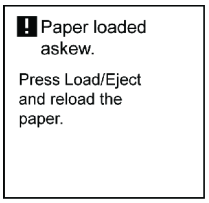
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Offline, and state of the Control Panel

Offline

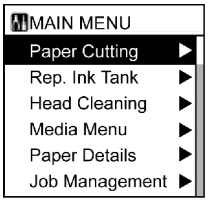
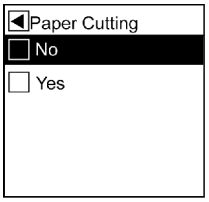
Not printing	Printing is paused
	
Display Screen • Top Level of the Display Screen The printer status is displayed here. The selected paper source is indicated by an icon in the upper-right corner. Any warning messages are displayed here on lines 2-4. Take action as needed. (→P.576) • Middle Level of the Display Screen The first and second lines display the paper type and size. • Bottom Level of the Display Screen Here, the remaining ink level is indicated. (→P.513) Control Panel • Message lamp Lit when warning messages are displayed.	

Error Messages

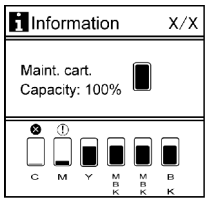
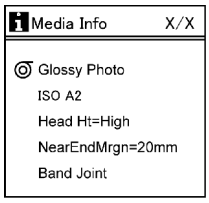
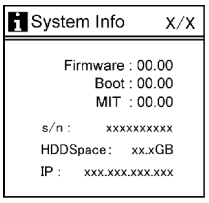
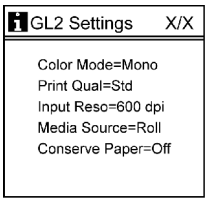
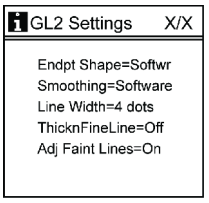
If action can be taken		If no action can be taken	
			
• Top and Middle Levels of the Display Screen Error messages are displayed. • Bottom Level of the Display Screen Here, the remaining ink level is indicated. (→P.513)	• Top and Middle Levels of the Display Screen Error messages are displayed. • Bottom Level of the Display Screen The corrective actions are displayed here.	• Top and Middle Levels of the Display Screen The error message is displayed with the following instructions: **Turn off printer, wait, then turn on again.**.	• Display Screen “ERROR” is displayed, followed by the error code and **Call for service.**.
• Data lamp Flashes when print jobs are being received. • Message lamp Flashes when error messages are displayed.		• Data lamp Flashes when print jobs are being received. • Message lamp Flashes when error messages are displayed.	
Take action as needed. (→P.576)		Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power. If the message is still displayed after this, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact the Canon dealer for assistance.	

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Menu mode, and state of the Control Panel

Main menu	Menu items and settings	Main menu (during printing)
		
• Display Screen Pressing the **Menu** button when printing is not in progress displays the main menu. The title of the selected menu is displayed on the first line, and menus immediately under the current menu are displayed on the second and subsequent lines. The lower level menus are available if "►" is displayed at right. (→P.33)	• Display Screen The title of the selected menu is displayed on the first line, and menu items or settings are displayed on the second and subsequent lines. (→P.33) The menu of options available during printing (top figure) can be displayed by pressing the ► button when the main menu is displayed (left figure).	• Display Screen Menus available during printing are displayed if you press the **Menu** button during printing. If you select a menu, the title of the selected menu is displayed on the first line, and menus immediately under the current menu are displayed on the second and subsequent lines. The lower level menus are available if "►" is displayed at right. (→P.33)

Submenu mode, and state of the Control Panel

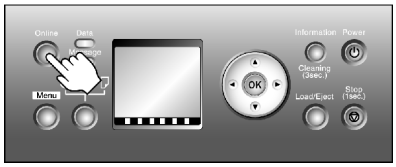
Ink levels and the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity	Information of the loaded paper	Printer information	GL2 Settings	
				
Press the **Information** button to display this information, one after another: the Maintenance Cartridge capacity and remaining ink levels, paper information, printer information, and GL2 settings information. (→P.65)				

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

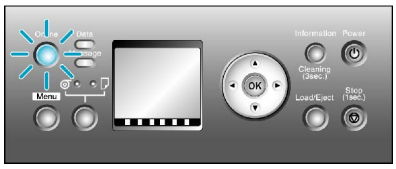
Switching Modes

Switching the printer online/offline

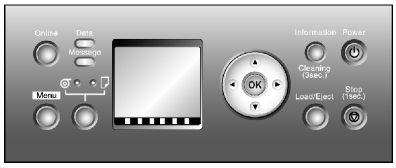
Press the **Online** button to switch the printer online or offline.



The Online lamp is lit in Online mode. Printing is possible in this mode.



The Online lamp is off in Offline mode.



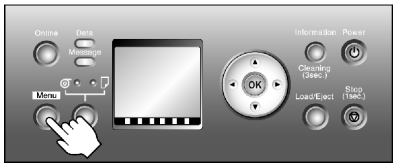
Depending on the status, the printer switches online and offline as follows.

Printer Status	When the Online Button is Pressed
Online	The printer switches offline and the Online lamp goes off.
Online, printing	Switches offline and printing is paused. When printing is paused, the **Printing** menu is available.
Offline	Switches online and the Online lamp is lit.
Offline, when an error message is displayed	In the case of error messages other than those shown below or if paper is not loaded, the printer remains offline until you solve the problem. The Online lamp remains off.
	If the following error messages are displayed, the printer switches online and printing is resumed. • **Insufficient paper for job** • **PHead needs cleaning.** • **Papr Size Mismatch** • **Papr Type Mismatch**
Menu mode	Switches online and the Online lamp is lit.
Menu mode, printing	Switches online and the Online lamp is lit. Printing is resumed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Switching to Menu mode

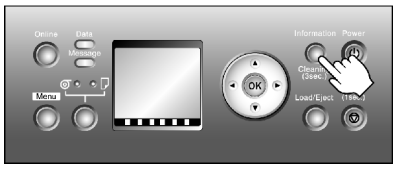
Press the **Menu** button to display the main menu.



Depending on the status, the printer switches to Menu mode as follows.

Printer Status	When the Menu Button is Pressed
Online	Switches to Menu mode.
Online, printing	Either menus available during printing or a screen to manage print jobs is displayed. If you select a menu, the printer switches to that menu mode.
Offline	Switches to Menu mode.
Offline, printing	Menus available during printing are displayed.
Offline, when an error message is displayed	You cannot access Menu mode until the problem is solved.

Press the **Information** button to display the submenus.



Press the **Information** button to display the Maintenance Cartridge capacity and remaining ink levels, as well as information on the loaded paper and the printer. Press the **Information** button repeatedly to change the information displayed. (→P.65)
Press any button other than the **Information** button to restore the previous mode.
After you display a submenu, the printer will revert to the previous mode in about ten seconds if no print job is received or if you do not operate the printer.

Note

- You can start **Head Cleaning A** by holding down the **Information** button for three seconds or more. (→P.517)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printer Menu Operations

The printer menu includes a main menu and submenus.

- Main menu operations when no print job is in progress (→P.31)
- Main menu operations during printing (→P.31)
- Job Management Menu Operations (→P.32)
- Submenu operations (→P.32)

Main menu operations when no print job is in progress

Access the main menu by pressing the **Menu** button on the Control Panel.

Note

- The main menu will not be displayed in the following case even if you press the **Menu** button.
  - An error message is displayed:
    Switches to Menu mode after the problem is solved.

The following operations are available from the main menu.

- Paper settings
- Print settings
- Printer settings
- HP-GL/2 settings

For a description of specific items available in the main menu, see “Main Menu Settings”. (→P.50)
For instructions on selecting and setting main menu items, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.33)

Note

- By default, main menu settings apply to all print jobs. However, for settings that are also available in the printer driver, the values specified in the printer driver take priority.

Main menu operations during printing

Selecting **Menu Durng Prtng** on the **Menu Selection** screen (displayed by pressing the **Menu** button on the Control Panel during printing) will display only the menu options you can execute during printing, specifically, **Head Cleaning**, **Fine Band Adj.**, and **Information**.

Note

- The **Menu Selection** screen will not be displayed in the following case even if you press the **Menu** button.
  - An error message is displayed:
    Switches to Menu mode after the problem is solved.

The following operations are available from the main menu during printing.

- Printhead cleaning
- Manual adjustment of the paper feed amount
- Display of printer-related information

For a description of specific items available in the main menu during printing, see “Main Menu Settings (During Printing)”. (→P.62)
For instructions on selecting and setting main menu items during printing, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.33)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Job Management Menu Operations

To display the **Job Mgmt Menu**, press **Job Mgmt Menu** on the **Menu Selection** screen, which is displayed by pressing the **Menu** button on the Control Panel during printing.

Note

- The **Menu Selection** screen will not be displayed in the following case even if you press the **Menu** button.
  - An error message is displayed
    You can access Menu mode after you have solved the problem.

The following operations are available from the **Job Mgmt Menu**.

- Job queue operations
- Operations involving the common mail box
- Operations involving personal boxes

For a description of specific items available in the main menu during printing, see “Main Menu Settings (During Printing)”. (→P.62)

Submenu operations

Access submenus by pressing the **Information** button on the Control Panel. You can check the following information in submenus.

- Remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity
- Ink levels
- Information on the loaded paper
- Printer information
- Job management

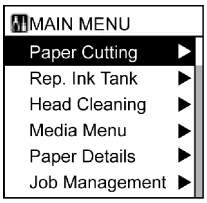
For a description of specific items displayed in submenus, see “Submenu Display”. (→P.65)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Main Menu Operations

Press the **Menu** button to display the main menu. For details, see “Main Menu Settings”. (→P.50)

- Main menu when no print job is in progress



- Menu selection (if you press the **Menu** button when printing is in progress)

Note

- The main menu will not be displayed in the following case even if you press the **Menu** button.
  - An error message is displayed
    You can access the Menu mode after you have solved the problem.

To access each function menu from the main menu, and set or execute menu items, use buttons on the Control Panel.
The following section describes menu operations and how they are presented in this **User Manual**.

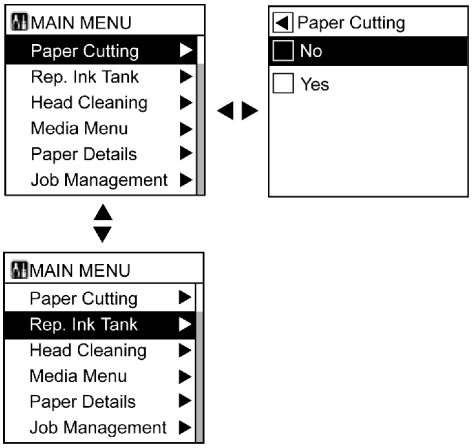
- Accessing Menus (→P.34)
- Specifying menu items (→P.35)
- Specifying numerical values (→P.36)
- Executing menu commands (→P.36)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

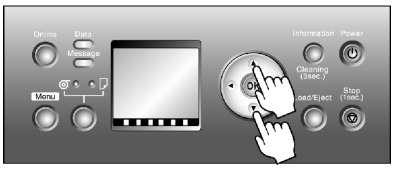
Accessing Menus

Printer menus are grouped by function.

Menus are displayed with the upper line selected. Use the buttons on the Control Panel to access each menu.

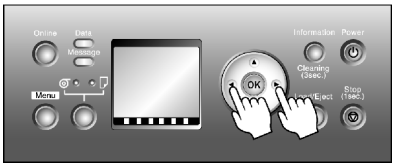


- Press ▲ to access a higher menu in the menu list, and press ▼ to access a lower one. If items of the menu list are more than the lines of the screen, press ▲ and ▼ to scroll the menu. If you navigate to the lowest-level menu and press the ▼ button again, the display switches to the top-level menu screen. If you navigate to the top-level menu and press the ▲ button again, the display switches to the lowest-level menu screen. Items you select are highlighted.



The scroll bar at right indicates the current position in the overall menu.

- The lower level menus are available if "►" is displayed at right. To access these lower level menus, select a menu and press ►.
- The upper level menus are available if "◄" is displayed at left. To access these upper level menus, select a menu and press ◄.

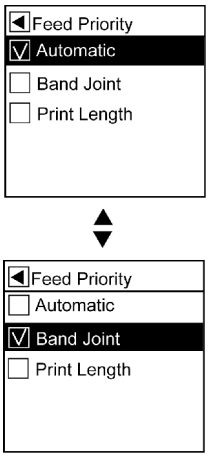


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying menu items

Follow the steps below to specify menu items.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a menu, and then press the ► button.
   Repeat these steps until the desired menu options are displayed.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting, and then press the **OK** button.
   The check box at left is selected, and the setting is confirmed.



   After two seconds, the display reverts to the upper level menu.
3. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

Note

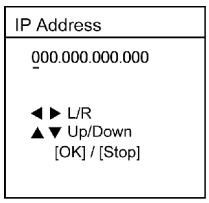
- If a confirmation message is displayed regarding the setting you entered, press the **OK** button. The setting is applied, and the printer goes online.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying numerical values

Follow the steps below to enter numbers for items such as network settings.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **TCP/IP**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IP Setting**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IP Address**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ◄ or ► to move the cursor (_) to each field for entering numbers.



6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the number, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- Hold down ▲ or ▼ to increase or decrease the value continuously.
- Make sure the IP address you enter for the printer is not the same as any computer IP address in your network.

7. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to continue entering numbers.
8. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

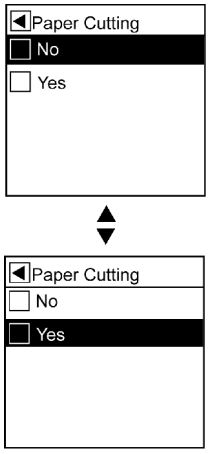
Note

- If a confirmation message is displayed regarding the setting you entered, press the **OK** button. The setting is applied, and the printer goes online.

Executing menu commands

Follow the steps below to execute menu commands.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a menu, and then press the ► button.
   Repeat these steps until the desired menu options are displayed.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the action to execute, and then press the **OK** button.



After two seconds, the menu command is executed. After commands are executed, the printer commonly reverts to the state before the menu operation, either online or offline.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Menu Structure

Main Menu

The structure of the main menu is as follows. Values at right indicated by an asterisk "*" are the defaults.
For instructions on menu operations, see "Main Menu Operations". (→P.33)
For details on menu items, see "Main Menu Settings". (→P.50)

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
Paper Cutting	**No** *			
	Yes			
Rep. Ink Tank	**No** *			
	Yes			
Head Cleaning	**Head Cleaning A** *			
	Head Cleaning B			
Media Menu	**Cut Sheet Type**	(The paper type is displayed here.) (*5)		
	Roll Media Type (*1)	(The paper type is displayed here.) (*5)		
	Chk Remain.Roll	**Off** *		
		On		
	Roll Length Set (*2)	**###.# m**		
		### feet (*9)		
Paper Details	(The paper type is displayed here.) (*5)	**Roll DryingTime**	**Off**	
			30 sec.	
			1 min.	
			3 min.	
			5 min.	
			10 min.	
			30 min.	
			60 min.	
		Scan Wait Time	**Off**	
			1 sec.	
			3 sec.	
			5 sec.	
			7 sec.	
			9 sec.	

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		Feed Priority	**Automatic** *	
			Band Joint	
			Print Length	
		Adjust Length	From -0.70% to 0.70%	
		Head Height	**Automatic** *	
			Highest	
			High	
			Standard	
			Low	
			Lowest	
		Skew Check Lv.	**Standard** *	
			Loose	
			Off	
		VacuumStrngth	**Automatic** *	
			Strongest	
			Strong	
			Standard	
			Weakest	
		Width Detection	**Off**	
			On *	
		NearEnd RollMrgn	**3mm**	
			20mm	
		Cut Speed	**Fast**	
			Standard	
			Slow	
		Trim Edge First	**Automatic**	
			Off	
			On	
		Cutting Mode	**Automatic**	
			Eject	
			Manual	
		Bordless Margin	**Automatic**	
			Fixed	
		CutDustReduct.	**Off**	

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
			On	
		NearEnd Sht Mrgn	3mm	
			20mm	
		Return Defaults	No	
			Yes	
Job Management	Job Queue Ope.	Job List	Delete	
			Priority	
	Com. BOX Ope.	Job List	Print	
			Delete	
		Print Job List	No	
			Yes	
	Psnl. BOX Ope.	Folder List	Job List	Print
				Delete
			Print Job List	No
				Yes
GL2 Settings	Color Mode	Monochrome		
		Color (CAD) 1 *		
		Color (CAD) 2		
	Print Quality	Fast		
		Standard *		
		High		
	Input Resolution	600dpi *		
		300dpi		
	Media Source	Automatic *		
		Roll Paper		
		Cut Sheet		
	Conserve Paper	Off *		
		On		
	Line Cap	Software *		
		Rounded		
	Smoothing	Software *		
		Smooth		
	Line Width	1 dot		
		2 dots		
		3 dots		

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		4 dots *		
		5 dots		
		6 dots		
		7 dots		
	ThickenFineLines	**Off** *		
		On		
	AdjustFaintLines	**Off**		
		On *		
	Auto Rotate	**Off** *		
		On		
	Nesting	**Use Nesting**	**Off** *	
			On	
		Nesting WaitTime	1-99 minutes	
		Cut Lines	**Off** *	
			On	
	On-the-Fly	**Off** *		
		On		
	ProcessingOption	**PageSizeProcess1**	**Off** *	
			On	
		PageSizeProcess2	**Off** *	
			On	
Adjust Printer	**Auto Head Adj.**	**Standard Adj.**	**No**	
			Yes	
		Advanced Adj.	**No**	
			Yes	
		Auto Print	**Off**	
			On *	
	Manual Head Adj	**No**		
		Yes		
	Auto Band Adj.	**Standard Adj.**	**No**	
			Yes	
		Advanced Adj.	**No**	
			Yes	
	Manual Band Adj	**No**		
		Yes		

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
	Adjust Length (*3)	**No**		
		Yes		
	Head Inc. Adj.	**No**		
		Yes		
Interface Setup	**EOP Timer**	**10 sec.**		
		30 sec.		
		1 min.		
		2 min.		
		5 min.		
		10 min. *		
		30 min.		
		60 min.		
	TCP/IP	**IP Mode**	**Automatic**	
			Manual *	
		Protocol (*4)	**DHCP**	**On**
				Off *
			BOOTP	**On**
				Off *
			RARP	**On**
				Off *
		IP Setting	**IP Address**	0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
			Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
			Default G/W	0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
	NetWare	**NetWare**	**On**	
			Off *	
		Frame Type (*6)	**Auto Detect**	
			Ethernet 2	
			Ethernet 802.2 *	
			Ethernet 802.3	
			Ethernet SNAP	
		Print Service (*6)	**BinderyPServer**	
			RPrinter	
			NDSPServer *	

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
			NPrinter	
	AppleTalk	On		
		Off *		
	Ethernet Driver	Auto Detect	On *	
			Off	
		Comm.Mode (*7)	Half Duplex *	
			Full Duplex	
		Ethernet Type (*7)	10 Base-T *	
			100 Base-TX	
		Spanning Tree	Not Use *	
			Use	
		MAC Address		
	Ext. Interface	No		
		IEEE1394		
	Return Defaults	No		
		Yes		
Maintenance	Repl. maint cart	No		
		Yes		
	Replace P.head	No		
		Yes		
	Repl. S. Cleaner	No *		
		Yes		
	Change Cutter	No *		
		Yes		
	Move Printer	No *		
		Yes		
System Setup	Warning	Buzzer	Off	
			On *	
		Detect Mismatch	Pause	
			Warning	
			None *	
	Keep Media Size	Off *		
		On		
	Paper Size Basis	Sht Selection 1	ISO A3+ *	
			13"x19"(Super B)	

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		Sht Selection 2	ISO B1	
			28"x40" (ANSI F)	
	Noz. Check Freq.	Off		
		1 page		
		10 pages		
		Automatic *		
	Sleep Timer	5 min. *		
		10 min.		
		15 min.		
		20 min.		
		30 min.		
		40 min.		
		50 min.		
		60 min.		
		240 min.		
	Length Unit	meter *		
		feet/inch		
	Time Zone	0:London (GMT)		
		+1:Paris,Rome		
		+2:Athens,Cairo		
		+3:Moscow		
		+4:Eerevan,Baku		
		+5:Islamabad		
		+6:Dacca		
		+7:Bangkok		
		+8:Hong Kong		
		+9:Tokyo,Seoul		
		+10:Canberra		
		+11NewCaledonia		
		+12:Wellington		
		-12:Eniwetok		
		-11:Midway is.		
		-10Hawaii(AHST)		
		-9:Alaska(AKST)		
		-8:Oregon (PST)		

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		-7:Arizona(MST)		
		-6:Texas (CST)		
		-5:NewYork(EST)		
		-4:Santiago		
		-3:Buenos Aires		
		-2:		
		-1:Cape Verde		
	Date Format	**yyyy/mm/dd** *		
		dd/mm/yyyy		
		mm/dd/yyyy		
	Date & Time	**Date**	**yyyy/mm/dd** (*8)	
			Time (*10)	**hh:mm**
	Language	**English** *		
		日本語		
		Français		
		Italiano		
		Deutsch		
		Español		
		Русский		
		中文（简体字）		
		한국어		
	Contrast Adj.	-4, -3, -2, -1, 0*, +1, +2, +3, +4		
	Reset PaprSetngs	**No**		
		Yes		
	Erase HDD Data	**High Speed**	**No**	
			Yes	
		Secure High Spd.	**No**	
			Yes	
		Secure	**No**	

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
			Yes	
	Output Method	**Print** *		
		Print (Auto Del)		
		Save: Box XX		
	Save and Print	**Off** *		
		On		
	Save: Shared Box	**Off**		
		On *		
Test Print	**Status Print**	**No**		
		Yes		
	Media Details	**No**		
		Yes		
	Print Job Log	**No**		
		Yes		
	Menu Map	**No**		
		Yes		
	Nozzle Check	**No**		
		Yes		
Information	**System Info**			
	Error Log	**########-####**		
	Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	**Document Name**	
			User Name	
			Page Count	
			Job Status	
			Print Start Time	
			Print End Time	
			Print Time	
			Print Size	
			Media Type	
			Interface	
			Ink Consumed	
	HDD Information	**HDDSpace**		

*1: Available only if a roll is loaded.

*2: Available only if **Chk Remain.Roll** is **On**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

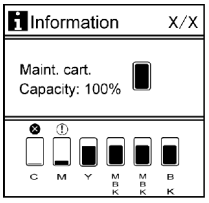
*3: Available only if **Feed Priority** is **Print Length**.
*4: Available only if **IP Mode** is **Automatic**.
*5: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool.See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).
*6: Available only if **NetWare** is **On**.
*7: Available only if **Auto Detect** is **Off**.
*8: Follows the setting in **Date Format**.
*9: Follows the setting in **Length Unit**.
*10:Available only if the **Date** setting is specified.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Submenus

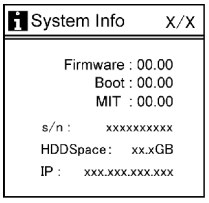
Each time you press the **Information** button on the Control Panel, printer information is displayed in the following order.

■The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and ink levels

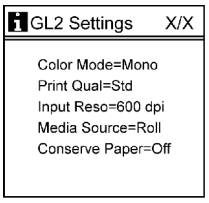


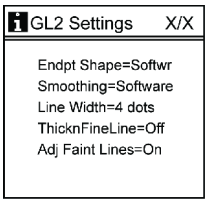
■Information of the loaded paper

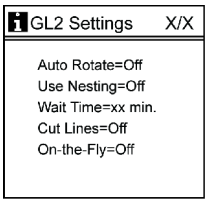
■Printer information



■HP-GL/2 settings information







For details on submenu screens, see “Submenu Display”. (→P.65)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Main menu during printing

The structure of the main menu during printing is as follows.
For instructions on menu operations, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.33)
For details on menu items, see “Main Menu Settings (During Printing)”. (→P.62)

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level
Menu Durng Prtng	**Head Cleaning**	**Head Cleaning A**				
		Head Cleaning B				
	Fine Band Adj. (*1)	From -5 to 5				
	Information	**System Info**				
		Error Log	**########-####**			
		Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	**Document Name**		
				User Name		
				Page Count		
				Job Status		
				Print Start Time		
				Print End Time		
				Print Time		
				Print Size		
				Media Type		
				Interface		
				Ink Consumed		
		HDD Information				
Job Mgmt Menu	**Job Queue Ope.**	**Job List**	(Choose a print job)	**Priority**		
				Delete		
	Com. BOX Ope.	**Job List**	(Choose a print job)	**Print**		
				Delete		
		Print Job List	**No**			
			Yes			

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level
	Psnl. BOX Ope.	**Folder List**	(Enter a password if one has been set.)	**Job List**	(Choose a print job)	**Print**
						Delete
				Print Job List	**No**	
					Yes	

*1: Available if **Feed Priority** is **Automatic** or **Band Joint**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Main Menu Settings

Main menu items are described in the following tables.
For instructions on selecting or setting menu items, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.33)
For details on menu levels and values, see “Menu Structure”. (→P.37)

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Paper Cutting	This command is available only if a roll is loaded. Choose **Yes** to cut the roll at the current position. However, if paper cannot be advanced to the cut position, it will not be cut. In this case, manually advance the roll before cutting it. (→P.118)
Rep. Ink Tank	When replacing ink tanks, choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.508)
Head Cleaning	Clean the Printhead. (→P.517) Choose **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances. Choose **Head Cleaning B** if no ink is printed at all, or if printing is not improved by **Head Cleaning A**.
Media Menu	Specify the type and size of paper. (→P.51)
Paper Details	Specify detailed paper-related settings, including the ink drying time and borderless printing options. (→P.52)
Job Management	Manage print jobs on the printer’s hard disk. (→P.54)
GL2 Settings	Specify settings for HP-GL/2 printing. (→P.55)
Adjust Printer	Adjust the Printhead alignment or amount of feed by printing a test pattern. (→P.57)
Interface Setup	Configure the EOP timer and network settings. (→P.58)
Maintenance	Access maintenance settings when replacing the Printhead or preparing to move the printer. (→P.59)
System Setup	Specify the printer system settings, including the date format and display language. (→P.59)
Test Print	Choose **Status Print** to print information about the printer. Choose **Media Details** to print the paper settings as specified in **Paper Details**. Choose **Print Job Log** to print a record of print jobs, including the paper type and size, amount of ink used, and so on. (Information on ink consumption is general, not specific in nature.) Choose **Menu Map** to print a list of the main menu options. Choose **Nozzle Check** to print a test pattern for checking the nozzles.
Information	Displays printer information and a record of print jobs. (→P.61)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper Menu

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Cut Sheet Type (*1)	Choose the type of sheets. (→P.132)
Roll Media Type (*1)	Choose the type of roll. (→P.105)
Chk Remain.Roll	Choose **On** to print a barcode at the end of a roll before you remove it. The printed barcode can be used in managing the amount of roll paper left. Choose **Off** if you prefer not to print the barcode.
Roll Length Set	Displayed if **Chk Remain.Roll** is **On**. If a barcode is not printed on rolls, specify the roll length. The roll length is displayed in meters or feet, depending on the setting in **Length Unit**.

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96) The types of paper indicated in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) are updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you update paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. See Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper Details

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
(The type of paper is displayed here.)(*1)	**Roll DryingTime**	Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry for each sheet.
	Scan Wait Time	Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry between each scan in bidirectional printing, in consideration of how quickly the ink dries. Note that printing will take longer if you specify a wait time.
	Feed Priority	Specify exact paper feeding, if desired. Normally, select **Automatic**. Choose **Print Length** if you prefer to feed the paper an exact amount. However, note that choosing **Print Length** may result in slight banding in the direction of Carriage scanning.
	Adjust Length	Displayed if **Feed Priority** is **Print Length**. Adjustment relative to the amount of stretching or shrinkage of the current paper. Enter either the adjustment results from **Print Pattern** or the discrepancy that you measured (as a percentage). For paper that tends to stretch, increase the feed amount by choosing a higher adjustment value. For paper that tends to shrink, decrease the feed amount by choosing a lower adjustment value.
	Head Height	Adjust the Printhead height. (→P.497)
	Skew Check Lv.	If you print on Japanese paper (washi) or other handmade paper that has an irregular width, choose **Loose** for a higher skew detection threshold, or choose **Off** to disable skew detection. However, if paper is loaded askew when detection is **Off**, note that paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.
	VacuumStrngth	Specify the level of suction that holds paper against the Platen. (→P.506)
	Width Detection	Specify this option to print inside boundaries, for example, when printing at a different size than the paper size. Paper width and skew are not detected if you select **Off**. If paper is loaded askew, note that paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.
	NearEnd RollMrgn	Specify the minimum margin at the leading edge of roll paper to ensure better printing quality at the leading edge. Note that if you choose **3mm**, it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the leading edge. It may also cause the Platen to become soiled.
	Cut Speed	Choose the cutting speed. If you use adhesive paper, choosing **Slow** helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp.
	Trim Edge First	If a roll is loaded, the end of the paper will be cut.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
(The type of paper is displayed here.)(*1)	**Cutting Mode**	Specify whether or not to cut with the standard round-bladed cutter. Choose **Automatic** to have the roll cut automatically after printing. If you choose **Manual**, the paper will not be cut after printing. Instead, a line will be printed at the cut position. Choose **Eject** if you prefer not to have documents dropped immediately after printing, as when waiting for ink to dry.
	Bordless Margin	Adjust the margin during borderless printing. Choose **Automatic** to have the printer automatically detect the paper width and configure the margin settings for borderless printing. If margins are mistakenly created when **Automatic** is selected, choose **Fixed**. In this case, the paper width is not detected automatically, and the document is printed without borders, using the margin settings required by the printer.
	CutDustReduct.	Choose **On** to reduce the amount of debris generated when cutting film and similar media by printing a line at the cut position. This option reduces the amount of debris given off after cutting. It also helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp if you use adhesive paper. (→P.127)
	NearEnd Sht Mrgn	Specify a margin at the leading edge of sheets to ensure better printing quality at the leading edge. Note that if you choose **3mm**, it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the leading edge.
	Return Defaults	Choose **Yes** to restore **Paper Details** to the default values.

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)
The types of paper indicated in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) are updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you update paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool.

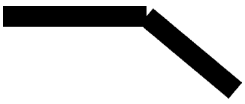
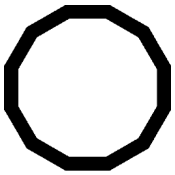
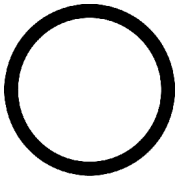
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Job Management

Setting Item					Description, Instructions
Job Queue Ope.	**Job List**	(Choose a print job)	**Delete**		Delete the current job or queued jobs. (→P.449)
			Priority		Print the job first after the current print job is finished. (→P.449)
Com. BOX Ope.	**Job List**	(Choose a print job)	**Print**		Print jobs in the Common Box.
			Delete		Delete jobs in the Common Box.
	Print Job List				Print a list of jobs in the Common Box.
Psnl. BOX Ope.	**Folder List**	(Enter a password if one has been set.)	**Job List**	**Print**	Print jobs in Personal Boxes.
				Delete	Delete jobs in Personal Boxes.
			Print Job List		Print a list of jobs in Personal Boxes.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

GL2 Settings

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Color Mode	**Monochrome**	Print in monochrome.
	Color (CAD) 1	Print in standard colors.
	Color (CAD) 2	Print in brighter colors.
Print Quality		Choose the print quality.
Input Resolution		Choose the printer input resolution, **600dpi** or **300dpi**.
Media Source		Choose the media source for HP-GL/2 printing.
Conserve Paper		Conserves paper when printing.
Line Cap		Choose the shape of the end point, determined by **Software** or **Rounded**. • If you choose **Software** Operation is determined by the application. If nothing is specified by the application, the result is as shown in the figure.  • If you choose **Rounded**
Smoothing		Choose whether to print arcs as smooth curved lines or as multiple connected line segments. • If you choose **Software** Operation is determined by the application. If nothing is specified by the application, the result is as shown in the figure.  Note: By default, this is a 72-sided figure • If you choose **Smooth** 
Line Width		Choose the width for printing lines if no width is specified in the data. Dots in the line width are 300 dpi each.
ThickenFineLines		Select **On** to print fine lines more distinctly.
AdjustFaintLines		If fine lines are printed in colors that do not match the colors of other shapes, selecting **Off** may help produce the expected results. However, lines in some colors may appear broken.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Auto Rotate		If the long side of an original is shorter than the roll width, the original is automatically rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper. Similarly, if the long side of an original in landscape orientation is longer than the roll width and the short side is shorter than the roll width, the original is repositioned to fit on the paper. HP RTL print jobs are not rotated.(*1)
Nesting	**Use Nesting**	Selecting **On** will store print jobs until multiple documents can be arranged to fill up the roll width, instead of printing each print job as it is received.
	Nesting WaitTime	Specify a time to wait until printing, as desired.
	Cut Lines	Select **On** to print cut lines between each document on the roll.
On-the-Fly		Selecting **On** will start printing jobs sooner if you are printing only HP RTL print jobs and printing would not start until later. However, images may be omitted in some cases, so be sure to check the printing results.
ProcessingOption	**PageSizeProcess1**	Selecting **On** will print at the specified paper size. However, a 3 mm margin is subtracted from the paper size at each edge when printing; this margin is left blank. Normally, the area available for printing excludes a margin required by the printer, and images are positioned accordingly. Selecting **On** in this setting eliminates any misalignment of the printing position if the image itself includes a border.
	PageSizeProcess2	Selecting **On** will determine the paper size based on the image rendering area.

*1: Because HP RTL images are not rotated even if the paper is rotated 90 degrees, images may be cut off or the blank paper may be ejected. In this case, set **Auto Rotate** to **Off**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjust Printer

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Auto Head Adj.	**Standard Adj.**	Choose **Yes** to have the printer print and read a test pattern for the automatic adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction. (→P.491)
	Advanced Adj.	Choose **Yes** to have the printer print and read a test pattern for the automatic adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the nozzle, ink tank, and printing direction. (→P.491)
	Auto Print	Choose **On** to have the printer automatically execute the **Advanced Adj.** operations after you replace the Printhead. (→P.491)
Manual Head Adj		Choose **Yes** to print a test pattern for adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction. Enter the adjustment value manually based on the resulting pattern. (→P.493)
Auto Band Adj.	**Standard Adj.**	Choose **Yes** to have the printer print and read a band adjustment test pattern for automatic adjustment of the feed amount. (→P.498)
	Advanced Adj.	Choose this option when using paper other than genuine Canon paper or paper for which printing has been verified by Canon. Choose **Yes** to have the printer print and read a band adjustment test pattern for automatic adjustment of the feed amount. Note that this function takes more time and requires more ink than **Standard Adj.** (→P.498)
Manual Band Adj		Choose **Yes** to print a test pattern for adjusting the feed amount based on the type of paper. (→P.501)
Adjust Length		Choose **Yes** to print a test pattern for adjustment relative to paper stretching or shrinkage, after which you can enter the amount of adjustment. (→P.504)
Head Inc. Adj.		Choose **Yes** to print a test pattern for adjusting the orientation of the Printhead. (→P.495)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Interface Setup

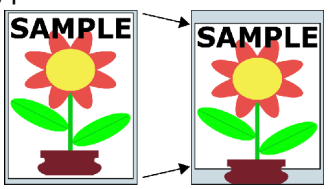
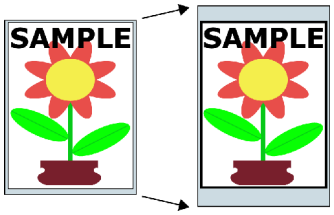
Setting Item			Description, Instructions
EOP Timer			Specify the timeout period before cancellation of print jobs that cannot be received by the printer.
TCP/IP	**IP Mode**		Choose whether the printer IP address is configured automatically or a static IP address is entered manually.
	Protocol	**DHCP**	Specify the protocol used to configure the IP address automatically.
		BOOTP	
		RARP	
	IP Setting	**IP Address**	Specify the printer network information when using a static IP address. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer, as well as the network subnet mask and default gateway.
		Subnet Mask	
		Default G/W	
NetWare	**NetWare**		Specify the NetWare protocol. To apply your changes, choose **Register Setting**.
	Frame Type		Specify the frame type to use.
	Print Service		Choose the print service.
AppleTalk			Specify whether to use the AppleTalk protocol. To apply your changes, choose **Register Setting**.
Ethernet Driver	**Auto Detect**		Specify the communication method. To apply your changes, choose **Register Setting**. Choose **On** for automatic configuration of the LAN communication protocol. Choose **Off** to use settings values of **Comm.Mode** and **Ethernet Type**.
	Comm.Mode		Choose the LAN communication method.
	Ethernet Type		Choose the LAN transfer rate.
	Spanning Tree		Choose whether spanning-tree packets are supported over the LAN.
	MAC Address		Displays the MAC address.
Ext. Interface			Choose the expansion interface.
Return Defaults			**Return Defaults/Execute?** is displayed if you press the ▼ button. Choose **OK** to restore the network settings to the default values.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Maintenance

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Repl. maint cart	When replacing the Maintenance Cartridge, choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.528)
Replace P.head	Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low. When replacing the Printhead, choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.518)
Repl. S. Cleaner	When replacing the Shaft Cleaner, choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.528)
Change Cutter	When replacing the Cutter Unit, choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.526) You can also reset the cut counter after the Cutter Unit is replaced.
Move Printer	Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low. When transferring the printer to another location, choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.542)

System Setup

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Warning	**Buzzer**	Set the buzzer. Choose **On** for the buzzer to sound once for warnings and three times for errors.
	Detect Mismatch	Choose **Warning** for notification (display of a warning message) during printing if the paper type specified in the printer menu does not match the paper type in the printer driver. Choose **None** to continue to print without notification. Choose **Pause** to have printing paused under these circumstances. In this case, you can continue printing by pressing the **Online** button.
Keep Media Size		Choose **On** to use the paper size setting as the basis for printing instead of other settings. The margin setting of the printer menu will be used instead of the margin setting of the printer driver if the latter is smaller, which may prevent text or images in the margin from being printed.  Choose **Off** to use the printer driver settings instead. Even if the margin setting of the printer driver is smaller than that of the printer menu, text or images will not be cut off. However, this requires longer paper because the actual margin will be equal to the margin setting of the printer driver plus the margin setting of the printer menu. 

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Paper Size Basis	**Sht Selection 1**	If sheet size detection is activated, choose whether **ISO A3+** or **13"x19"(Super B)** is applied when an intermediate size is detected.
	Sht Selection 2	If sheet size detection is activated, choose whether **ISO B1** or **28"x40" (ANSI F)** is applied when an intermediate size is detected.
Noz. Check Freq.		Specify the timing for automatic checks of nozzle clogging. Choose **1 page** to check once per printed page. Choose **10 pages** to check once per ten printed pages. Choose **Automatic** to have the printer automatically adjust the timing for checks based on the frequency of nozzle use.
Sleep Timer		Specify the period before the printer enters sleep mode.
Length Unit		Choose the unit of measurement when roll length is displayed. You can switch the unit displayed for **Roll Length Set** and the remaining paper amount displayed in the submenu.
Time Zone		Specify the time zone. Time zone options indicate a main city in this time zone and the difference from Greenwich Mean Time.
Date Format		Specify the date format.
Date & Time	**Date**	Set the current date.
	Time	Set the current time. Available only if the **Date** setting is specified.
Language		Specify the language used on the Display Screen.
Contrast Adj.		Adjust the Display Screen contrast level.
Reset PaprSetngs		Restores settings that you have changed with Media Configuration Tool to the default values.
Erase HDD Data		For hard disk formatting operations.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Information

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
System Info	**Version**	**Firm**	Displays the printer firmware version.
		Boot	Displays the version of the boot ROM.
		MIT	Displays the version of the MIT database format.
	s/n		Displays the printer's serial number.
	MAC		Displays the MAC address of the printer.
	IP		Displays the printer's IP address.
Error Log	**########-####**		Displays the most recent error messages (up to two).
Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	**Document Name**	Displays the document name in the last print job.
		User Name	Displays the name of the user who sent the print job.
		Page Count	Displays the number of pages in the print job.
		Job Status	Displays the results of the print job processed.
		Print Start Time	Displays the time when the print job was started.
		Print End Time	Displays the time when the print job was finished.
		Print Time	Displays the time required to print the job.
		Print Size	Displays the paper size in the print job.
		Media Type	Displays the type of paper in the print job.
		Interface	Displays the interface used for the print job.
		Ink Consumed	Displays the ink consumption.
HDD Information	**HDDSpace**		Displays the space available on the printer's hard disk.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Main Menu Settings (During Printing)

Main menu items during printing are described in the following tables.
For instructions on selecting or setting menu items, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.33)
For details on menu levels and values, see “Menu Structure”. (→P.37)

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Menu Durng Prtng	**Head Cleaning**	Printhead cleaning options. (→P.517) Choose **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances. Choose **Head Cleaning B** if no ink is printed at all, or if printing is not improved by **Head Cleaning A**.
	Fine Band Adj.	Fine-tune the feed amount manually.
	Information	Displays the information about the printer and history of print jobs. (→P.63)
Job Mgmt Menu		Manage print jobs on the printer’s hard disk. (→P.64)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Information

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
System Info	**Version**	**Firm**	Displays the version of the printer and firmware.
		Boot	Displays the version of the boot ROM.
		MIT	Displays the version of the MIT database format.
	Ext I/F		Displays the name of interfaces compatible with the expansion slot.
	s/n		Displays the printer's serial number.
	MAC		Displays the MAC address.
	HDDSpace		Displays the space available on the printer's hard disk.
Error Log	**########-####**		Displays the most recent error messages (up to two).
Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	**Document Name**	Displays the document name in the last print job.
		User Name	Displays the name of the user who sent the print job.
		Page Count	Displays the number of pages in the print job.
		Job Status	Displays the results of the print job processed.
		Print Start Time	Displays the time when the print job was started.
		Print End Time	Displays the time when the print job was finished.
		Print Time	Displays the time required to print the job.
		Print Size	Displays the paper size in the print job.
		Media Type	Displays the paper type in the print job.
		Interface	Displays the interface used for the print job.
		Ink Consumed	Displays the ink consumption.
HDD Information	**HDDSpace**		Displays the space available on the printer's hard disk.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Job Mgmt Menu

Setting Item					Description, Instructions
Job Queue Ope.	**Job List**	(Choose a print job)	**Priority**		Print the job first after the current print job is finished. (→P.449)
			Delete		Delete the current job or queued jobs. (→P.449)
Com. BOX Ope.	**Job List**	(Choose a print job)	**Print**		Print jobs in the Common Box.
			Delete		Delete jobs in the Common Box.
	Print Job List				Print a list of jobs in the Common Box.
Psnl. BOX Ope.	**Folder List**	(Enter a password if one has been set.)	**Job List**	**Print**	Print jobs in Personal Boxes.
				Delete	Delete jobs in Personal Boxes.
			Print Job List		Print a list of jobs in Personal Boxes.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

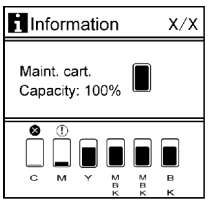
Submenu Display

Press the **Information** button to display this information, one after another: the Maintenance Cartridge capacity and remaining ink levels, paper information, and printer information.
Each time you press the **Information** button, the following submenus are displayed.

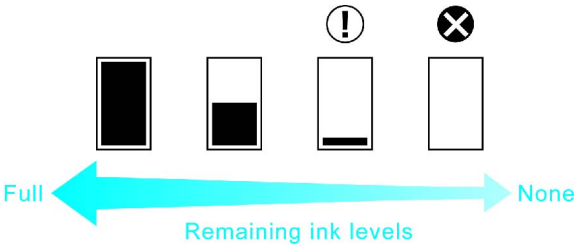
Note

- Press any button other than the **Information** button to restore the previous mode.
- After you display a submenu, the printer will revert to the previous mode in about ten seconds if no print job is received or if you do not operate the printer.

Remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and ink levels



The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is shown on the top level of the Display Screen.
The remaining level of each ink is shown on the bottom level of the Display Screen. Ink levels shown on the Display Screen correspond to the inks identified by the color labels on the bottom of the Display Screen.
These symbols may be displayed above the ink level: “!” if ink is low, “×” if no ink is left, and “?” if you have deactivated ink level detection.
Remaining ink is indicated as follows.



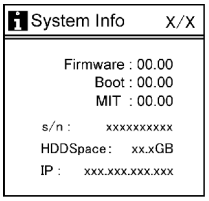
Information of the loaded paper

Here, the paper size, type, and related printer settings are displayed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

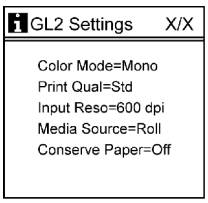
Printer information

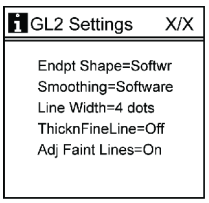
Displays the firmware version, serial number, MAC address, IP address, and interface information.



GL2 Settings

The following settings information is displayed on two screens: HP-GL/2 **Color Mode**, **Print Quality**, **Input Resolution**, **Media Source**, **Conserve Paper**, **Line Cap**, **Smoothing**, and **Line Width**, **ThickenFineLines**, and **AdjustFaintLines**.





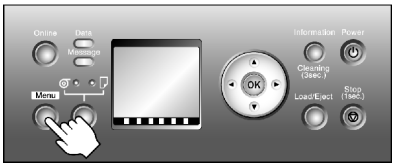
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Status Print

You can print a **Status Print** report indicating the current status of the printer.
With **Status Print**, information is printed regarding the printer firmware version, various settings, and the utilization level of consumables.

Printing Status Print Reports

1. Load paper.
   If using sheets, load paper A4/Letter-sized. You will need at least four sheets.
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Status Print**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

Checking the information in the Status Print report

The following information is included in the **Status Print** report.

Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx Status Print	Printer model

Firm	Firmware Version
Boot	Boot ROM Version
MIT(DBF)	MIT Database Format Version
MIT(DB)	MIT Database Version
S/N	Printer serial number
MC	Maintenance Cartridge capacity (%)
C,M,Y,MBK,MBK2,BK	Ink levels. The remaining ink is displayed in a five-level scale.

Media Menu		Information on the loaded paper.
	Roll Media Type	
	Check Remain. Roll	
	Cut Sheet Type	

Adjust Printer				Current printer settings.
		Head Adjust		Printhead adjustment value.
			Auto Print	
			A1-F2	
Feed Priority				Settings related to paper feeding.
Adjust Length				

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

HP-GL/2 Settings				HP-GL/2 setting values.
	Color Mode			
	Print Quality			
	Input Resolution			
	Media Source			
	Conserve Paper			
	Line Cap			
	Smoothing			
	Line Width			

Interface Setup				Current network settings.
	EOP Timer			Sets the elapsed time between receiving last data and canceling printing.
	TCP/IP			Settings related to **TCP/IP**.
		IP Mode		
		Protocol		
			DHCP	
			BOOTP	
			RARP	
		IP Setting		**IP Setting** values.
			IP Address	
			Subnet Mask	
			Default G/W	
	NetWare			**NetWare** settings.
		Frame Type		
		Print Service		
	AppleTalk			Values that specify whether **AppleTalk** is active or not.
	Ethernet Driver			**Ethernet Driver** settings.
		Auto Detect		
		Comm.Mode		
		Ethernet Type		
		Spanning Tree		
		MAC Address		

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

System Setup			
	Warning		Current warning and error settings.
		Buzzer	
		Detect mismatch	
	Keep Media Size		Current paper-related settings.
	Sheet Selection 1		
	Sheet Selection 2		
	Noz. Check Freq.		Nozzle-check settings.
	Sleep Timer		General printer settings.
	Length Unit		
	Time Zone		
	Date Format		
	Language		
	Contrast Adj.		

Information		System information and an error log.
	RAM	
	Error Log	
	HDD Capacity	

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Network (RemoteUI)		Current network settings used by RemoteUI.
TCP/IP		
	Frame Type	
	Use DHCP	
	Use BOOTP	
	Use RARP	
	Enable DNS Dynamic Update	
	Use Zeroconf Function	
	IP Address*	
	Subnet Mask*	
	Gateway Address*	
	LPD Printing	
	IPP Printing	
	IPP Printer URI	
	RAW Printing	
	Raw Port Number	
	Raw Mode Bi-direction	
	FTP Printing	
	Primary DNS Server Address*	
	Secondary DNS Server Address*	
	DNS Host Name*	
	DNS Domain Name*	
	SMTP Server Address*	
	Multicast DNS Service Name	

*: Blank if the status has been saved by using Status Monitor.

NetWare		Current **NetWare** settings.
	Frame Type	
	IPX External Network Number*	
	Node Number*	
	Print Service	

*: Depending on the NetWare print service settings, information on one of the following four items is printed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

	Bindery PServer		Values set when **NetWare** > **Print Service** > **Bindery PServer** is selected.
		File Server Name*	
		Print Server Name*	
		Print Server Password*	
		Polling Interval	
	RPrinter		Values set when **NetWare** > **Print Service** > **RPrinter** is selected.
		Print Server Name*	
		Printer Number*	
	NDS PServer		Values set when **NetWare** > **Print Service** > **NDS PServer** is selected.
		Tree Name*	
		Context name*	
		Print Server Name*	
		Print Server Password*	
	NPrinter		Values set when **NetWare** > **Print Service** > **NPrinter** is selected.
		Print Server Name*	
		Printer Number*	

*: Blank if the status has been saved by using Status Monitor.

AppleTalk		Current **AppleTalk** settings.
	Phase Type	
	Name*	
	Network Number*	
	Zone*	

*: Blank if the status has been saved by using Status Monitor.

HEAD LOT NUMBER		Printhead lot number.
	LOT	

PARTS STATUS		Utilization status of replacement parts that require servicing.
	COUNTER A-V	

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

COUNTER			Utilization status of the cutter, media, and other items (indicating how much they have been used).
	CUTTER		
	MEDIA		
	MEDIA1-7		
		NAME	
		TTL	
		ROLL	
		CUTSHEET	
	AFTER INSTALLATION		

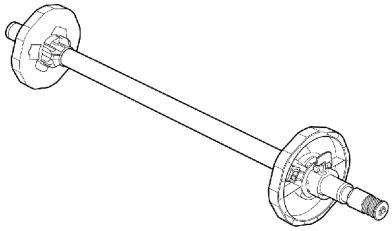
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Optional accessories

Roll Holder Set

A set of parts comprising the Roll Holder, Holder Stopper, 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment, and 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment.
To load a roll with a 3-inch paper core, remove the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment from the Holder Stopper and then attach the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment on both the Roll Holder and Holder Stopper.
To load a roll with a 2-inch paper core, remove the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment from both the Roll Holder and Holder Stopper and then attach the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment on the Holder Stopper. (→P.129)

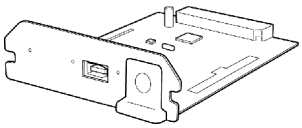
- Roll Holder Set RH4-32 (for 2- and 3-inch paper cores)



IEEE 1394 (FireWire) Expansion Board

An interface board to add an IEEE 1394 (also called "FireWire") port.

- IEEE1394 Expansion Board EB-05



Caution

- Note that EB-04 is incompatible.

For instructions on installing the IEEE 1394 expansion board, refer to the documentation provided with the optional IEEE 1394 expansion board.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printer Specifications

Specifications

Important

- This information is subject to change as the printer is updated.
- The following values may vary depending on the operating environment.

Printer

Power supply		100-120 V AC (50/60 Hz), 220-240 V AC (50/60 Hz)
Power consumption	During operation	140 W max.
	Sleep mode	100-120 V: 5 W max. (10 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.) 220-240 V: 6 W max. (11 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.)
	Off	1 W max. (*1)
Operating noise	During operation	Approx. 52 dB (A) max.
	Standby	Approx. 35 dB (A) max.
Operating environment	Temperature	15-30°C (59-86°F)
	Humidity	10-80%, non-condensing
Dimensions (W × D × H)	Printer and Stand (including Roll Holder and Output Stacker)	1,507× 871 × 1,097 mm (59.3 × 34.3 × 43.2 in)
Weight	Printer and Stand (not including the Printhead and Ink Tank)	65 kg (143.3 lb)
Space for installation (W × D × H)		2,307× 2,071 × 2,000 mm (90.8 × 81.5 × 78.7 in)
Applicable standards		International Energy Star Program, Law on Promoting Green Purchasing, GPN, RoHS, The Eco Declaration, WEEE, U.S. presidential directives, J-MOSS (Green Mark)

*1: The printer uses a trace amount of power even when turned off. To stop all power consumption, turn off the printer and unplug the power cord.

Printing performance

Print method	Bubblejet
Maximum resolution	2400 dpi horizontally (*1) × 1200 dpi vertically
Printhead	PF-03
Number of nozzles	• MBK: 5,120 • 2,560 nozzles each for BK, C, M, and Y

*1: Prints with a minimum 1/2400 inch dot pitch between ink droplets.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Interface

Expansion Board Slots		1
USB 2.0(*1)	Format	Internal port
	Mode	Full-speed (12 Mbps), high-speed (480 Mbps)
	Connector	Series B (4-pin)
Ethernet	Format	Internal port
	Specification	IEEE 802.3 10BASE-T, IEEE 802.3u 100BASE-TX /Auto-Negotiation, IEEE 802.3x Full Duplex
	Protocols	IPX/SPX (Netware 4.2, 5.1, 6.0), SNMP, HTTP, TCP/IP, AppleTalk
IEEE 1394	Format	Optional board (compatible with the expansion slot)
	Specification	IEEE 1394-1995, conforms to P1394a Specification ver. 2.0, half duplex, Data/Strb differential serial
	Transfer speed	100/200/400 Mbps
	Connector	Conforms to IEEE 1394-1995 (6-pin), no power supply

*1: Use in USB 2.0 High Speed mode requires the following environment:

- Computer: USB 2.0 High-Speed-compatible
- Operating system: Windows Vista/Windows Server 2003/Windows XP/Windows 2000 or Mac OS X ver. 10.3.3 or later
- USB 2.0 driver: Microsoft USB 2.0 driver (available from Windows Update or the Service Pack.)
- USB cable: Certified USB 2.0 cable

Ink

Ink Tank	BK Ink Tank (Black Ink)	Dye ink	PFI-102BK
	MBK Ink Tank (Matte Black Ink, or black ink for matte paper)	Pigment ink	PFI-102MBK
	C Ink Tank (Cyan Ink)	Dye ink	PFI-102C
	M Ink Tank (Magenta Ink)	Dye ink	PFI-102M
	Y Ink Tank (Yellow Ink)	Dye ink	PFI-102Y
Capacity			130 ml (4.4 fl oz) per color (*1)

*1: The provided Starter Ink Tanks contain 90 ml (3.0 fl oz) each.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper (*1)

Paper width		203-917 mm (8-36.1 in)
Maximum length per page	Rolls	18 m (19.9 yd)
	Sheets	1.6 m (1.7 yd)
Thickness	Rolls	0.07-0.8 mm (0.0028-0.031 in)
	Sheets	0.07-0.8 mm (0.0028-0.031 in)
Paper Size	Roll width	36-in Roll (914 mm), ISO A0/A1 Roll (841 mm), 30-in Roll (762 mm), JIS B1/B2 Roll (728 mm), 24-in Roll (610 mm), ISO A1/A2 Roll (594 mm), JIS B2/B3 Roll (515 mm), 17-in Roll (432 mm), ISO A2/A3 Roll (420 mm), 16-in Roll (407 mm), 14-in Roll (356 mm), ISO A3/A4 Roll (297 mm), 10-in Roll (254 mm)
	Sheets	ISO A0, ISO A1, ISO A2, ISO A2+, ISO A3, ISO A3+, ISO A4, ISO B1, ISO B2, ISO B3, ISO B4, JIS B1, JIS B2, JIS B3, JIS B4, 34"x44" (ANSI E), 28"x40" (ANSI F), 22"x34" (ANSI D), 17"x22" (ANSI C), 11"x17" (Ledger), 13"x19" (Super B), Letter (8.5"x11"), Legal (8.5"x14"), 36"x48" (ARCH E), 30"x42" (ARCH E1), 26"x38" (ARCH E2), 27"x39" (ARCH E3), 24"x36" (ARCH D), 18"x24" (ARCH C), 12"x18" (ARCH B), 9"x12" (ARCH A), DIN C0, DIN C1, DIN C2, DIN C3, DIN C4, 20"x24", 18"x22", 14"x17", 12"x16", 10"x12", 10"x15", 8"x10", US Photo (16"x20"), Poster 20"x30", Poster 30"x40", Poster 300x900mm, 13"x22"
Print area	Normal size	Printable area • Rolls 3 mm (0.12 in) from each side • Sheets 3 mm (0.12 in) from the top and each side, and 23 mm (0.91 in) from the bottom Guaranteed print area • Rolls 20 mm (0.79 in) from the top, 5 mm (0.20 in) from the bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) from each side • Sheets 20 mm (0.79 in) from the top, 23 mm (0.91 in) from the bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) from each side For information on the guaranteed print area, see “Print Area”. (→P.79)
	Borderless printing (*2)	Printable area (rolls) Entire surface
Supported width for borderless printing		36-in Roll (914 mm), ISO A0/A1 Roll (841 mm), JIS B1/B2 Roll (728 mm), 24-in Roll (610 mm), ISO A1/A2 Roll (594 mm), JIS B2/B3 Roll (515 mm), 16-in Roll (407 mm), 14-in Roll (356 mm), 10-in Roll (254 mm)

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)

*2: Printing may not be possible in some cases, depending on the type and size of paper.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Hard Disk

Capacity on the hard disk to store image data	48 GB
Print job storage capacity	• Common mail box: 100 jobs • Personal boxes: 100 jobs

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Basic Environmental Performance

Printer

Power consumption	Sleep mode	100-120 V: 5 W max. (10 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.) 220-240 V: 6 W max. (11 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.)
	Off	1 W max.
Resource efficiency	Weight	Printer and Stand : 65 kg (143.3 lb)
	Dimensions (W × D × H)	Printer and Stand : 1,507 × 871 × 1,094 mm (59.3 × 34.3 × 43.1 in)
	Recycling	Recyclable plastic used for printer body
Product safety	Toxic substances	Structural components: No prohibited brominated flame retardants used (PBB or PBDE)
		Body plastic: No heavy metals (Pb, Hg, Cr[VI], or Cd) or halogenated flame retardants used
	Operating noise	During operation: Approx. 52 dB (A) max. (6.6 bels or less) Standby: Approx. 35 dB (A) max. (6.3 bels or less)

Packaging materials

Heavy metal content (Pb, Hg, Cr[VI], and Cd)	None (none in packaging)

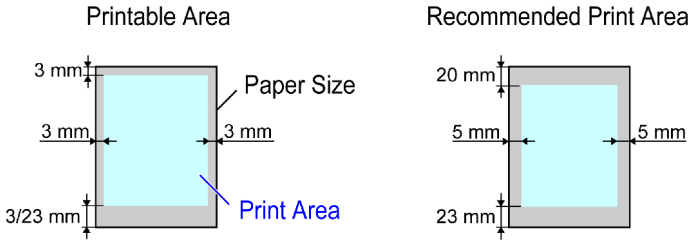
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Print Area

A margin required by the printer is added with respect to the size of paper loaded in the printer. Except in borderless printing, the actual printing area corresponds to the paper size minus the space for this margin.

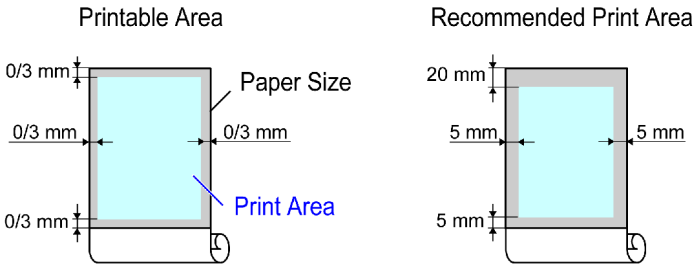
	Printable Area			Recommended Print Area		
	Top Edge	Bottom Edge	Sides	Top Edge	Bottom Edge	Sides
Sheets	3 mm (0.12 in)	23 mm (0.91 in)	3 mm (0.12 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	23 mm (0.91 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)
Rolls	0/3 mm (0/0.12 in)	0/3 mm (0/0.12 in)	0/3 mm (0/0.12 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)

Sheets



- Printable Area:
  A margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on top, 23 mm (0.91 in) on bottom, and 3 mm (0.12 in) on left and right sides is required.
- Recommended print area:
  A margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) on top, 23 mm (0.91 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.

Rolls



- Printable Area:
  A margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on all sides is required. A margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on the top, bottom, and both sides is required. During borderless printing, the margin on all sides is 0 mm. For information on paper compatible with borderless printing, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)
- Recommended print area:
  A margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) on top, 5 mm (0.20 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.

Note

- Printable area: The area that can be printed.
- Guaranteed Print Area: We recommend printing within this area.
- To print so that your original matches the print area exactly, use an oversized paper size that includes the required margin. (→P.218)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Basic Printing Workflow

Printing procedure

Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets

The printer supports both rolls and sheets.
This section introduces the main features of each, as well as the main printing methods available. Select rolls or sheets to suit your particular printing application.

Note

- For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)
- A variety of other ways to print are available besides those introduced here. Choose the printing method that suits your particular printing application, referring to "Working With Various Print Jobs" and "Enhanced Printing Options" from the table of contents.

Roll printing

Media in spooled rolls is generally called Roll Media. Rolls are loaded on the Roll Holder, which are in turn loaded in the printer.
Rolls can be used to print large photos or create posters or banners that cannot be printed on regular sheets.

- Large-format printing
  Easily print vertical or horizontal banners from familiar applications such as Microsoft Office applications.
  (→P.253)
- Borderless printing
  Print without a margin (border) around posters or photos.
  (→P.232)
  (→P.239)
  (→P.225)
- Banner printing
  You can print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.
  (→P.274)
- 90-degree rotation before printing
  Originals in portrait orientation are rotated 90 degrees when possible to use paper more efficiently.
  (→P.299)
- Enlarged/reduced printing
  You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing originals before printing.
  (→P.196)
  (→P.202)
  (→P.208)
- Free Layout function
  Print multiple documents from multiple applications (such as word-processing programs, spreadsheet programs, and so on) next to each other.
  (→P.268)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Sheet printing

Sheets refers to individual sheets of paper in regular sizes.
Insert the sheet between the Platen and the Paper Retainer.

- Enlarged/reduced printing

  You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing originals before printing.

  (→P.196)
  (→P.202)
  (→P.208)

- Free Layout function

  Print multiple documents from multiple applications (such as word-processing programs, spreadsheet programs, and so on) next to each other.

  (→P.268)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

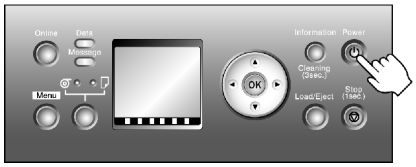
Loading and Printing on Rolls

These are the basic steps for loading and printing on rolls.
Follow the steps below to switch to a new roll or a roll of a different type or width before printing.

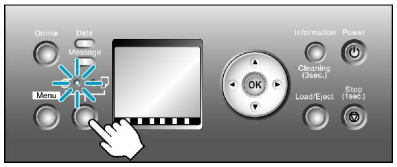
Note

- Before printing banners or other long documents, spread a clean cloth or paper on the floor. Otherwise use the optional Output Stacker.
  Otherwise, long sheets that touch the floor after printing may become dirty.
- If you prefer to wait for the ink to dry after printing and simply eject the document, you can deactivate automatic cutting and cut the paper manually. (→P.122)

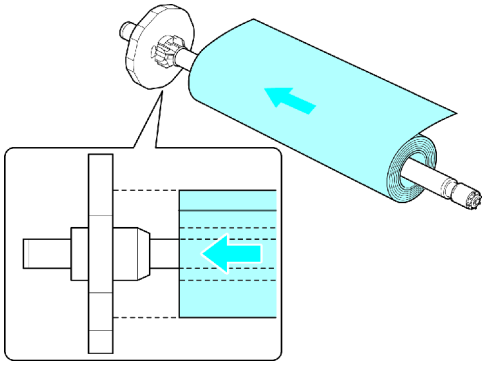
1. Turn the printer on. (→P.22)



2. Select a roll as the paper source. (→P.104)

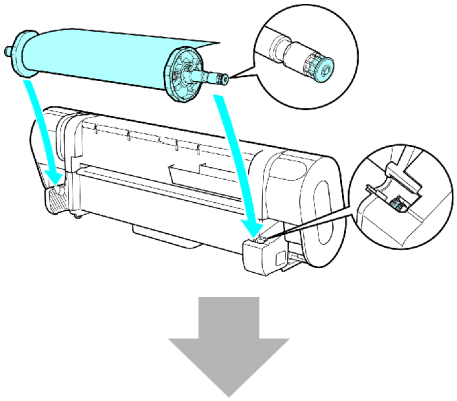


3. Set a roll on the Roll Holder. (→P.107)

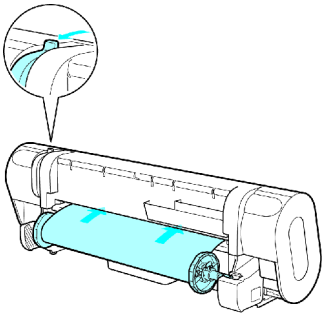


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

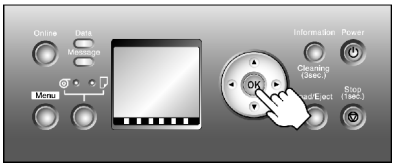
4. Load the roll in the Roll Holder Slot. (→P.109)



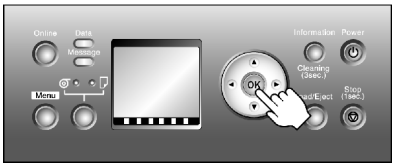
5. Load the roll in the printer. (→P.110)



6. Select the paper type. (→P.105)



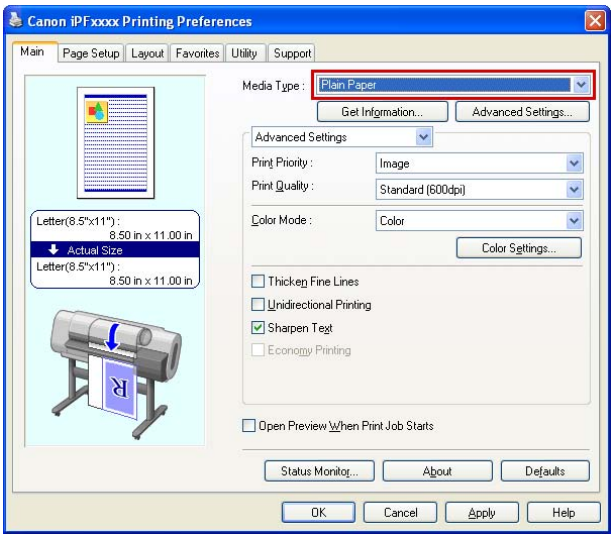
7. Specify the paper length. (→P.106)



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

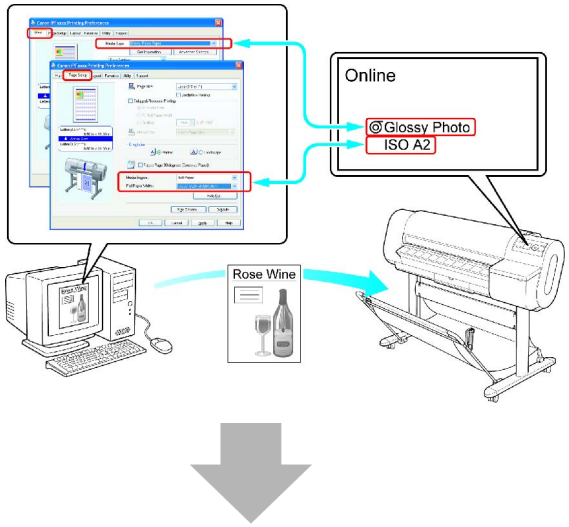
8. Complete settings in the printer driver for the type of paper and other details.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.192)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.194)



Important

- Always specify the same type and size of paper in the printer menu and printer driver.
  If the type and size do not match, an error message may be displayed and printing may not be possible.
  - Papr Size Mismatch (→P.578)
  - Papr Type Mismatch (→P.578)
  - Paper Mismatch (→P.578)



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Send the print job.

- Printing from Windows (→P.89)
- Printing from Mac OS X (→P.90)

Start printing.

Note

- You can skip steps 6 and 7 if a barcode has been printed on the roll paper and you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll. The paper type and amount of paper left are automatically detected. The barcode will automatically be cut off after it has been read.
- You can skip step 6 if you have deactivated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper.
- If you have deactivated width detection, you will need to enter the roll width after choosing the paper type in step 5. (→P.50)
- If you select a type of paper for which width detection is **Off** when detection of the remaining roll paper is also **Off**, you will need to advance the paper manually to the starting position for printing. (→P.136)
- For details on supported sizes and types of rolls, see “Paper Sizes” or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.101) (→P.96)
- When printing on rolls after printing on sheets, if the lit paper selection lamp does not switch from the **Cut Sheet lamp** to the **Roll Media lamp**, press the **Feeder Selection** button.

Important

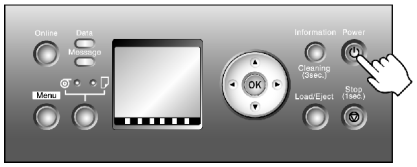
- After changing rolls, clean the Platen. (→P.538)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Loading and Printing on Sheets

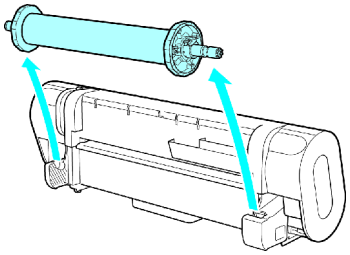
These are the basic steps for loading sheets and then printing.
Follow the steps below to load and print on sheets.

1. Turn the printer on. (→P.22)

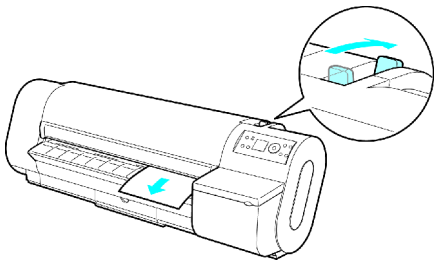


2. Remove any loaded paper that will not be used.

- Roll (→P.113)



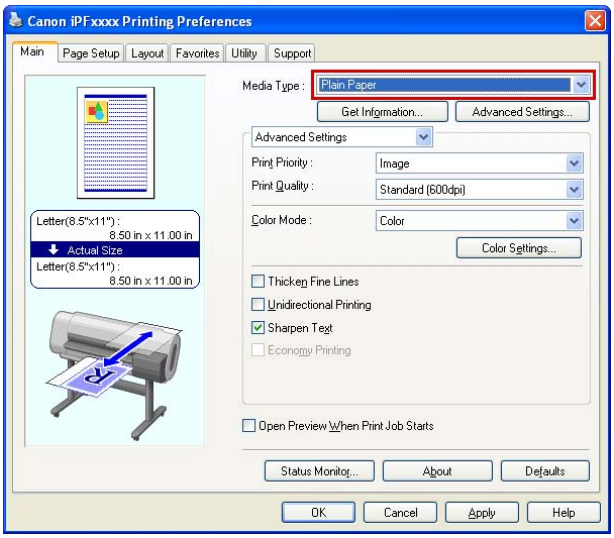
- Sheet (→P.137)



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

3. Complete settings in the printer driver for the type and size of paper and other details.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.192)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.194)



4. Send the print job.

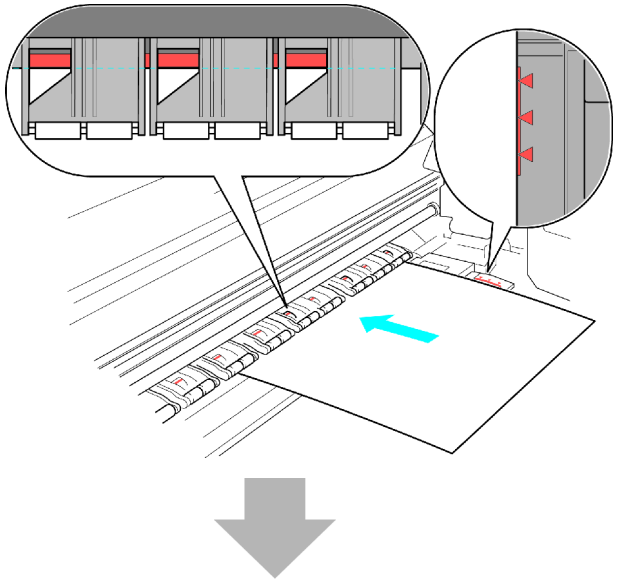
- Printing from Windows (→P.89)
- Printing from Mac OS X (→P.90)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

5. Load the sheet. (→P.133)

Note

- If you will load a sheet before sending a print job, after you load the sheet, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen. Follow these steps.
  - Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet) (→P.132)



Start printing.

Note

- If you select a type of paper for which Media Width Detection is deactivated (**Off** is selected), you must advance the paper manually to the position for printing. (→P.136)
- For details on supported types and sizes of the paper, see “Paper Sizes” or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.101) (→P.96)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing from Windows

Print from the application software menu.

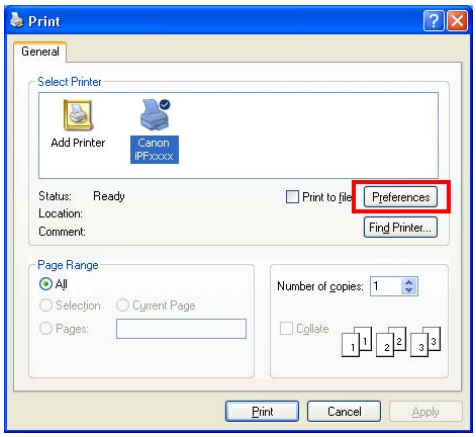
Important

- The Windows printer driver can be used in the following versions of Windows:
  - Windows 2000 (Professional or Server)
  - Windows XP (Home Edition or Professional)
  - Windows Server 2003 (Standard Edition)
  - Windows Vista
- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.
2. After confirming that the printer is selected in the dialog box, click **Print** or **OK** to start printing.

Note

- The appearance of the dialog box varies depending on the application software. In most cases, the dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.
  Example: Print dialog box displayed by the application software



Note

- If another printer is selected, select the printer you want to use under **Select Printer** or in the dialog box displayed after clicking **Printer**.

Settings for many printing methods (including enlarged or reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on) are displayed in the printer driver dialog box. There are two ways to access the printer driver dialog box, as follows:

- From the application software
  (→P.343)
- From the operating system menu
  (→P.345)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing from Mac OS X

Print from the application menu after registering the printer.

Important

- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

Registering the printer

Before printing, you must register the printer in **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**).
For instructions on registering the printer, see “Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh)”. (→P.431)

Important

- During this setup process, the printer will not be listed among available printers if it is off or disconnected.
- By factory default, the AppleTalk protocol is disabled on the printer. You must enable the AppleTalk protocol before using the printer in an AppleTalk network. For instructions on activating AppleTalk protocol, see “Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)”. (→P.433)

Note

- When registering the printer, choose **USB** if the printer is connected via USB, **Canon FireWire(iPF)** if connected via IEEE 1394, or **AppleTalk**, **Canon IP(iPF)**, or **Bonjour** if connected via a network.
- For **Canon IP(iPF)** connections, enter the printer’s IP address.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

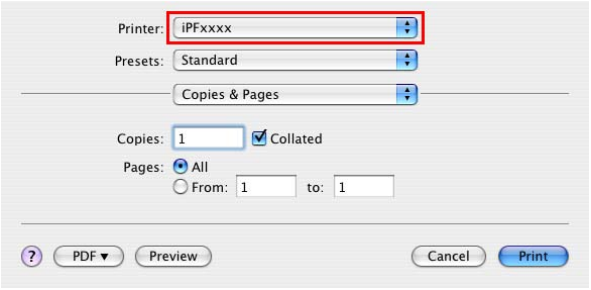
Printing from the application software

1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

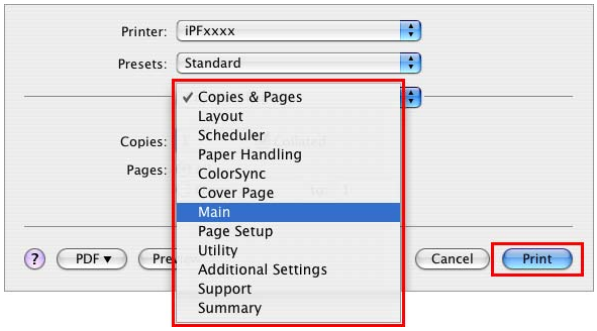
   Note

   - This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2. Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



3. Click **Print** to start printing.
   As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.

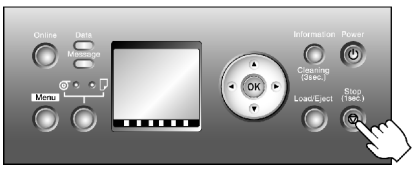


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Canceling print jobs

Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel

Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel print jobs or ink drying in progress when the printer is online, offline, or in Menu mode.

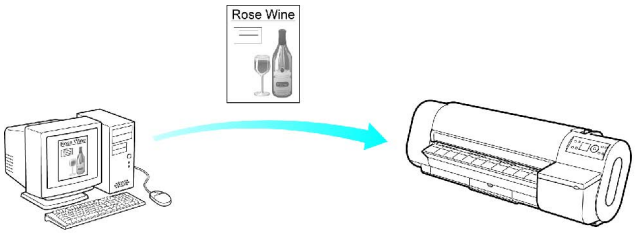


Printer operation varies depending on the status when you hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more during printing.

- If you press the **Stop** button before printing starts

  Holding down the **Stop** button for a second or more before printing cancels the print job and brings the printer online.

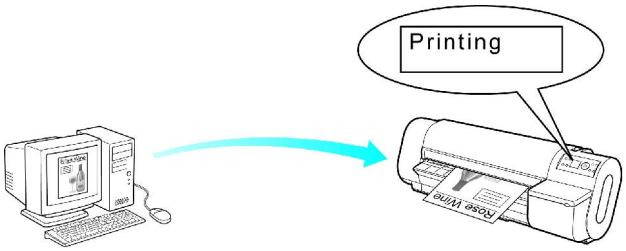
  When the roll is selected as the paper source, the printer goes online, and when sheet is selected, the printer goes offline.



The Printer does not print.

- If you press the **Stop** button during printing

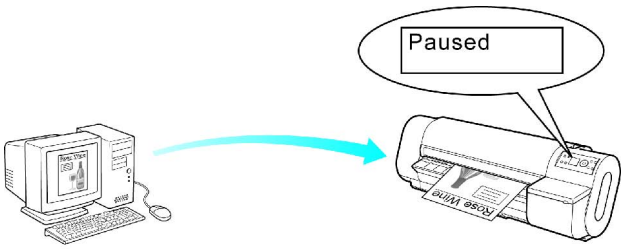
  Holding down the **Stop** button for a second or more during printing stops printing immediately.



The printer stops immediately.

- If you press the **Stop** button when printing is paused

  Holding down the **Stop** button for a second or more when printing is paused cancels the print job.



The print job is canceled and the printer ejects paper.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Canceling Print Jobs from Windows

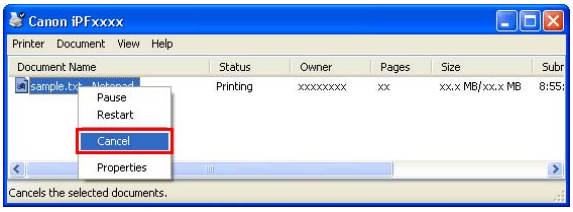
You can cancel print jobs in the printer window.

1. Click the printer icon in the taskbar to display the printer window.

Note

- You can also display this window by double-clicking the printer icon in the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) folder, accessible through the Windows **start** menu.

2. Right-click the job to cancel and select **Cancel**.

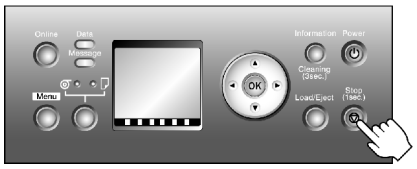


Note

- The print job is displayed on the printer screen during the transmission of print data from the computer. When the transmission is finished, the job is not displayed even during printing.

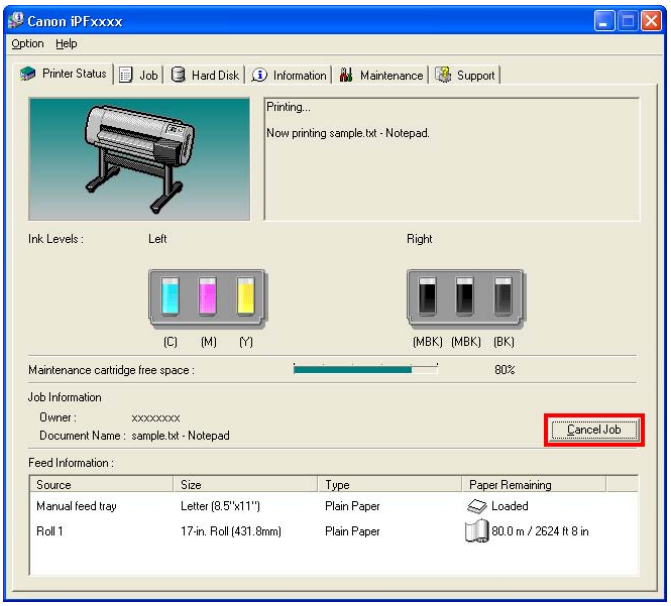
To cancel print jobs from the Control Panel, follow these steps.

1. If the Display Screen of the Control Panel still indicates that the job is in progress and the Data lamp continues flashing, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to stop printing.



Do the following if no print jobs are shown in the printer window (because they have already been sent to the printer).

1. Double-click the taskbar icon to access the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.
2. On the **Printer Status** sheet, click **Cancel Job**.

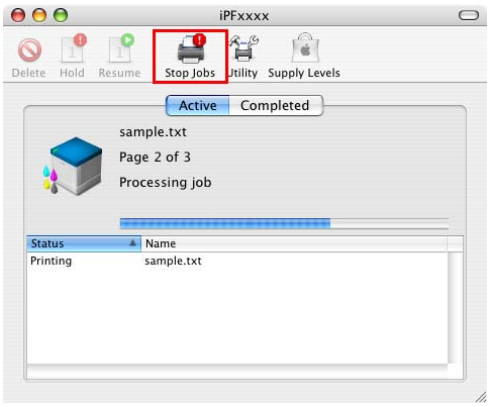

Canon iPFxxxx
Option Help
Printer Status Job Hard Disk Information Maintenance Support
Printing...
Now printing sample.txt - Notepad.
Ink Levels : Left Right
(C) (M) (Y) (MBK) (MBK) (BK)
Maintenance cartridge free space : 80%
Job Information
Owner : xxxxxxxx
Document Name : sample.txt - Notepad
Cancel Job
Feed Information :
Source Size Type Paper Remaining
Manual feed tray Letter (8.5"x11") Plain Paper Loaded
Roll 1 17-in. Roll (431.8mm) Plain Paper 80.0 m / 2624 ft 8 in

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X

You can cancel print jobs in **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**.

1. Click the printer icon in the **Dock** to display the printer window.
2. Click **Stop Jobs** to stop printing.



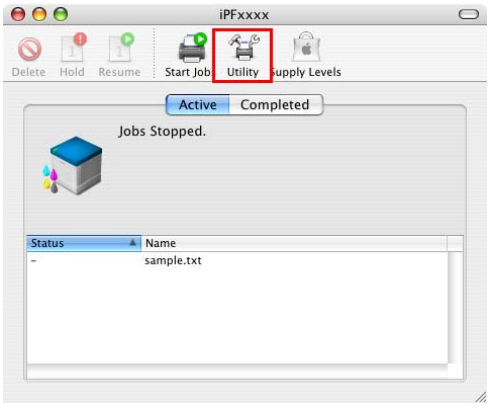
In this window, you can cancel jobs sent to the printer.

Note

- The print job is displayed on the printer's screen during the transmission of print data from the computer. When the transmission is completed, the job is not displayed even during printing.

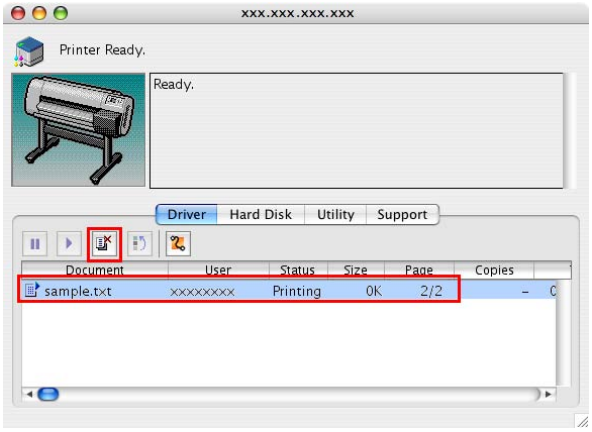
Alternatively, you can cancel print jobs as follows.

1. Click **Utility** to display **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Select the print job to cancel and click the **Cancel Job** button to remove the print job.



The job sent to the printer is canceled.

Note

- The print job is displayed on the **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor** window while the printer receives the print data from the computer. It is not displayed before transmission of print data to the printer, even if the computer has started the process of the data.

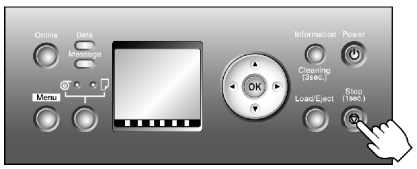
3. Exit **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**. In the printer window, click **Start Jobs**.

Important

- Always follow these steps if you cancel print jobs. If you do not restart job processing, the next job cannot be printed.

To cancel print jobs from the Control Panel, follow these steps.

1. If the Display Screen of the Control Panel still indicates that the job is in progress and the Data lamp continues flashing, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to stop printing.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Handling Paper

Paper

Types of Paper

For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . This guide identifies supported plain paper, coated paper, photo paper (such as glossy photo paper), proofing paper, CAD paper, and other types of paper. The Paper Reference Guide identifies types and specifications of paper, as well as information on printer driver settings and tips on handling paper.
You can update paper information in the Paper Reference Guide , on the printer Control Panel, and in the printer driver by downloading the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool from the imagePROGRAF website.

Note

- The media types with "†" marked in the product name are those specified as genuine Canon media. For other media, please contact the respective media manufacturer after reading the instruction manuals supplied with the media.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Viewing the Paper Reference Guide

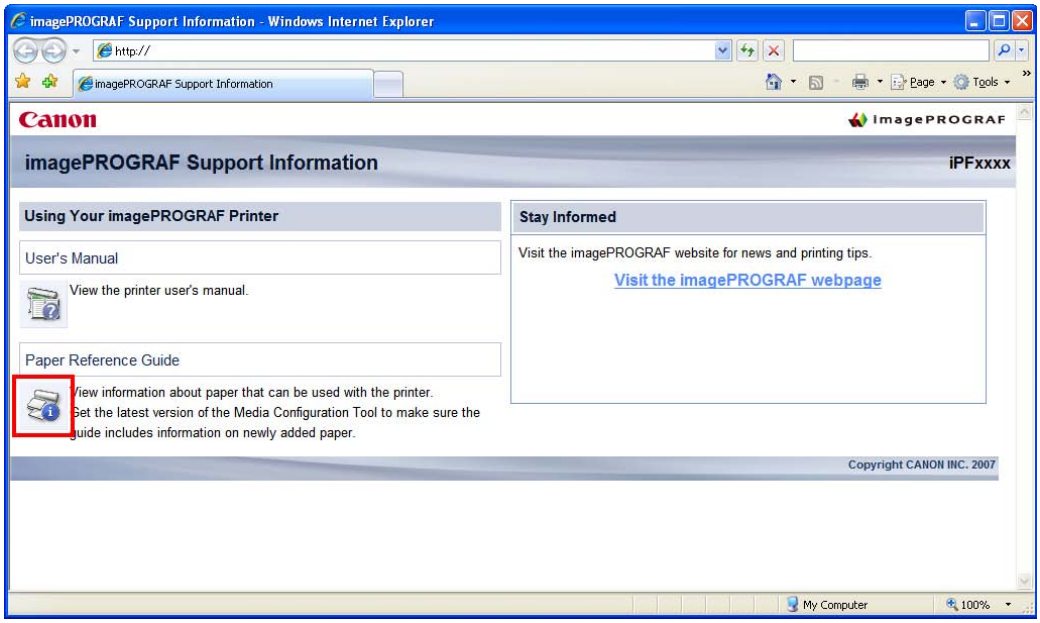
You can access the Paper Reference Guide as follows. Follow the steps for your particular operating system.

- Windows

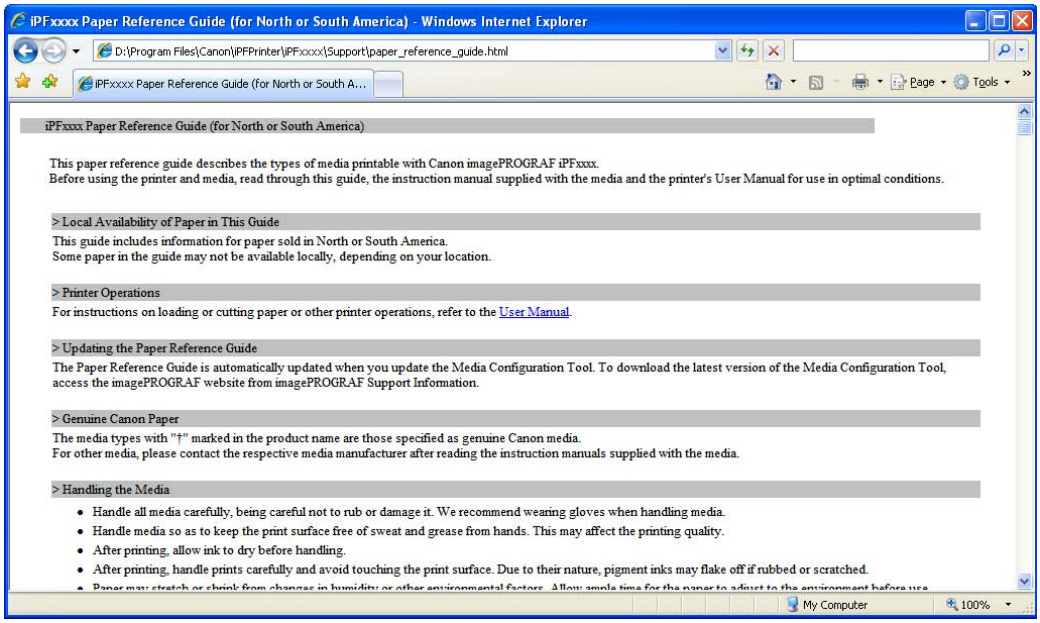
1. Double-click the **iPFxxxx Support** icon on the desktop. (Here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model.)

The online support window is displayed.

2. Select **Paper Reference Guide**.


imagePROGRAF Support Information - Windows Internet Explorer
imagePROGRAF Support Information
Canon
imagePROGRAF
imagePROGRAF Support Information
iPFxxxx
Using Your imagePROGRAF Printer
User's Manual
View the printer user's manual.
Paper Reference Guide
View information about paper that can be used with the printer.
Get the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool to make sure the guide includes information on newly added paper.
Stay Informed
Visit the imagePROGRAF website for news and printing tips.
Visit the imagePROGRAF webpage
Copyright CANON INC. 2007

The Paper Reference Guide is displayed.


iPFxxxx Paper Reference Guide (for North or South America) - Windows Internet Explorer
iPFxxxx Paper Reference Guide (for North or South America)
This paper reference guide describes the types of media printable with Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx.
Before using the printer and media, read through this guide, the instruction manual supplied with the media and the printer's User Manual for use in optimal conditions.
> Local Availability of Paper in This Guide
This guide includes information for paper sold in North or South America.
Some paper in the guide may not be available locally, depending on your location.
> Printer Operations
For instructions on loading or cutting paper or other printer operations, refer to the User Manual.
> Updating the Paper Reference Guide
The Paper Reference Guide is automatically updated when you update the Media Configuration Tool. To download the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool, access the imagePROGRAF website from imagePROGRAF Support Information.
> Genuine Canon Paper
The media types with "†" marked in the product name are those specified as genuine Canon media.
For other media, please contact the respective media manufacturer after reading the instruction manuals supplied with the media.
> Handling the Media
Handle all media carefully, being careful not to rub or damage it. We recommend wearing gloves when handling media.
Handle media so as to keep the print surface free of sweat and grease from hands. This may affect the printing quality.
After printing, allow ink to dry before handling.
After printing, handle prints carefully and avoid touching the print surface. Due to their nature, pigment inks may flake off if rubbed or scratched.

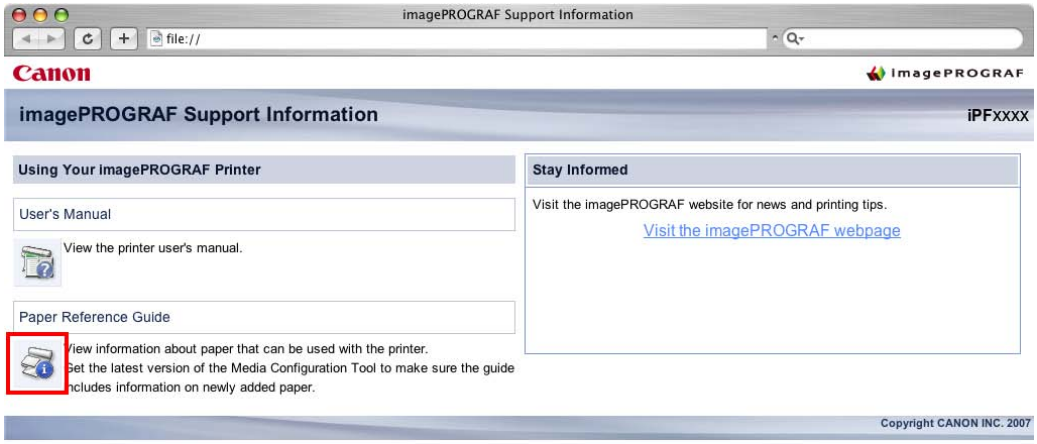
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Mac OS X

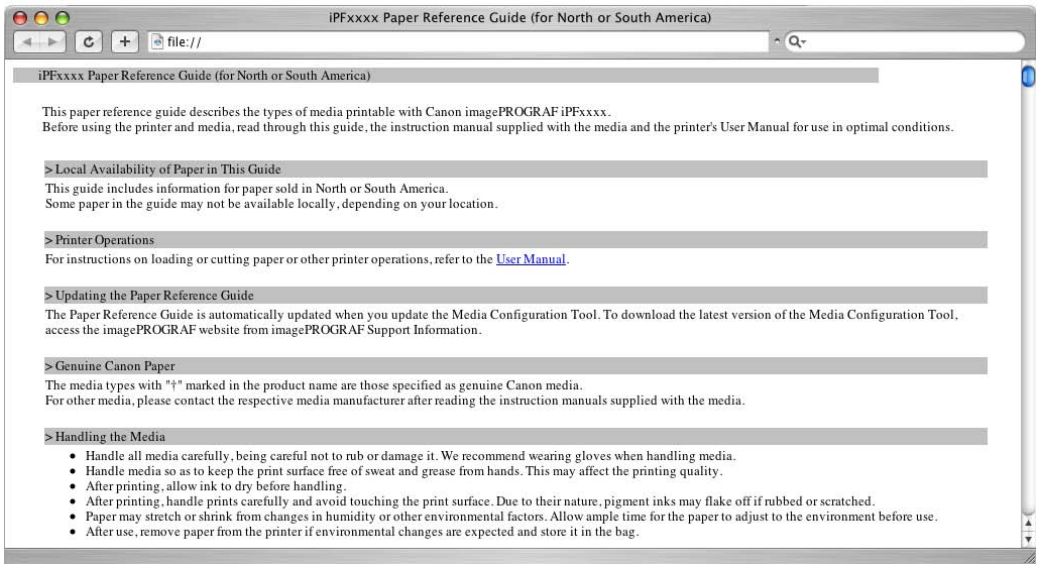
1. Click the **iPF Support** icon in the **Dock**.

The online support window is displayed.

2. Select **Paper Reference Guide**.


imagePROGRAF Support Information
file://
Canon
imagePROGRAF
imagePROGRAF Support Information
iPFxxxx
Using Your imagePROGRAF Printer
User's Manual
View the printer user's manual.
Paper Reference Guide
View information about paper that can be used with the printer.
Get the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool to make sure the guide
includes information on newly added paper.
Stay Informed
Visit the imagePROGRAF website for news and printing tips.
Visit the imagePROGRAF webpage
Copyright CANON INC. 2007

The Paper Reference Guide is displayed.


iPFxxxx Paper Reference Guide (for North or South America)
file://
iPFxxxx Paper Reference Guide (for North or South America)
This paper reference guide describes the types of media printable with Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx.
Before using the printer and media, read through this guide, the instruction manual supplied with the media and the printer's User Manual for use in optimal conditions.
> Local Availability of Paper in This Guide
This guide includes information for paper sold in North or South America.
Some paper in the guide may not be available locally, depending on your location.
> Printer Operations
For instructions on loading or cutting paper or other printer operations, refer to the User Manual.
> Updating the Paper Reference Guide
The Paper Reference Guide is automatically updated when you update the Media Configuration Tool. To download the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool, access the imagePROGRAF website from imagePROGRAF Support Information.
> Genuine Canon Paper
The media types with "†" marked in the product name are those specified as genuine Canon media.
For other media, please contact the respective media manufacturer after reading the instruction manuals supplied with the media.
> Handling the Media
Handle all media carefully, being careful not to rub or damage it. We recommend wearing gloves when handling media.
Handle media so as to keep the print surface free of sweat and grease from hands. This may affect the printing quality.
After printing, allow ink to dry before handling.
After printing, handle prints carefully and avoid touching the print surface. Due to their nature, pigment inks may flake off if rubbed or scratched.
Paper may stretch or shrink from changes in humidity or other environmental factors. Allow ample time for the paper to adjust to the environment before use.
After use, remove paper from the printer if environmental changes are expected and store it in the bag.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

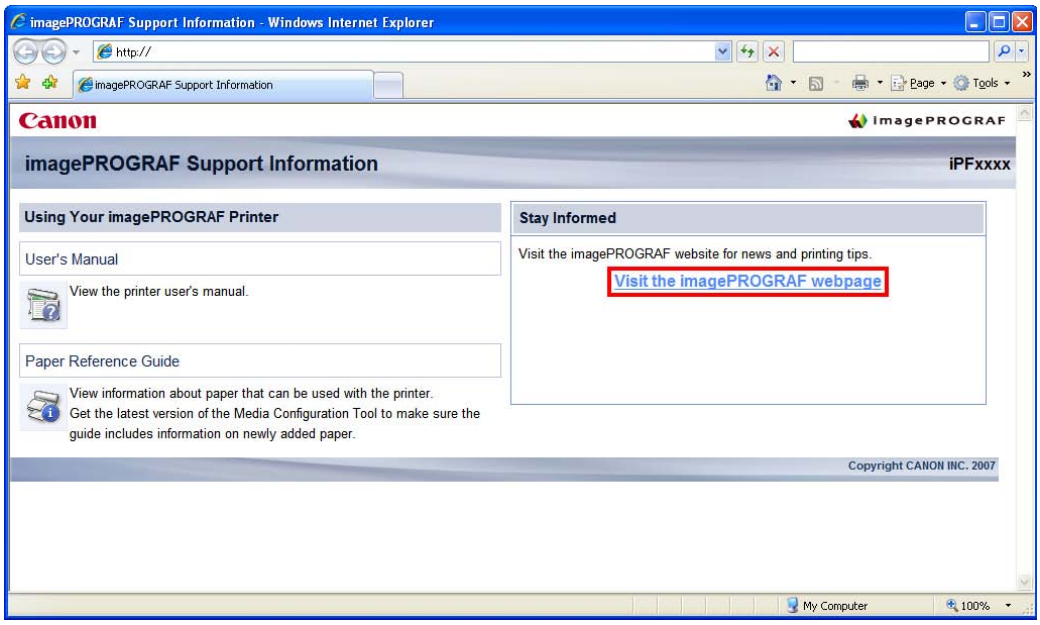
Updating paper information

You can update paper information in the Paper Reference Guide and on the printer by downloading the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool from the imagePROGRAF website. For information about the Media Configuration Tool, see the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).
Follow these steps to access the imagePROGRAF website.

Important

- When you update paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool, the paper type setting on the Control Panel, in the printer driver, and in related software is updated.
- Windows
  1. Double-click the **iPFxxxx Support** icon on the desktop. (Here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model.)

  The online support window is displayed.
  2. Select **Stay Informed**.


imagePROGRAF Support Information - Windows Internet Explorer
http://
imagePROGRAF Support Information
Page
Tools
Canon
imagePROGRAF
imagePROGRAF Support Information
iPFxxxx
Using Your imagePROGRAF Printer
User's Manual
View the printer user's manual.
Paper Reference Guide
View information about paper that can be used with the printer.
Get the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool to make sure the guide includes information on newly added paper.
Stay Informed
Visit the imagePROGRAF website for news and printing tips.
Visit the imagePROGRAF webpage
Copyright CANON INC. 2007
My Computer
100%

  The default browser is started, and the imagePROGRAF webpage is displayed.

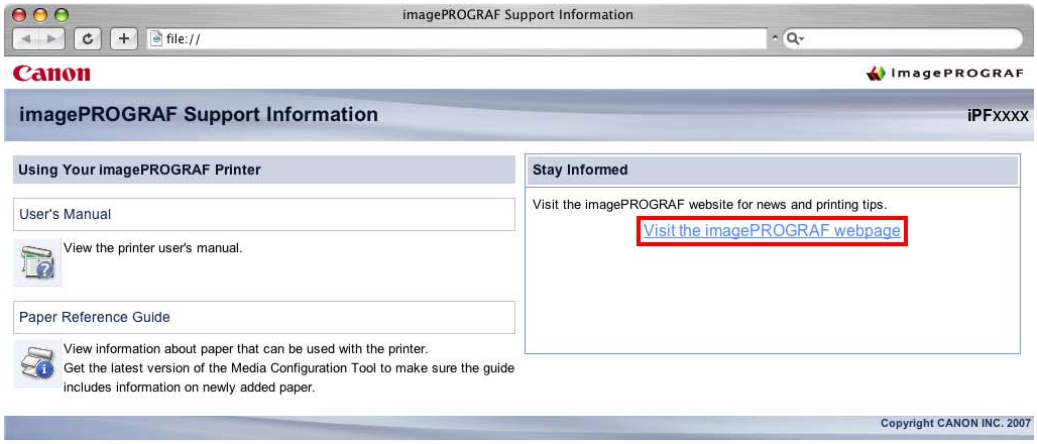
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Mac OS X

  1. Click the **iPF Support** icon in the **Dock**.

  The online support window is displayed.

  2. Select **Stay Informed**.


imagePROGRAF Support Information
file://
Canon
imagePROGRAF
imagePROGRAF Support Information
iPFxxxx
Using Your imagePROGRAF Printer
User's Manual
View the printer user's manual.
Paper Reference Guide
View information about paper that can be used with the printer.
Get the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool to make sure the guide includes information on newly added paper.
Stay Informed
Visit the imagePROGRAF website for news and printing tips.
Visit the imagePROGRAF webpage
Copyright CANON INC. 2007

  The default browser is started, and the imagePROGRAF webpage is displayed.

Note

- In Windows, you can also access the imagePROGRAF webpage by clicking the **start** menu, selecting **Programs** > iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool (here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model) > iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool to start the Media Configuration Tool, and clicking Extra Information.
- On a Macintosh computer, you can also access the imagePROGRAF website from the Finder by selecting Applications > Canon Utilities > iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool (here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model) > MCTxxxx to start the Media Configuration Tool and then clicking Extra Information.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper Sizes

Rolls

Rolls that meet the following conditions are supported.

- Outer diameter: up to 150 mm (6.0 in)
- Inner diameter of paper core: 2 or 3 inches
- Printing side out

Roll width	Roll Paper Width Settings in Printer Driver	Borderless Printing (*1)
914.4 mm (36.00 in)	**36-in. Roll (914.4mm)**	Yes
841.0 mm (33.11 in)	**ISO A0/A1 Roll (841.0mm)**	Yes
762.0 mm (30.00 in)	**30-in. Roll (762.0mm)**	No
728.0 mm (28.66 in)	**JIS B1/B2 Roll (728.0mm)**	Yes
609.6 mm (24.00 in)	**24-in. Roll (609.6mm)**	Yes
594.0 mm (23.39 in)	**ISO A1/A2 Roll (594.0mm)**	Yes
515.0 mm (20.28 in)	**JIS B2/B3 Roll (515.0mm)**	Yes
431.8 mm (17.00 in)	**17-in. Roll (431.8mm)**	No
420.0 mm (16.54 in)	**ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**	No
406.4 mm (16.00 in)	**16-in. Roll (406.4mm)**	Yes
355.6 mm (14.00 in)	**14-in. Roll (355.6mm)**	Yes
297.0 mm (11.69 in)	**ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**	No
254.0 mm (10.00 in)	**10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**	Yes
Custom Paper Size	203.2 mm (8.00 in) - 917.0 mm (36.10 in)	

*1: For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Sheets

Sheets of the following sizes are supported.

Paper Size	Dimensions
ISO A0	841.0 × 1189.0 mm (33.11 × 46.81 in)
ISO A1	594.0 × 841.0 mm (23.39 × 33.11 in)
ISO A2	420.0 × 594.0 mm (16.54 × 23.39 in)
ISO A2+	431.8 × 609.6 mm (17.00 × 24.00 in)
ISO A3	297.0 × 420.0 mm (11.69 × 16.54 in)
ISO A3+	329.0 × 483.0 mm (12.95 × 19.02 in)
ISO A4	210.0 × 297.0 mm (8.27 × 11.69 in)
ISO B1	707.0 × 1000.0 mm (27.83 × 39.37 in)
ISO B2	500.0 × 707.0 mm (19.69 × 27.83 in)
ISO B3	353.0 × 500.0 mm (13.90 × 19.69 in)
ISO B4	250.0 × 353.0 mm (9.84 × 13.90 in)
JIS B1	728.0 × 1030.0 mm (28.66 × 40.55 in)
JIS B2	515.0 × 728.0 mm (20.28 × 28.66 in)
JIS B3	364.0 × 515.0 mm (14.33 × 20.28 in)
JIS B4	257.0 × 364.0 mm (10.12 × 14.33 in)
34"x44"(ANSI E)	863.6 × 1117.6 mm (34.00 × 44.00 in)
28"x40"(ANSI F)	711.2 × 1016.0 mm (28.00 × 40.00 in)
22"x34"(ANSI D)	558.8 × 863.6 mm (22.00 × 34.00 in)
17"x22"(ANSI C)	431.8 × 558.8 mm (17.00 × 22.00 in)
11"x17"(Ledger)	279.4 × 431.8 mm (11.00 × 17.00 in)
13"x19"(Super B)	330.2 × 482.6 mm (13.00 × 19.00 in)
Letter(8.5"x11")	215.9 × 279.4 mm (8.50 × 11.00 in)
Legal(8.5"x14")	215.9 × 355.6 mm (8.50 × 14.00 in)
36"x48"(ARCH E)	914.4 × 1219.2 mm (36.00 × 48.00 in)
30"x42"(ARCH E1)	762.0 × 1066.8 mm (30.00 × 42.00 in)
26"x38"(ARCH E2)	660.4 × 965.2 mm (26.00 × 38.00 in)
27"x39"(ARCH E3)	685.8 × 990.6 mm (27.00 × 39.00 in)
24"x36"(ARCH D)	609.6 × 914.4 mm (24.00 × 36.00 in)
18"x24"(ARCH C)	457.2 × 609.6 mm (18.00 × 24.00 in)
12"x18"(ARCH B)	304.8 × 457.2 mm (12.00 × 18.00 in)
9"x12"(ARCH A)	228.6 × 304.8 mm (9.00 × 12.00 in)
DIN C0	917.0 × 1296.0 mm (36.10 × 51.02 in)
DIN C1	648.0 × 917.0 mm (25.51 × 36.10 in)
DIN C2	458.0 × 648.0 mm (18.03 × 25.51 in)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper Size	Dimensions
DIN C3	324.0 × 458.0 mm (12.76 × 18.03 in)
DIN C4	229.0 × 324.0 mm (9.02 × 12.76 in)
20"x24"	508.0 × 609.6 mm (20.00 × 24.00 in)
18"x22"	457.2 × 558.8 mm (18.00 × 22.00 in)
14"x17"	355.6 × 431.8 mm (14.00 × 17.00 in)
12"x16"	304.8 × 406.4 mm (12.00 × 16.00 in)
10"x12"	254.0 × 304.8 mm (10.00 × 12.00 in)
10"x15"	254.0 × 381.0 mm (10.00 × 15.00 in)
8"x10"	203.2 × 254.0 mm (8.00 × 10.00 in)
US Photo 16"x20"	406.4 × 508.0 mm (16.00 × 20.00 in)
Poster 20"x30"	508.0 × 762.0 mm (20.00 × 30.00 in)
Poster 30"x40"	762.0 × 1016.0 mm (30.00 × 40.00 in)
13"x22"	329.0 × 558.0 mm (12.95 × 21.97 in)
Poster 300x900mm	300.0 × 900.0 mm (11.81 × 35.43 in)
Custom Paper Size	203.2 × 203.2 mm (8.00 × 8.00 in) - 917.0 × 1600.0 mm (36.10 × 62.99 in)

Note

- In the printer driver, paper sizes are categorized into groups based on the “size system” such as ISO A or ANSI.
  In Windows, some size systems are not available by default. Follow the steps below to make them available.
  1. Display the printer driver dialog box.
  2. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.
  3. Click **Size Options** to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.
  4. Select the Display Series check box.
- For details on non-standard paper sizes, see “Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes”. (→P.261)
- Borderless printing is not supported on sheets.

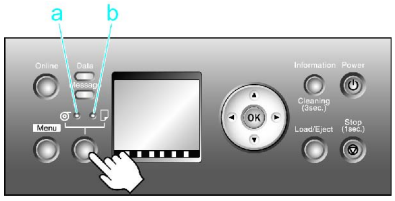
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Handling rolls

Selecting the Paper Source

When advancing paper, press the **Feeder Selection** button and select the source.
You can determine the selected source by checking which lamp is lit-either the **Roll Media lamp** (a) or the **Cut Sheet lamp** (b).

- **Roll Media lamp** : Selected when printing on Roll Media.
- **Cut Sheet lamp** : Selected when printing on Sheets.



Note

- If any paper is loaded that will not be used, a message is shown on the Display Screen, either **Remove roll?** or **Eject sheet?** when you press the **Feeder Selection** button.
  When removing the paper, press the **OK** button.
- You cannot switch the paper source in the following situations:
  - If the Message lamp is flashing
    Check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.575)
  - If the Data lamp is flashing
    Select the paper source after printing.
  - If a printer menu operation is in progress
    Select the paper source after the menu operation.
  - When in the process of loading paper
    Finish loading the paper before selecting the paper source.
  - When in the process of replacing Ink Tanks
    Finish replacing the Ink Tanks before selecting the paper source.
  - If the Top Cover is open
    Close the Top Cover before selecting the paper source.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Selecting the Paper Type (Roll)

When changing the type of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the type of paper as follows.

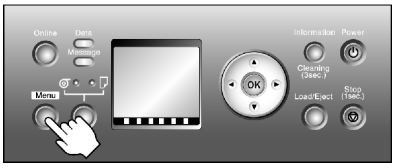
Important

- For best printing results, the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper. Be sure to select the type of paper to use correctly before printing.
- Because the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper, the margins and the size of printed images may vary depending on the type of paper used. If margins and the size of images are not as you expected, adjust the paper feed amount and Printhead height.
(→P.498)
(→P.497)

Note

- After you load the roll, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen, unless a barcode has been printed on the roll or you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper. Select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
If no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, specify the roll length after the paper type. (→P.106)

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

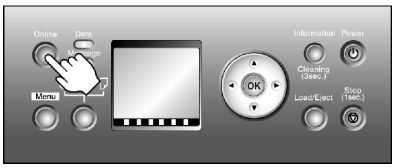


2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Roll Media Type**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- For details on types of paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)By factory default, Plain Paper is selected.
- If you move the Release Lever, the setting automatically reverts to the previously selected paper.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect the printing quality.
- If you select a type of paper for which width detection is **Off** when detection of the remaining roll paper is also **Off**, you will need to advance the paper manually to the starting position for printing. (→P.136)

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

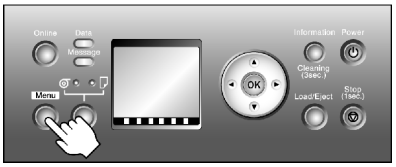
Specifying the Paper Length (Roll)

When changing the length of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the length as follows.

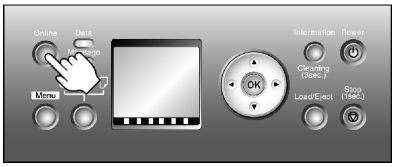
Note

- When you specify the roll length in the printer menu, **Chk Remain.Roll** must be set to **On**. If it is **Off**, the **Roll Length Set** menu is not shown.
- After you specify the roll type, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the roll length on the Display Screen if no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper. Select the roll length, and then press the **OK** button. The printer will automatically go online.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Roll Length Set**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the length of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.
   Specify the roll length as follows.
   1. Press ◄ or ► to move the cursor (_) to each field for entering numbers.
   2. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to enter the value.
   3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to finish entering the value, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



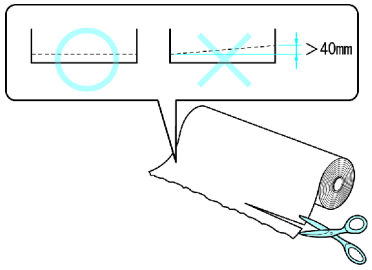
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder

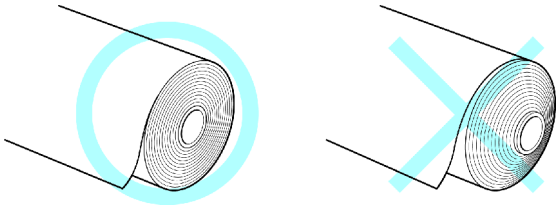
When printing on rolls, attach the Roll Holder to the roll.
Attach the 2-inch or 3-inch paper core attachment to the roll holder, depending on the size of the paper core of the roll you will use. The printer is delivered with the 2-inch paper core attachment installed. (→P.129)

Important

- Cut the edge of the roll paper if it is uneven, dirty, or has tape residue. Otherwise, it may cause feeding problems and affect the printing quality. Be careful not to cut through any barcodes printed on the roll.



- Wind up the roll so that the edge is even across the roll. This may cause feeding problems.



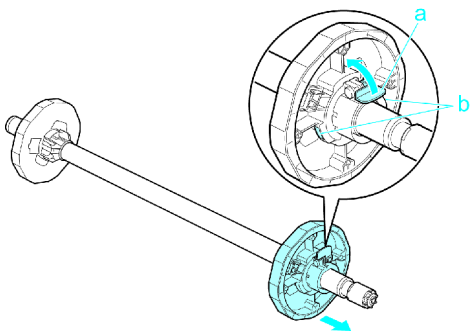
Caution

- Set the roll on a table or other flat surface so that it does not roll or fall. Rolls are heavy, and dropping a roll may cause injury.

Note

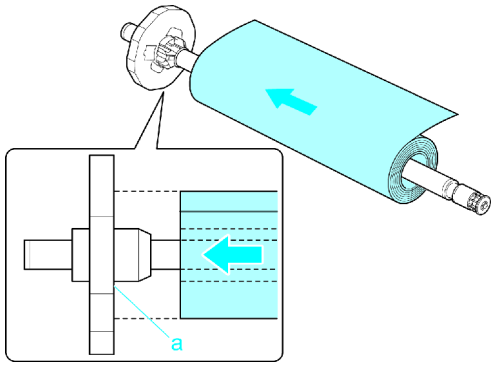
- For details on supported sizes and types of rolls, see “Paper Sizes” or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.101) (→P.96)
- After pressing the **Load/Eject** button, you can refer to instructions on the Display Screen as you load the paper.

1. Lift the Holder Stopper lever (a) from the shaft side to unlock it. Holding the Holder Stopper at the position indicated (b), remove it from the Roll Holder.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

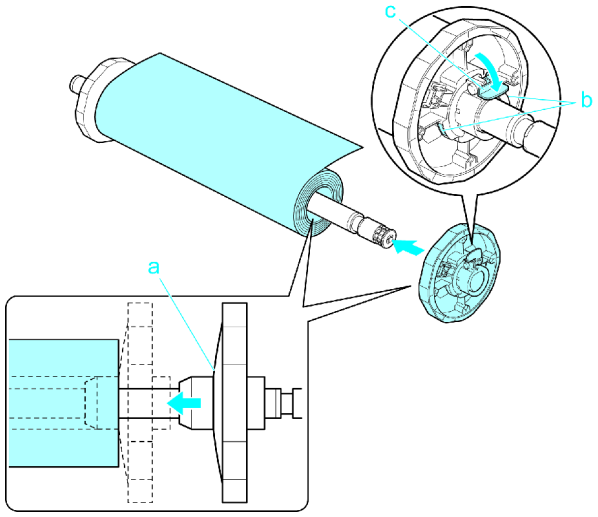
2. With the edge of the roll paper facing back as shown, set the roll with the Roll Holder from the right. Insert the roll firmly until it touches the flange (a) of the Roll Holder.



Important

- When loading a roll, be careful to avoid hitting the printer hard with the roll. This may damage the Roll Holder.

3. Insert the Holder Stopper from the right in the Roll Holder as shown. Holding it at the position indicated (b), push it firmly in until the flange (a) of the Holder Stopper touches the roll. Lock the Holder Stopper lever (c) by pushing it down toward the shaft side.

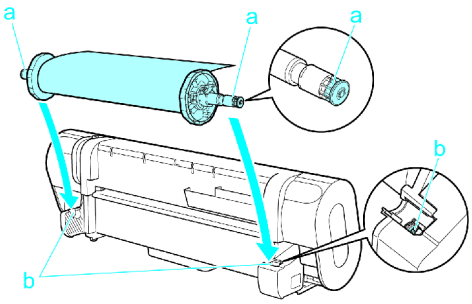


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Loading Rolls in the Roll Holder Slot

Once a roll is in the Roll Holder, follow these steps to load the roll in the Roll Holder Slot.

Holding the Roll Holder so that the side with the white gear faces the side of the Roll Holder Slot with a white gear, load the Roll Holder shaft (a) into the grooves (b) on both ends of the Roll Holder Slot.



Caution

- Be careful not to drop the roll and hurt yourself when loading it.
- Be careful not to pinch your fingers between the Roll Holder shaft (a) and the guide grooves (b) when loading rolls.

At this point, to advance the roll, see “Loading the Roll in the Printer”. (→P.110)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

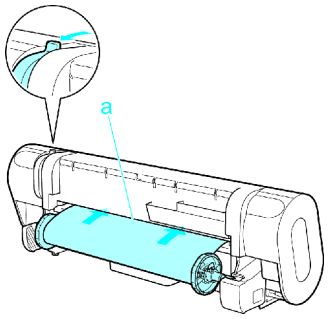
Loading the Roll in the Printer

Follow these steps to load rolls in the printer.

Note

- Remove any loaded paper that will not be used.
  - Roll (→P.113) (→P.114)
  - Sheet (→P.137)
- If the Platen is dirty, clean inside the Top Cover. (→P.538)

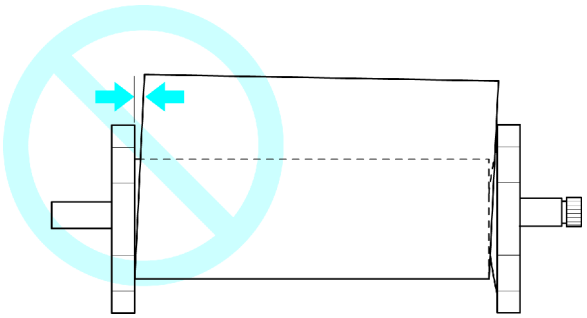
1. Push the Release Lever back and pull out the roll paper evenly on both ends. Insert the edge in the Paper Feed Slot (a) and advance the paper until vacuuming paper starts.



After the paper reaches the Platen, it is automatically advanced and vacuuming paper starts.

Important

- Be careful not to soil the printing surface of roll paper as you insert it in the slot. This may affect the printing quality. We recommend wearing clean cloth gloves when handling rolls to protect the printing surface.
- If the paper is wrinkled or warped, straighten it out before loading it.
- If it is difficult to insert the roll paper in the Paper Feed Slot, insert the left or right corner in the slot first, and then straighten the paper as you advance it.
- Load the roll so that there is no gap between the right edge of the paper and the Roll Holder.

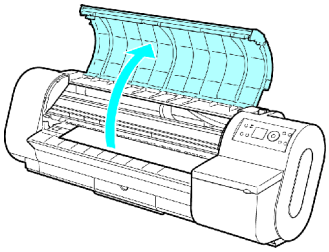


Note

- You can adjust the strength of vacuum holding paper against the Platen when the Release Lever is open. If it is difficult to load paper, press the ▲ or ▼ button on the Control Panel to adjust the strength. Set vacuum stronger by pressing the ▲ button or weaker with the ▼ button. Three settings are available.

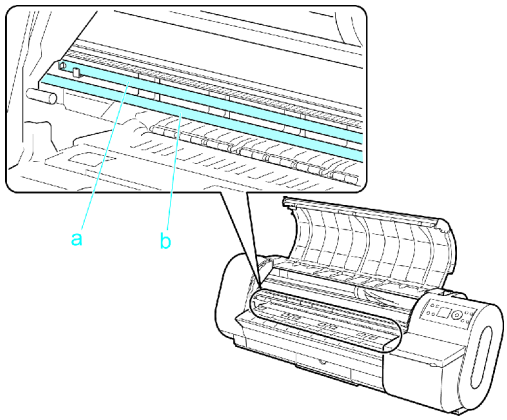
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Open the Top Cover.

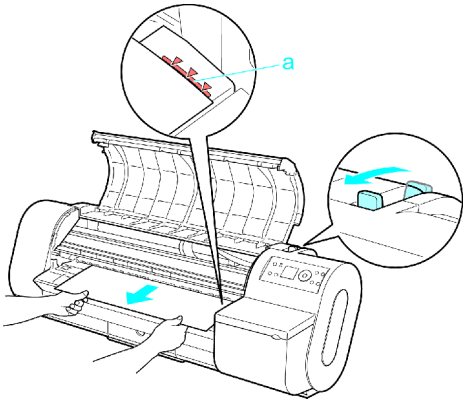


Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).



3. Pull the roll edge gently and align it with the Paper Alignment Line (a). Lower the Release Lever toward the front.

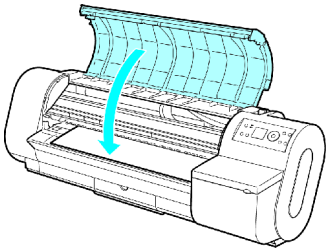


Important

- Do not force the roll paper into alignment with the Paper Alignment Line (a). This may prevent the paper from being advanced straight.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

4. Close the Top Cover.



After you load a roll, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen.
At this point, specify the paper type. (→P.105)

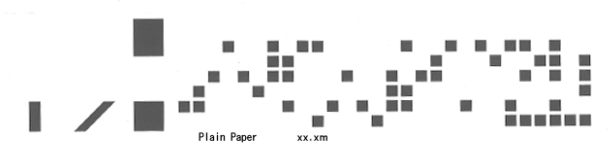
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Removing the Roll from the Printer

Remove rolls from the printer as follows.

Note

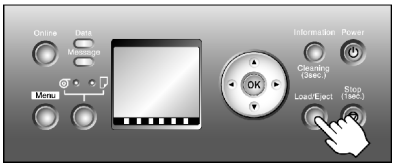
- If you need to cut a printed roll, select **Paper Cutting** in the printer menu and cut the roll at the desired position. (→P.122)
- If you have selected **Media Menu** > **Chk Remain.Roll** > **On** in the printer menu, a barcode indicating the amount of paper left is printed on the leading edge of the roll. However, barcodes are not printed on some types of paper, and only a text message indicating media information is printed.



Caution

- If you have activated automatic monitoring of the remaining roll paper, do not remove the roll before the barcode is printed. You will be unable to keep track of the amount of roll paper left.

1. Press the **Load/Eject** button.
   A confirmation message is displayed regarding removal of the roll.



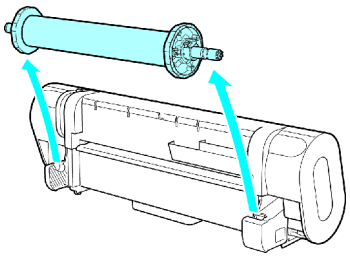
2. Press the **OK** button.
   The roll can now be removed.
   Next, when removing rolls from the Roll Holder Slot, see “Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder Slot”. (→P.114)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder Slot

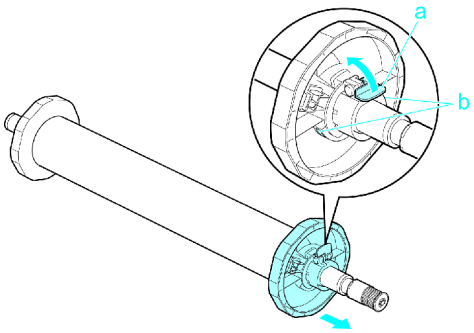
Remove rolls from the Roll Holder Slot as follows.

Make sure the roll is away from the Paper Feed Slot, and then remove the Roll Holder from the Roll Holder Slot.

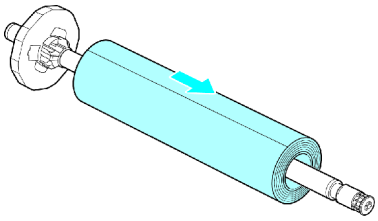


Removing a Roll from the Roll Holder

1. Lift the Holder Stopper lever (a) from the shaft side to unlock it. Holding the Holder Stopper at the position indicated (b), remove it from the Roll Holder.



2. Remove the roll from the Roll Holder.



Important

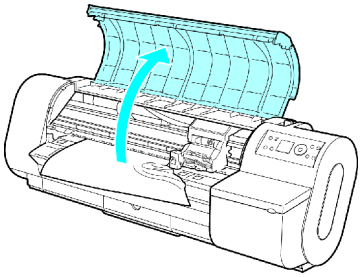
- After removal, store the roll in the original bag or box, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight. If paper is not stored properly, the printing surface may become scratched, which may affect the printing quality when you use it again.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

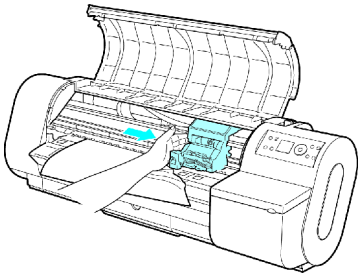
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper

If roll paper jams, follow the steps below to remove jams.

1. Turn the printer off. (→P.22)
2. Open the Top Cover.

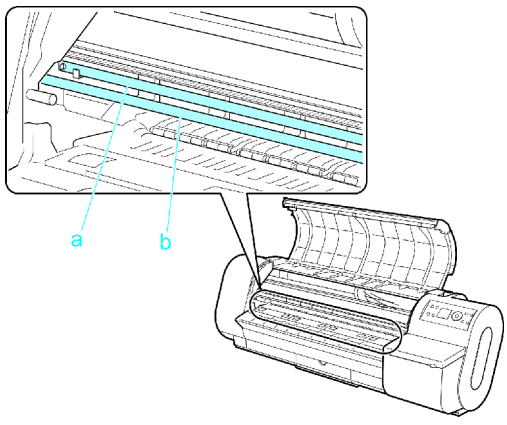


3. If the Carriage is out, move the Carriage to separate it from the paper.

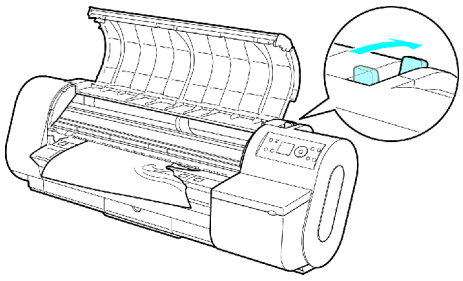


Important

- If you push the Carriage to the left edge, the blade of the Cutter Unit will be lowered in preparation to cut the paper. Be careful not to pinch your fingers between the Carriage and Platen if you have pushed the Carriage to the left edge or if a paper jam occurs during cutting.
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).

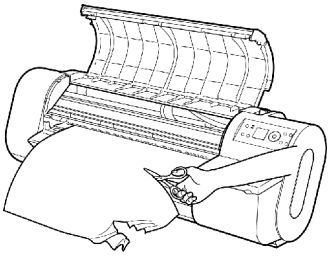


4. Push the Release Lever back.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

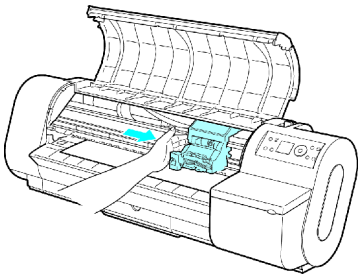
5. Holding the paper on both sides, pull the jammed portion out toward the front. Use a scissors to cut away the printed or wrinkled portion.



Caution

- When cutting paper, be careful to avoid injury and damaging the printer.

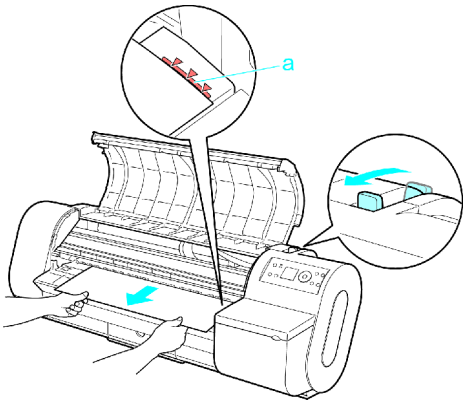
6. If the Carriage is on the left, move the Carriage to the right until it stops.



Important

- Always move the Carriage to the right side. If the Carriage is on the left, a Carriage error may occur when you turn on the printer.

7. Pull the roll edge gently and align it with the Paper Alignment Line (a). Lower the Release Lever toward the front.

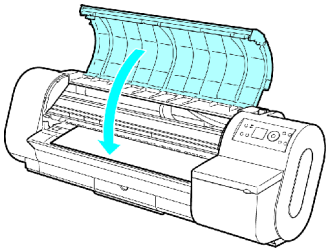


Important

- Do not force the roll paper into alignment with the Paper Alignment Line (a). This may prevent the paper from being advanced straight.
- The amount of paper pulled from the roll corresponds to the margin of the leading edge.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Close the Top Cover.



9. Turn the printer on. (→P.22)

The roll is now advanced. After it is finished being advanced, you can resume printing.

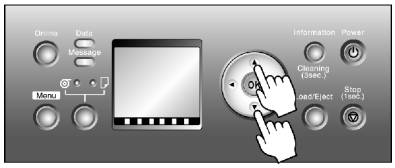
Note

- You can ensure that the edge is cut neatly by following the steps below.
  1. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer offline.
  2. Hold down the ▼ button to advance the paper.
  3. Set **Paper Cutting** to **Yes** in the printer menu, and the edge will be cut.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Feeding Roll Paper Manually

You can bring the printer offline by pressing the **Online** button.
When the printer is offline and roll paper is selected as the paper source, you can feed or retract the roll paper by pressing ▲ or ▼.

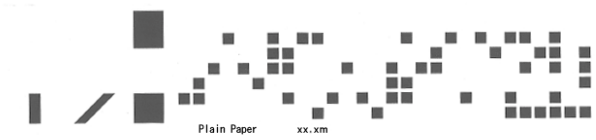


Press ▲ to retract the roll paper manually.
Press ▼ to feed the roll paper manually.
If you hold down ▲ or ▼ for less than a second, the roll paper will move about 1 mm (0.04 in).
If you hold down ▲ or ▼ for more than a second, the paper will move until you release the button. Release the button when the Display Screen indicates **End of paper feed. Cannot feed paper more.**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Detection of the Remaining Roll Paper

If you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, when the roll is ejected, a barcode with text is printed on the roll paper that identifies the type of paper and amount left. If this function is activated and barcodes are printed on the roll paper, the type of paper and amount left are automatically detected when you load a roll. The barcode will be cut off after it has been read.



Note

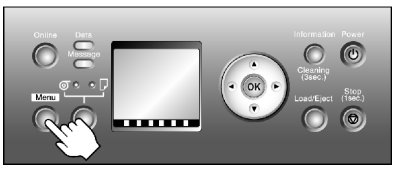
- If the document is not cut but kept in the printer, only the text message is printed. This is also the case when printing on 8-inch rolls or clear film.

Important

- If the barcode is not detected when it is advanced, enter the type and length of paper on the Control Panel.
- Barcodes are not cut off when **Chk Remain.Roll** and **Trim Edge First** are both **Off**. To have the printer cut off barcodes automatically, on the Control Panel menu, set **Chk Remain.Roll** to **On**. Otherwise cut off barcodes by using **Paper Cutting** in the Control Panel menu.

Follow these steps to activate detection of the remaining roll paper.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Chk Remain.Roll**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting option, and then press the **OK** button.

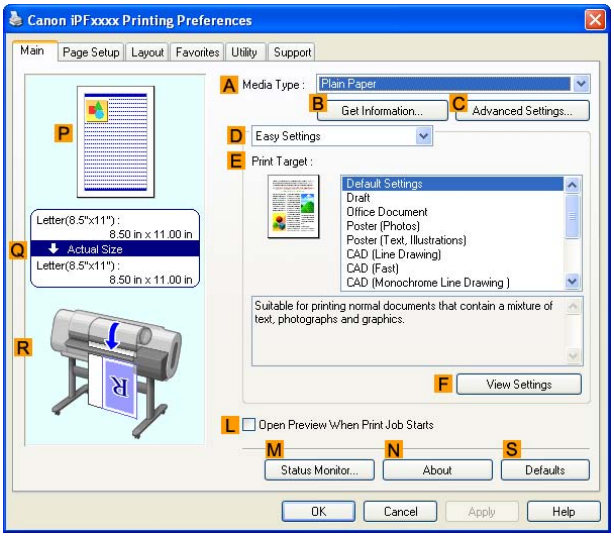
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls

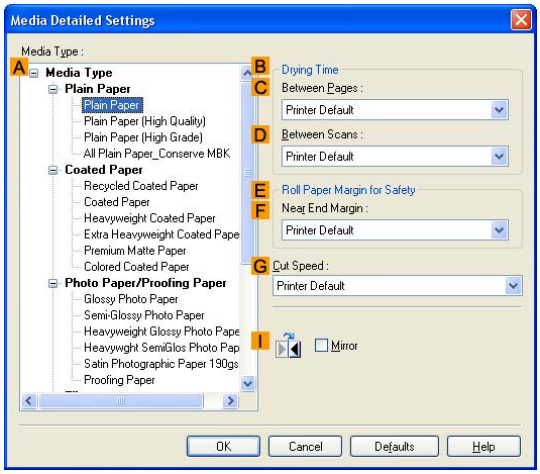
When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere, if the Cutter touches printed surfaces that are still wet, it may damage the paper or cause rough cut edges. Also, ink may be transferred onto the paper surface during ejection, soiling it. You can prevent problems by adjusting the drying time after printing before the paper is cut.

Windows

1. Display the printer driver dialog box.
   (→P.345)
2. Select the **Main** sheet and click **C Advanced Settings** in **A Media Type**.



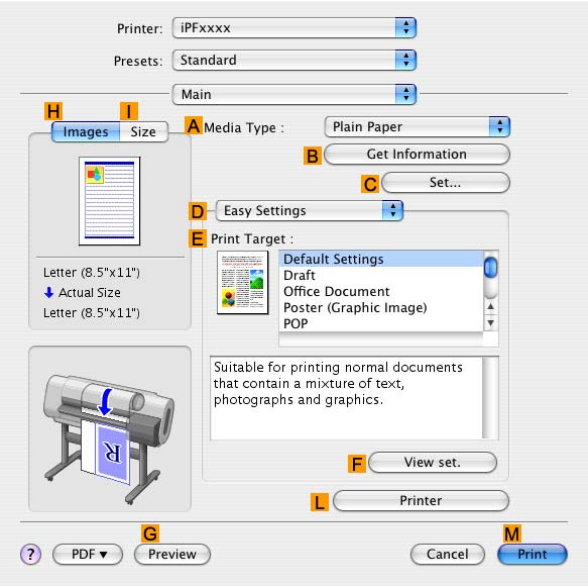
3. In the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select the desired settings values in **C Between Pages** and **D Between Scans** in **B Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.
   (→P.351)



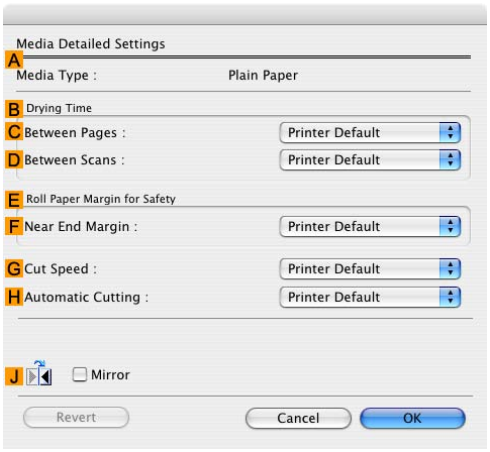
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Mac OS X

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the **Main** pane and click **C Settings** in **A Media Type**.



3. In the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select the desired settings values in **C Between Pages** and **D Between Scans** in **B Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.
(→P.390)



Note

- By factory default, **Drying Time** is deactivated (**Off**) for all paper types.
- To have the printer wait for ink to dry immediately after printing without releasing paper, set **Cutting Mode** to **Eject** in the printer menu.
(→P.122)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls

How a roll is cut after ejection varies depending on the printer settings.

Cutting Method		Menu Settings		Driver Setting	
Automatic	The roll is automatically cut by the Cutter Unit following printer driver settings.	**Cutting Mode**	**Automatic**	**Auto Cut**	**Yes**
Eject (→P.123)	Choose this setting if you prefer not to have documents dropped immediately after printing, as when waiting for ink to dry. To cut the roll using the Cutter Unit, hold the **Stop** button for a second or more.		**Eject**		**Yes**
Manual (→P.124)	Choose this setting when using media that cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit. Cut each page from the roll using scissors. For continuous printing (if you will cut each page later), in **Auto Cut**, select **Yes**, or select **Print Cut Guideline**. (→P.329)		**Manual**		**NoYesPrint Cut Guideline**
Paper Cutting (→P.125)	Choose this option if you want to cut pages by pressing Cutter Unit buttons for manual cutting after printing when the printer driver is configured to **Auto Cut** > **No** or **Print Cut Guideline**. Otherwise choose this option if you want to cut the roll edge after loading a roll.	**Paper Cutting**	**Yes**		**NoPrint Cut Guideline**

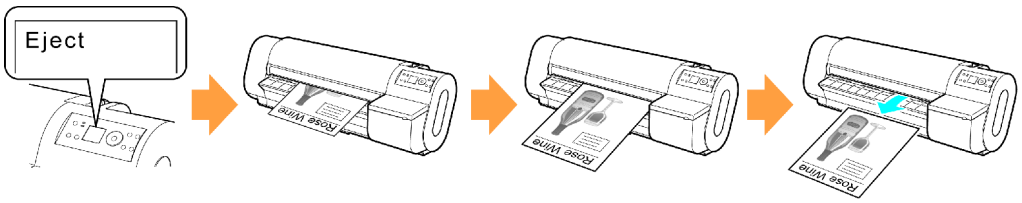
Note

- Automatic and Eject are valid only when you have specified **Auto Cut** > **Yes** in the printer driver.
- With Eject, printing does not resume after a series of jobs have been printed continuously until the roll is cut.

Cut the roll manually in the following cases:

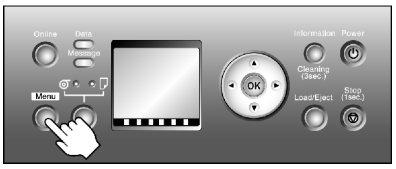
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Eject (waiting for ink to dry after printing)



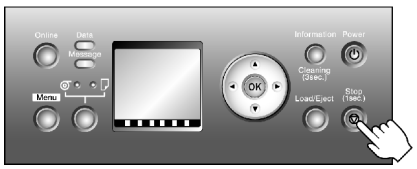
Select **Eject** | Print | Stopped automatically at the cut position | As you support the document to prevent it from dropping, cut by pressing the **Stop** button

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



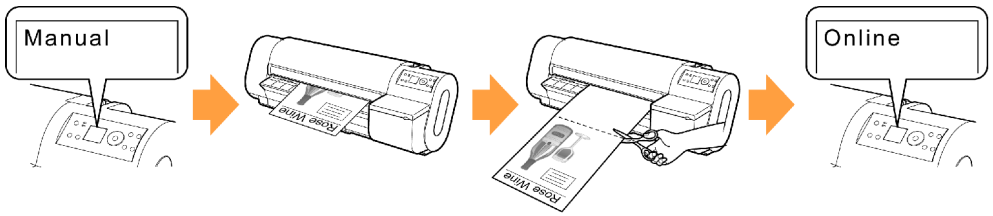
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cutting Mode**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Eject**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Start printing.

   Roll paper is fed to the specified cut position and then automatically stopped.
7. As you support the printed document to prevent it from dropping, hold the **Stop** button for at least a second to cut the roll.



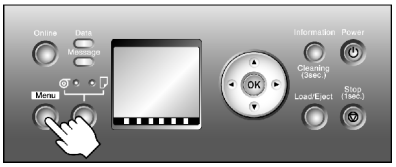
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Manual (when using media that cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit)



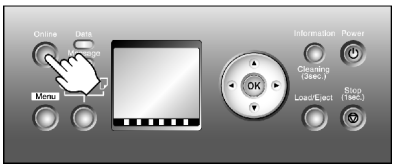
Select **Manual** | Print | Feed paper to the cut position by pressing the **Online** button and cut manually | Rewind paper by pressing the **Online** button

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

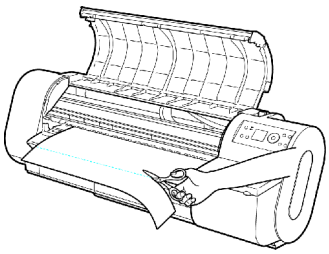


2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cutting Mode**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Start printing.

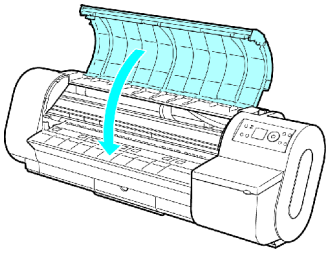
   The printer stops advancing the paper after printing.
7. Press the **Online** button.



   Roll paper is fed to the specified cut position and then automatically stopped.
8. Use scissors to cut the roll paper along the cut line.

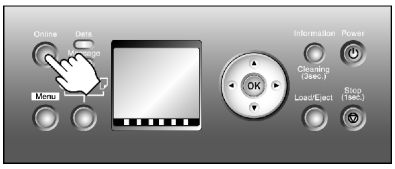


9. Close the Top Cover.



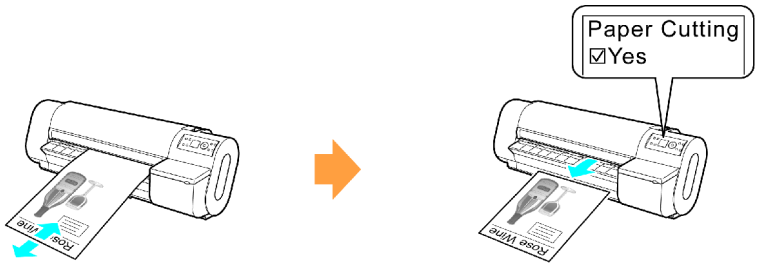
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

10. Press the **Online** button.



The roll is rewound, and rewinding stops automatically.

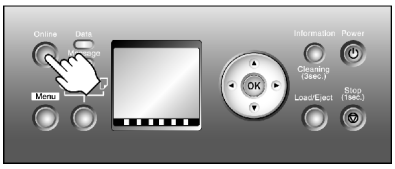
Paper Cutting (to have the roll cut at your specified position)



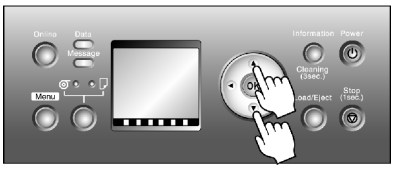
Feed paper the cutting position by pressing ▲ or ▼

Paper Cutting

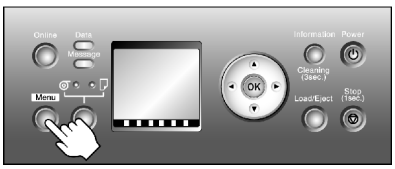
1. If the printer stops operating after printing, press the **Online** button. The printer goes offline.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to feed the roll paper to the position for cutting.



3. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Cutting**, and then press the ► button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

After the roll paper is cut, it is rewound automatically.

Caution

- If paper would be short when cut at a particular position, the roll may automatically be advanced in some cases before cutting.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

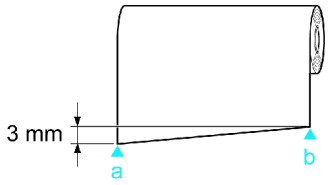
Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically

If the leading edge of a roll is crooked or warped, it may cause an error message or printing problems. In this case, set **Trim Edge First** to **Automatic** or **On** on the Control Panel to have the printer cut the leading edge to make the edge straight after you load a roll.

Trim Edge First offers the following options.

- **Automatic**

  If the left and right side of the leading edge of the roll ((a) and (b)) are uneven by 3 mm (0.12 in) or more when you load the roll, the edge is cut an amount relative to the slant to ensure a straight edge, and scraps are removed. The edge is not cut if the unevenness is less than 3 mm.

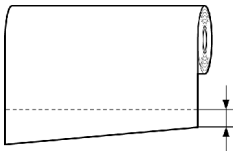


- **Off**

  The edge is not cut and scraps are not removed. This setting is **Off** for most types of paper, by default. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)

- **On**

  The leading edge is cut off when you load a roll, and scraps are removed. The amount of paper cut off from the leading edge varies depending on the paper type. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)

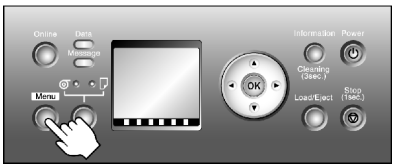


Note

- If you print on paper that has an irregular width, set **Skew Check Lv.** to **Loose** for a higher skew detection threshold or to **Off** to disable skew detection. However, if paper is loaded askew when detection is **Off**, note that paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.

Follow these steps to change the **Trim Edge First** setting.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



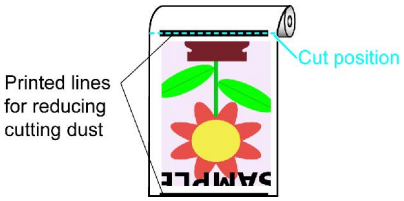
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Trim Edge First**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting option, and then press the **OK** button.

   This setting takes effect the next time you load a roll.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls

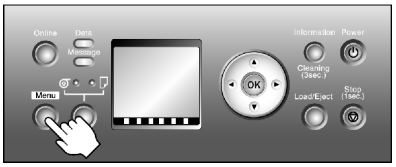
The printer is equipped with a function to reduce cutting dust for media such as Backlit Film that are more likely to generate debris when cut. This may improve printing quality and help prevent Printhead damage. You can set up this function to be activated for some types of paper.
When this function is activated, black lines are printed at the leading and trailing edges of documents.



Important

- Do not activate the function to reduce cutting dust for paper that wrinkles easily, such as Plain Paper or lightweight paper. This may impair cutting and cause paper jams.
- Borderless printing is not available when this function is activated. Deactivate this function before borderless printing.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



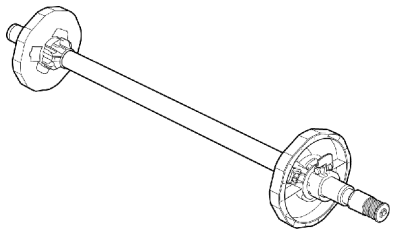
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **CutDustReduct.**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The function to reduce cutting dust is now activated.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Roll Holder Set

A set of parts comprising the Roll Holder, Holder Stopper, 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment, and 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment.
To load a roll with a 3-inch paper core, remove the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment from the Holder Stopper and then attach the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment on both the Roll Holder and Holder Stopper.
To load a roll with a 2-inch paper core, remove the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment from both the Roll Holder and Holder Stopper and then attach the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment on the Holder Stopper. (→P.129)

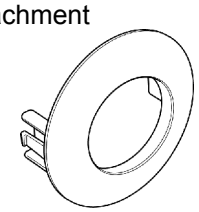
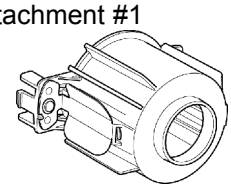
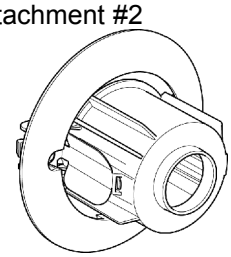
- Roll Holder Set RH4-32 (for 2- and 3-inch paper cores)



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Attaching Accessories to the Roll Holder

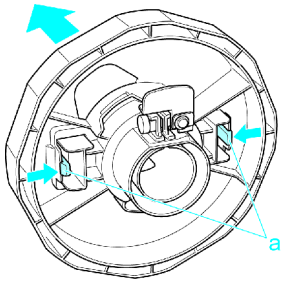
The following attachments are provided with the Roll Holder. Use the attachment that matches the size of the paper core of the roll you will use. The printer is delivered with the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment on the Roll Holder.

Using the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment		Using the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment	
Roll Holder Side	Holder Stopper Side	Roll Holder Side	Holder Stopper Side
No Attachment Needed	2-Inch Paper Core Attachment 	3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #1 	3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #2 

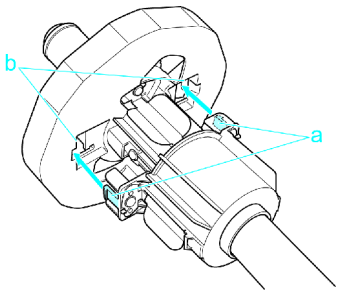
Installing the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment

When loading a roll with a 3-inch paper core, remove the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment from the Holder Stopper and then attach the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment on both the Roll Holder and Holder Stopper.

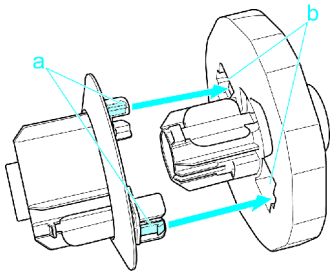
1. Push the tips (a) of the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment in and remove the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment from the Holder Stopper.



2. Align the tips (a) of 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #1 with the holes (b) of the Roll Holder and insert it firmly.



3. Align the tips (a) of 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #2 with the holes (b) of the Holder Stopper and insert it firmly.

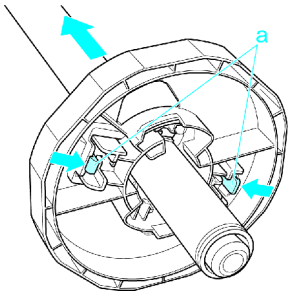


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

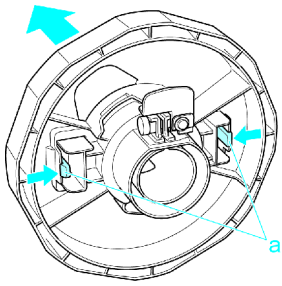
Installing the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment

When loading a roll with a 2-inch paper core, remove the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment from both the Roll Holder and Holder Stopper and then attach the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment on the Holder Stopper.

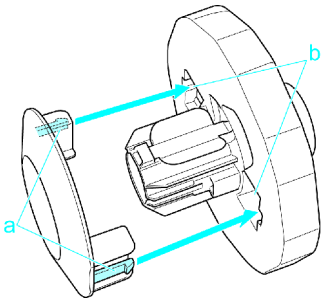
1. Push the tips (a) of 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #1 in and remove the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment from the Roll Holder.



2. Push the tips (a) of 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #2 in and remove the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment from the Holder Stopper.



3. Align the tips (a) of the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment with the holes (b) of the Holder Stopper and insert it firmly.



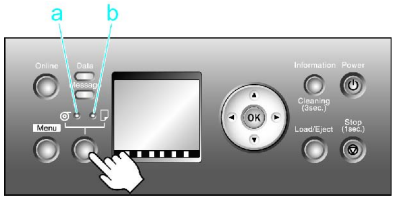
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Handling sheets

Selecting the Paper Source

When advancing paper, press the **Feeder Selection** button and select the source.
You can determine the selected source by checking which lamp is lit-either the **Roll Media lamp** (a) or the **Cut Sheet lamp** (b).

- **Roll Media lamp** : Selected when printing on Roll Media.
- **Cut Sheet lamp** : Selected when printing on Sheets.



Note

- If any paper is loaded that will not be used, a message is shown on the Display Screen, either **Remove roll?** or **Eject sheet?** when you press the **Feeder Selection** button.
  When removing the paper, press the **OK** button.
- You cannot switch the paper source in the following situations:
  - If the Message lamp is flashing
    Check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.575)
  - If the Data lamp is flashing
    Select the paper source after printing.
  - If a printer menu operation is in progress
    Select the paper source after the menu operation.
  - When in the process of loading paper
    Finish loading the paper before selecting the paper source.
  - When in the process of replacing Ink Tanks
    Finish replacing the Ink Tanks before selecting the paper source.
  - If the Top Cover is open
    Close the Top Cover before selecting the paper source.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

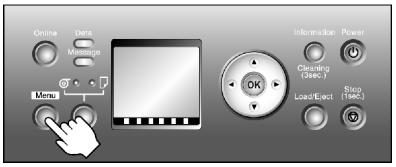
Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet)

When changing the type of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the type of paper as follows.

Note

- After you load the sheet, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen. In this case, select the paper type, and then press the **OK** button. The printer will automatically go online.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

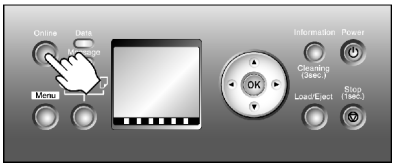


2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cut Sheet Type**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- For details on paper types, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96) Plain Paper is selected by factory default.
  If you move the Release Lever, the setting automatically reverts to Plain Paper.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect the printing quality.
- If you select a type of paper for which Media Width Detection is deactivated (**Off** is selected), you must advance the paper manually to the position for printing. (→P.136)

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



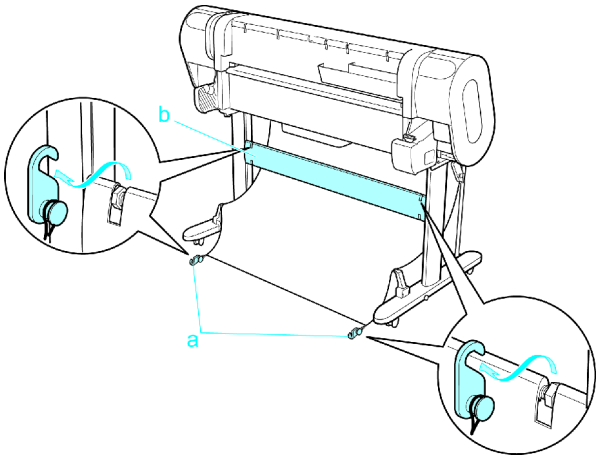
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Loading the Sheet in the Printer

Note

- For details on supported types and sizes of the paper, see “Paper Sizes” or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.101) (→P.96)
- Remove any loaded paper that will not be used.
  - Roll (→P.113) (→P.114)
  - Sheet (→P.137)
- If the Platen is dirty, clean inside the Top Cover. (→P.538)
- After pressing the **Load/Eject** button, you can refer to instructions on the Display Screen as you load the paper.

1. Remove the Roll Holder from the printer and remove Basket Fastener A (a) from the Stand Stay (b).

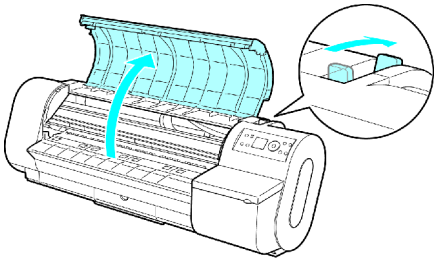


Note

- If you print on a long sheet (longer than 914 mm [36 in]), the trailing edge may touch the floor and become dirty. Before loading long paper, remove the Roll Holder and spread a clean cloth or paper on the floor.

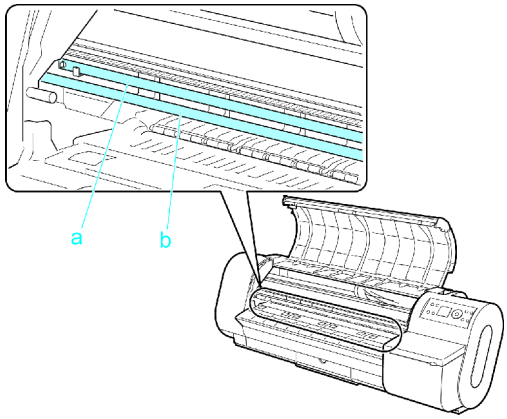
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Open the Top Cover and push the Release Lever back.



Important

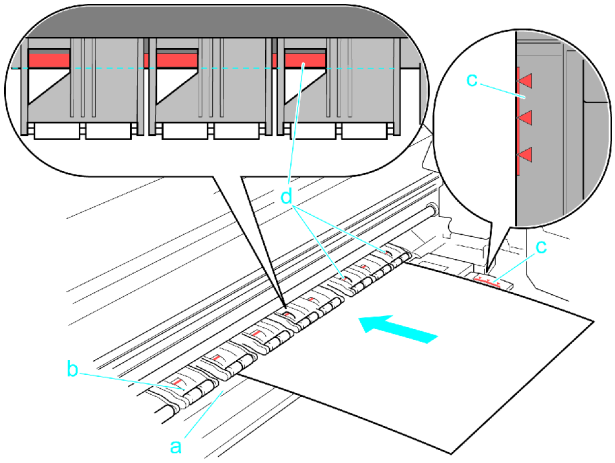
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).



3. With a sheet lengthwise and printing-side up, insert it between the Platen (a) and the Paper Retainer (b). Align the edges of the sheet as follows.

1. Align the sheet with the Paper Alignment Line (c) at right.

2. Align the inserted edge of the sheet with the leading edge of the Paper Alignment Line (d), as shown.



When inserted, sheets are automatically held by suction against the Platen.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

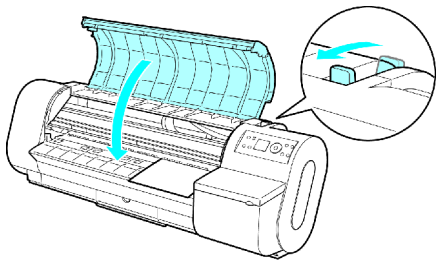
Important

- Load a sheet so that it is parallel to the Paper Alignment Line (d). Loading paper askew will cause an error.
- Warped paper may rub against the Printhead. Straighten paper if it is warped before loading it.
- If the sides of the sheet are not perpendicular at the corners, the sheet may not be advanced straight.

Note

- You can adjust the strength of vacuum holding paper against the Platen when the Release Lever is open. If it is difficult to load paper, press the ▲ or ▼ button on the Control Panel to adjust the strength. Set vacuum stronger by pressing the ▲ button or weaker with the ▼ button. Three settings are available.
- A sheet is held in place by vacuuming through holes on the Platen. Although the vacuuming may produce a noise when paper is loaded in some positions, it does not indicate a problem. If the noise is distracting, try moving the paper over slightly to the left or right (up to 1 mm [0.039 in]) while keeping it parallel to the Paper Alignment Line.

4. Lower the Release Lever toward the front and close the Top Cover.



The printer now starts feeding the paper. After the paper is advanced, the printer automatically goes online and starts printing.
If no print job has been received from the computer beforehand, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen. In this case, select the type of paper. (→P.132)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

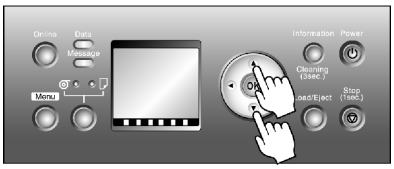
Manually Loading Paper to the Position for Printing

You will need to advance the paper manually to the starting position for printing after selecting the type of paper in the Control Panel menu when rolls or sheets are loaded in the following cases, which require a different paper feeding method than usual.

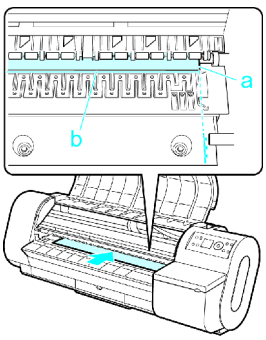
- Rolls
  If you select a type of paper for which **Width Detection** is **Off** when **Chk Remain.Roll** is also **Off**
- Sheets
  If you select a type of paper for which **Width Detection** is **Off**

In these cases, printing starts from the position at which the paper has been loaded, so you must load the paper as far into the Paper Feed Slot as possible.
Manually advance paper as follows.

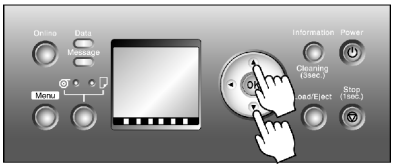
1. When **Width Detection OFF. OK to continue?** is shown on the Display Screen, press ▲ or ▼ to select **Leave OFF** and then press the **OK** button.
   If you select **Width Detection ON**, change the Media Detailed Settings information for that paper and use the regular feeding method.



2. Keeping the right edge of the sheet aligned with the extended line of the paper alignment line (a) on the right side of the printer, load the sheet so that the near edge is aligned with the groove (b) at the far end of the platen.



3. Check the position of the loaded paper and press the **OK** button.
4. After a menu for selection of the paper size is shown on the Display Screen, press ▲ or ▼ to select the paper size, and then press the **OK** button.



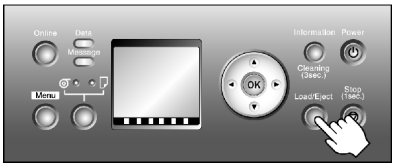
Note

- If a print job received requires paper larger than the selected paper, it may soil the Platen.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Removing the Sheet

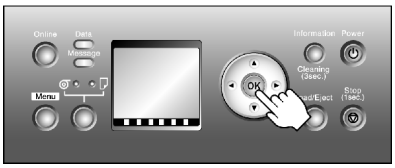
1. Press the **Load/Eject** button.



Note

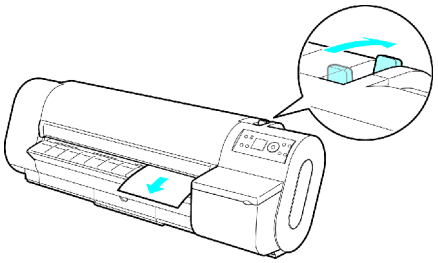
- Paper cannot be ejected by using the **Load/Eject** button when print jobs are in progress or during the ink drying period. Before ejecting paper, press the **Stop** button to cancel printing, print job processing, or ink drying.

2. Press the **OK** button to eject the paper.

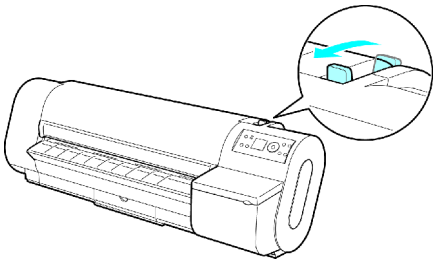


The paper is ejected from the front of the printer.

3. Holding the paper, push the Release Lever back and remove the sheet.



4. Pull the Release Lever forward.

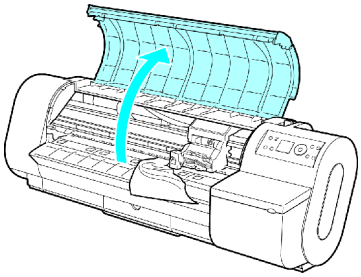


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

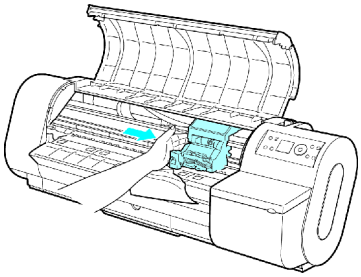
Clearing a Jammed Sheet

If a sheet jams, follow the steps below to remove it.

1. Turn the printer off. (→P.22)
2. Open the Top Cover.

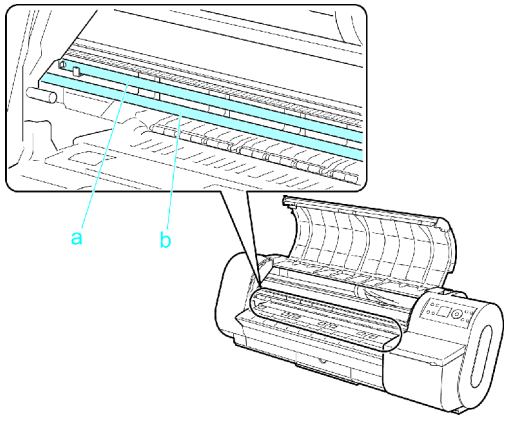


3. If the Carriage is out, move the Carriage to separate it from the paper.

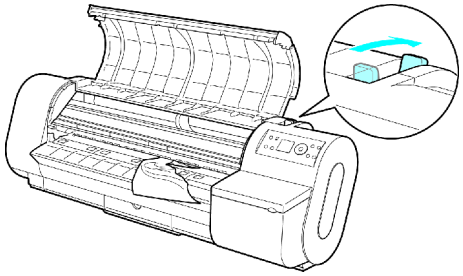


Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).

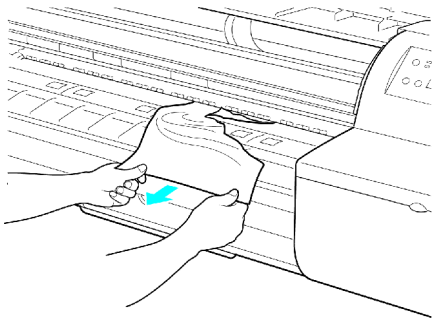


4. Push the Release Lever back.

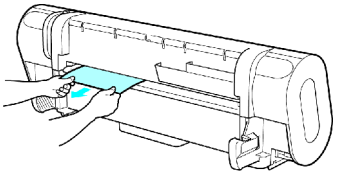


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

5. If the paper is visible, grasp the paper and pull it forward.

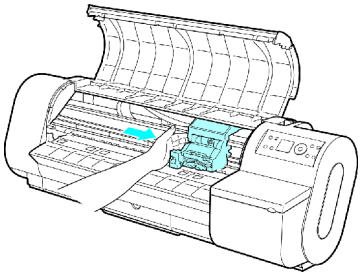


6. If you cannot see the paper, remove the scrap from behind the printer.



After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

7. If the Carriage is on the left, move the Carriage to the right until it stops.



Important

- Always move the Carriage to the right side. If the Carriage is on the left, a Carriage error may occur when you turn on the printer.

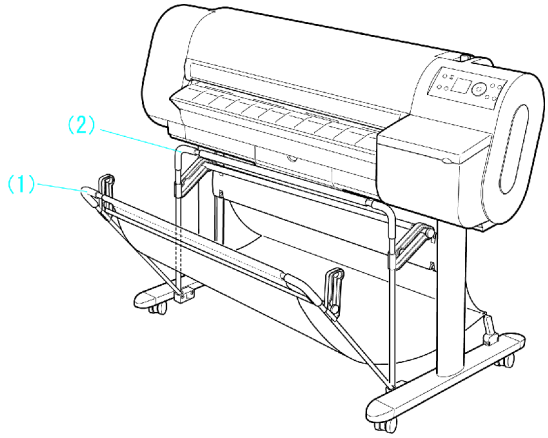
8. Turn the printer on. (→P.22)

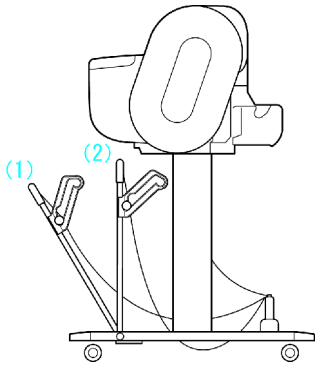
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Output Stacker

Using the Output Stacker

The Output Stacker can be held at two positions, as shown.





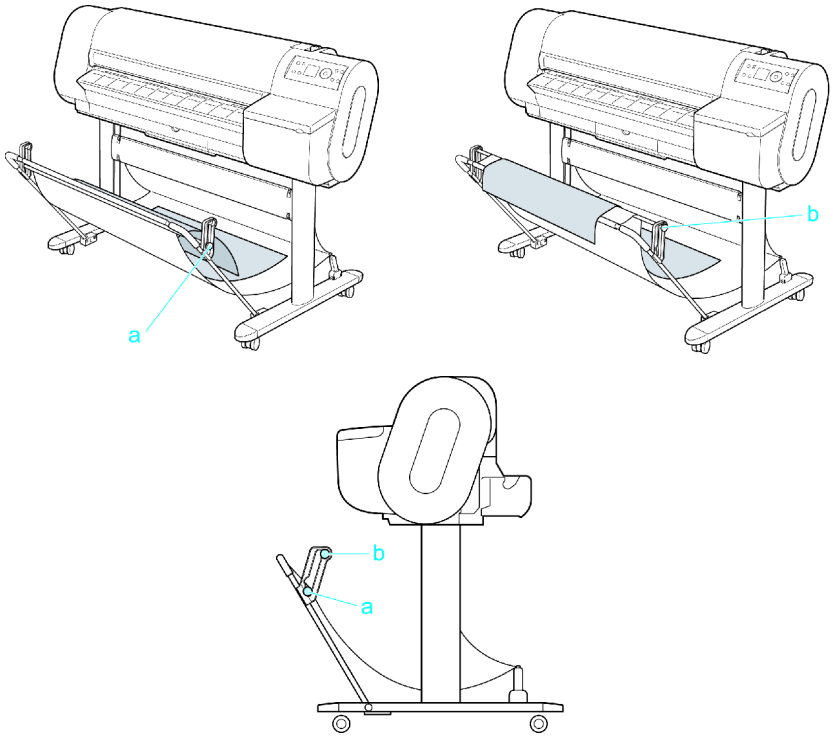
- When storing printed documents on the Output Stacker
  Use position (1).
- When the Output Stacker is not used
  Use position (2).

Important

- When storing printed documents on the Output Stacker, always use it in position (1). If you do not, printed documents may not be dropped into the Output Stacker, and the printed surface may become soiled.
- The Output Stacker can hold one sheet. When printing multiple pages, remove each sheet after it is printed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Use the Output Stacker in the normal position (a).
However, for some types of media, you can use the stacker in the position for easy removal (b). To switch the stacker to the position for easy removal, move the Support Rod to the position of (b). This position enables printed documents to be removed more easily.
For information on the position for easy removal, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Working With Various Print Jobs

Printing Photos and Images

Printing Photos and Images (Windows)

Printing is easy when you simply choose the print target.

Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for photos and images

	Print Target	Description
	Highest Quality	Setting optimized for printing at the highest level of quality.
	Photo (from digital camera)	Setting optimized for printing photographic images from digital cameras.
	Poster (Graphic Image)	Settings optimized for printing posters mainly composed of photos.
	POP Ad	Setting optimized for printing vivid, eye-catching store posters combining images and text.
	Scanned Image	Setting optimized for printing scanned images with accurate color reproduction to match the original images.
	Draft	Setting optimized for high-speed draft printing.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Caution

- Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (**Advanced Settings**)
  For details on **Advanced Settings**, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.180)
- For instructions on printing photos and images, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.
  - Printing Photos and Images (Windows) (→P.146)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X)

Printing is easy when you simply choose the print target.

Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for photos and images

	Print Target	Description
	Highest Quality	Setting optimized for printing at the highest level of quality.
	Photo	Setting optimized for printing photographic images from digital cameras.
	Poster (Photos)	Settings optimized for printing posters mainly composed of photos.
	Poster (Text, Illustrations)	Setting optimized for printing vivid, eye-catching store posters combining images and text.
	Scanned Image	Setting optimized for printing scanned images with accurate color reproduction to match the original images.
	Draft	Setting optimized for high-speed draft printing.

Caution

- Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (**Advanced Settings**)
  For details on **Advanced Settings**, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.180)
- For instructions on printing photos and images, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.
  - Printing Photos and Images (Windows) (→P.146)
  - Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X) (→P.148)

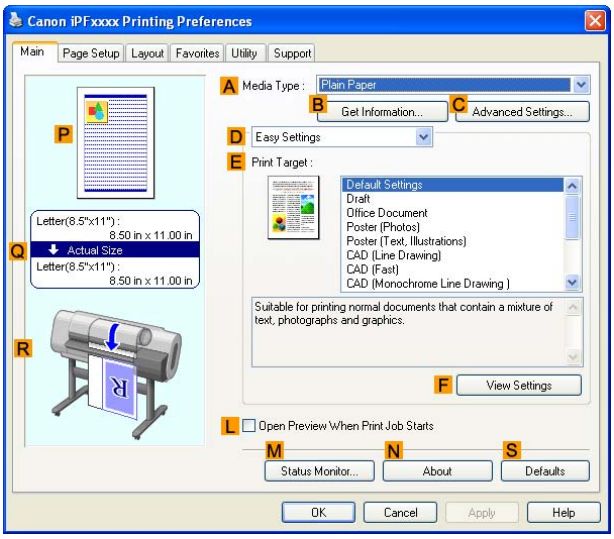
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Photos and Images (Windows)

This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.
   In the A **Media Type**, choose the type of paper used for printing, such as Glossy Paper, Coated Paper, and so on. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

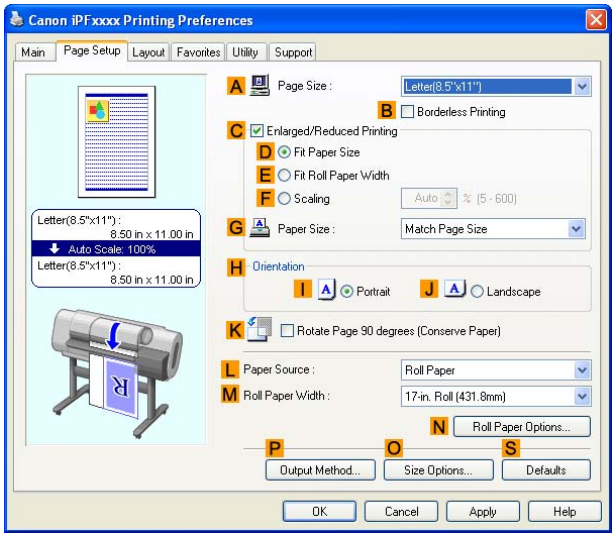
   Note
   - The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. (See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).)

5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photos** in the E **Print Target** list.

   Note
   - You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**, and then click **OK**.
10. Specify additional printing conditions.
    For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.333)
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

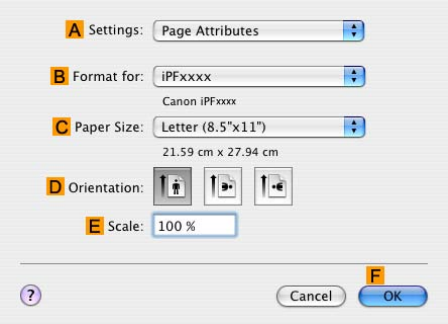
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X)

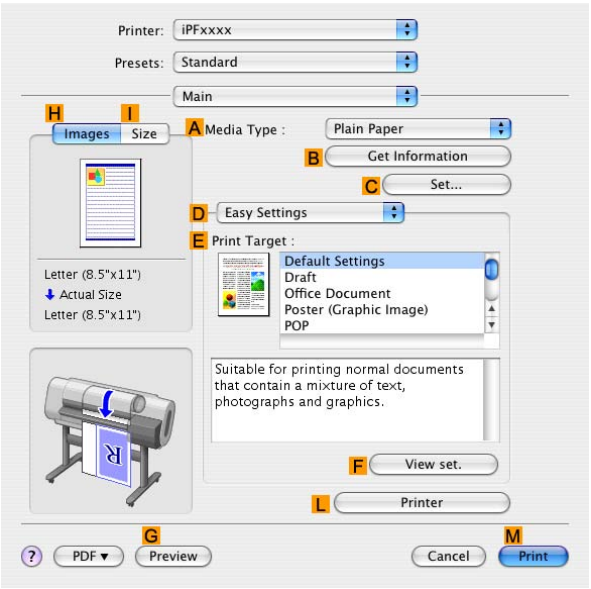
This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page Size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper Type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper Width: 10 inches (254 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.

Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

Note

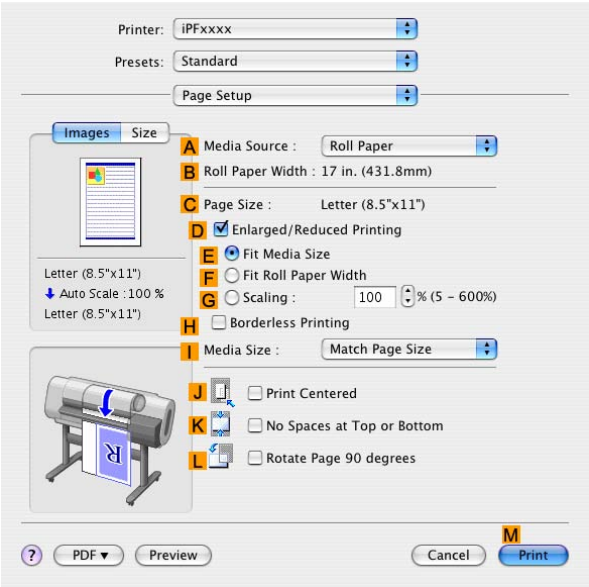
- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).

8. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- For information on settings optimized for printing photos and images, see “Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X)”. (→P.144)
- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View set.**.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



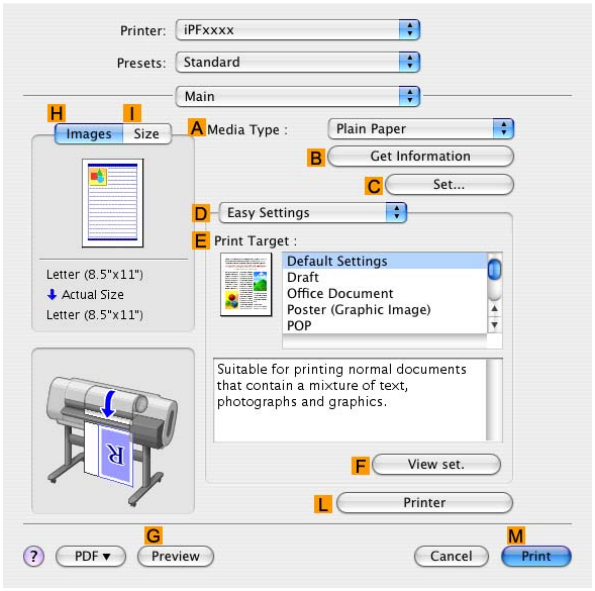
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

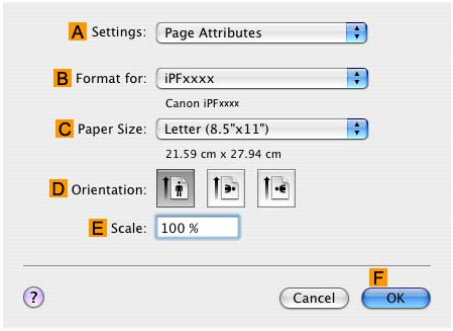
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Paper Width** list in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B** **Roll Paper Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



12. Make sure **C** **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in **C** **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



13. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.379)

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing CAD Drawings

Printing CAD Drawings

Using this printer, you can print fine lines and text clearly and sharply. It's easy to produce highly precise drawings from CAD applications.

Note

- In Windows, you can print highly precise drawings using the provided imagePROGRAF HDI Driver for AutoCAD/AutoCAD LT.
  For details on the HDI driver, see HDI Driver .

For instructions on CAD printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) (→P.154)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) (→P.156)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows)

Printing is easy when you simply choose the type of original to print.

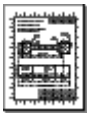
Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for line drawings and text

	Print Target	Description
	CAD (Line Drawing)	Settings optimized to print intricate lines in CAD drawings clearly.
	CAD (Fast)	Settings optimized for fast printing of CAD drawings.
	**CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)** (Windows) **CAD (B/W Line Drawing)** (Mac OS 9)	Settings optimized to print black lines in CAD drawings clearly.
	CAD (High Accuracy)	Settings optimized for attractive printing of highly precise documents such as CAD drawings with smooth lines and small text.
	Poster (Notice Announcement)	Settings optimized for printing announcements such as wall newspapers and other notices with a large amount of text.
	3D/GIS Map	Settings optimized for printing 3D CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and maps, including GIS maps.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (**Advanced Settings**)
  For details on **Advanced Settings**, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.180)

For instructions on printing line drawings and text, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) (→P.154)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS X)

Printing is easy when you simply choose the type of original to print.

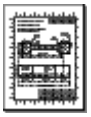
Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for line drawings and text

	Print Target	Description
	CAD (Line Drawing)	Settings optimized to print intricate lines in CAD drawings clearly.
	CAD (Fast)	Settings optimized for fast printing of CAD drawings.
	**CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)**	Settings optimized to print black lines in CAD drawings clearly.
	CAD (High Accuracy)	Settings optimized for attractive printing of highly precise documents such as CAD drawings with smooth lines and small text.
	Poster (Notice Announcement)	Settings optimized for printing announcements such as wall newspapers and other notices with a large amount of text.
	3D CAD, GIS	Settings optimized for printing 3D CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and maps, including GIS maps.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (**Advanced Settings**)
  For details on **Advanced Settings**, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.180)

For instructions on printing line drawings and text, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) (→P.154)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) (→P.156)

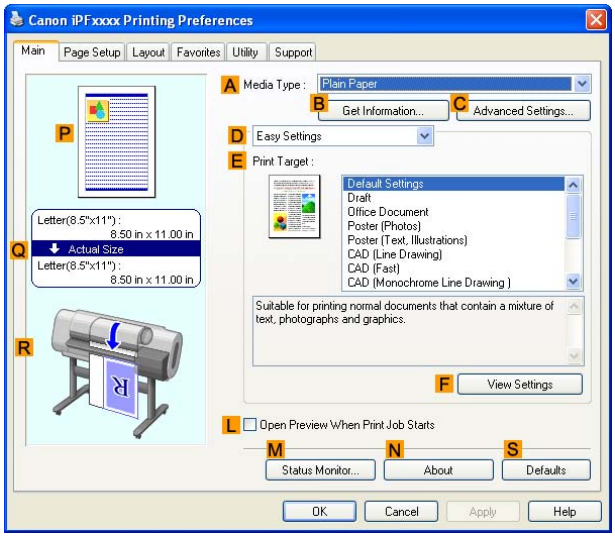
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows)

This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

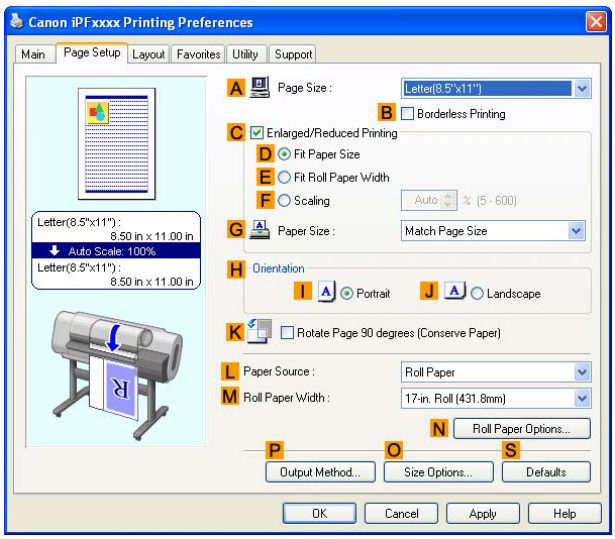


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** or **CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
10. Specify additional printing conditions.
    For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.333)
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

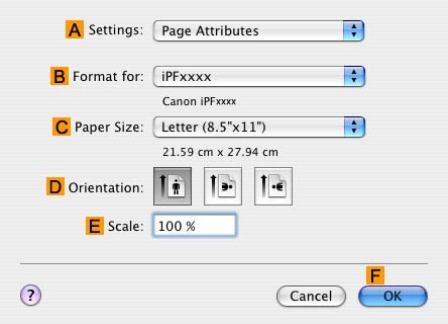
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X)

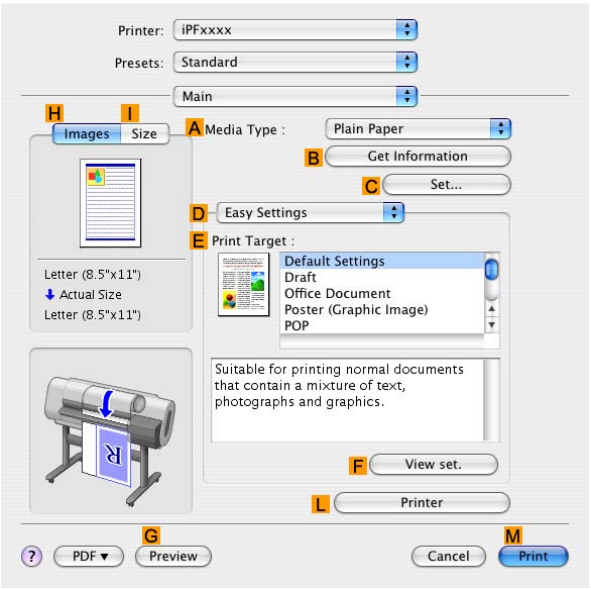
This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



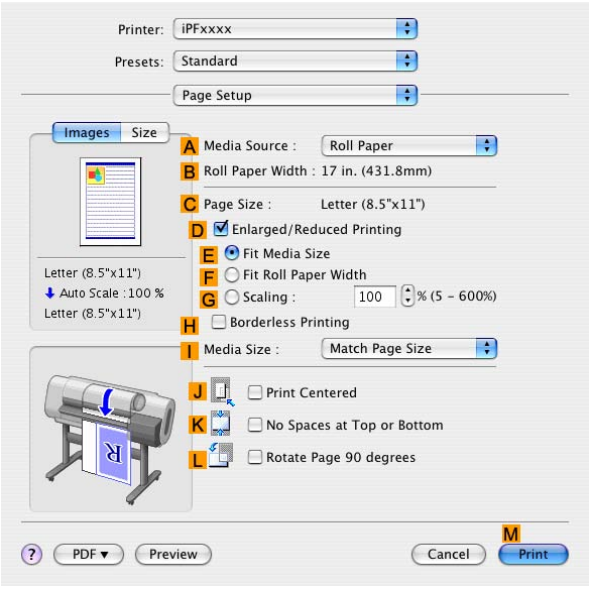
7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** or **CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View set.**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

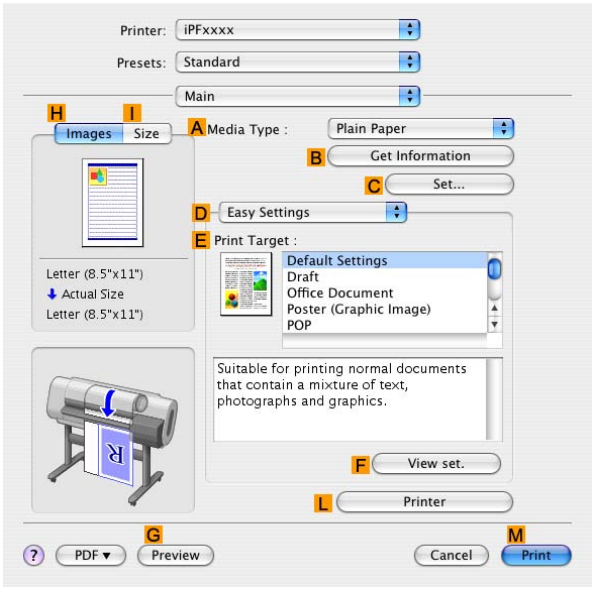


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

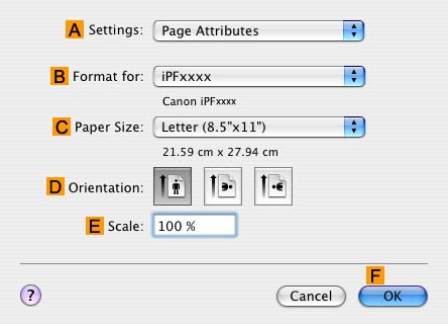
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Make sure C **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A3**.



13. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.379)

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings

You can complete color settings when **Color (CAD)** is selected in **Color Mode**.
Colors can be adjusted before printing as follows when **Color Compatibility** is selected.

Note

- **Color (CAD)** is displayed when you select **Advanced Settings** on the **Main** sheet and set **Print Priority** to **Line Drawing/Text**.

Color Compatibility

Color Setting Item

Color Setting	Description
Color (CAD) 1	Print in standard colors.
Color (CAD) 2	Print in brighter colors.
Color (CAD) 3	Print emulating the Canon BJ-W3000/W3050, in colors resembling colors produced by these printers.
Color (CAD) 4	Print emulating the HP Designjet 500/800, in colors resembling colors produced by these printers.
Color (CAD) 5	Print emulating the HP Designjet 1000, in colors resembling colors produced by this printer.
Color (CAD) 6	Print emulating the HP Designjet 4000/4500, in colors resembling colors produced by these printers.

Important

- If you have selected **Color (CAD) 3**, **Color (CAD) 4**, **Color (CAD) 5**, or **Color (CAD) 6**, it is not possible to match the colors and image quality produced by the specified printer exactly.

For instructions on configuring **Color Compatibility**, refer to the following topics.

- Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings (Windows) (→P.160)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

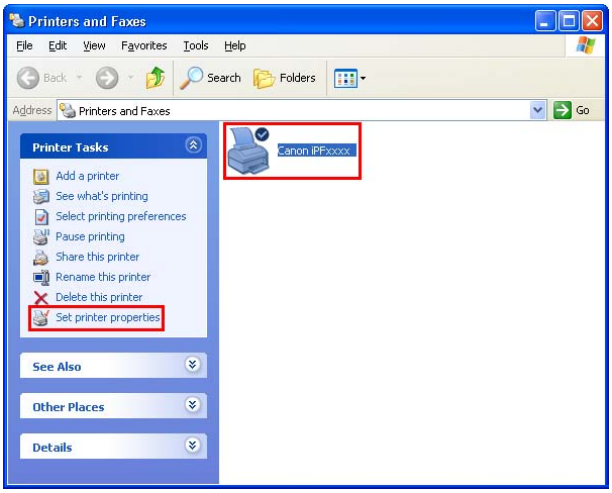
Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings (Windows)

You can complete color settings when **Color (CAD)** is selected in **Color Mode**.

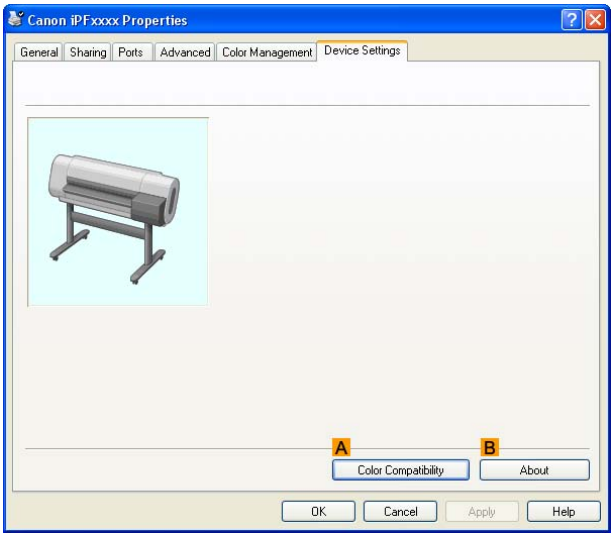
Note

- **Color (CAD)** is displayed when you select **Advanced Settings** on the **Main** sheet and set **Print Priority** to **Line Drawing/Text**.

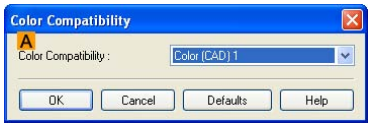
1. Click **start** > **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**).
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer properties dialog box.



3. Click the **Device Settings** tab to display the **Device Settings** sheet.



4. Click A **Color Compatibility** to display the **Color Compatibility** dialog box.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

5. Select the desired color settings in the **A Color Compatibility** list.

Note

- For details on color settings, see “Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings”. (→P.159)

For printing instructions, refer to the following topic.

- Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) (→P.183)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

HP-GL/2 Printing

This printer supports the original Canon GARO printer control language as well as HP-GL/2 and HP RTL(*1) emulation.(*2) When printing from applications that support HP-GL/2 output, specify HP-GL/2 in the application's plotter output settings.

Note

- For instructions on configuring these settings, refer to the software documentation.

The printer automatically switches to the corresponding processing depending on whether a GARO, HP-GL/2, or HP RTL job is received. Configure the optional settings for HP-GL/2 emulation on the printer control panel. (→P.50)
This printer can emulate the following printers using HP-GL/2 emulation.

Emulated Printers	
Canon	W3000 and W3050(*3)
Hewlett-Packard	Designjet 450c, Designjet 750c Plus, and Designjet 750c

*1: HP-GL/2: Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language 2; HP RTL: Hewlett-Packard Raster Transfer Language
*2: It may not be possible to print jobs with excessively large amounts of data correctly.
*3: Layout templates are not supported.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Office Documents

Printing Office Documents

Printing is easy when you simply choose the type of original to print.

Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for office documents

	Print Target	Description
	Office Document	Settings optimized for clear printing of office documents such as handouts.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings)
  For details on Advanced Settings, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.180)

For instructions on printing office documents, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Office Documents (Windows) (→P.164)
- Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X) (→P.166)

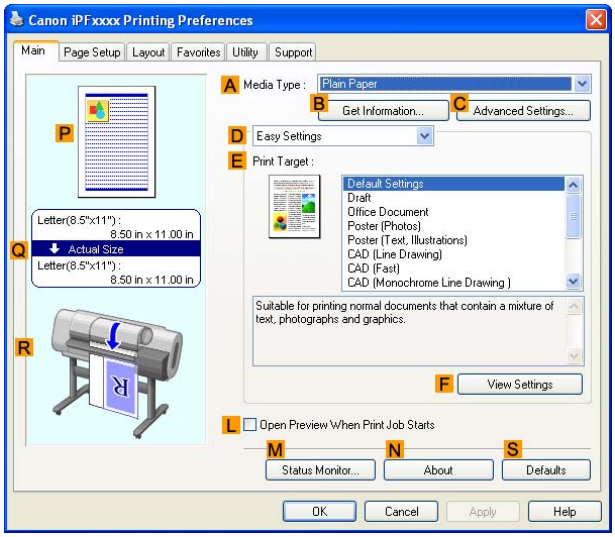
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Office Documents (Windows)

This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing software or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

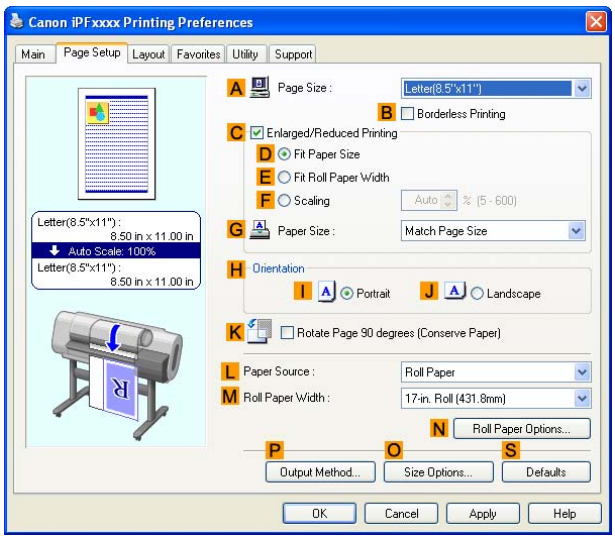


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup**sheet.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. Select sheets in the L **Paper Source** list.
9. Specify additional printing conditions.
   For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.333)
10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Caution

- Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.

Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

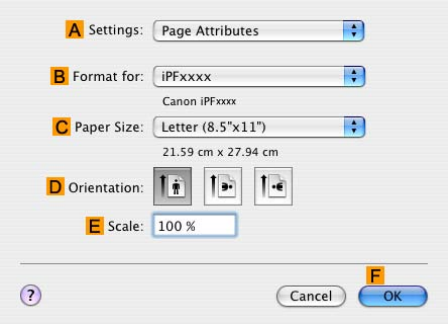
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X)

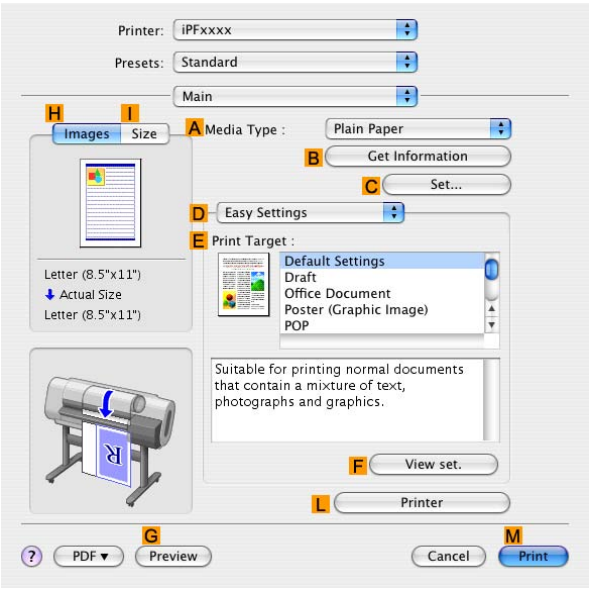
This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in])/Letter
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in.])/Letter

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4 - Cut Sheet**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



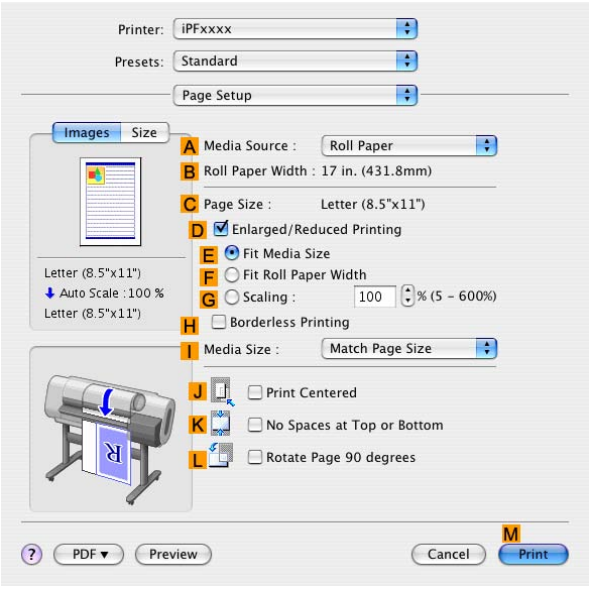
7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View set.**.

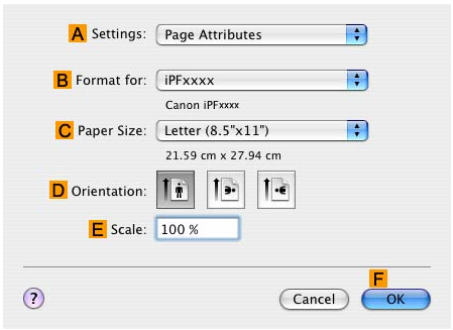
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Select sheets in the A **Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



12. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.379)

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using the Printer With a Color imageRUNNER

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
For instructions on printing enlargements of scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER, refer to the following topic.

- Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) (→P.168)
- Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X) (→P.170)

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.
This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.
To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

1. Register a hot folder on your computer.
   Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.
2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.
   Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

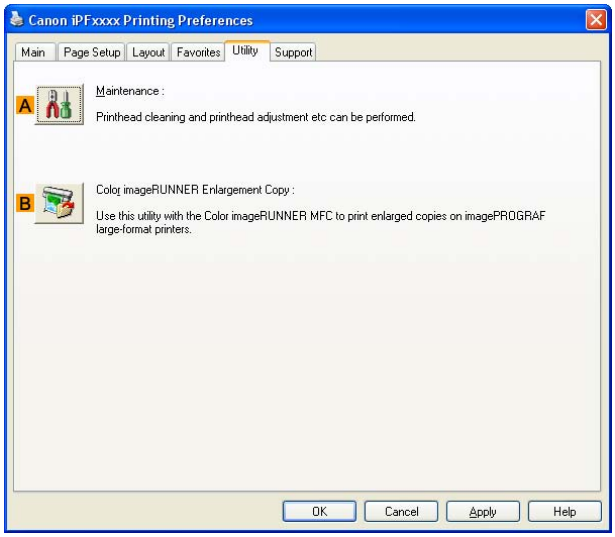
Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders.
Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.345)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Click the **Utility** tab to display the **Utility** sheet.



3. Click **B Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** to start the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.
4. Use the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility to register or modify hot folders.
   For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.
For instructions on assigning scanning settings and destinations to a **Favorites** button, refer to the setting manual, displayed by clicking **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Setup Manual** button of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility, or refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer. For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.
   Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Note

- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, refer to Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.
This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.
To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

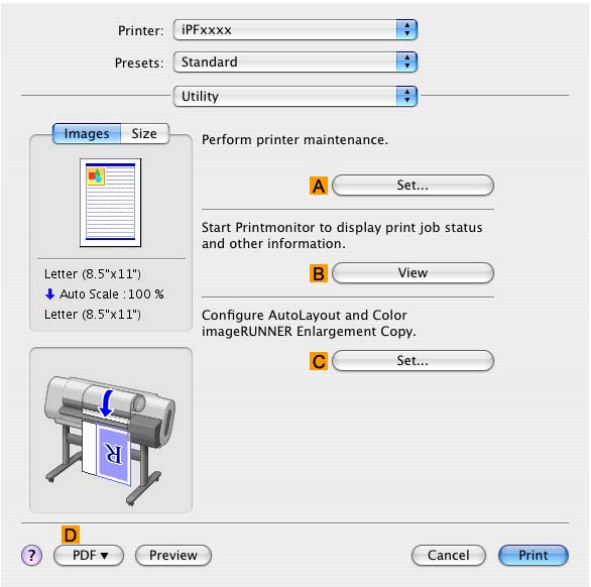
1. Register a hot folder on your computer.
   Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.
2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.
   Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders. Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. To display the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, either double-click the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.app** icon after navigating to **Canon Utilities** - **imagePROGRAF** in the **Applications** folder or click **C** **Set** in the **Utility** pane.



2. In **Enlarged Copy Settings**, click **Add** or **Edit** and either create or modify the hot folder.
   For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.
For instructions on assigning scanning and sending settings to the **Favorites** button, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer.
For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.
   Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Note

- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Enhanced Printing Options

Adjusting Images

Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver

Color settings specified in the application for your documents are essentially given priority over other settings for each print job, but further color adjustment is possible in the printer driver.

Color Mode

Choose how the printer driver processes color, as desired.
The available options vary depending on the color mode.

Color Mode	Description	Color Adjustment
Color	Print in color.	You can adjust the color balance and color-matching method.
Monochrome	Print in grayscale.	You can adjust the color balance.
Color (CAD)	A color mode optimized for line drawings (2D-CAD). Lines in red, yellow, and other colors are printed especially clearly. **Color (CAD)** enables adjustment of color settings. (→P.159)	You can adjust the color balance.
Monochrome (BK ink)	A color mode for printing line drawings. Only Black ink is used.	You can adjust the color balance.
Monochrome Bitmap	Print in a color mode for CAD, using Color Ink, with all non-white portions printed in black.	No color adjustment is supported.

Color Adjustment

You can adjust colors separately for images, graphics, and text documents.

Adjustment Item	Description
Cyan	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of **Cyan**, **Magenta**, and **Yellow**.
Magenta	
Yellow	
Gray Tone	Adjust gray tones to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.
Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Matching

You can choose the color-matching mode and method.
By adjusting the color-matching mode and method, you can make printed colors match the colors of on-screen images more closely.

Matching Mode	Description	Notes
Driver Matching Mode	Color adjustment based on the original color profile of the printer driver	This is the default color-matching method. Normally, use **Driver Matching Mode**.
ICC Matching Mode	Color adjustment based on ICC color profiles (an international standard) using the printer driver	You can select the printer profile in the **Printer Profile Settings** list.
Driver ICM Mode	Color adjustment based on the standard Windows ICM function. The printer driver adjusts the colors.	Available when using Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, or Windows Server 2008.
Host ICM Mode	Color adjustment based on the standard Windows ICM function. Windows adjusts the colors.	
ColorSync	Color adjustment based on the standard Mac OS ColorSync function. Mac OS adjusts the colors.	Available when using Mac OS X 10.2.8-10.4.
Off (No Correction)	No color-matching	Choose this option for color-matching by the software application or with your own color profile, when you want to disable color-matching by the printer driver.

Matching Method	Description	Notes
Auto	Color-matching optimized for images, graphics, or text	The available options and their display order vary depending on your selection in Color-Matching Mode, as well as the operating system.
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for photos. Print images with smooth gradations and colors closer to those as displayed on the screen.	
Colorimetric	Color-matching with adjustment to remove color from white area. Colors in data are reproduced accurately.	
Colorimetric (No Wht-pnt Corr)	Color-matching without white adjustment to reflect the profile of original data. Colors in data are reproduced accurately. Without white adjustment, colors are added to white areas.	
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for graphics. This option emphasizes color saturation.	

Note

- Be sure to calibrate your monitor colors correctly if you adjust the colors for printing. If monitor colors are not calibrated correctly, you may not obtain the desired printing results. For instructions on monitor calibration, refer to the documentation for your monitor and operating system.

For instructions on color adjustment, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

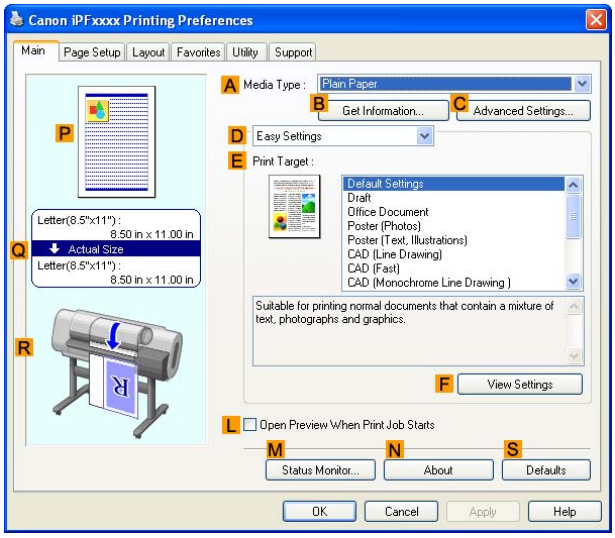
- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) (→P.174)
- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X) (→P.177)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

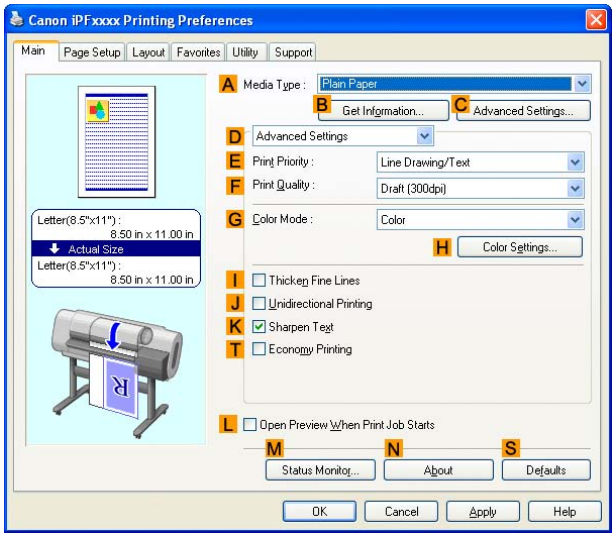
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



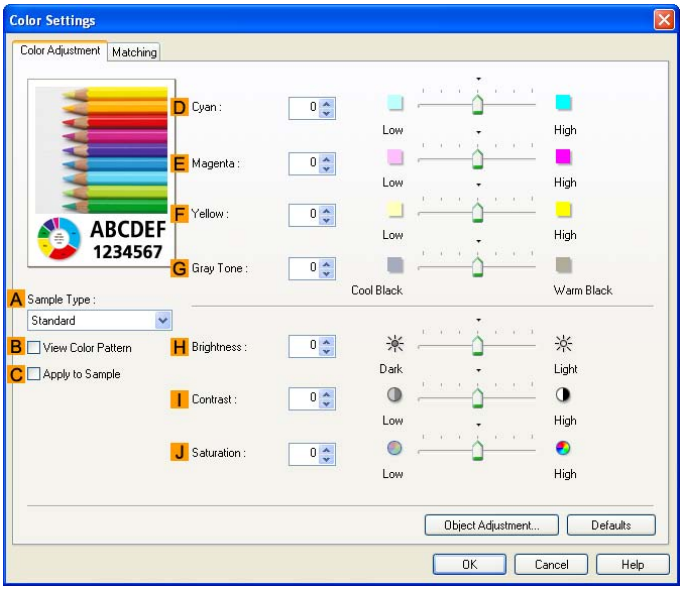
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



6. Click **Color** in the G **Color Mode** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click **H Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

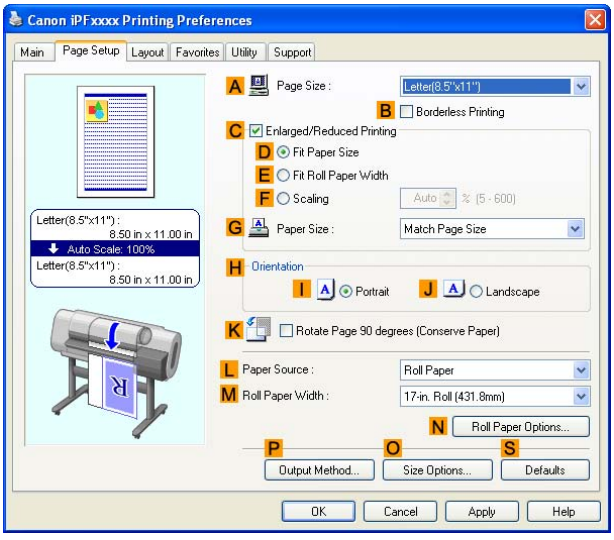


8. On the **Color Adjustment** sheet, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

Adjustment Item	Description
D Cyan	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow.
E Magenta	
F Yellow	
G Gray Tone	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.
H Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
I Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
J Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.

9. Close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

10. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

11. Confirm the settings of **A Page Size**, **L Paper Source**, and so on.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

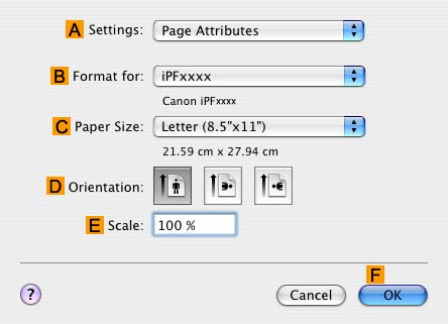
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

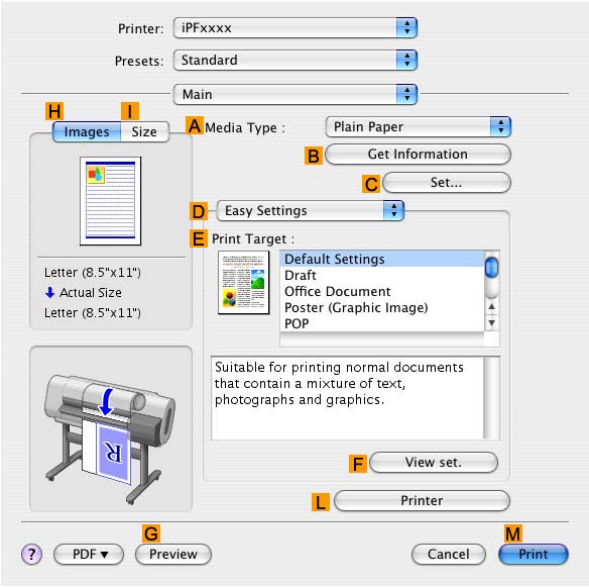
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



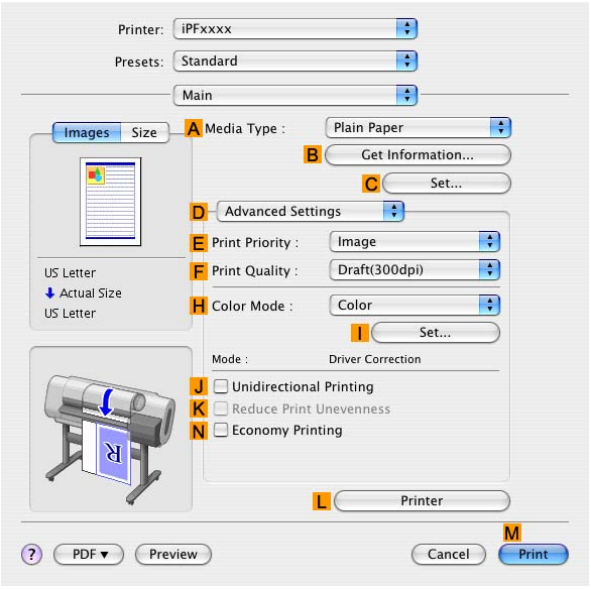
2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



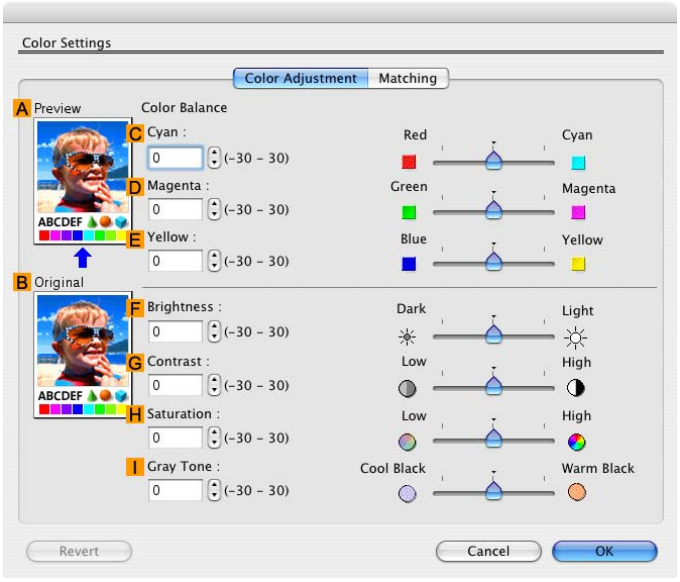
7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9. Click **Color** in the H **Color Mode** list.
10. Click I **Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



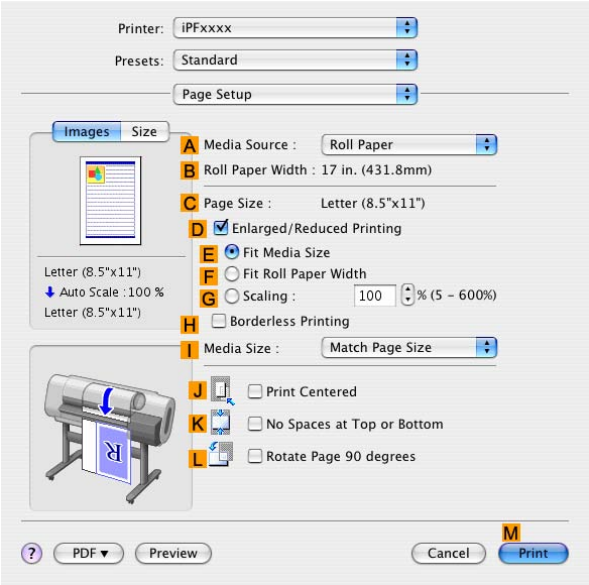
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

11. On the **Color Adjustment** pane, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

Adjustment Item	Description
D **Cyan**	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow.
E **Magenta**	
F **Yellow**	
G **Gray Tone**	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.
H **Brightness**	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
I **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
J **Saturation**	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Confirm the settings of A **Media Source** and C **Page Size**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing

You can specify detailed print settings as desired for the quality level, colors, and other criteria.

Advanced Settings

For printing results that appear just as expected for your original, you can specify which graphic elements and colors to prioritize for printing.

Note

- **Easy Settings** are also available, providing convenient presets. To use the presets, simply choose the printing application.
  For details on **Easy Settings**, refer to the following topics.
  - Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X) (→P.144)
  - Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS X) (→P.153)
  - Printing Office Documents (→P.163)

Print Priority

Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing.

Print Priority (*1)	Description
Image	A setting for posters or other documents made up mainly of photos or images, or for emphasizing photos or images in printed documents.
Line Drawing/Text	Choose this setting for CAD drawings made up mainly of intricate lines, or wall newspapers and other notices with a large amount of text. Suitable for emphasizing detailed text in printed documents. However, the quality may not be sufficient when printing photos or images that require a lot of color coverage. In this case, choose “Image” instead.
Office Document	Choose this setting for better legibility of documents combining text and graphics, such as documents and presentation material created with typical office applications.

*1: Options suitable for the selected type of paper are listed under Print Priority.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Print Quality

Choose the print quality.
The printing mode is determined by a combination of the print quality and resolution.

Print Quality (*1)	Description	Print Priority
Highest	A setting for printing at the highest resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.	**Image**
High	Choose this setting to print at high resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in “Standard” or “Draft” modes, but this mode offers exceptional printing quality.	**Image** **Line Drawing/Text**
Standard	Choose this setting to print at standard resolution when quality and speed are both important. Printing takes less time than in “Highest” or “High” mode.	**Image** **Line Drawing/Text** **Office Document**
Draft	Choose this setting to print faster. Printing in draft mode can help you work more efficiently when checking layouts.	**Image** **Line Drawing/Text**

*1: Options suitable for the selected Print Priority are listed under Print Quality.

Color settings

Setting Item	Options	Description
Color Mode (*1)	**Color** **Monochrome** **Color (CAD)** **Monochrome (BK ink)** **Monochrome Bitmap**	Choose whether to print in color or monochrome. (→P.172)
Color Adjustment	**Cyan** **Magenta** **Yellow** **Gray Tone** **Brightness** **Contrast** **Saturation**	You can adjust the levels of cyan, magenta, and yellow as well as the brightness, contrast, saturation, and gray tones. If you choose **Monochrome** or **Monochrome (BK ink)** in **Color Mode** only **Brightness** and **Contrast** can be adjusted. **Image**, **Graphics**, and **Text** are available as **Object Adjustment** options. (In Windows and Mac OS X 10.5 only.)
Color-Matching Modes	**Driver Matching Mode** **ICC Matching Mode** **Driver ICM Mode** **Host ICM Mode** **Off**	Choose the color-matching mode. Other color-matching modes may be provided by the computer operating system, such as ICM and ColorSync.
Color-Matching Method (*2)	**Auto** **Perceptual** **Colorimetric** **Saturation** other	Choose the color-matching method. The available options vary depending on your selection in “Color-Matching Mode.”

*1: Options suitable for the selected Print Priority are listed under Color Mode.
*2: The order of options displayed varies depending on the operating system.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Enhancing printing quality

Setting Item	Description
Unidirectional Printing	Choosing unidirectional printing can improve printing results if lines are printed crooked or images are uneven. However, this takes more time than regular printing.
Thicken Fine Lines (Windows) **Thicken Fine Lines** (Mac OS X)	Choose this option to make fine lines clearer in CAD drawings or similar documents.
Sharpen Text (*1)	Choose this option to print intricate text more distinctly.
Reduce Print Unevenness (*2)	Choose this option to counteract uneven printing.
Economy Printing	When this mode is selected, less ink is consumed than in regular printing, but the quality is diminished. Select this mode if you want to conserve ink when checking drawings, for example. Depending on the **Media Type** and **Print Quality** settings, this mode may not be available.

*1: Displayed in Windows and Mac OS X 10.5.
*2: Displayed in Mac OS X.

Note

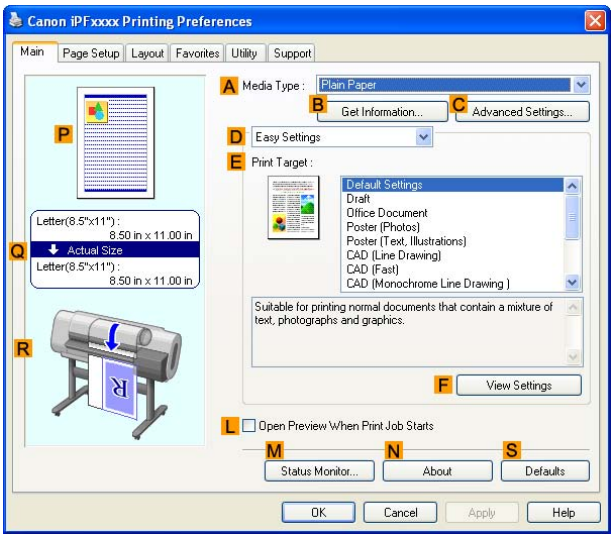
- To print at a higher level of quality, in the printer driver, choose **High** or **Highest** in **Print Quality**, and choose **Unidirectional Printing** as the direction of printing.
- For instructions on specifying the print quality and color settings before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.
  - Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) (→P.183)
  - Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X) (→P.185)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

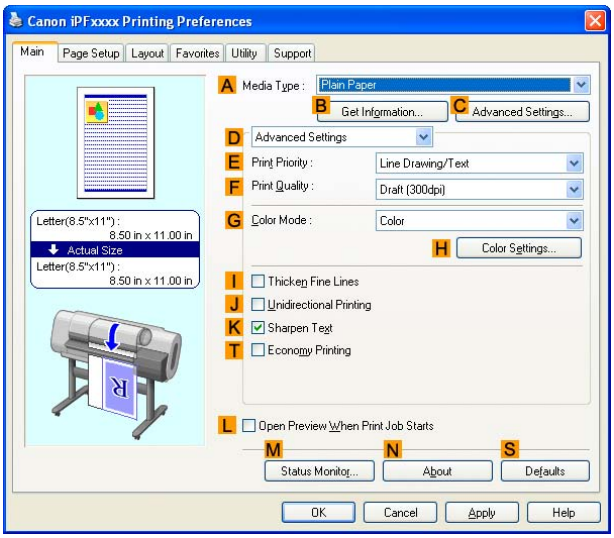
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. As an example, this topic describes how to print CAD drawings as clearly as possible, with sharp lines and text.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



6. Click **Line Drawing/Text** in the E **Print Priority** list.
7. Click **High (1200dpi)** in the F **Print Quality** list.

Note

- Options displayed in the F **Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

8. Click **Color (CAD)** in the G **Color Mode** list.

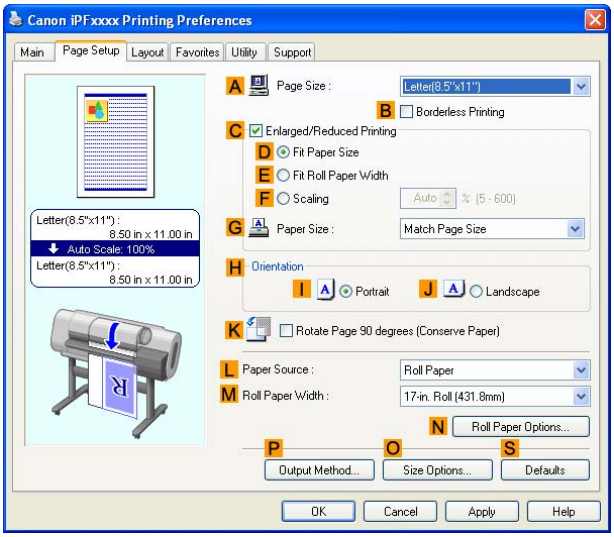
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. To adjust the color, click **H Color Settings**.

Note

- For instructions on adjusting color, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.172)

10. Select the **K Sharpen Text** check box.
11. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



12. Confirm the settings of **A Page Size**, **L Paper Source**, and so on.
13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

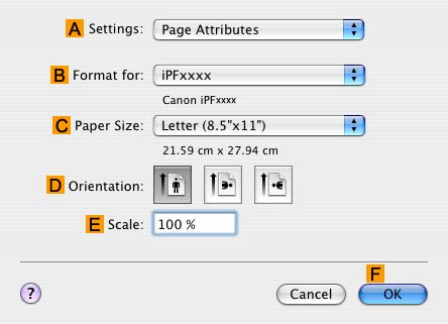
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

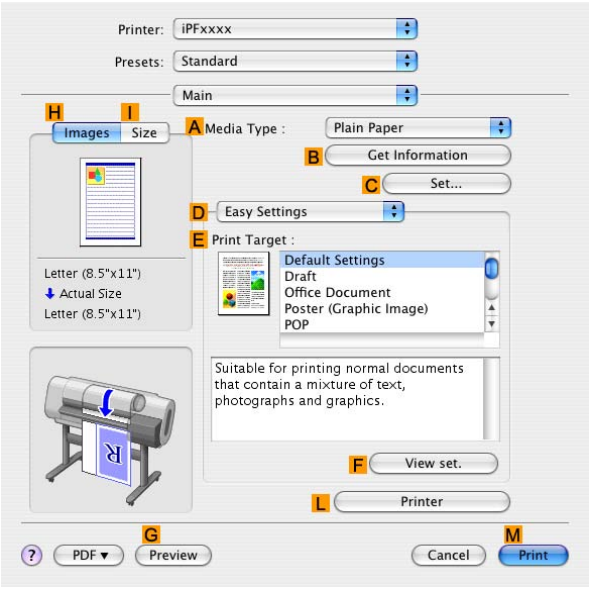
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. As an example, this topic describes how to print CAD drawings as clearly as possible, with sharp lines and text.

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



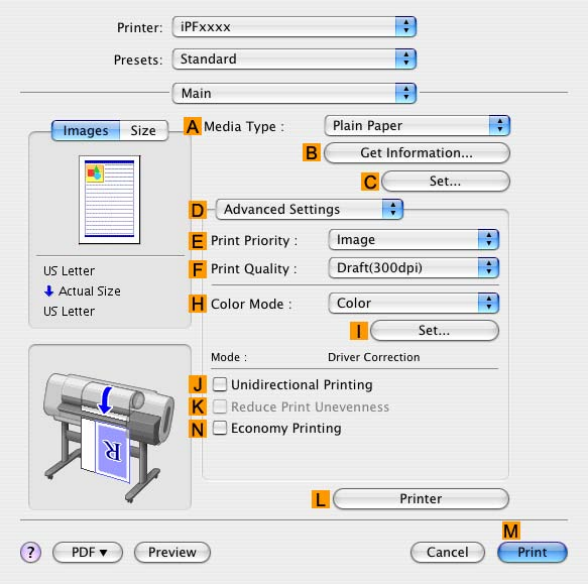
2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9. Click **Line Drawing** in the E **Print Priority** list.
10. Click **High(1200dpi)** in the F **Print Quality** list.

Note

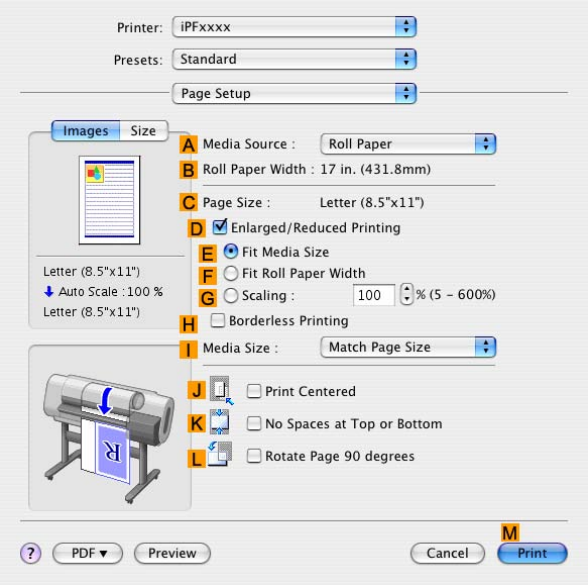
- Options displayed in the F **Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

11. Click **Color (CAD)** in the H **Color Mode** list.
12. To adjust the color, click I **Set**.

Note

- For instructions on adjusting color, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.172)

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

14. Confirm the settings of A **Media Source** and C **Page Size**.
15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Choosing Paper for Printing

Choosing a Paper for Printing

Choosing the right paper for your particular printing application will give you the best printing results.

Media type

The printer and printer driver offer print settings optimized for various paper characteristics.

Note

- For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)
- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. For information about the Media Configuration Tool, see the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).
- An error message is displayed on the printer Control Panel if the paper type as specified in the printer driver does not match the type specified on the printer. Although you can print under these conditions, the printing results may not be suitable.

If the paper type is not listed for selection

If the type of paper loaded is not listed among the options for selection, try printing on Special 1, Special 2, and so on. Note that higher numbers in this setting enable more vivid colors but may also cause colors to run together.

For instructions on specifying the paper type before printing, refer to the following topics.

- Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) (→P.189)
- Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet) (→P.190)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Selecting the Paper Type (Roll)

When changing the type of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the type of paper as follows.

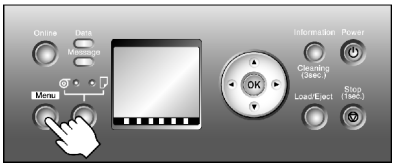
Important

- For best printing results, the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper. Be sure to select the type of paper to use correctly before printing.
- Because the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper, the margins and the size of printed images may vary depending on the type of paper used. If margins and the size of images are not as you expected, adjust the paper feed amount and Printhead height.
(→P.498)
(→P.497)

Note

- After you load the roll, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen, unless a barcode has been printed on the roll or you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper. Select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
If no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, specify the roll length after the paper type. (→P.106)

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

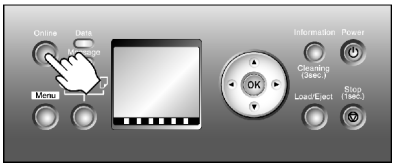


2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Roll Media Type**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- For details on types of paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)By factory default, Plain Paper is selected.
- If you move the Release Lever, the setting automatically reverts to the previously selected paper.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect the printing quality.
- If you select a type of paper for which width detection is **Off** when detection of the remaining roll paper is also **Off**, you will need to advance the paper manually to the starting position for printing. (→P.136)

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

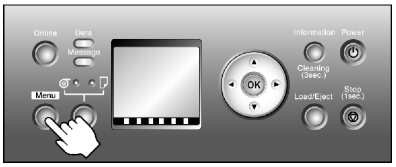
Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet)

When changing the type of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the type of paper as follows.

Note

- After you load the sheet, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen. In this case, select the paper type, and then press the **OK** button. The printer will automatically go online.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

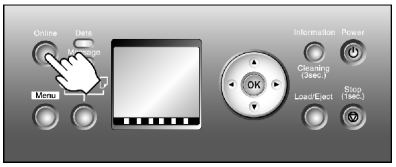


2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cut Sheet Type**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- For details on paper types, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96) Plain Paper is selected by factory default.
  If you move the Release Lever, the setting automatically reverts to Plain Paper.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect the printing quality.
- If you select a type of paper for which Media Width Detection is deactivated (**Off** is selected), you must advance the paper manually to the position for printing. (→P.136)

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver

If you replace the paper, complete the printer driver settings for the paper type and size.
For instructions on configuring paper settings in the printer driver, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.192)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.194)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

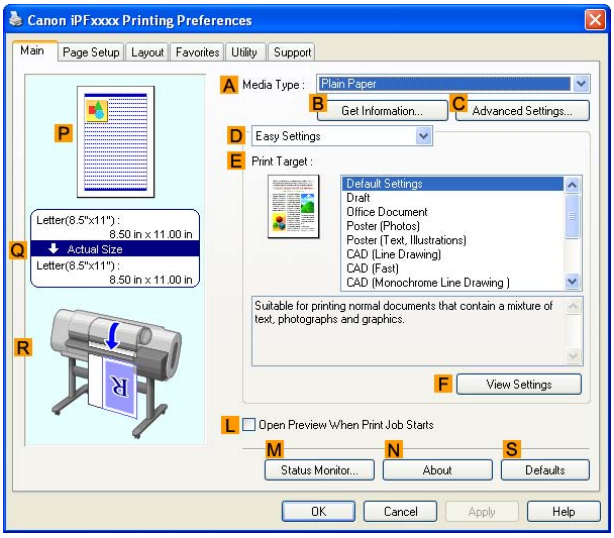
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

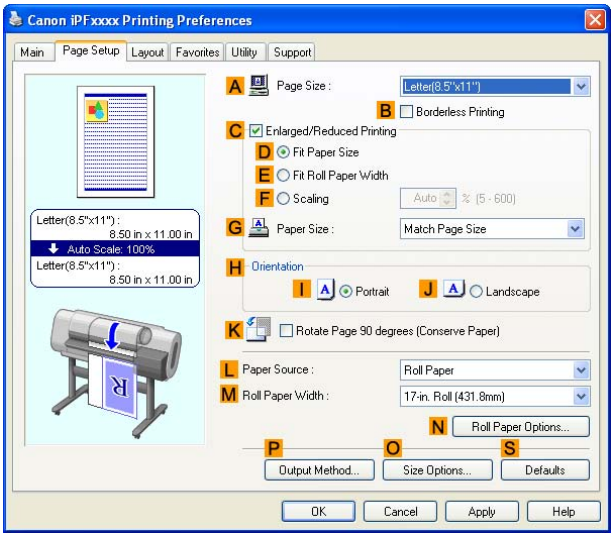
Important

- Always specify the same type and size of paper in the printer menu and printer driver.
  If the type and size do not match, an error message will be displayed and printing is not possible.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the A **Page Size** list, select the size of the original as specified in the application.
7. In the L **Paper Source** list, select how paper is supplied.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in **L Paper Source**, select the width of the loaded roll in **M Roll Paper Width**.

Note

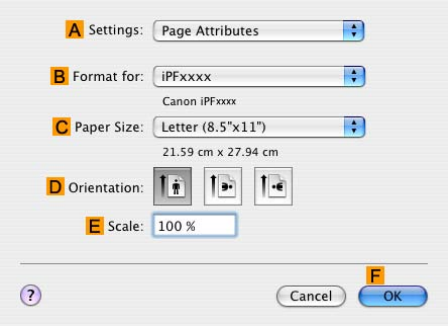
- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications.
  For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.333)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

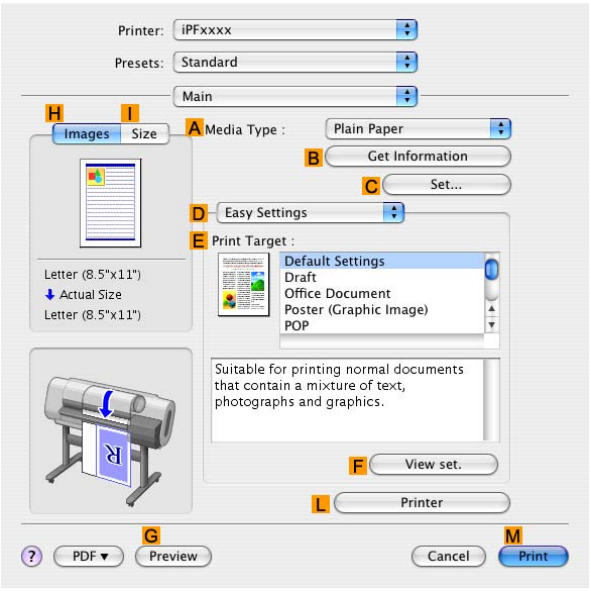
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



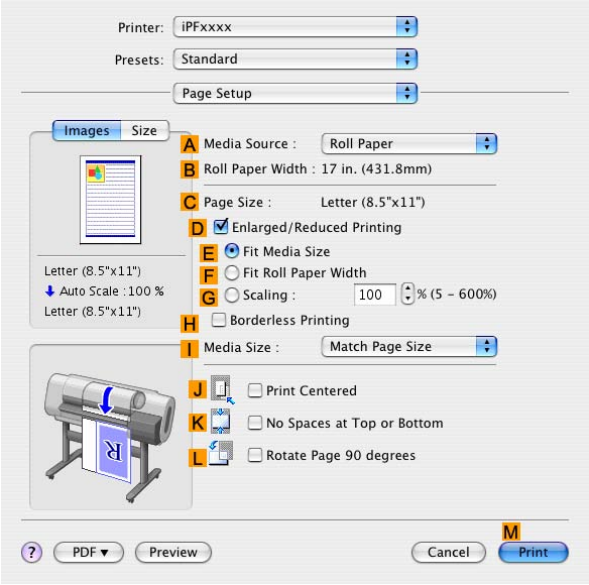
2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

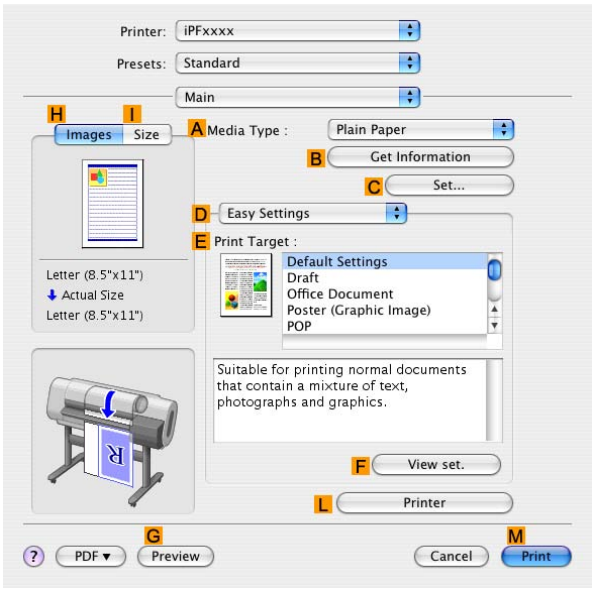
8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. In the A **Media Source** list, select how paper is supplied.
10. If you have selected **Cut Sheet** or **Manual** in A **Media Source**, make sure the size as selected in **Page Setup** is displayed in C **Page Size**. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in A **Media Source**, make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



Note

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications.
  For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.379)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing enlargements or reductions

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size

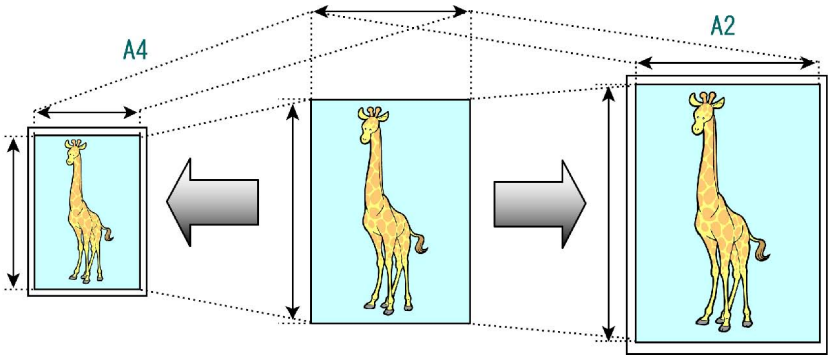
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Fit Paper Size

Enlarge or reduce the original to match the size of the paper you are using.



For instructions on resizing originals to match the paper size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) (→P.197)
- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) (→P.199)

Note

- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

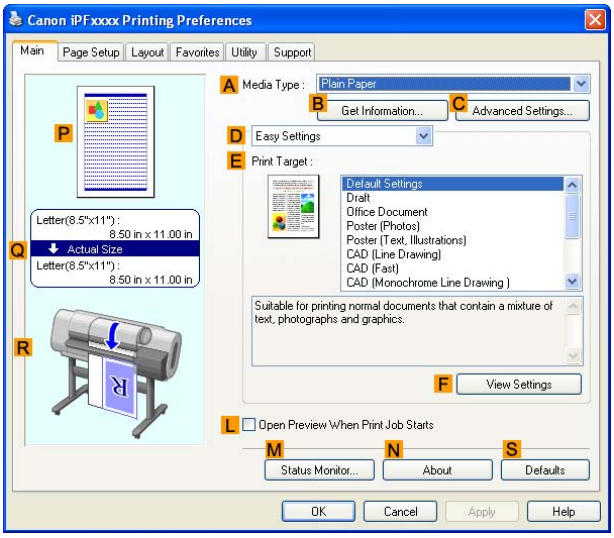
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)

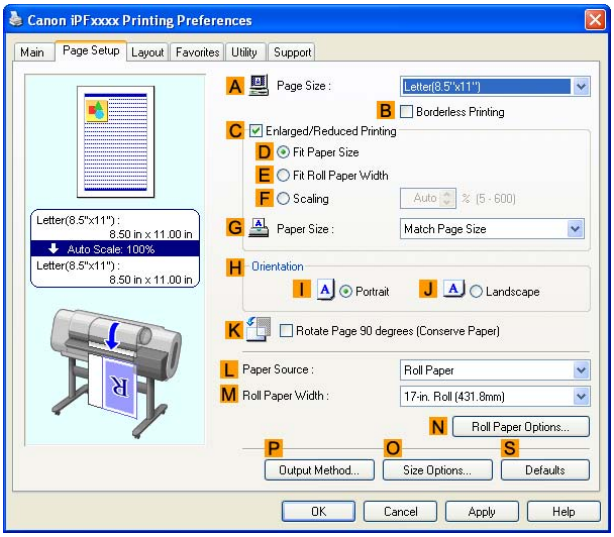
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
9. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
10. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
11. Select the D **Fit Paper Size** check box.
12. Click **ISO A3** in the G **Paper Size** list.
13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

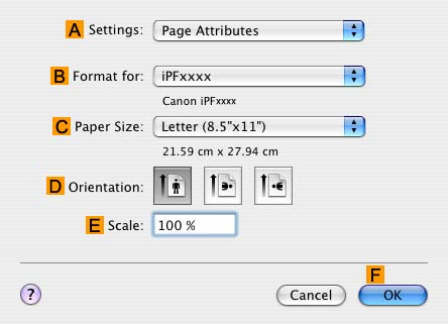
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)

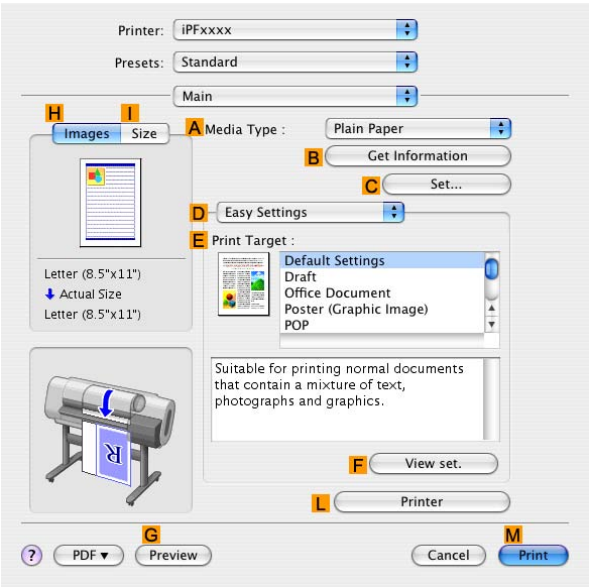
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



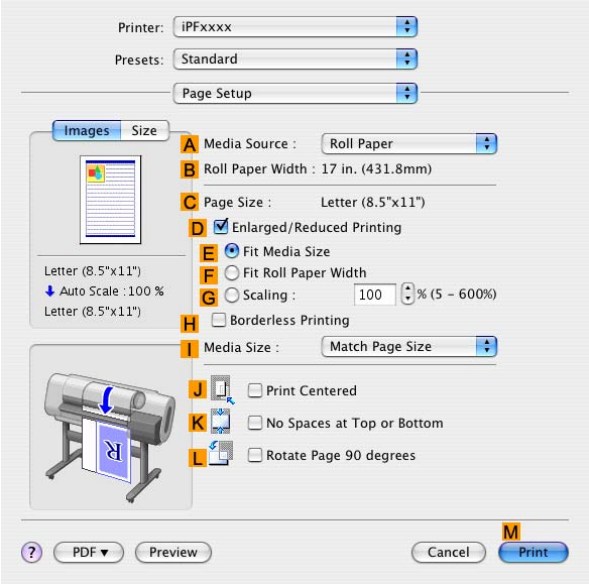
2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

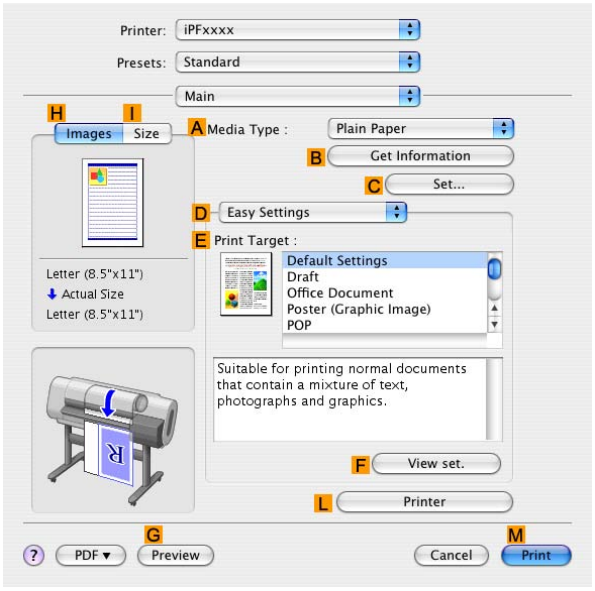


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A** **Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

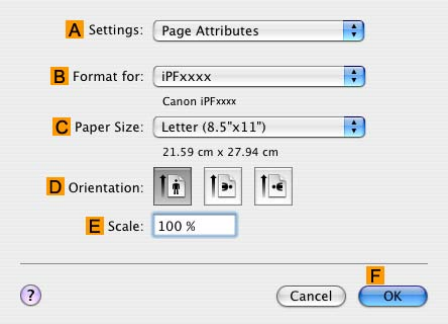
Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B** **Roll Paper Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Make sure C **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
14. Make sure E **Fit Media Size** is selected.
15. Click **ISO A3** in the I **Media Size** list.
16. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width

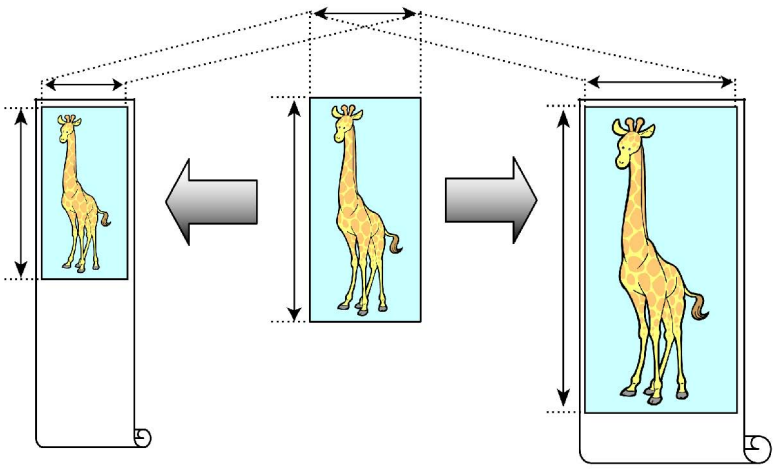
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Fit Roll Paper Width

Enlarge or reduce the original as a whole to match the roll paper width, as desired.



For instructions on resizing originals to match the roll paper width, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) (→P.203)
- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) (→P.205)

Note

- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

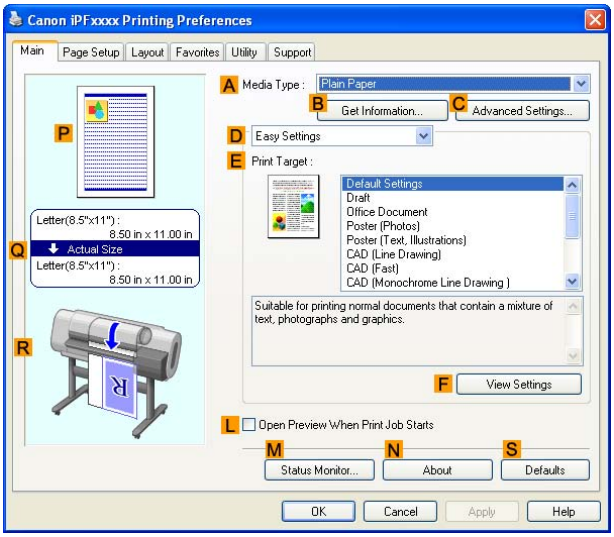
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)

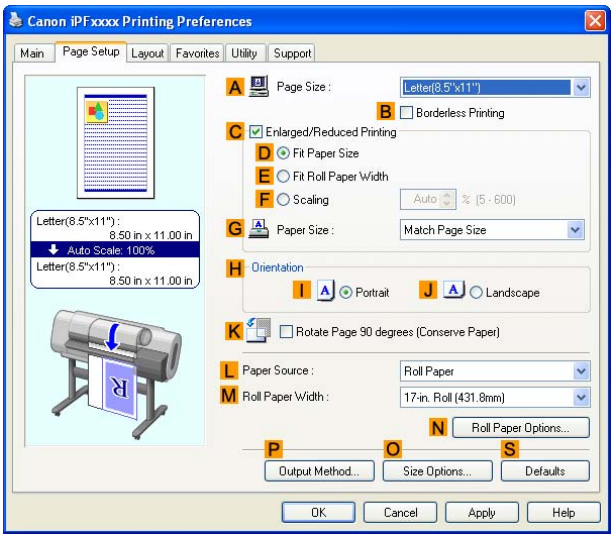
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



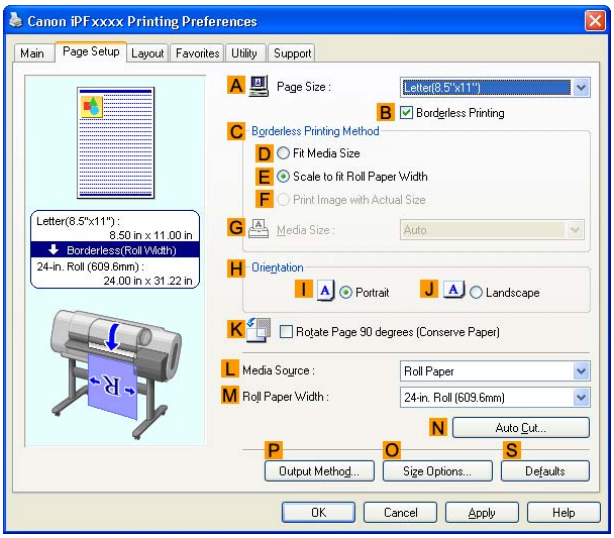
7. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.
8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

Note

- If the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box is not displayed on the **Page Setup** sheet, clear the B **Borderless Printing** check box.



10. Click E **Fit Roll Paper Width**.

Note

- After you click E **Fit Roll Paper Width**, the **Information** dialog box is displayed. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list and click **OK**.
- Make sure the roll paper width you specify matches the width of the loaded roll.

11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

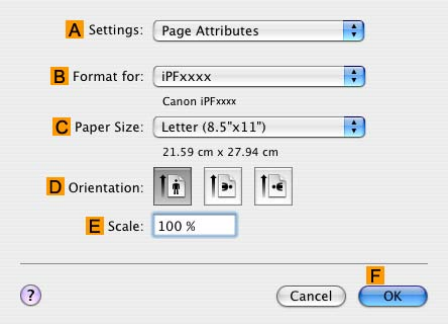
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)

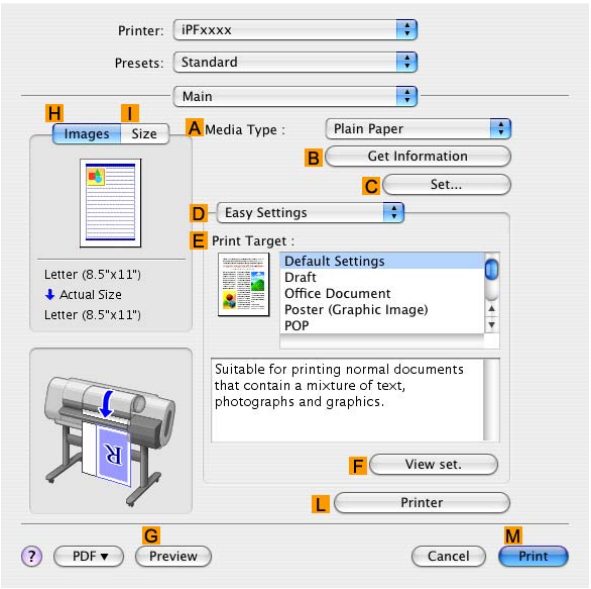
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



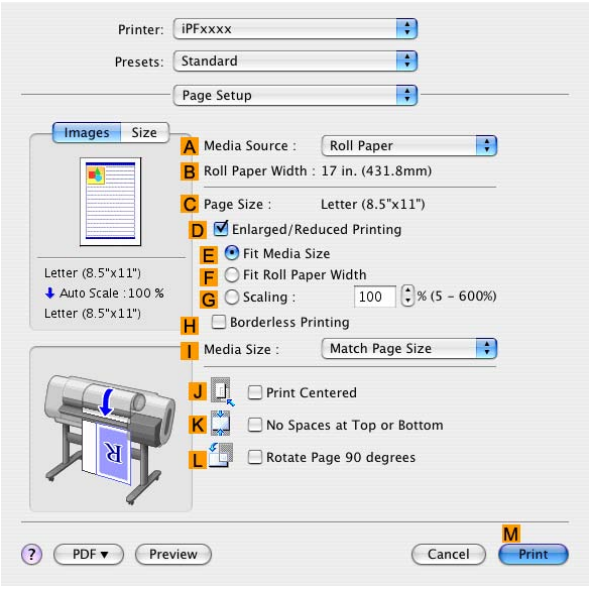
2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

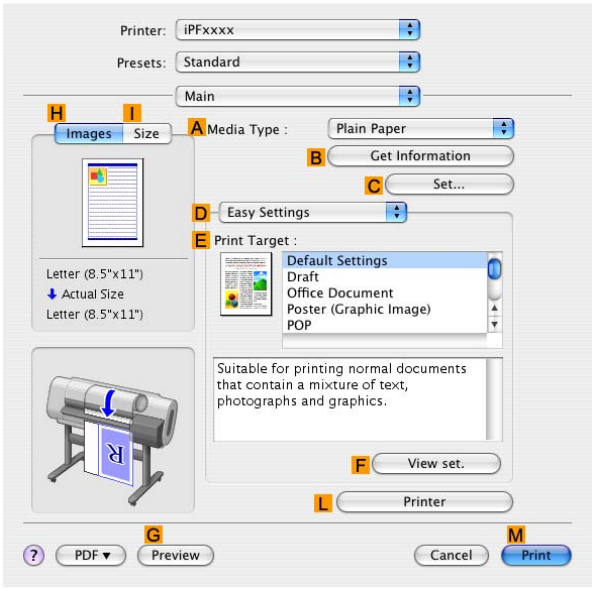


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A** **Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)**.

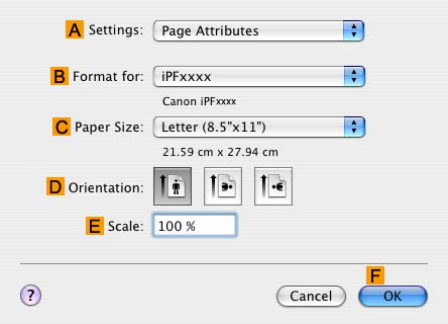
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B** **Roll Paper Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
14. Click F **Fit Roll Paper Width**.
15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value

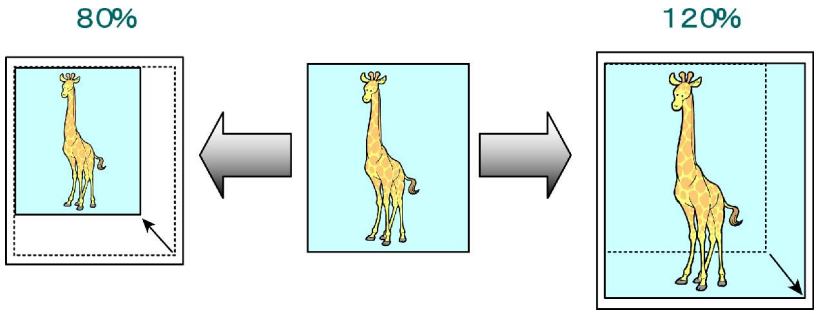
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Scaling

Enlarge or reduce originals by a particular amount, as desired.



For instructions on entering a scaling value to resize originals, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) (→P.209)
- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X) (→P.211)

Note

- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows)

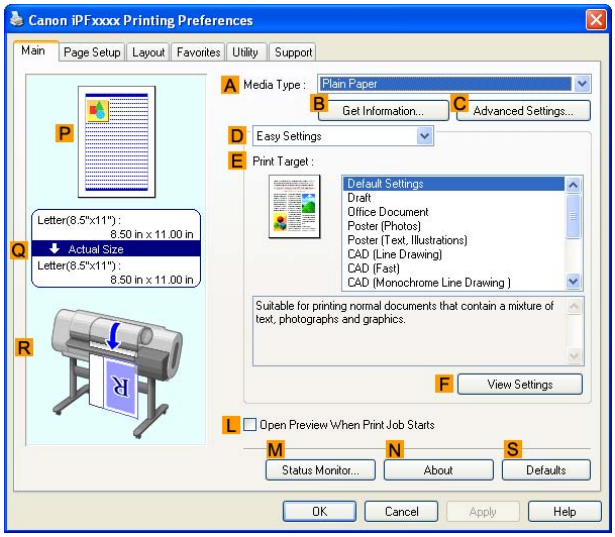
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paperr width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

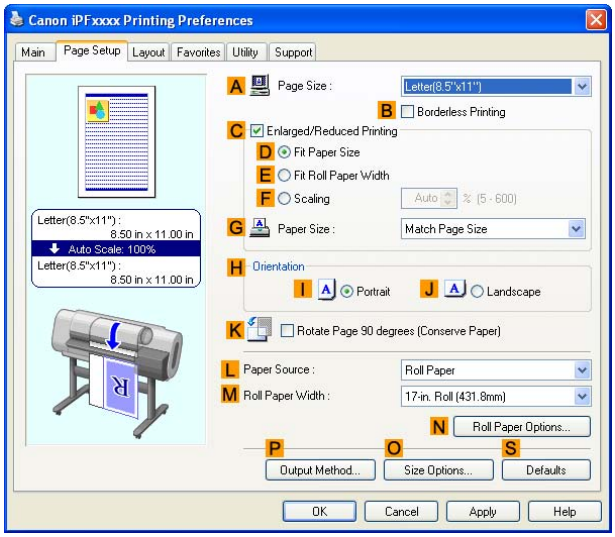
Important

- In borderless printing, you cannot resize originals by entering a scaling value.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

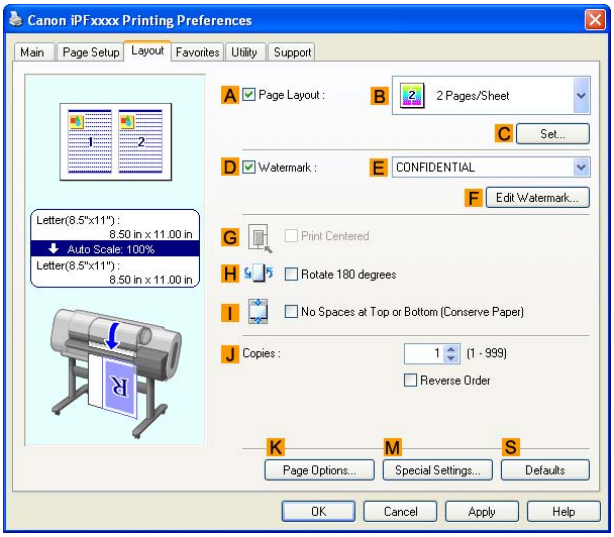


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L** **Paper Source** list.
8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M** **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
9. In the **A** **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
10. Select the **C** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
11. Click **ISO A4** in the **G** **Paper Size** list.
12. Click **F** **Scaling** and enter “120.”

Note

- You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portion off the edge of the paper will not be printed.
- If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting **G** **Print Centered** on the **Layout** sheet.



13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X)

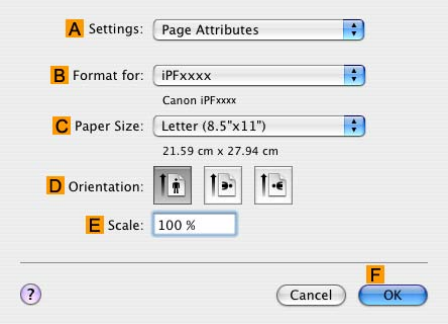
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

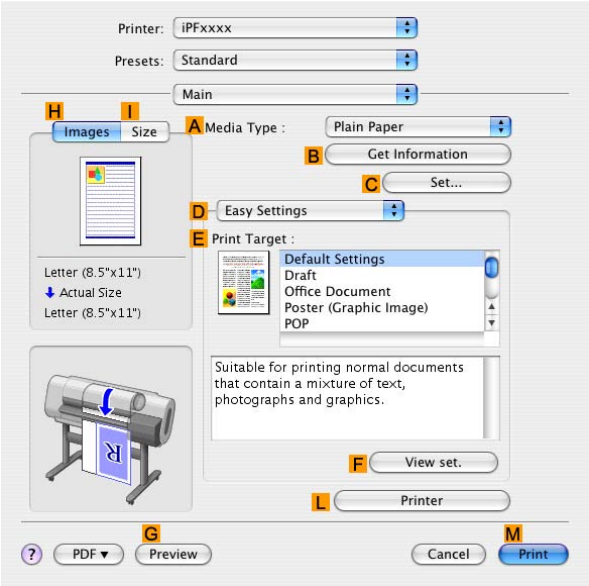
Important

- In borderless printing, you cannot resize originals by entering a scaling value.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



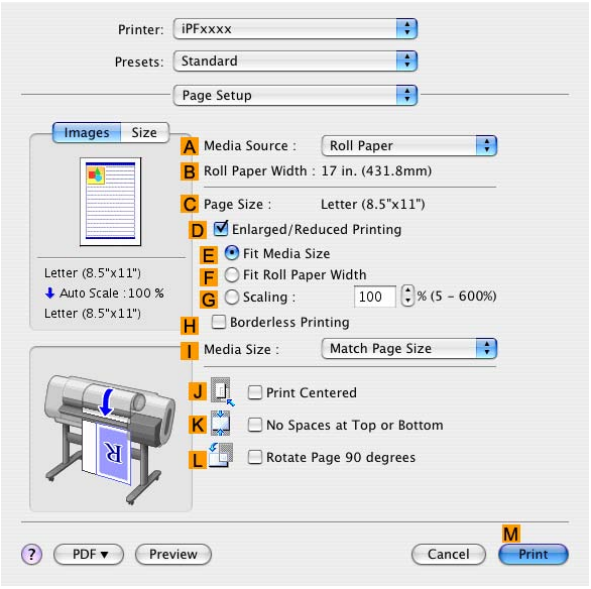
2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

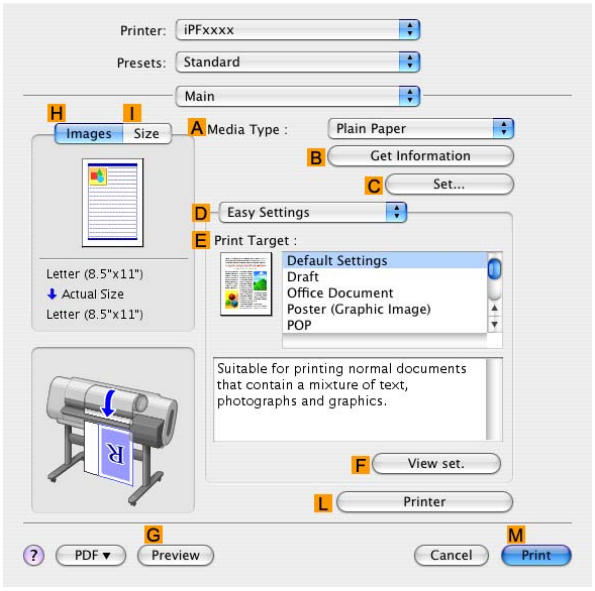


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

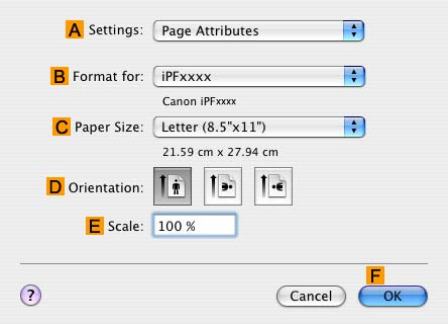
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

14. Click G **Scaling** and enter “120.”

Note

- You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portion off the edge of the paper will not be printed.
- If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting the J **Print Centered** check box.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
For instructions on printing enlargements of scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER, refer to the following topic.

- Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) (→P.214)
- Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X) (→P.216)

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.
This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.
To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

1. Register a hot folder on your computer.

   Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.

2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

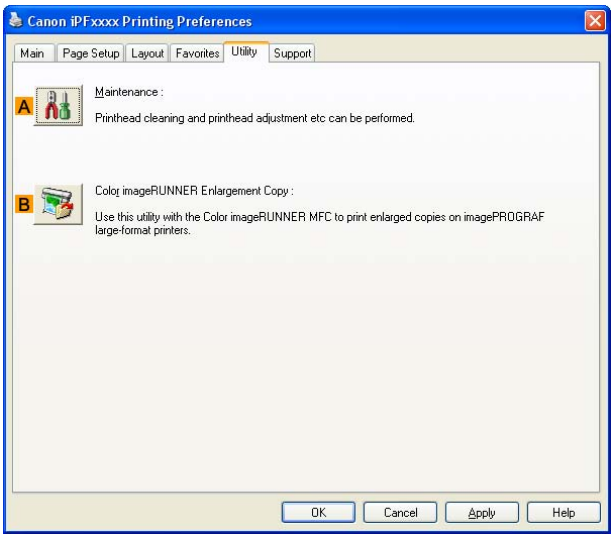
   Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders.
Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.345)
2. Click the **Utility** tab to display the **Utility** sheet.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

3. Click B **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** to start the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.
4. Use the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility to register or modify hot folders.
   For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.
For instructions on assigning scanning settings and destinations to a **Favorites** button, refer to the setting manual, displayed by clicking **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Setup Manual** button of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility, or refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer.
For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.
   Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Note

- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, refer to Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.
This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.
To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

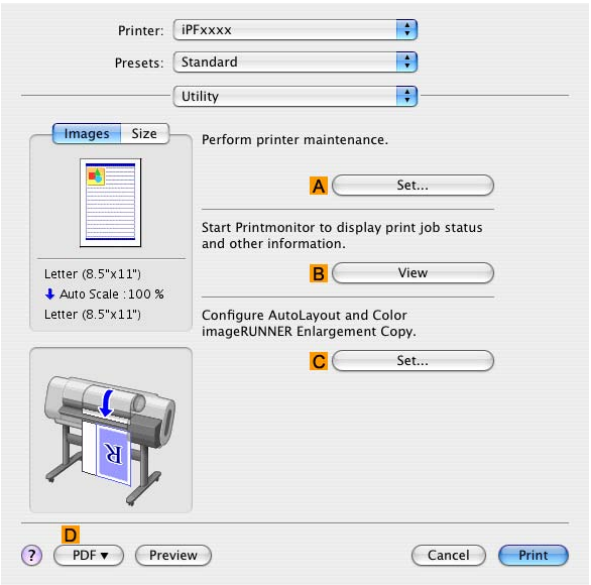
1. Register a hot folder on your computer.
   Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.
2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.
   Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders. Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. To display the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, either double-click the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.app** icon after navigating to **Canon Utilities** - **imagePROGRAF** in the **Applications** folder or click **C** **Set** in the **Utility** pane.



2. In **Enlarged Copy Settings**, click **Add** or **Edit** and either create or modify the hot folder.
   For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.
For instructions on assigning scanning and sending settings to the **Favorites** button, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer.
For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.
   Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Note

- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing at full size

Printing on Oversized Paper

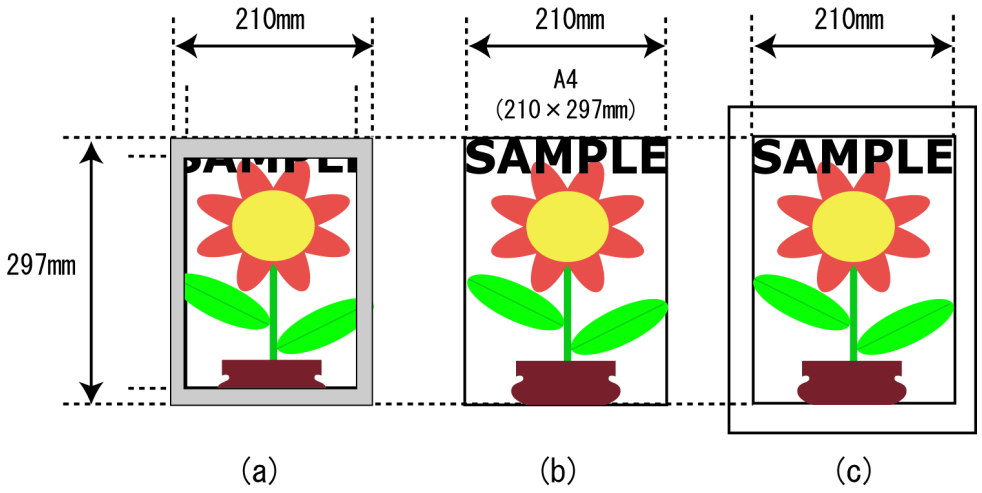
Except in borderless printing, the actual printing area corresponds to your selected paper size minus the space for a margin. (→P.79) To print documents or images you prepare without a margin at actual size, use an oversized paper size.
For example, to print a A4-sized original without a margin at A4 size, print it on paper larger than A4 size and cut away the excess margin.

Note

- If you prepare an original for printing without a margin and print it on paper of regular size, the image near the edge will not be printed.

Oversize

The margin required by the printer is added around the “outside” of a regular paper size. For example, when printing a A4-sized original (210×297 mm), you have the following options.



a. Regular paper size: Gray area not printed
b. Page Size
c. Oversized paper size: Print area matches the page size (b)

Important

- When printing on oversize paper, load paper larger than the page size-a size that includes the margin required by the printer.
  - Sheets: Load paper that is at least 6 mm (0.24 in) wider and 26 mm (1 in) higher than the page size
  - Rolls: Load paper that is at least 6 mm (0.24 in) wider and 6 mm (0.24 in) higher than the page size
- Paper larger than the maximum size supported by the printer cannot be used as paper for oversized printing. (→P.101)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- Oversized printing (selecting **Oversize** in **Page Size**) is only available in Windows. For oversized printing on sheets, choose **Cut Sheet** as the paper source.
- To perform oversized printing on a Macintosh computer, you must specify a non-standard page size and print on it.
- To specify a non-standard paper size in oversized printing, register the paper size as a **Custom Paper Size**. Oversized printing is not available with “Custom Size.” (→P.261)

For instructions on oversized printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing at Full Size (Windows) (→P.220)
- Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X) (→P.222)

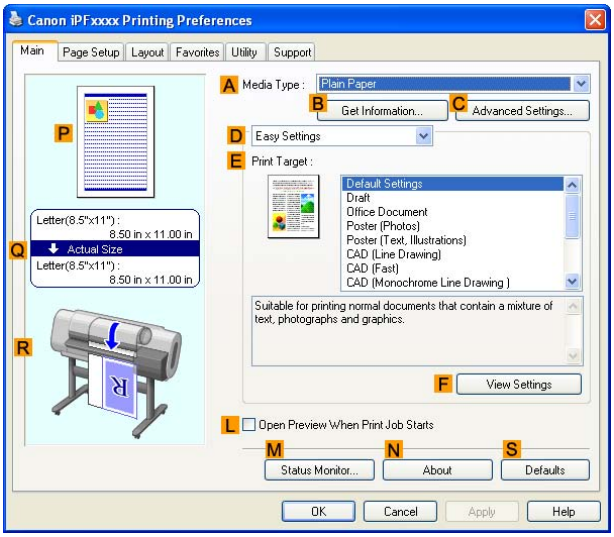
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing at Full Size (Windows)

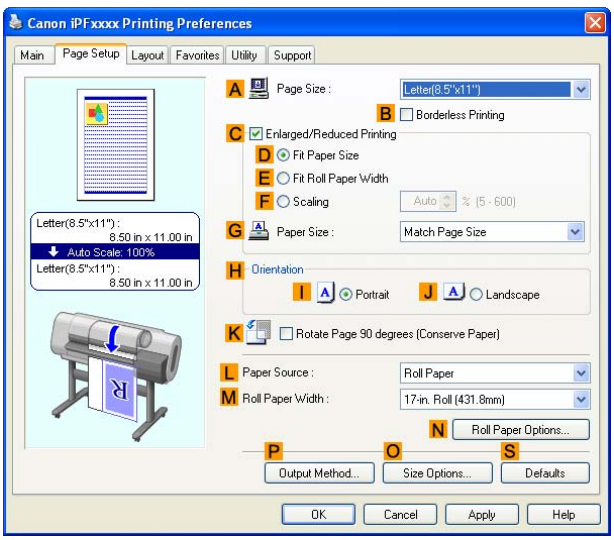
This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any Type
- Page Size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. Click O **Size Options** to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.
7. In the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, select the **Oversize** check box in **Display Series**.
8. Click **OK** to close the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.
9. Click **Oversize - ISO A4** in the A **Page Size** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

10. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.
11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

Note

- You can select **Oversize** in **Display Series** to make all oversized versions of paper in the selected **Display Series** available for printing. These sizes are displayed in the **Page Size** list in the format **Oversize - xxxxxx**.

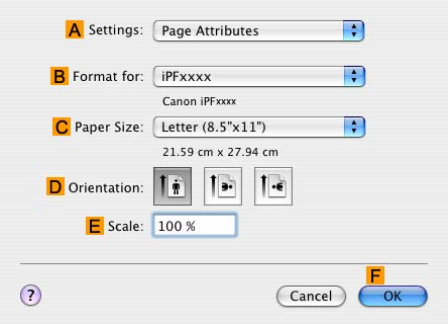
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

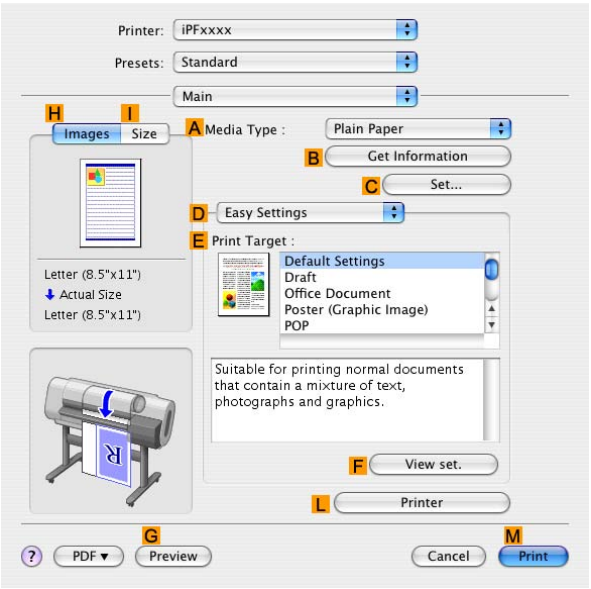


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4 - Oversize**.

Note

- For oversized printing, choose paper identified by the regular paper name followed by "- Oversize."

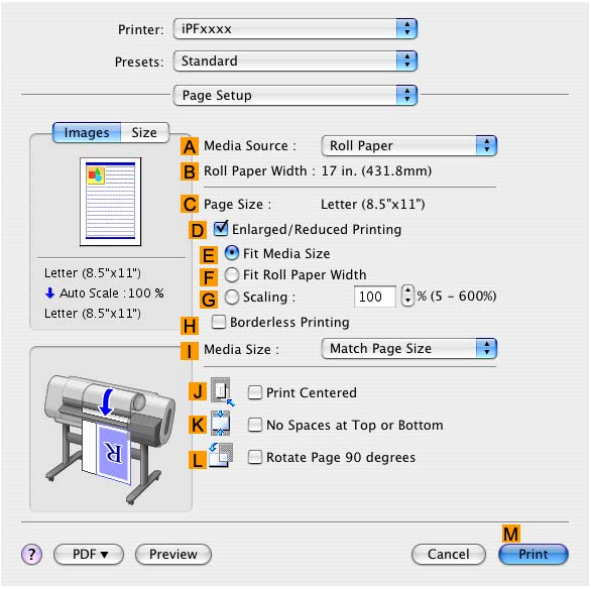
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

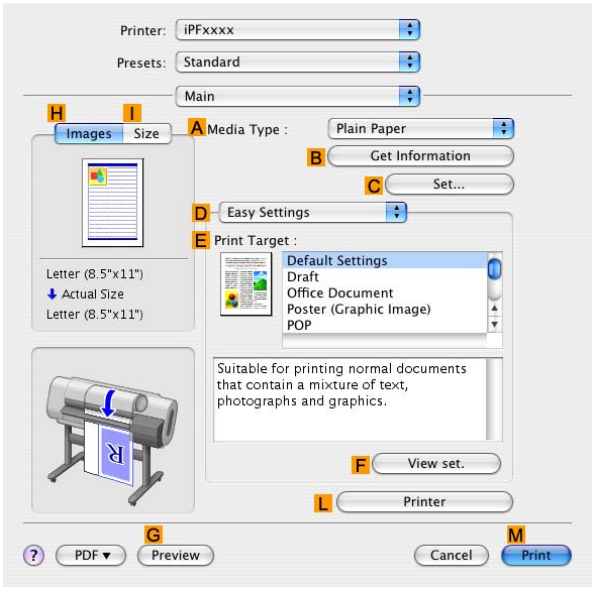


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

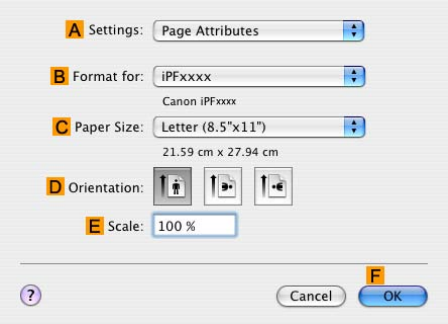
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Make sure C **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4 - Oversize**.



13. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing at Actual Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

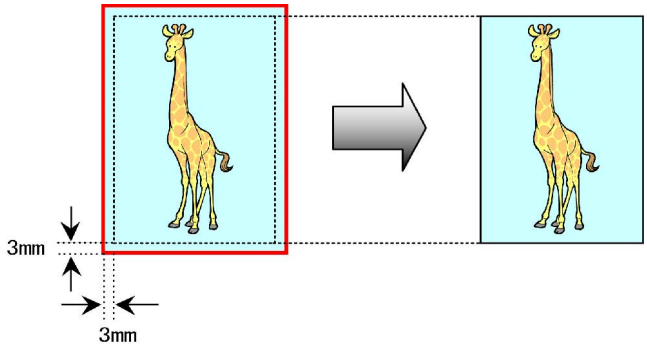
Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Print Image with Actual Size

Prints originals at actual size, without enlarging or reducing them. Originals must be prepared in a size that exceeds the dimensions of the paper by 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side.



Note

- Not all page sizes are available.
- Even if you prepare originals of the same size as the paper size, the originals are automatically enlarged when you print borderlessly in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size. This may affect image quality. When image quality is most important, make the original 3 mm longer on each side than the paper size so that the image can be printed at actual size in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) (→P.227)
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) (→P.229)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

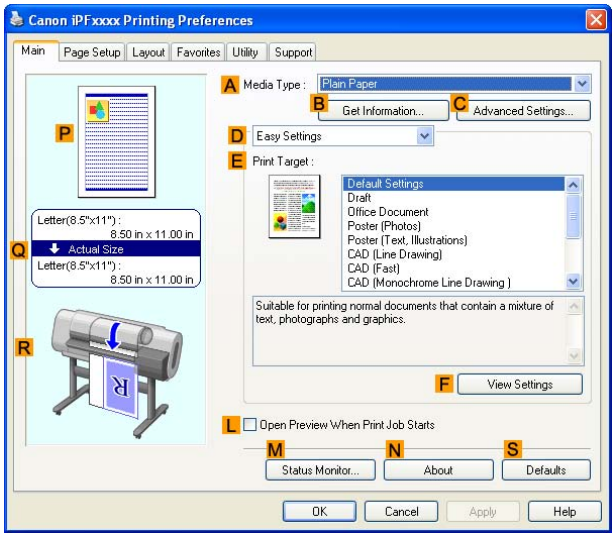
- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Create the original in the source application 3 mm (0.12 in) larger on each side than 254.0×304.8 mm (10 × 12 in) -that is, 260.0×310.8 mm (10.2 × 12.2 in)

   Note

   - If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.
   - The extra 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side will not be printed. Create the original so that it fits inside the paper area to be printed on.

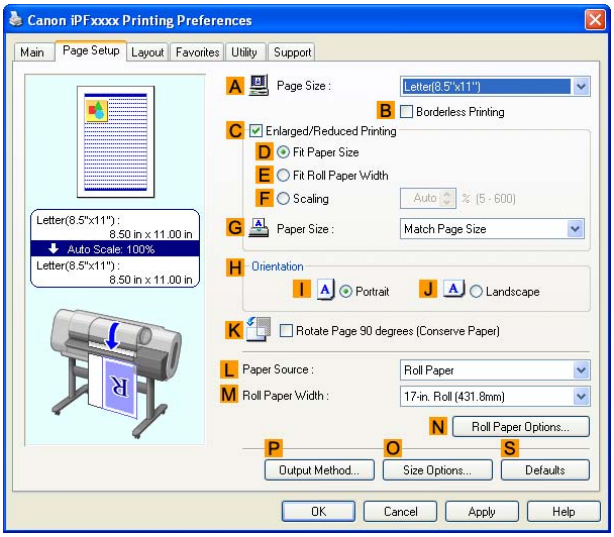
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



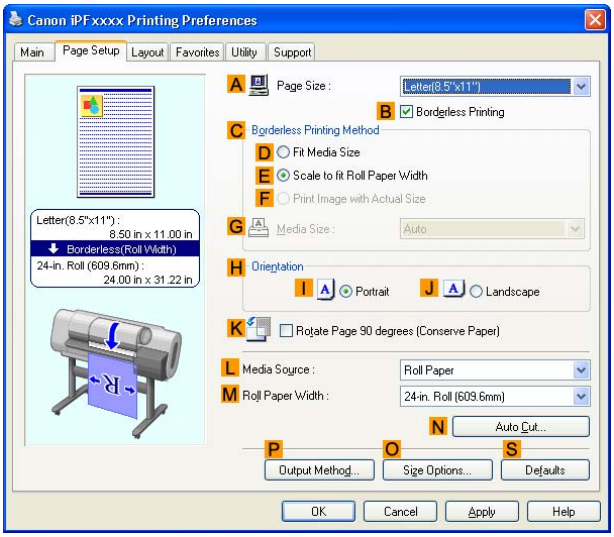
5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the source application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.
10. Select the B **Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
13. In C **Borderless Printing Method**, click F **Print Image with Actual Size**.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

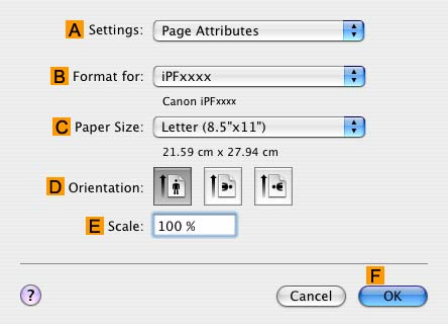
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)-Borderless
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

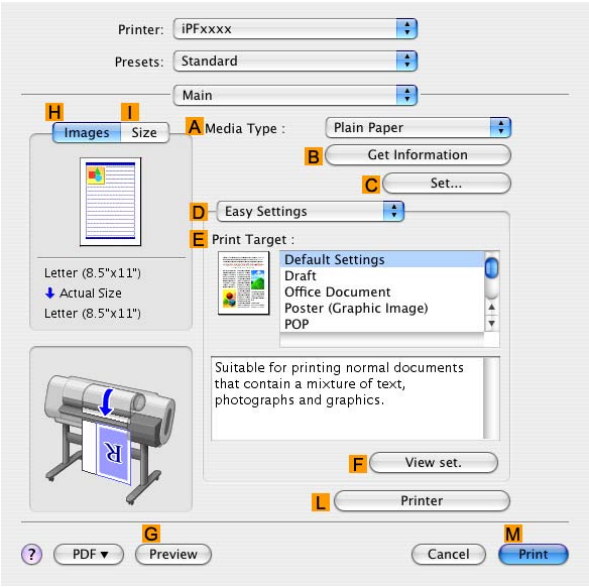


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

Note

- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by “-Borderless.”

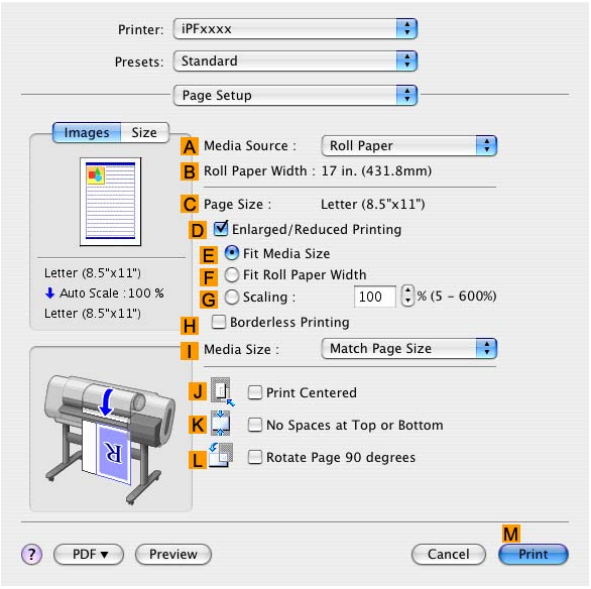
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



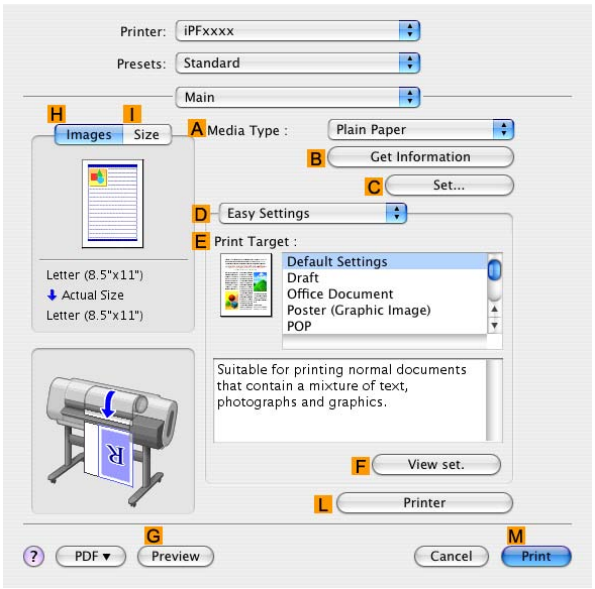
11. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

12. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.

Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

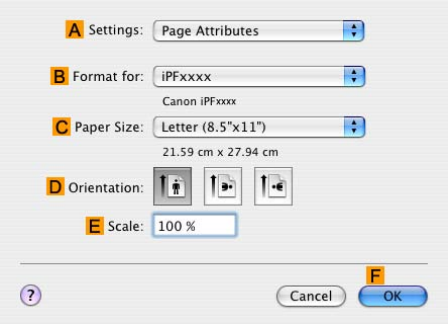
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12" - Borderless**.



14. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing

Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

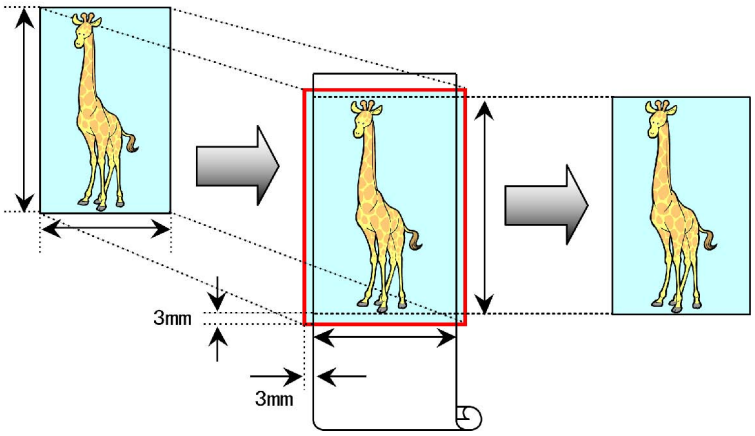
Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Fit Paper Size

Enlarge or reduce the original to match the size of the paper you are using.



Note

- The printer driver automatically enlarges originals 3 mm (0.12 in) past the dimensions of the paper on each side. The 3 mm portion beyond the edge on each side is not printed.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos, images, and other documents to match the paper size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) (→P.234)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) (→P.236)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

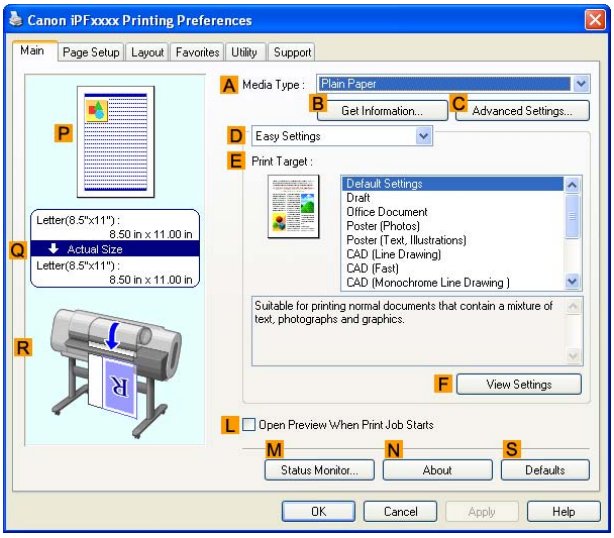
- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

   Note

   - If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

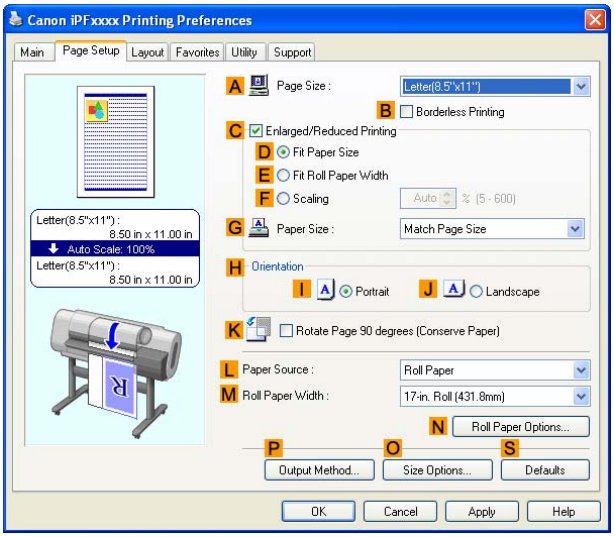
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



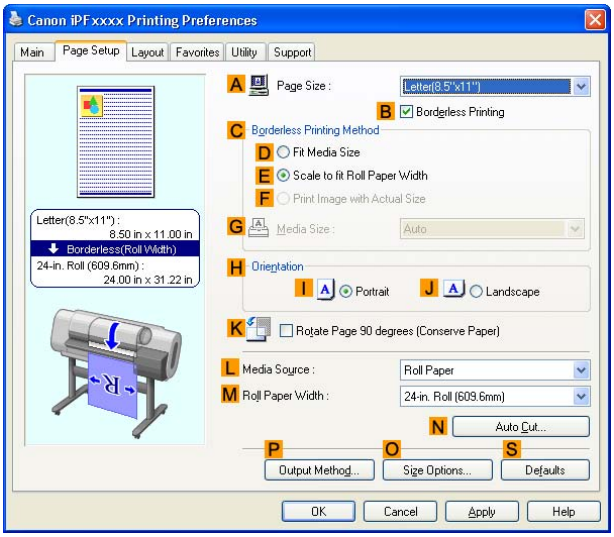
5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.
10. Select the B **Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
13. In C **Borderless Printing Method**, click D **Fit Paper Size**.
14. Click **Match Page Size** in the G **Paper Size** list.
15. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

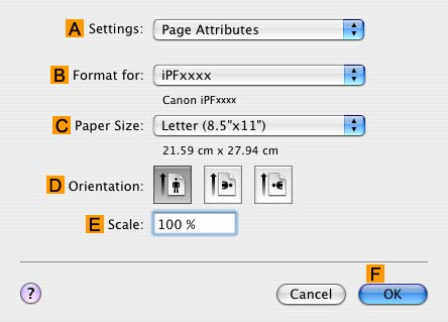
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

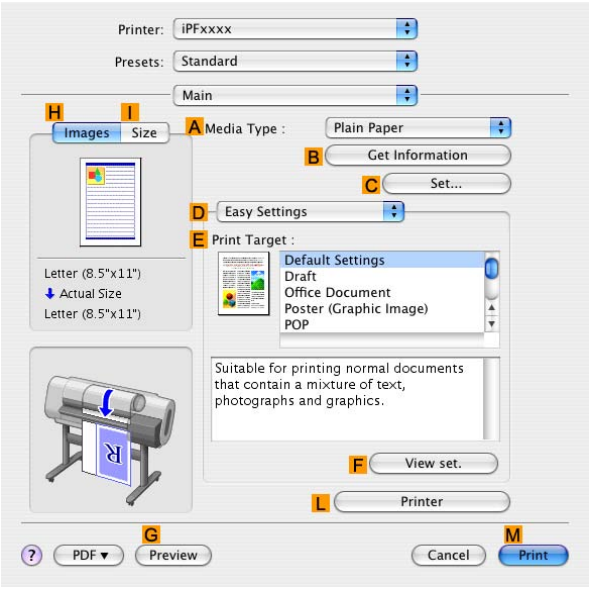


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

Note

- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to match the paper size.

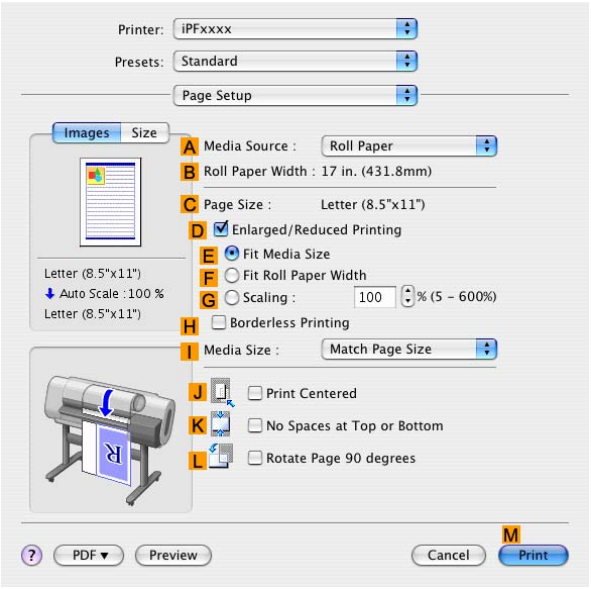
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

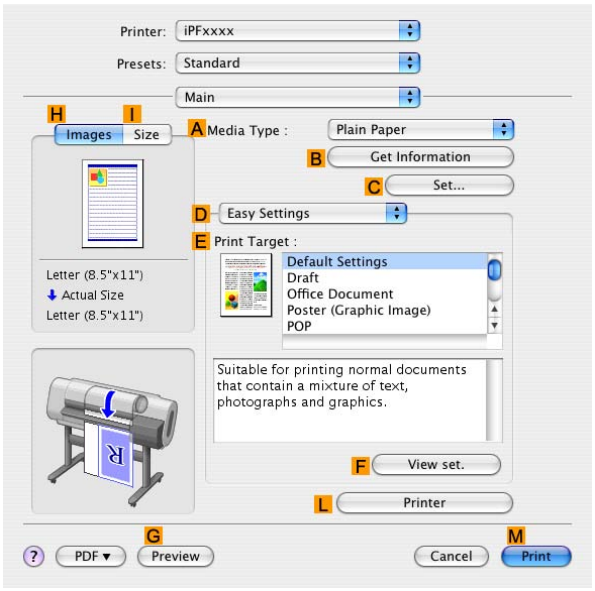
9. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



11. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.
12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

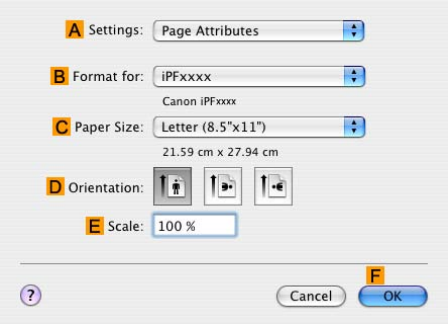
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



14. On the **Page Setup** pane, select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
15. Select the H **Borderless Printing** check box.
16. Click E **Fit Media Size** under D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.
17. In I **Media Size**, click the paper size. In this case, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.
18. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

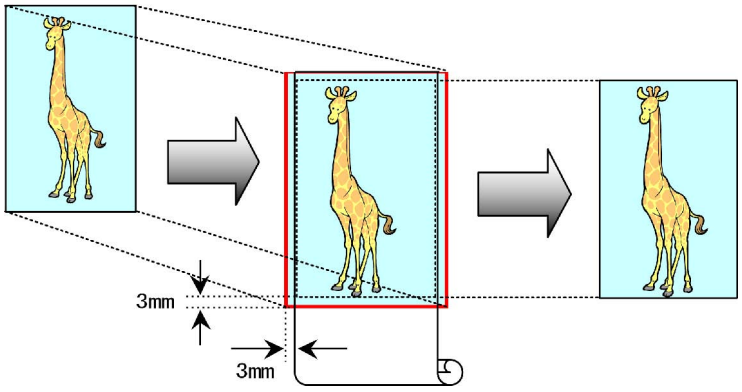
Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Scale to fit Roll Paper Width

Enlarge or reduce the original as a whole to match the roll paper width.



Note

- You can combine this function with rotating pages 90 degrees before printing so that the original width (relative to portrait orientation) matches the roll paper width in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos, images, and other documents to match the roll paper width, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) (→P.241)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) (→P.243)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

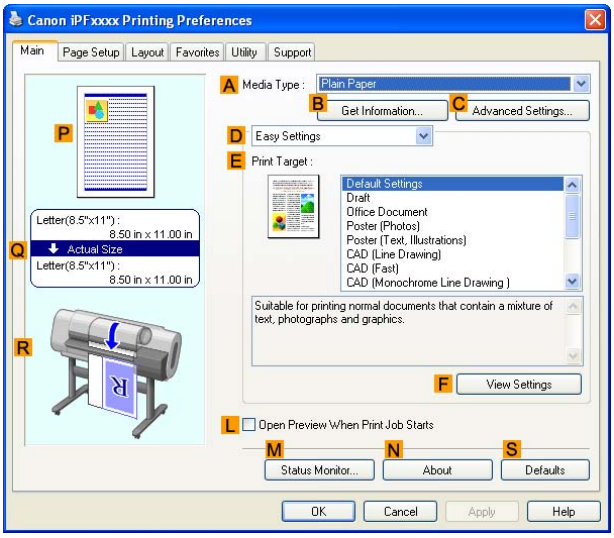
- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

Note

- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

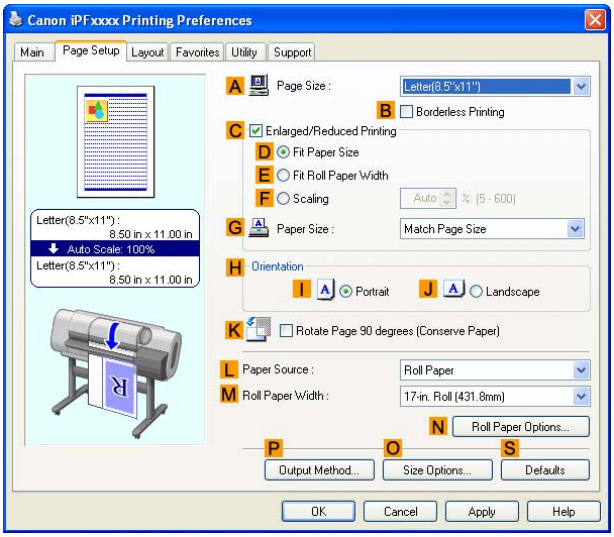
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



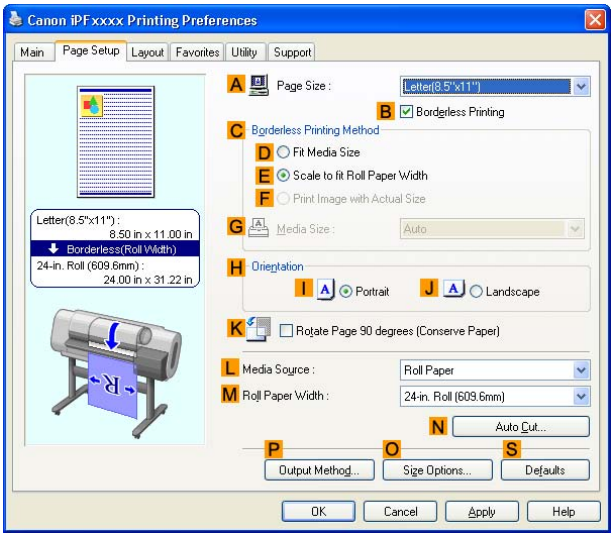
5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.
10. Select the B **Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
13. In C **Borderless Printing Method**, make sure E **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width** is selected.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

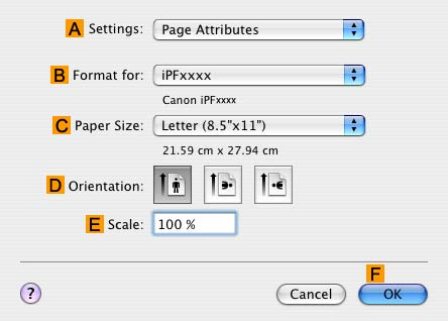
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

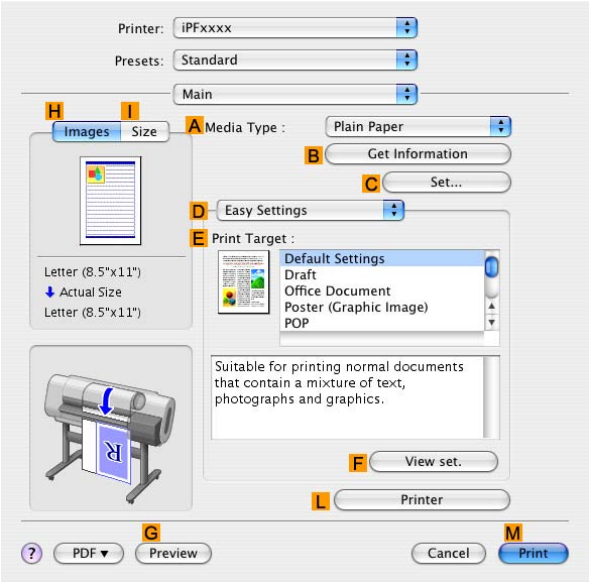


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

Note

- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to fit the roll width.

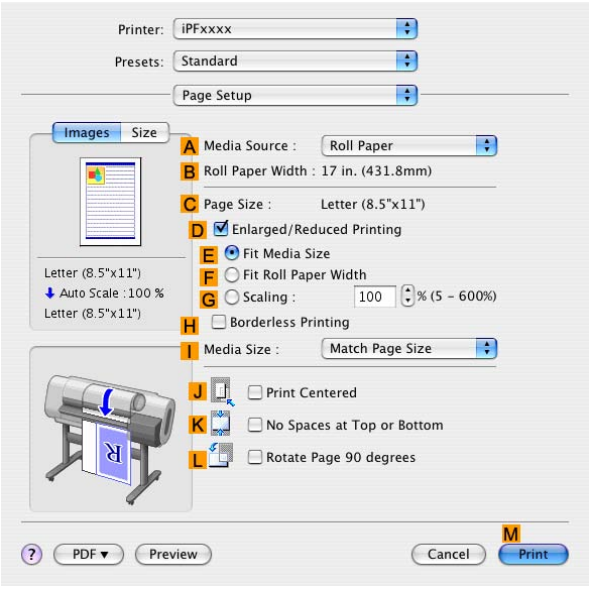
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

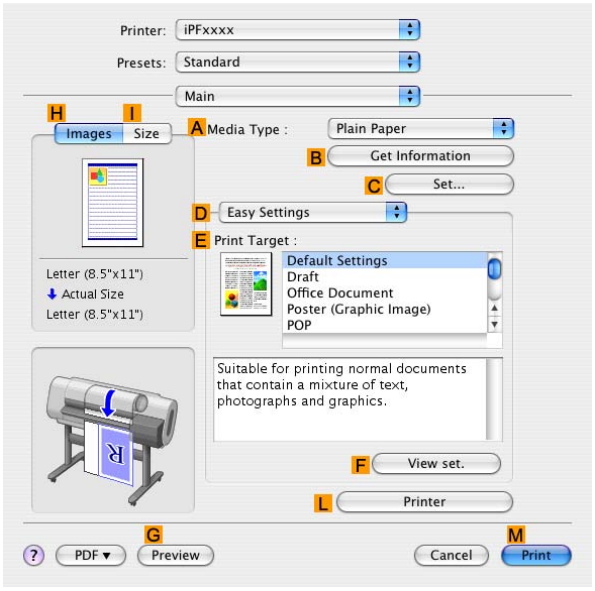


11. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-here, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

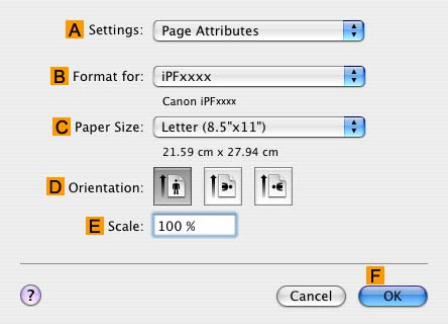
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



14. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
15. Select the H **Borderless Printing** check box.
    This ensures that F **Fit Roll Paper Width** is automatically selected in D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.
16. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing at Actual Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

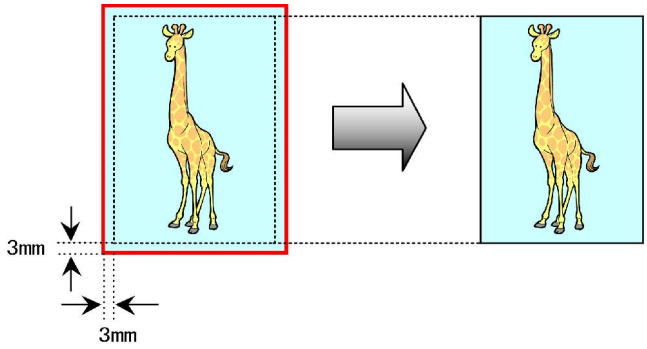
Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Print Image with Actual Size

Prints originals at actual size, without enlarging or reducing them. Originals must be prepared in a size that exceeds the dimensions of the paper by 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side.



Note

- Not all page sizes are available.
- Even if you prepare originals of the same size as the paper size, the originals are automatically enlarged when you print borderlessly in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size. This may affect image quality. When image quality is most important, make the original 3 mm longer on each side than the paper size so that the image can be printed at actual size in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) (→P.248)
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) (→P.250)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

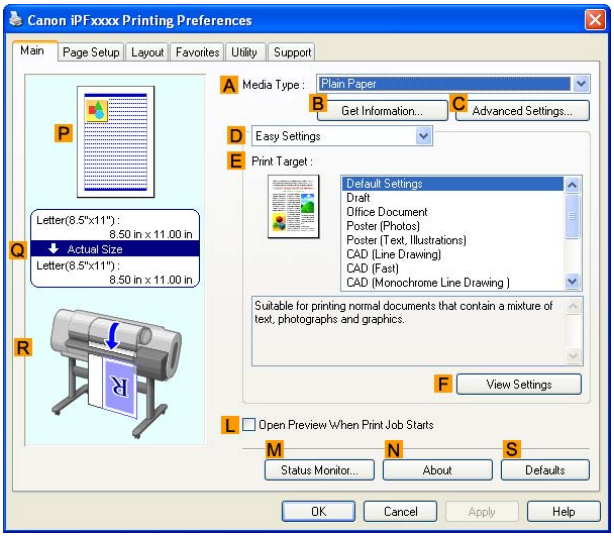
- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Create the original in the source application 3 mm (0.12 in) larger on each side than 254.0×304.8 mm (10 × 12 in) -that is, 260.0×310.8 mm (10.2 × 12.2 in)

   Note

   - If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.
   - The extra 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side will not be printed. Create the original so that it fits inside the paper area to be printed on.

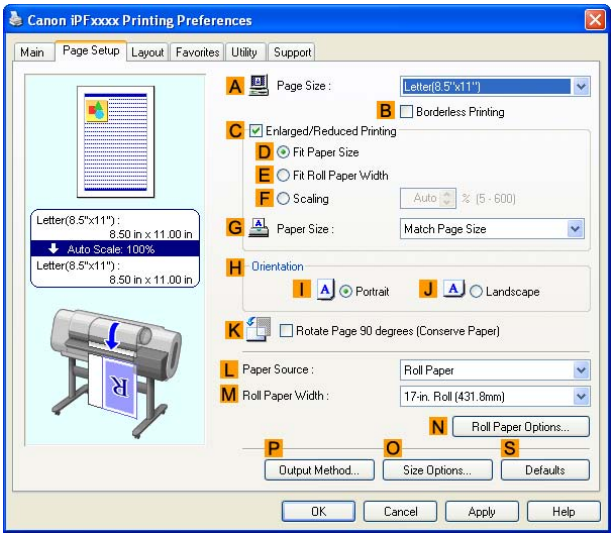
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



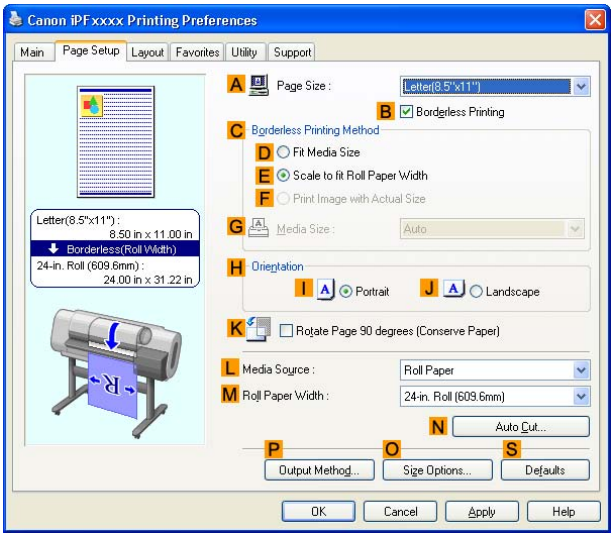
5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the source application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.
10. Select the B **Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
13. In C **Borderless Printing Method**, click F **Print Image with Actual Size**.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

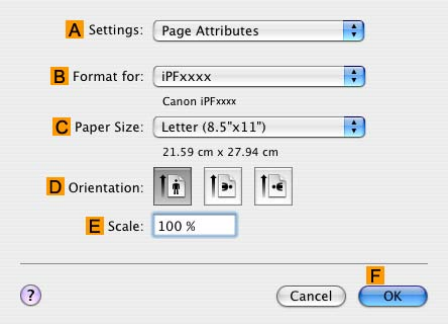
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)-Borderless
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

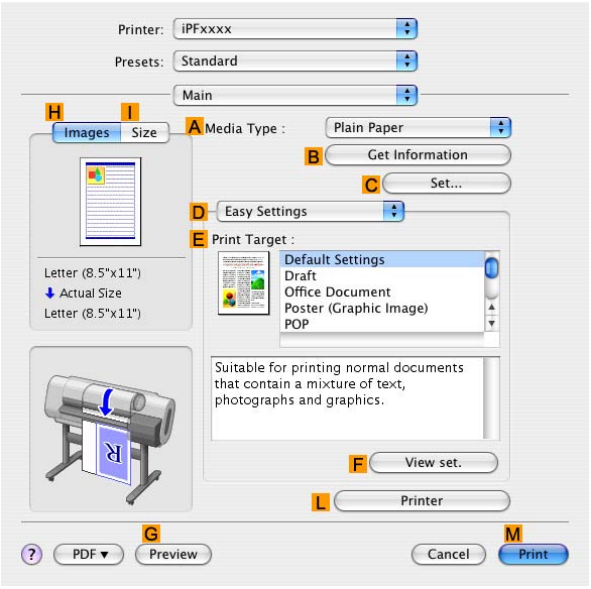


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

Note

- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by “-Borderless.”

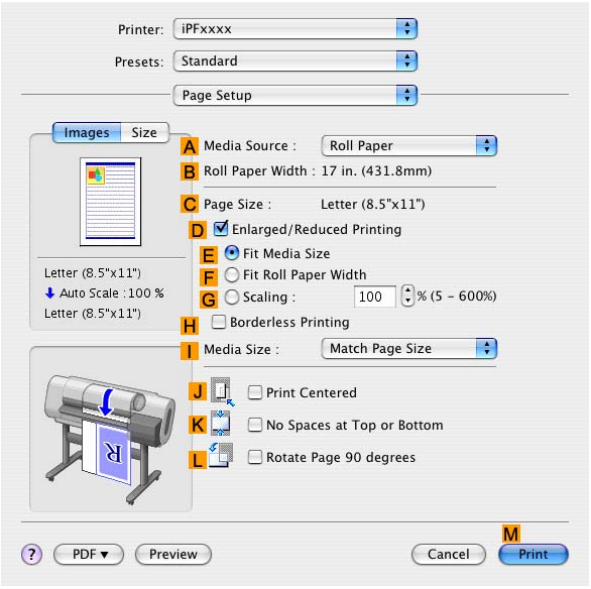
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



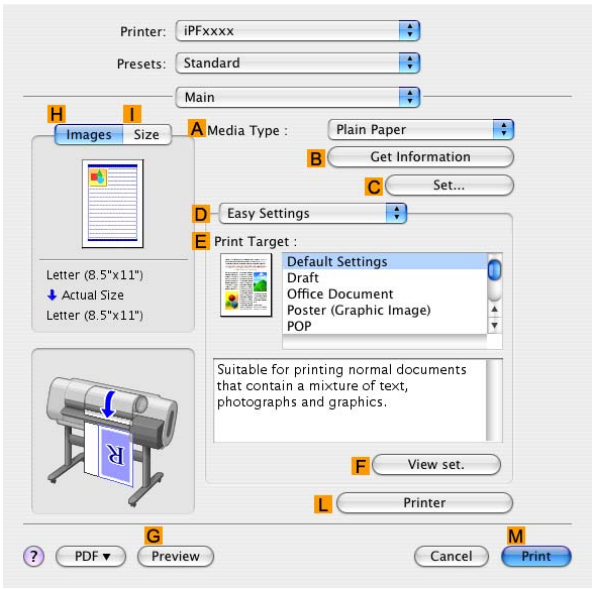
11. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

12. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.

Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

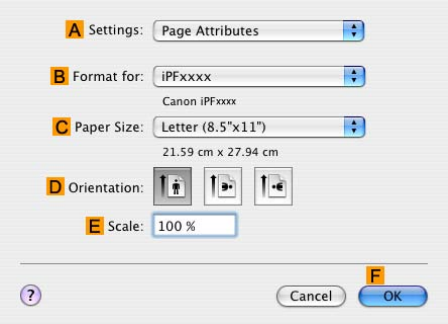
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12" - Borderless**.



14. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

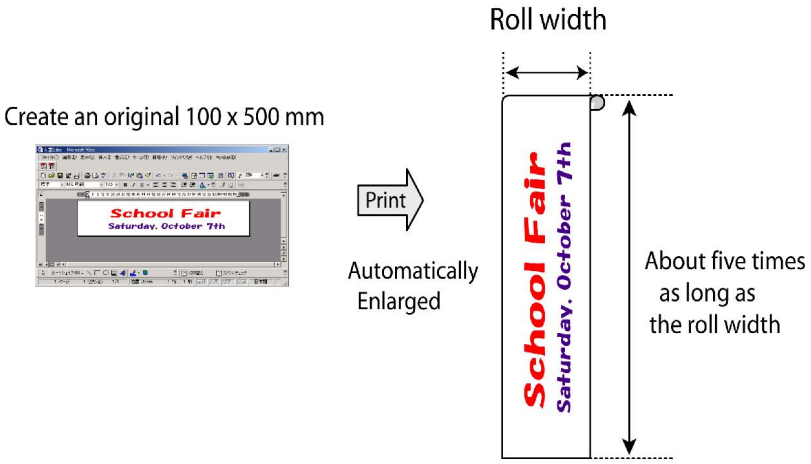
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing)

You can create vertical or horizontal banners by printing originals that are in banner format on rolls. Originals created in Microsoft Word or other applications in your preferred size can be enlarged to fill the width of roll paper by completing simple printer driver settings.



Fit Roll Paper Width

You can easily create vertical or horizontal banners by automatically enlarging or reducing originals to fit the full width of rolls.

Note

- The maximum supported roll length is 18.0 m or 19.7 yd (when printing in Mac OS X).

For instructions on printing vertical or horizontal banners, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) (→P.254)
- Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X) (→P.258)

Important

- Before printing, check how much of the roll paper is left. If you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, a warning message is displayed when there is not enough roll paper left.
- If not much ink is left, prepare replacement ink tanks.
- To print at a higher level of quality, in the printer driver, choose **High** or **Highest** in Print Quality, and choose **Unidirectional Printing** as the direction of printing.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows)

This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: A horizontal banner created in Microsoft Word
- Page size: Non-standard (100×500 mm [3.9×19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 in (406.4 mm)

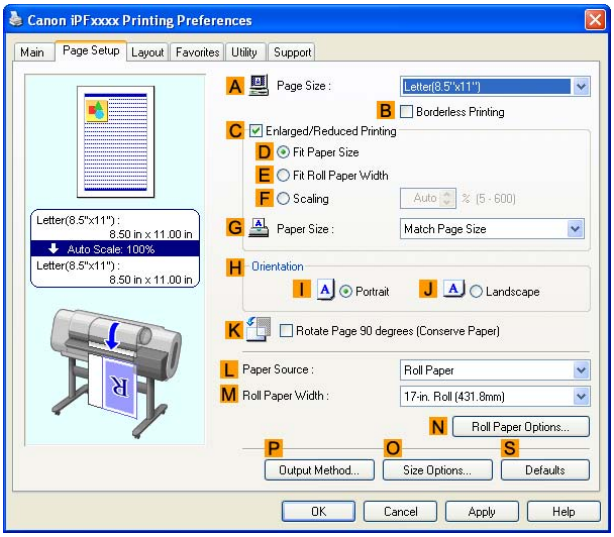
Follow the steps below to print a banner in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Register a **Custom Paper Size**.
   Banners tend to be in non-standard sizes, so register a **Custom Paper Size**. In this example, 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in) is registered.
2. In the application, create an original in the size you registered.
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

Registering a Custom Paper Size

This example describes how to register a paper size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.345)
2. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



3. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.
4. Click O **Size Options** to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.
5. Enter a desired paper name in **Custom Paper Size Name**. “My Horizontal Banner” is used in this example.
6. In **Units**, click **mm**.
7. Under **Paper Size**, enter “100” in **Width** and “500” in **Height**.
8. Click **Add** to add the paper size of “My Horizontal Banner.”
9. Click **OK** to close the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

10. Close the printer driver dialog box.

Note

- You can also specify a **Custom Size** as the paper size. Note that **Custom Size** settings are not available after you exit the application.
  For more information, see “Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)”. (→P.262)

Creating the banner in the application

Follow the steps below to create the banner in Microsoft Word using the **Custom Paper Size** you registered.

1. Start Microsoft Word.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the **File** menu to display the **Page Setup** dialog box.
3. Under **Paper Size**, click the **Custom Paper Size** you registered-"My Horizontal Banner" in this example.

Important

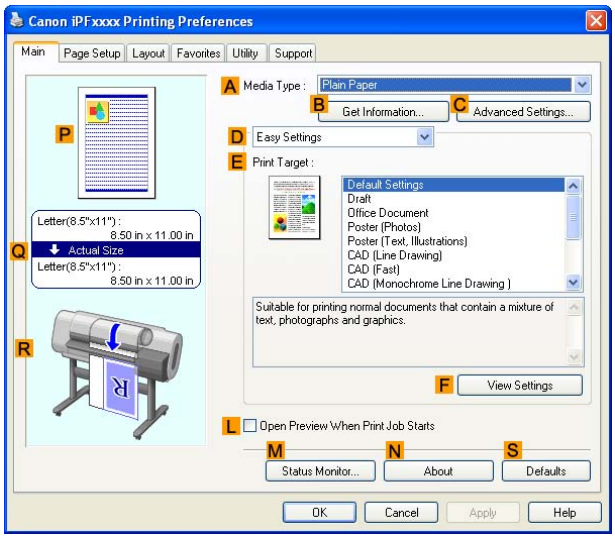
- If "My Horizontal Banner" is not listed, make sure this printer is selected as the printer to use.
- In applications such as Microsoft PowerPoint that do not enable you to choose registered paper sizes, use the custom paper size setting in “Custom” and specify 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in)

4. Set the printing orientation to horizontal.
5. Create the banner.

Printing the banner

Follow the steps below to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

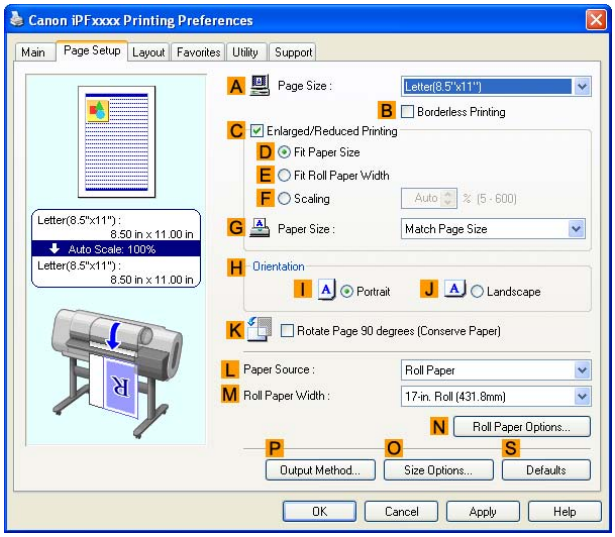
1. Choose **Print** in the Microsoft Word menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Poster (Text, Illustrations)** in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

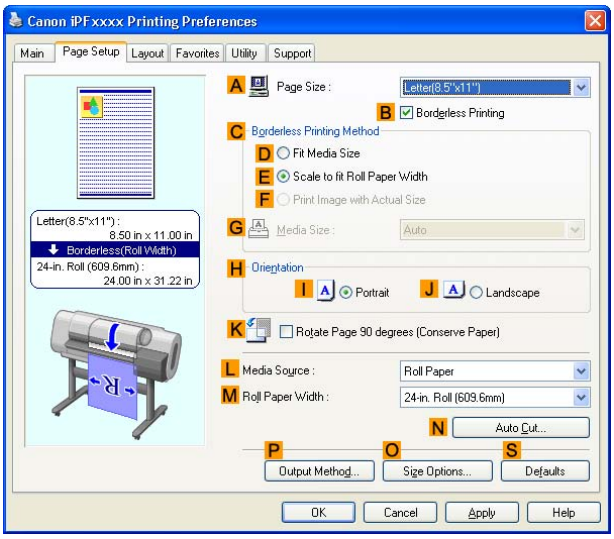
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size you registered, "My Horizontal Banner."
8. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

Note

- If the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box is not displayed on the **Page Setup** sheet, clear the B **Borderless Printing** check box.



9. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.
10. After you click E **Fit Roll Paper Width**, the **Information** dialog box is displayed.
11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **16-in. Roll (406.4mm)**, and then click **OK**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

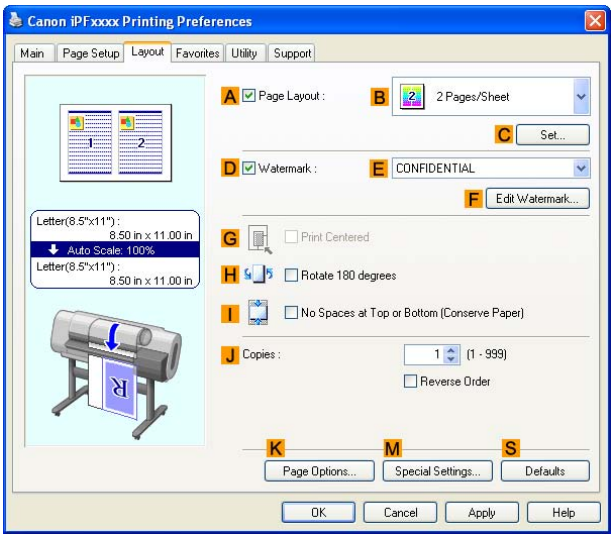
Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

Note

- If printing is unsuccessful, you may be able to print after completing the following setting.

1. On the **Layout** sheet, click **M** **Special Settings** to display the **Special Settings** dialog box.



2. In the **FineZoom Settings** list, click **Yes**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: An original designed for a horizontal banner
- Page Size: Non-standard (100×500 mm [3.9×19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

Follow the steps below to print a banner in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. In the application, create an original in the format of a horizontal or vertical banner.
2. Register a “Custom Page Size.”
   Banners tend to be in non-standard sizes, so register a “Custom Page Size” in **Page Setup**. In this example, 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in) is registered.
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

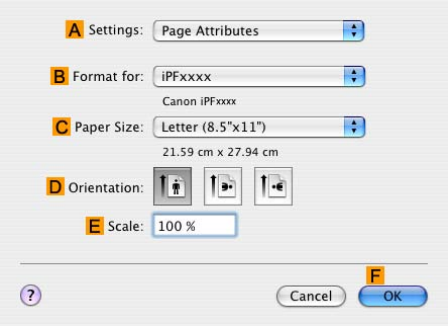
Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of setting up non-standard paper sizes varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

Register a Custom Page Size

This example describes how to register and print using a page size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Create the document in the application.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



3. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
4. Click **Manage Custom Sizes** in the C **Paper Size** list to display the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
5. Double-click **Untitled** in the list at left, and then enter a name for the page size you want to register. Here, enter “100*500.”
   If the **Untitled** size is not listed at left, click **+** below the list.
6. Under **Page Size**, enter “10” in **Width** and “50” in **Height**. Here, measurements are entered in centimeters.
7. Specify the margins by entering “0.3” in **Printer Margins**. Here, too, measurements are entered in centimeters.
8. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.

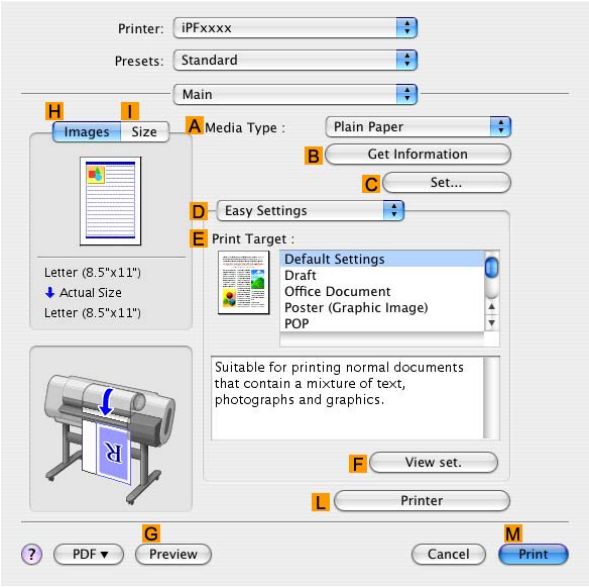
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click "100*500", the size you registered.
10. In D **Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.
11. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.

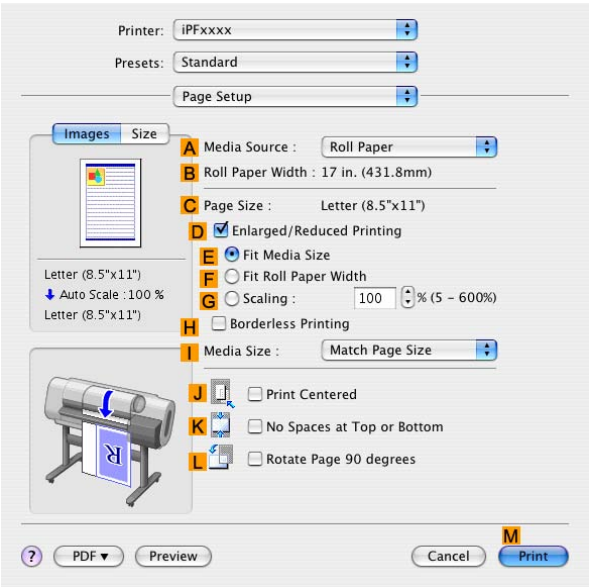
Print the banner

Follow the steps below to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Access the **Main** pane.



3. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
4. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **POP** in the E **Print Target** list.
5. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



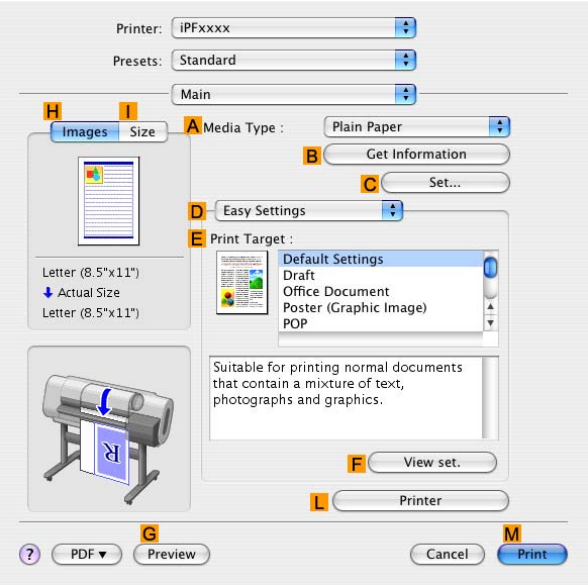
6. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



8. In C **Page Size**, make sure "100*500" is displayed, as registered in **Page Setup**.
9. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
10. Click F **Fit Roll Paper Width**.
11. Confirm the print settings, and click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes

By specifying the paper size, you can print on non-standard sizes of paper.
There are two ways to print on non-standard paper sizes, as follows.

Registering non-standard paper size in the printer driver

After you register non-standard paper sizes, they are listed with standard sizes so that you can choose them anytime as needed.

Note

- These non-standard paper sizes you register in the printer driver are called Custom Paper Sizes in Windows and “Custom Sizes” in Mac OS X.

Specifying custom paper sizes for temporary use

Because these are sizes you specify temporarily in the printer driver, the sizes will not be available after you exit the application. If you want to set up a non-standard paper size so that it will always be available, we recommend registering the paper size in the printer driver.

Note

- These temporary paper sizes you register on the printer are called “Custom Sizes” in Windows.

For instructions on specifying non-standard paper sizes for printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) (→P.262)
- Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X) (→P.266)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)

This topic describes two ways to print on non-standard paper sizes.

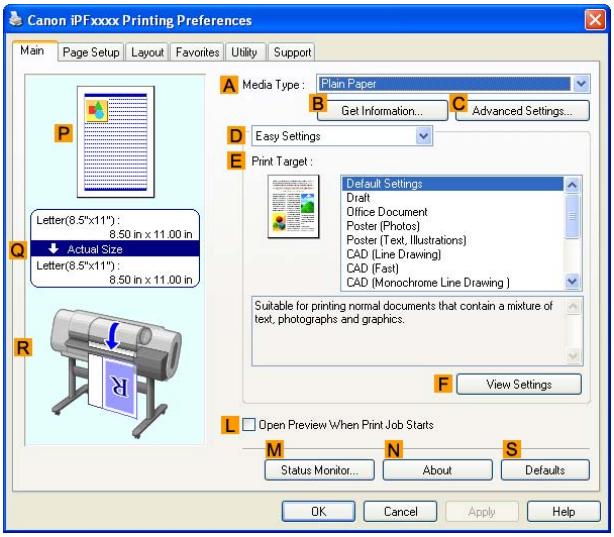
- Printing by using **Custom Size** (→P.262)
- Printing by using **Custom Paper Size** (→P.264)

Printing by using Custom Size

This section describes how to print using **Custom Size** based on the following example.

- Document: Scanned image
- Page size: Square of non-standard dimensions (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])

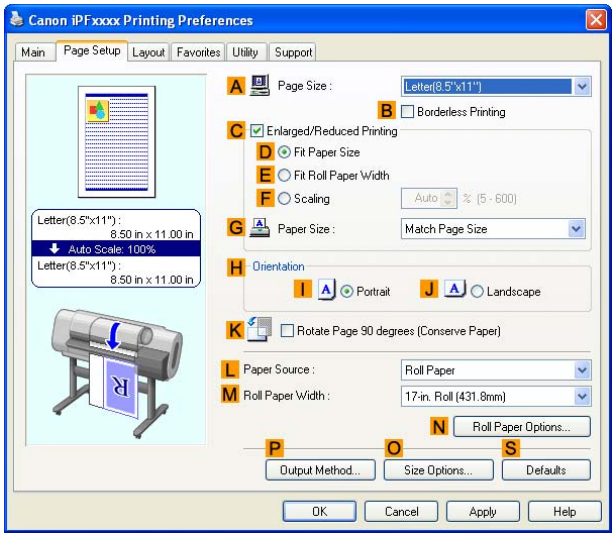
1. Load the square paper (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in]) in the printer.
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
6. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Scanned Image** in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. Click **Cut Sheet** in the L **Paper Source** list.
9. Click **Custom Size** in the A **Page Size** list to display the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.
10. Complete the following settings in the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.
    1. Select **mm** or inch in **Units**.
    2. Enter “430” (16.9 in) in both **Width** and **Height**.
11. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

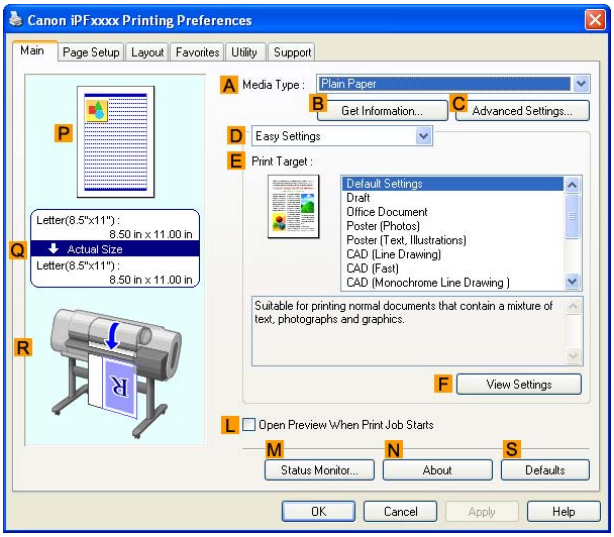
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing by using Custom Paper Size

This section describes how to print using **Custom Paper Size** based on the following example. First, register a non-standard paper size called “430 mm Square” as a **Custom Paper Size**.

- Document: Scanned image
- Page size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])

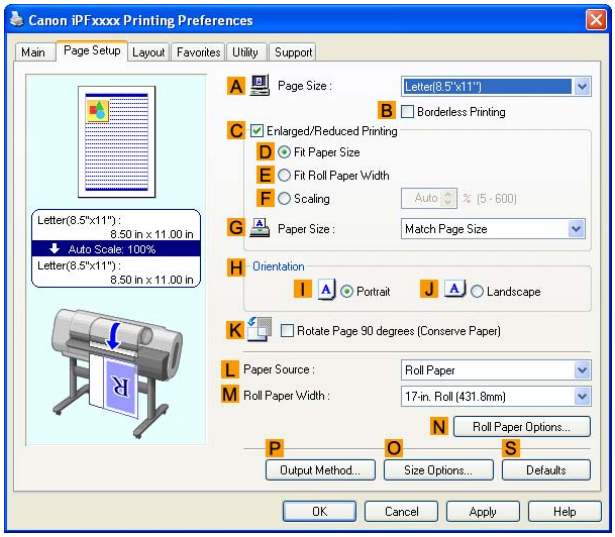
1. Load the square paper (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in]) in the printer.
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
6. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Scanned Image** in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. Click O **Size Options** to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.
9. Complete the following settings in the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.
   1. Enter a desired paper name in **Custom Paper Size Name**. “430 mm Square” is used in this example.
   2. Select **mm** or inch in **Units**.
   3. Enter “430” (16.9 in) in both **Width** and **Height**.

Note

- If you select the **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height** check box, after you enter a value in either **Width** or **Height**, the other value will be automatically applied based on the original aspect ratio.

10. Click **Add** to register “430 mm Square.”
11. Click **OK** to close the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.
12. Click **Cut Sheet** in the L **Paper Source** list.
13. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size you added, "430 mm Square."
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X)

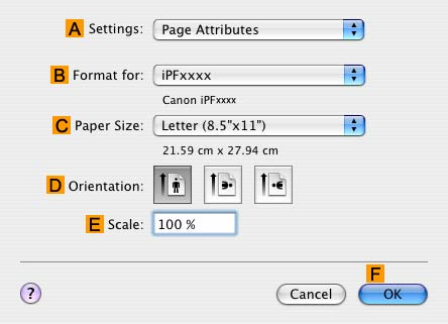
This topic describes how to print after registering “Custom Media Size” based on the following example. Here, you will register a non-standard paper size named “430*430” in “Custom Media Size”.

- Document: Scanned image
- Page size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])

Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of setting up non-standard paper sizes varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

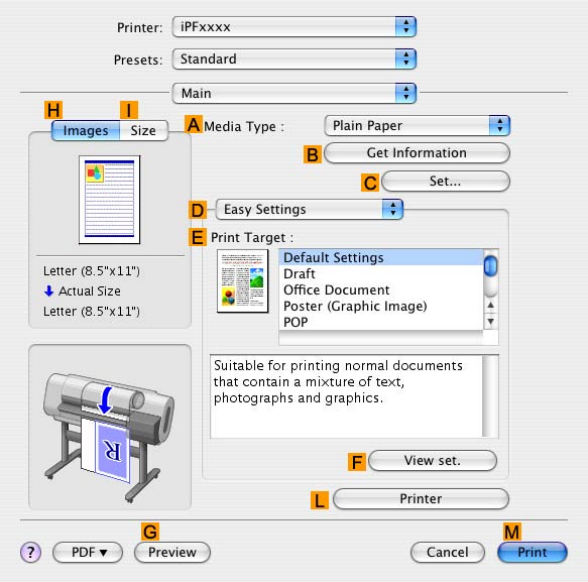
1. Create the document in the application.
2. Load the square paper (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in]) in the printer.
3. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



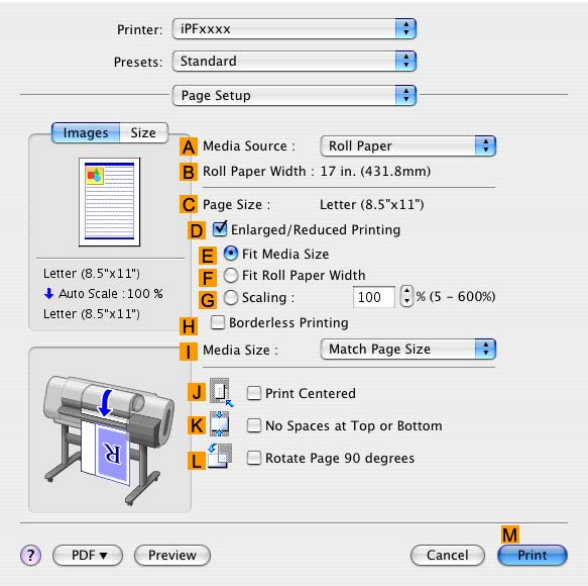
4. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
5. Click **Manage Custom Sizes** in the C **Paper Size** list to display the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
6. In **Page Size**, enter the height and width of the original. Here, enter “43.00 cm” in **Height** and **Width**.
7. In **Printer Margins**, enter “0.3” for the top and side margins and “2.3” for the bottom margin. Here, measurements are entered in centimeters.
8. Double-click **Untitled** in the list at left in the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box and enter the paper name-in this case, “430*430”.
9. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
10. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click “430*430”, the size you registered.
11. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
12. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Access the **Main** pane.



14. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
15. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Scanned Image** in the E **Print Target** list.
16. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



17. Click **Cut Sheet** in the A **Media Source** list.
18. In D **Easy Settings**, make sure “430*430” is displayed, as registered in **Page Setup**.
19. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

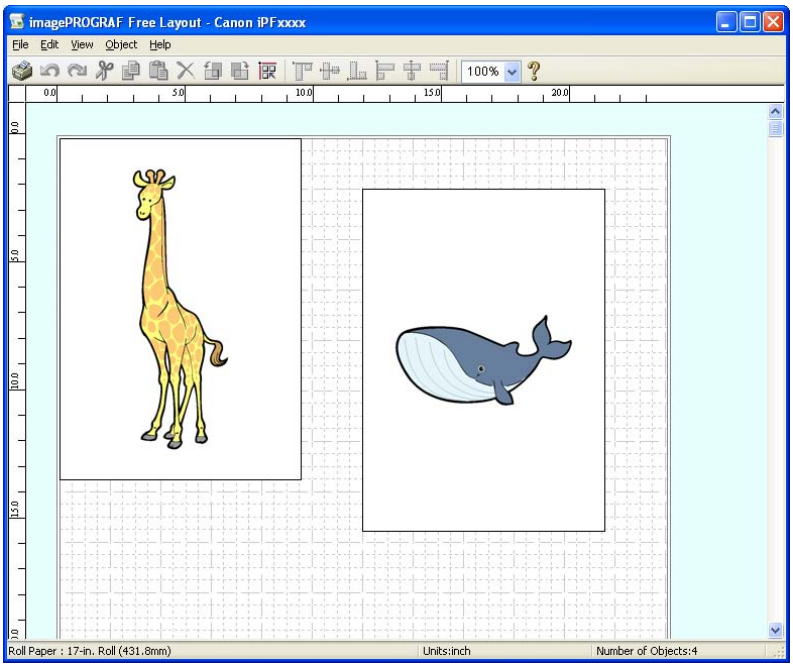
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet

Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other

By arranging originals from word-processing or spreadsheet programs or web browser screen shots next to each other on single sheets, you can create highly expressive presentation materials, easy-to-understand meeting materials, and a variety of other printed documents.

Free Layout (Windows)

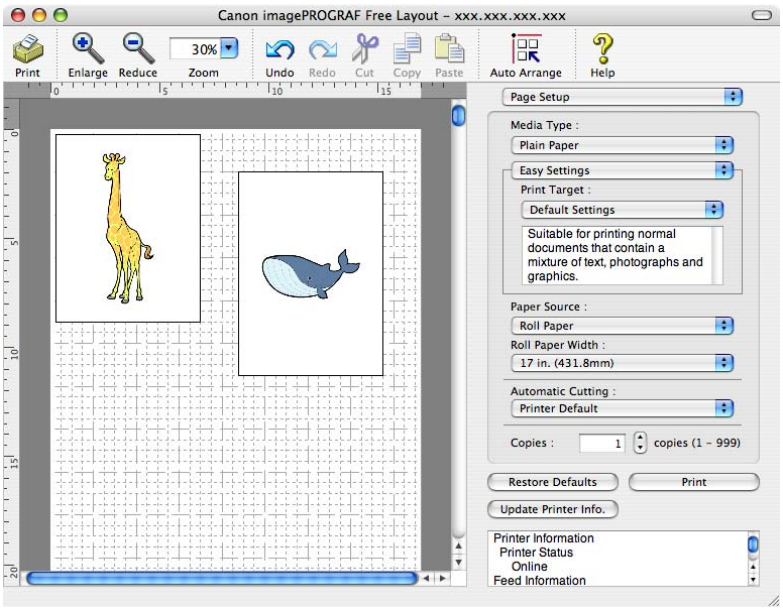
Besides combining multiple pages in a single-page layout, you can combine originals from multiple files-even multiple source applications-in a single-page layout.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Macintosh)

Besides combining multiple pages in a single-page layout, you can combine originals from multiple files-even multiple source applications-in a single-page layout.



Important

- The driver must be installed from the User Software CD-ROM to use this function.

For instructions on arranging originals from multiple applications, refer to the following topics.

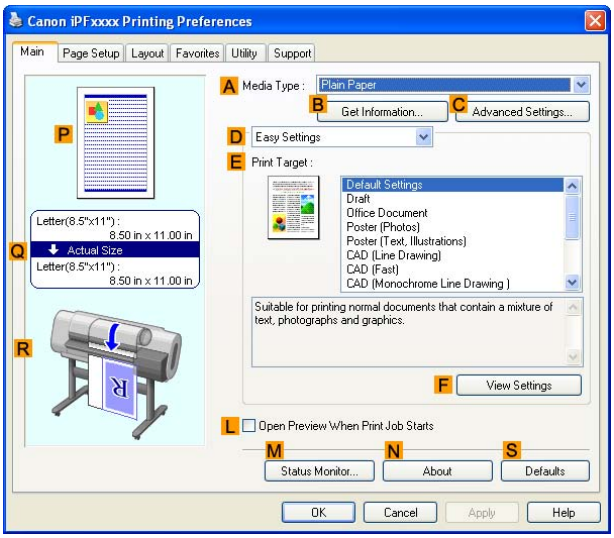
- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) (→P.270)
- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X) (→P.272)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

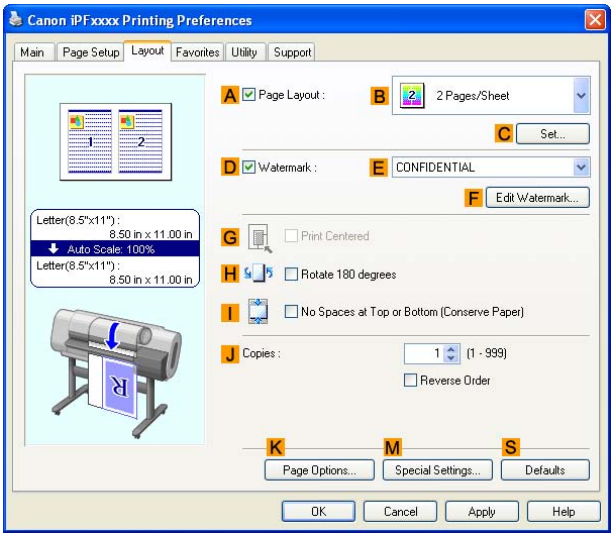
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows)

This topic describes how to arrange multiple originals using the Free Layout function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



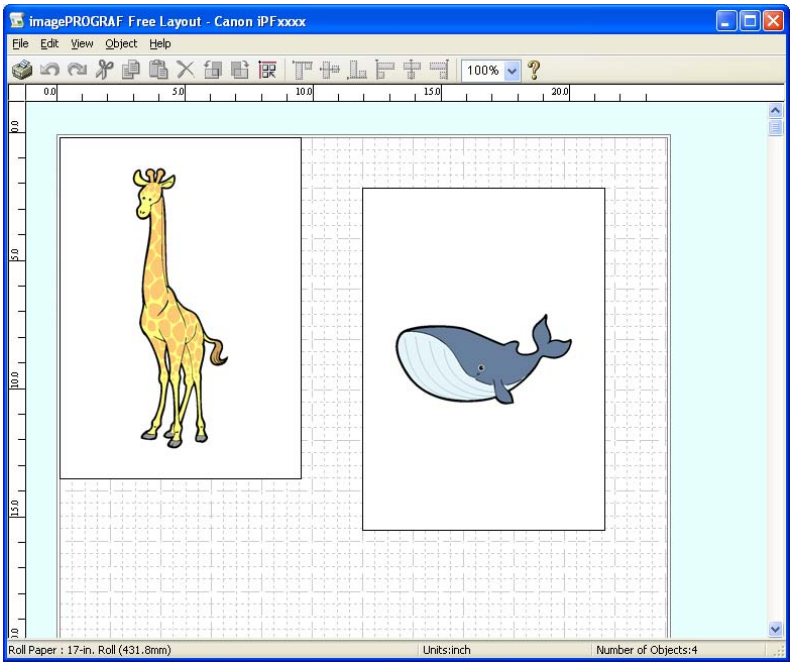
4. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



5. Select the A **Page Layout** check box.
6. Click **Free Layout** in the B **Page Layout** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. When you attempt to print, the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)



8. Edit and rearrange the image in the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window as desired.

Important

- Without closing the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window, repeat steps 1-7 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.

Note

- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the imagePROGRAF Free Layout help topic.

9. Print from the imagePROGRAF Free Layout menu.

Note

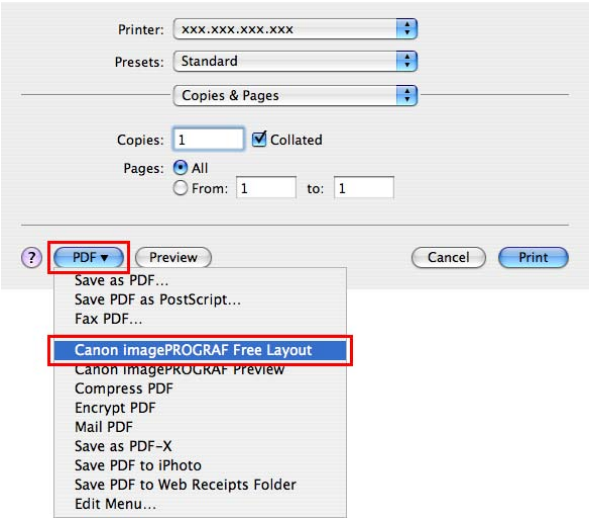
- For details on imagePROGRAF Free Layout functions, refer to Free Layout .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

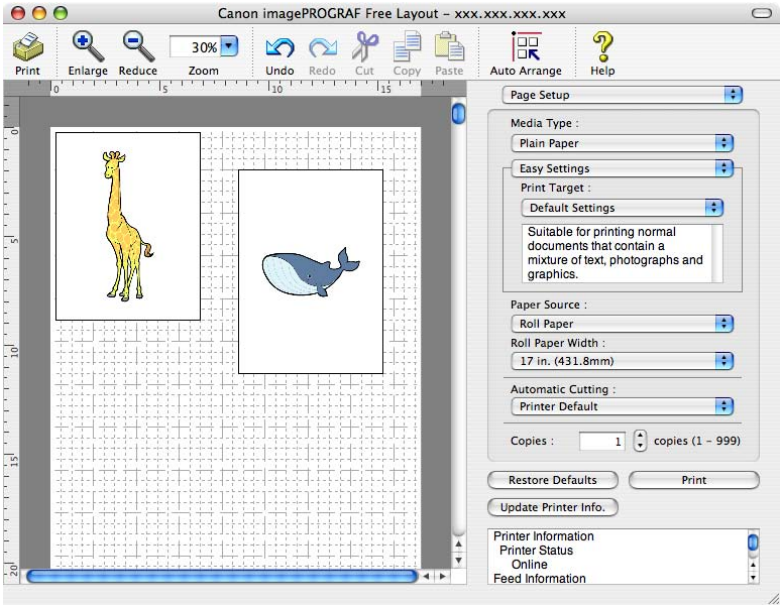
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to use the **Free Layout** function to arrange multiple originals next to each other before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Click **PDF** and select **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout**.



3. The **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window is displayed.



4. Edit and rearrange the image in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window as desired.

Important

- Without closing the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window, repeat steps 1-7 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.

Note

- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** help topic.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

5. Print from the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** menu.

Note

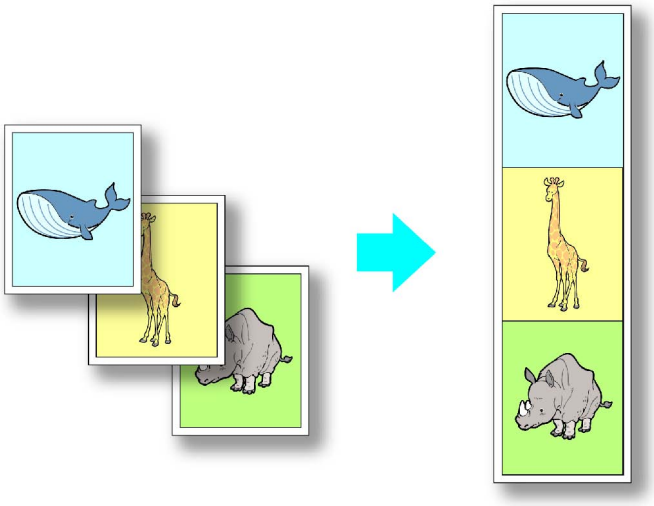
- For details on **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** functions, refer to Free Layout .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Multiple Pages Continuously

You can print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

Roll paper (banner)



Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) (→P.275)
- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X) (→P.277)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

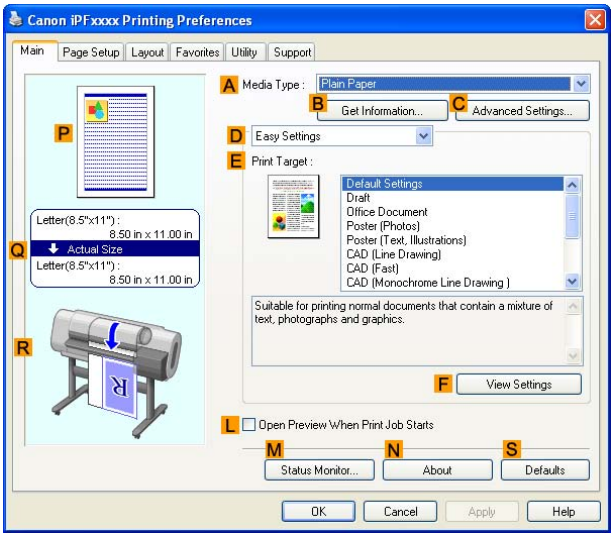
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows)

This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

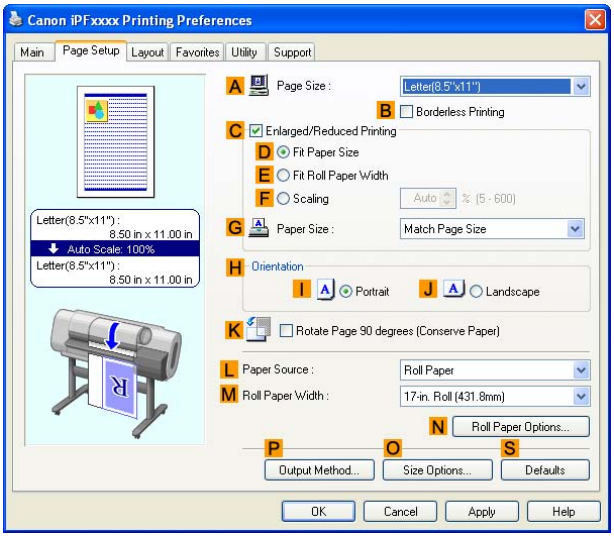
Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click N **Roll Paper Options** to display the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box.

8. Select the B **Banner Printing** check box.
9. Click **OK**.
10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

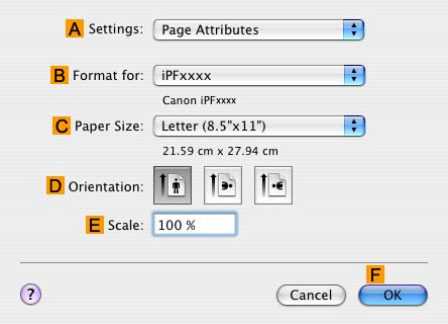
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

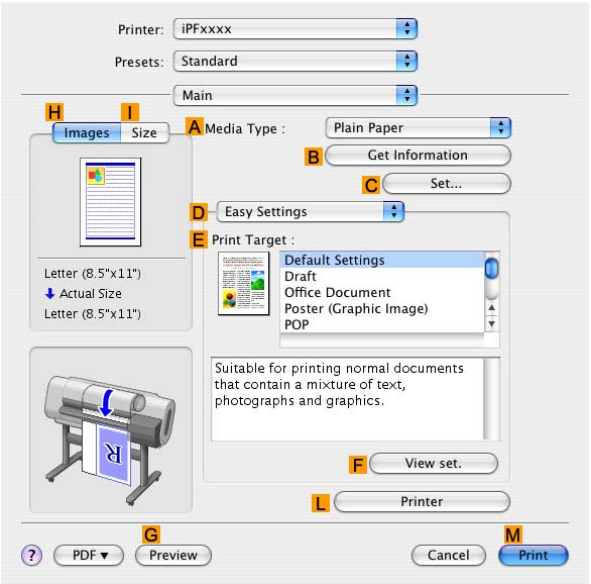
Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



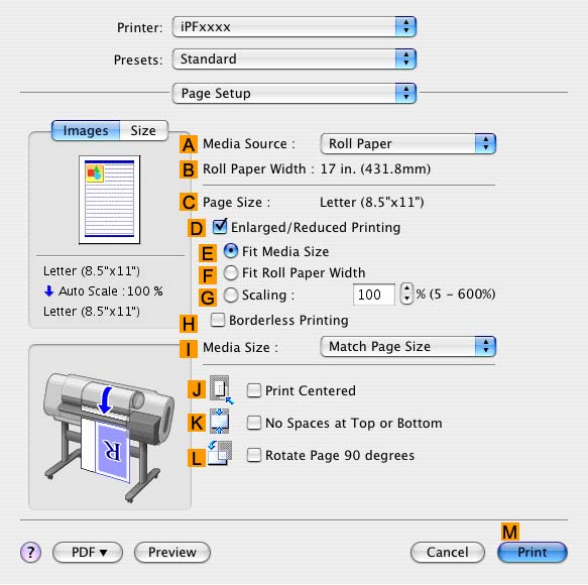
2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.
3. Click the original size in the **C Paper Size** list.
4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **A Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.
8. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Click **Roll Paper (Banner)** in the **A Media Source** list.

11. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

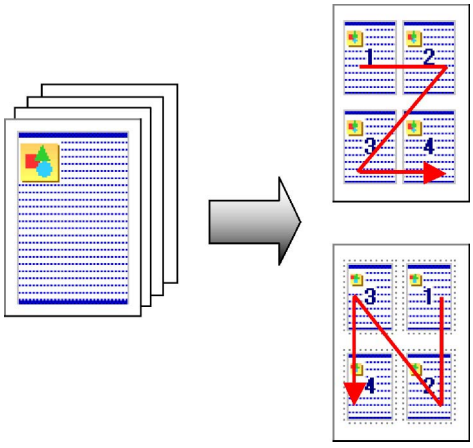
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet

To conserve paper, you can print several pages of the original on a single sheet by reducing the original and dividing the sheet into areas for each page.



Page Layout

Specify a number of pages of the original to print on a single sheet, in a layout of multiple pages per sheet.

Note

- You can print up to 16 pages of the original on a single sheet.
- You can also change the page layout order and print page boundary lines, as desired.

Important

- This function cannot be combined with the following options.
  - Borderless Printing
  - Resizing to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)
  - Scaling Originals (Windows)
  - Scaling Originals (Windows)
  - Banner Printing (Windows)

For instructions on printing multiple pages per sheet, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) (→P.280)
- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X) (→P.282)

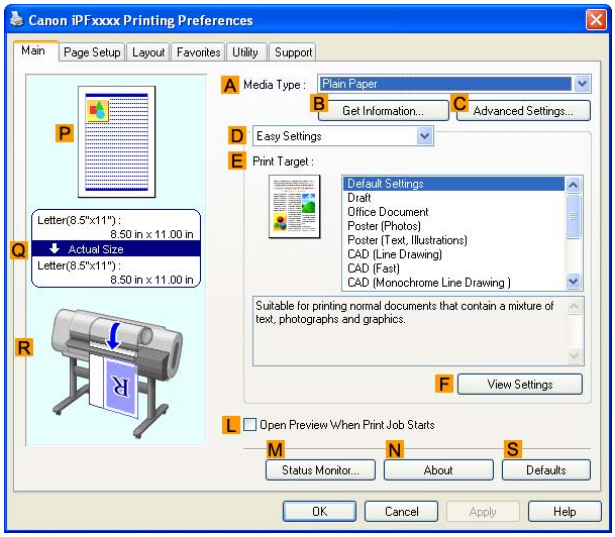
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows)

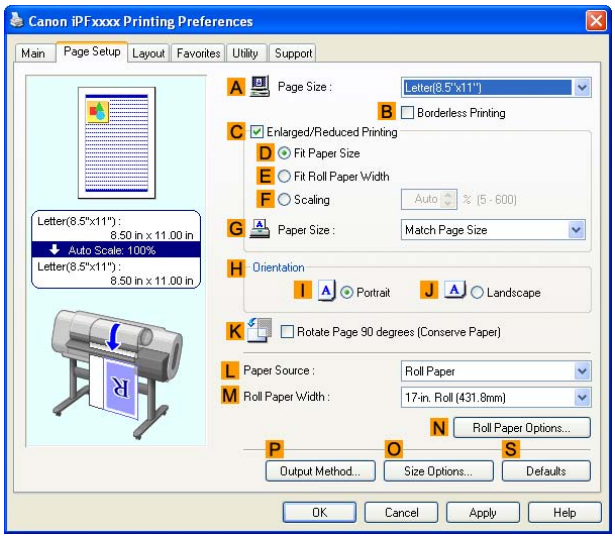
This topic describes how to print four pages of originals together on a single sheet based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7×16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



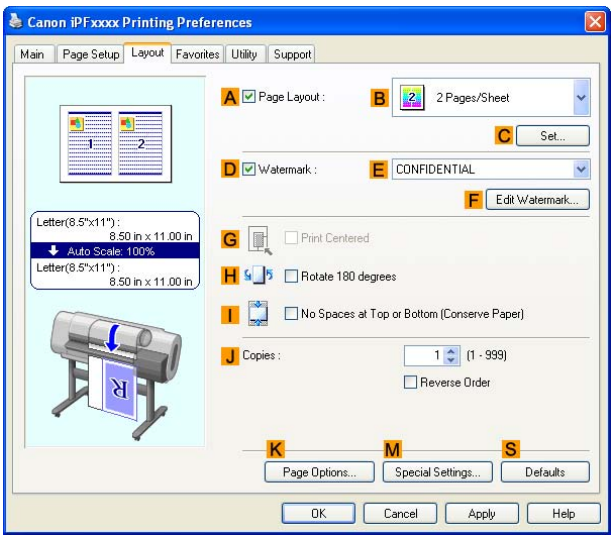
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
10. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



11. Select the A **Page Layout** check box.
12. Click **4 Pages/Sheet** in the B **Page Layout** list.

Note

- You can select the layout order for placing four pages on a sheet and a frame border in the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box by clicking C **Set**.

13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

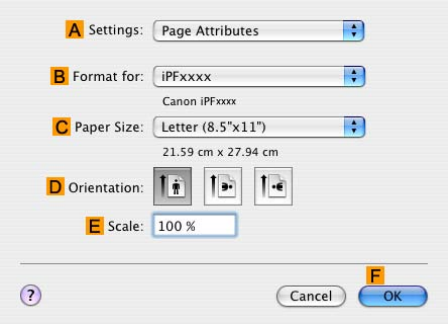
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X)

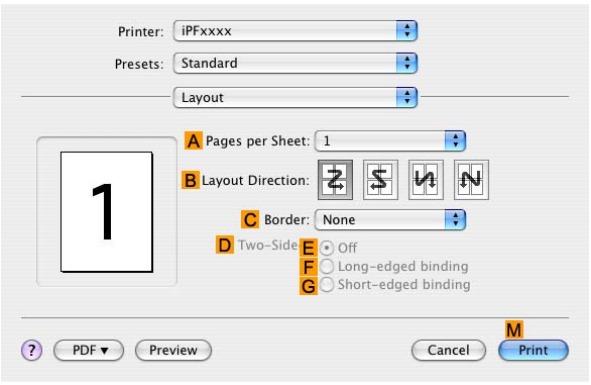
This topic describes how to print four pages of originals together on a single sheet based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Layout** pane.



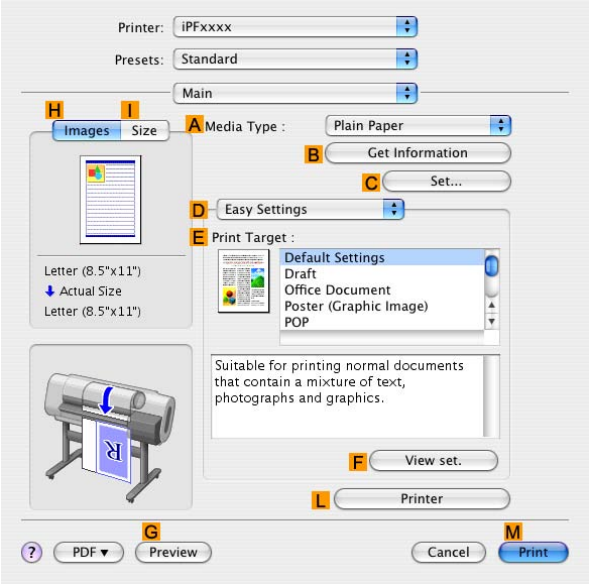
7. Click **4.0** in the A **Pages per Sheet** list.

Note

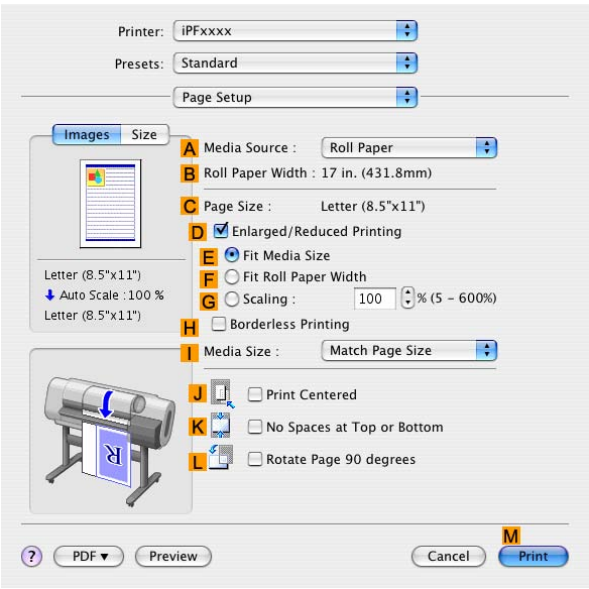
- You can choose the layout order and specify a boundary line for the four pages in B **Layout Direction** and C **Border** (or **Border**).

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Access the **Main** pane.



9. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
10. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
11. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



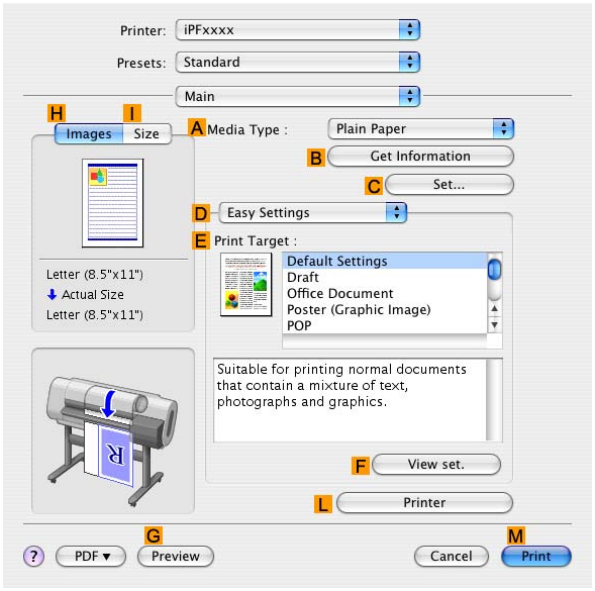
12. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

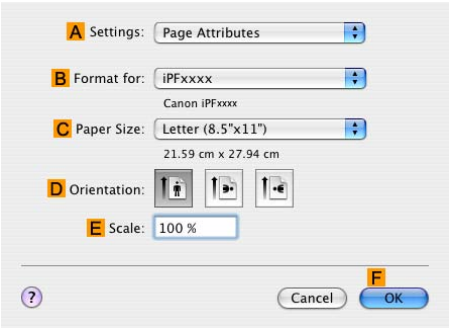
13. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B** **Roll Paper Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



14. Make sure **C** **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in **C** **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A3**.



15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

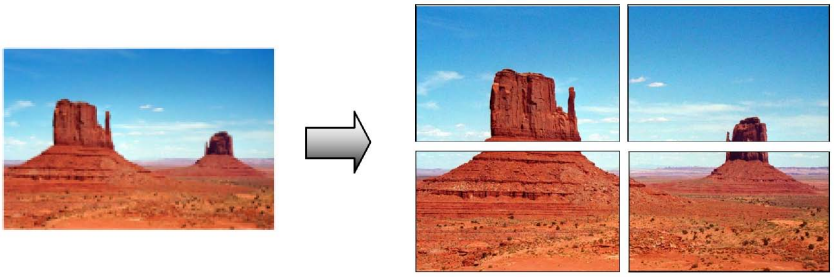
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Posters in Sections

You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer.



Page Layout

Choose poster printing.
For instructions on printing large posters, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Large Posters (Windows) (→P.286)

Note

- This method of poster printing is supported in Windows.

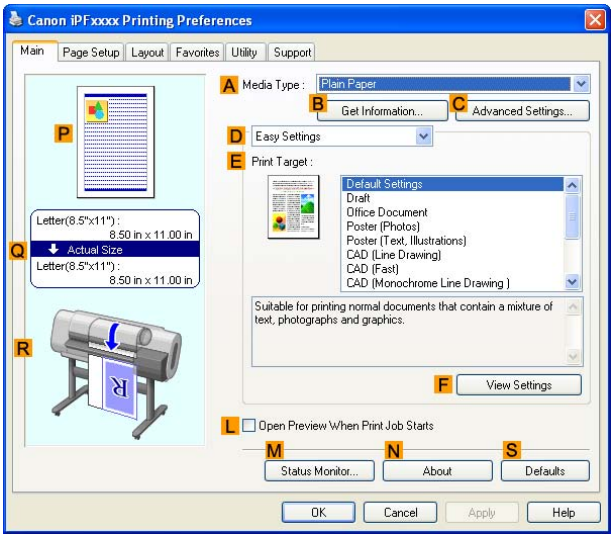
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Large Posters (Windows)

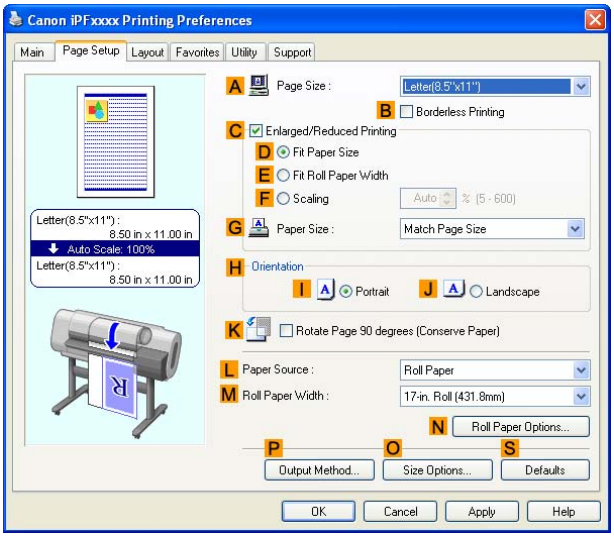
You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer. This topic describes how to enlarge an A2 original for printing it in sections on four sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Poster
- Page size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])
- Paper: Sheets (**Cut Sheet**)
- Paper Type: Glossy Paper
- Paper size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



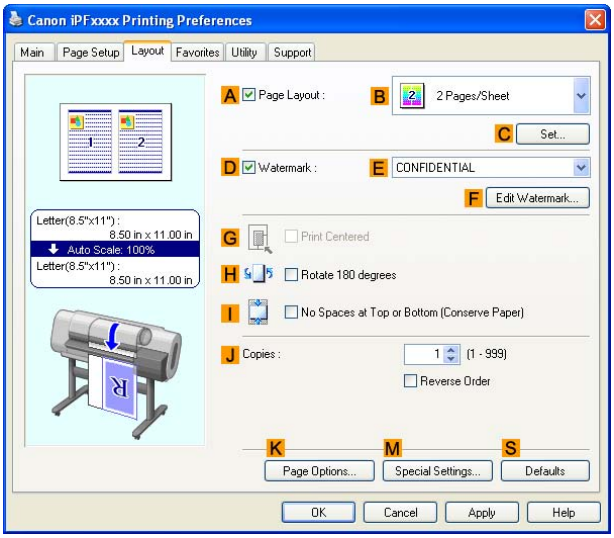
4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Paper.
5. Click **Poster (Photos)** or **Poster (Text, Illustrations)** in the **E** **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In **A** **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A2**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Click **Cut Sheet** in the L **Paper Source** list.
9. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10. Select the A **Page Layout** check box.
11. Click **Poster (2 x 2)** in the B **Page Layout** list.

Note

- Follow the steps below to print only a portion of the poster as divided for printing.
  1. Click C **Set** under B **Page Layout** to display the **Pages to Print** dialog box.
  2. On the **Pages to Print** dialog box, clear the check boxes of the portion you do not want to print.
  3. Click **OK** to close the **Pages to Print** dialog box.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

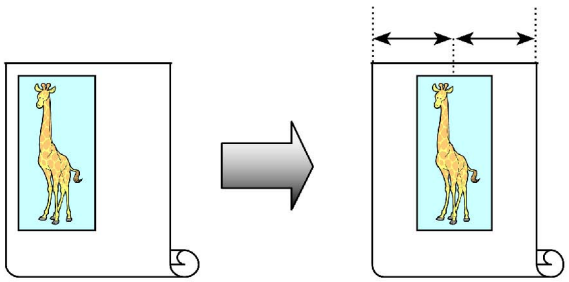
Centering originals

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls

When using originals smaller than the roll paper width, you can center them relative to the width when printing.

Print Centered

Aligns the center of the original with the center of the roll, relative to the width.



For instructions on centering originals when printing on rolls, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) (→P.289)
- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X) (→P.291)

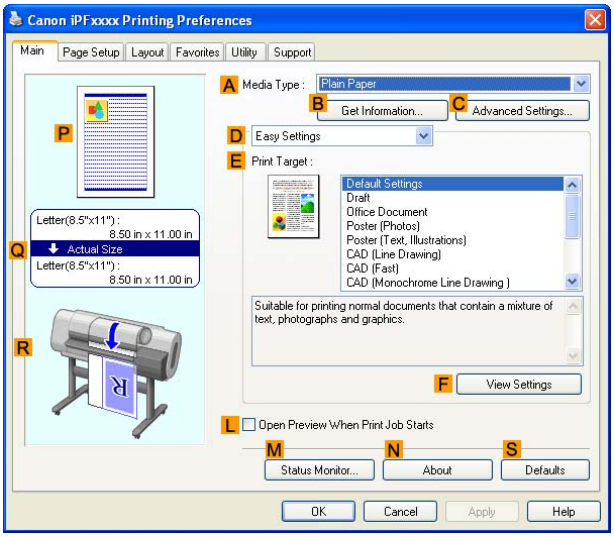
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows)

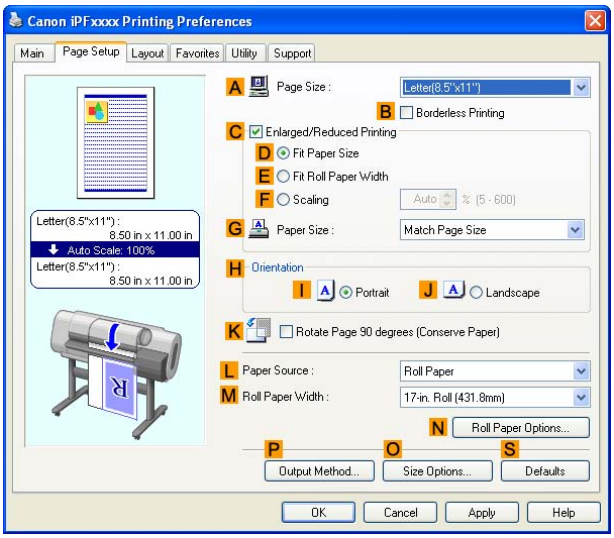
This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



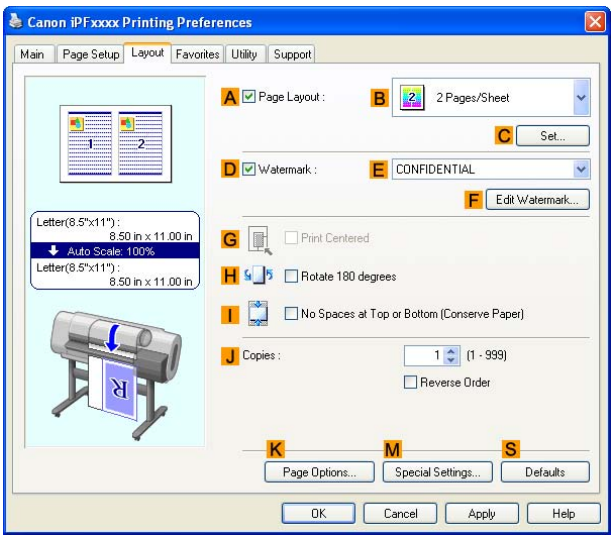
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.
10. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



11. Select the G **Print Centered** check box.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

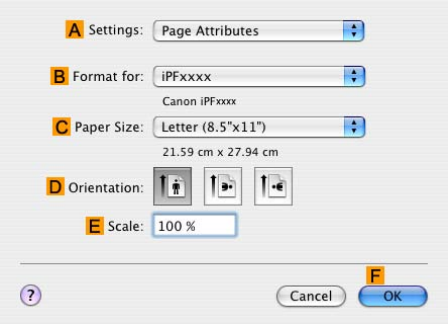
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X)

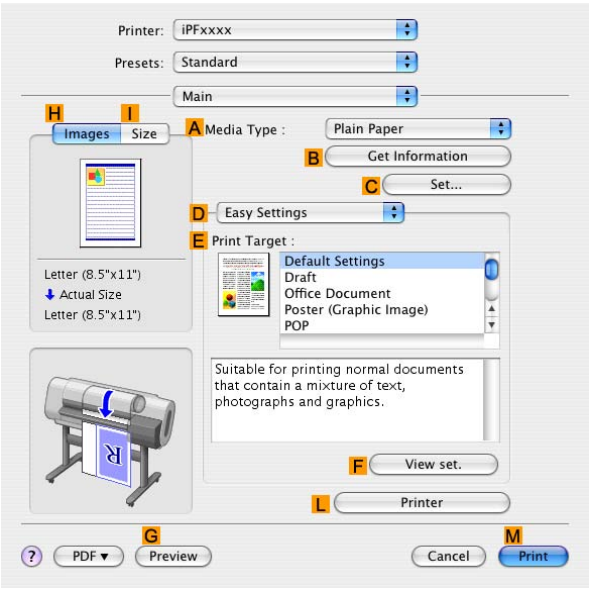
This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.00 mm [11.7 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



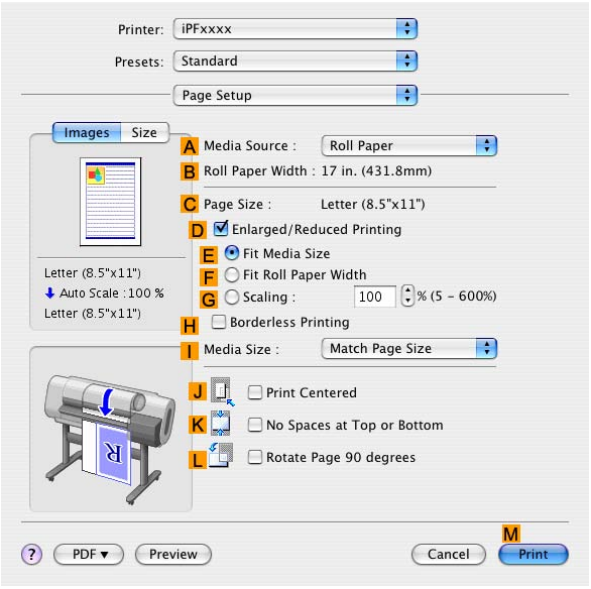
2. Select the print target in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

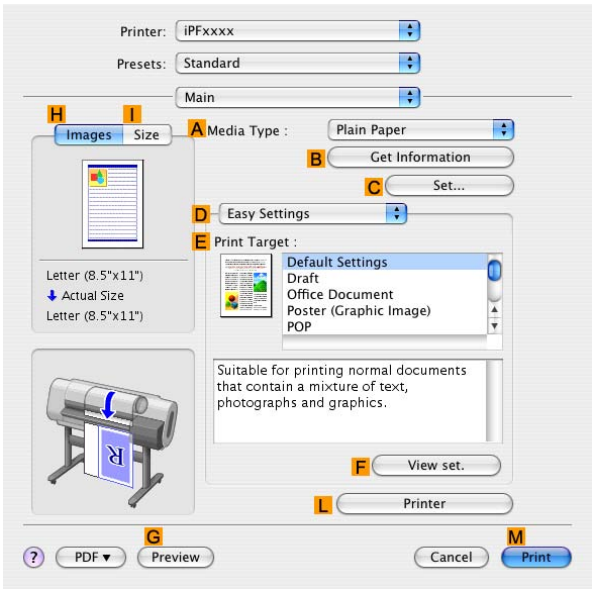


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10-in. Roll**.

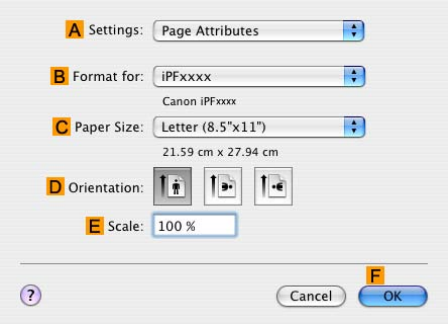
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the J **Print Centered** check box.

14. Confirm the print settings, and click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

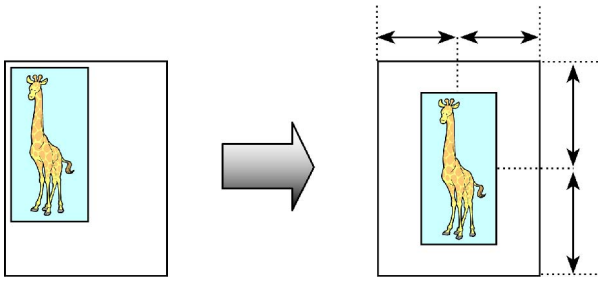
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets

When you print originals that are smaller than the sheet size, the originals are arranged in the upper left corner of the sheet. If you prefer, you can print originals that were arranged this way centered on the sheet instead.

Print Centered

Aligns the center of the original with the center of the sheet.



For instructions on centering originals when printing on sheets, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows) (→P.295)
- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X) (→P.297)

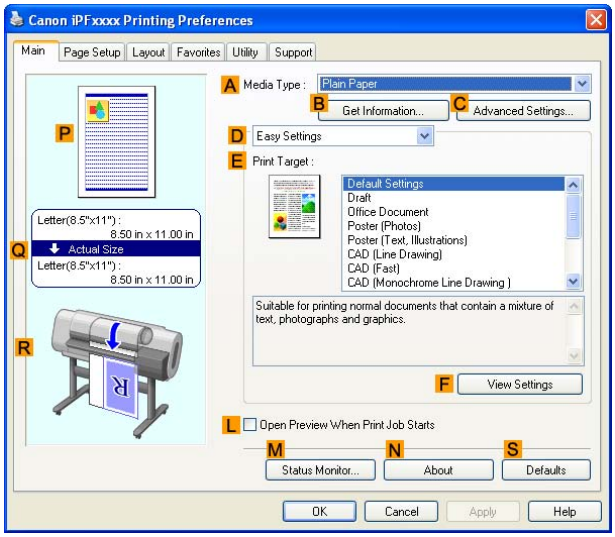
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows)

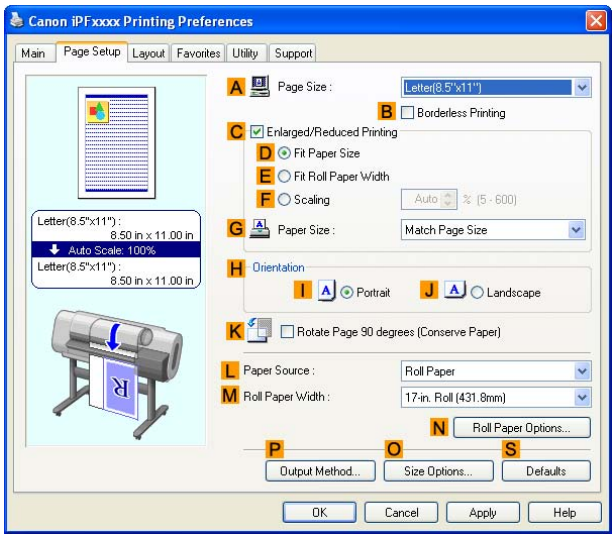
This topic describes how to reduce an original 50% for printing centered on a sheet.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



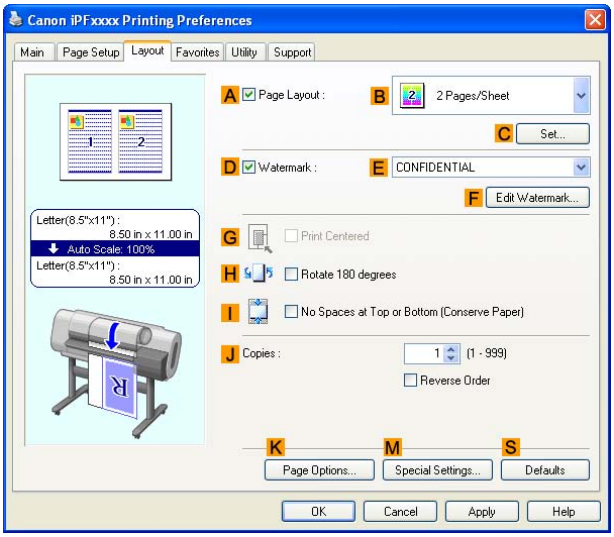
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Click **Match Page Size** in the G **Paper Size** list.
10. Click F **Scaling** and enter “50.”
11. Click **Cut Sheet** in the L **Paper Source** list.
12. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



13. Select the G **Print Centered** check box.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

Important

- If you have selected **Cut Sheet** as the paper source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.

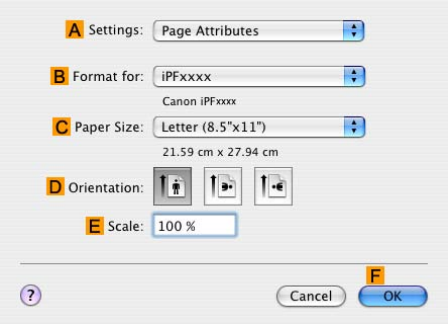
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X)

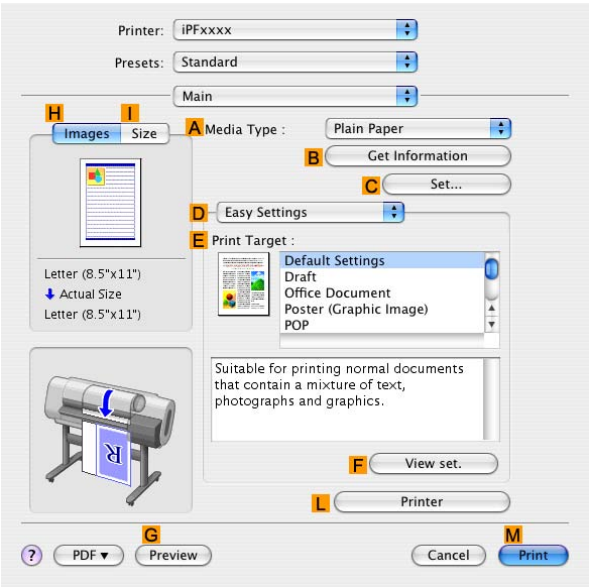
This topic describes how to center originals for printing on sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4/Letter
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: Non-standard

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



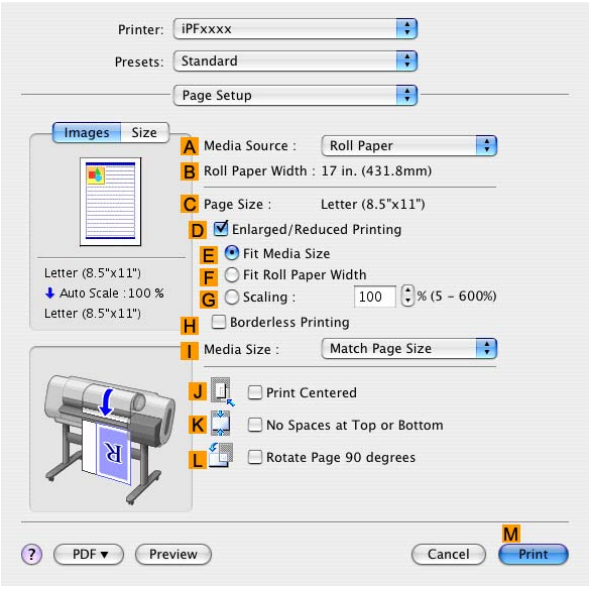
2. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
3. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
4. In the application software menu, choose **Print**.
5. Access the **Main** pane.



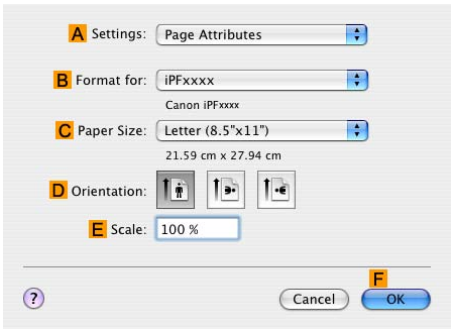
6. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
7. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. Click **Cut Sheet** in the A **Media Source** list.
10. Make sure C **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



11. Select the J **Print Centered** check box.
12. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Important

- If you have selected **Cut Sheet** as the paper source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

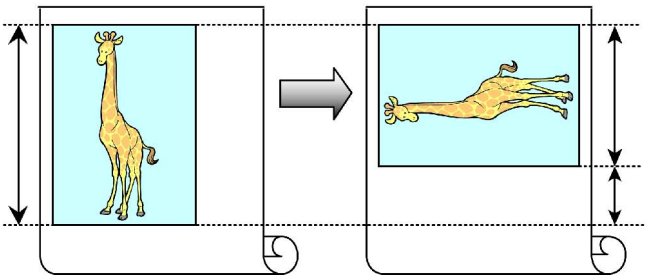
Conserving roll paper

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees

You can conserve roll paper by specifying particular settings as suitable for your original.

Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

When originals are printed in portrait orientation, the original is rotated 90 degrees before printing if it fits within the roll width. This enables you to conserve paper.



Important

- If the page would exceed the roll paper width after rotation, use this function with Scale to fit Roll Paper Width to print rotated pages.

For tips on conserving roll paper, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) (→P.300)
- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X) (→P.302)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

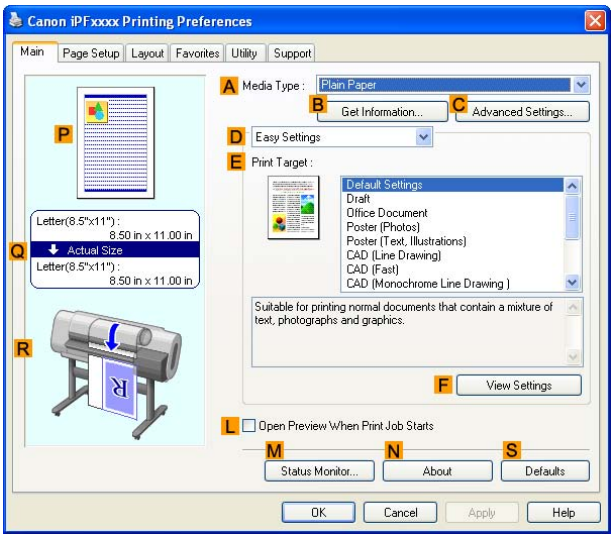
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows)

This topic describes how to conserve paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

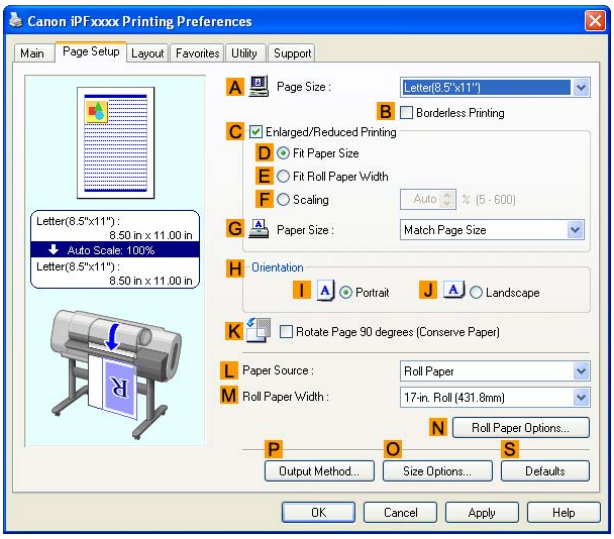
- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3×11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3×11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll paper (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

6. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
7. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.
8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.
9. Select the K **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** check box.
10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

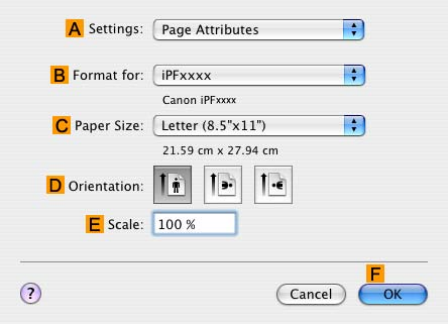
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to conserve roll paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

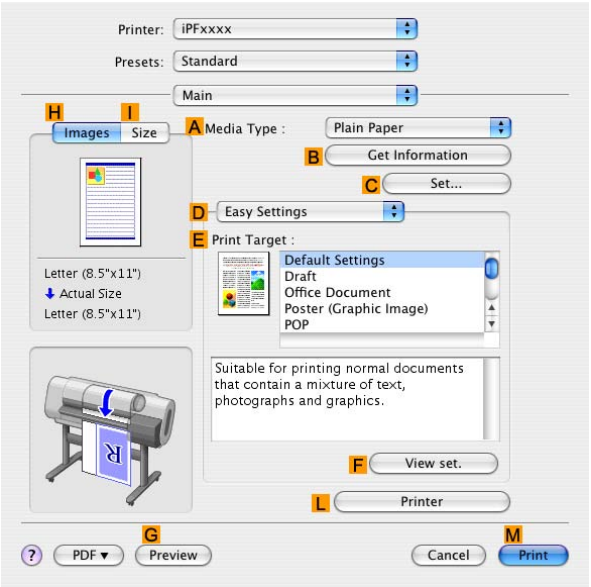
- Document: Any type
- Page Size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



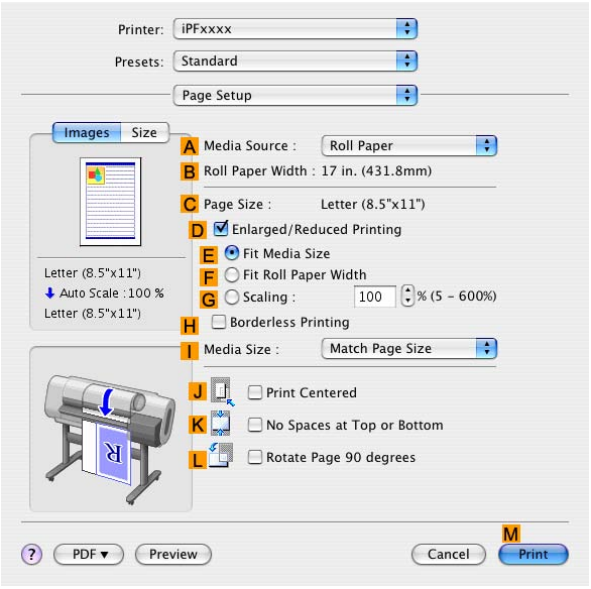
2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

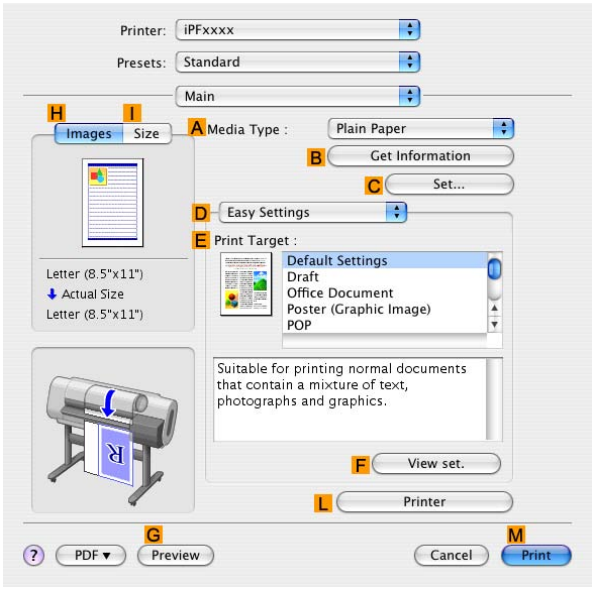
8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
10. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Paper Width** -in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

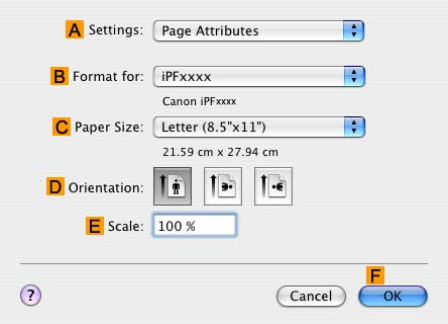
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

11. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



12. Select the L **Rotate Page 90 degrees** check box.

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

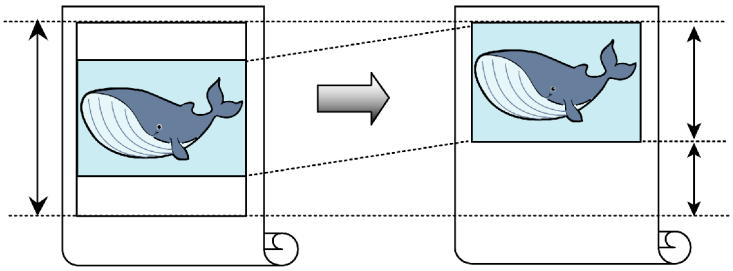
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins

You can conserve roll paper by specifying particular settings as suitable for your original.

No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

You can print without feeding the paper for blank portions of originals if there are top and bottom margins in originals. This enables you to conserve as much paper as the size of the margins.



Important

- Printing without the top and bottom margins is not supported in the following cases.
  - Banner printing
  - If you have chosen poster as the type of page layout

Note

- Even during borderless printing, you can print without the top and bottom margins.
- Printing without the top and bottom margins may cause inconsistency in the size of printed documents, depending on the layout of images or text in your originals.

For tips on conserving roll paper, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) (→P.306)
- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X) (→P.308)

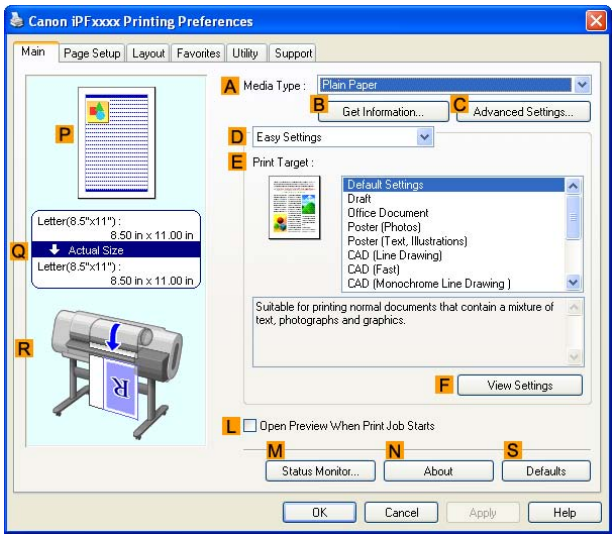
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows)

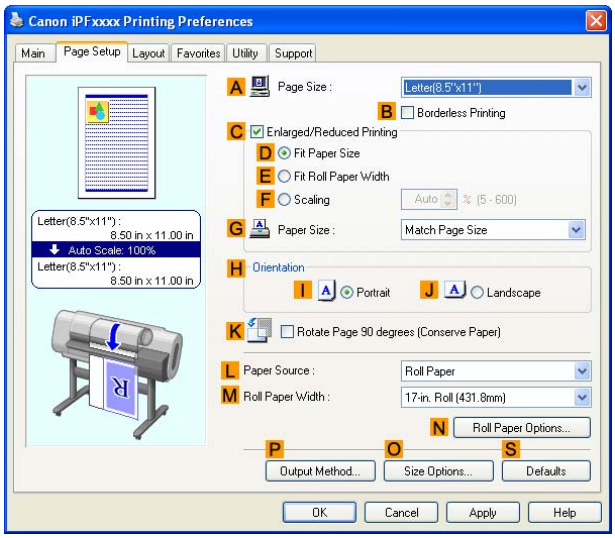
This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



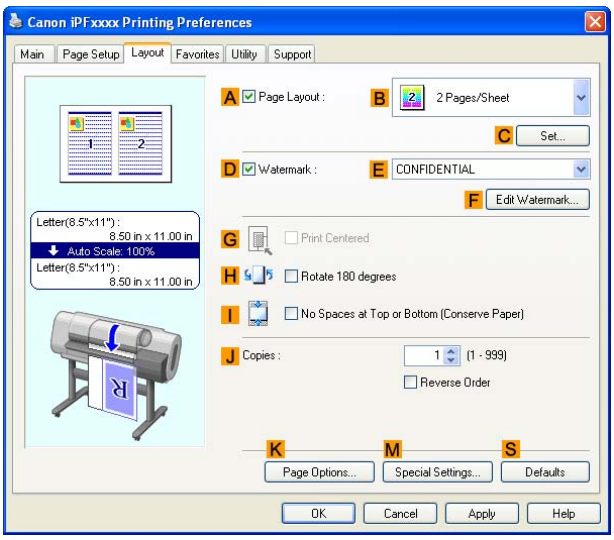
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
7. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.
9. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10. Select the I **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)** check box.
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

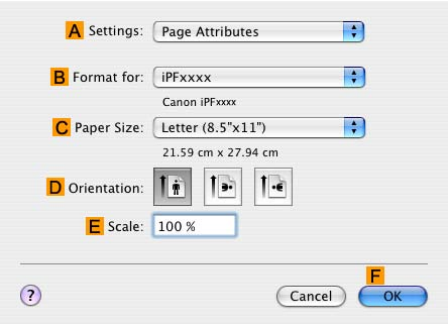
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X)

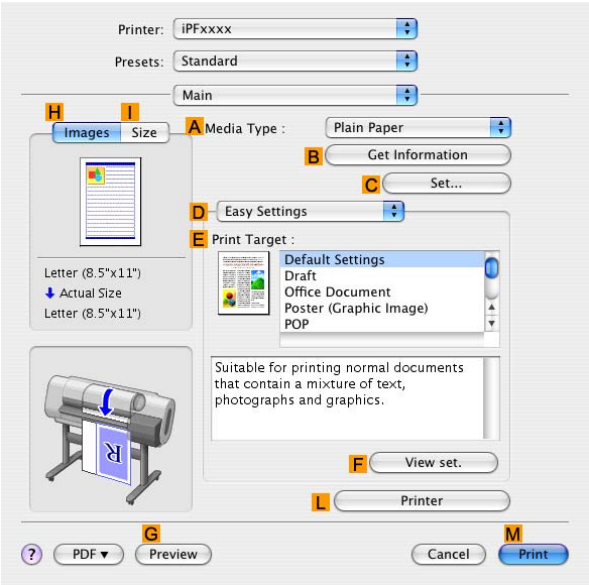
This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



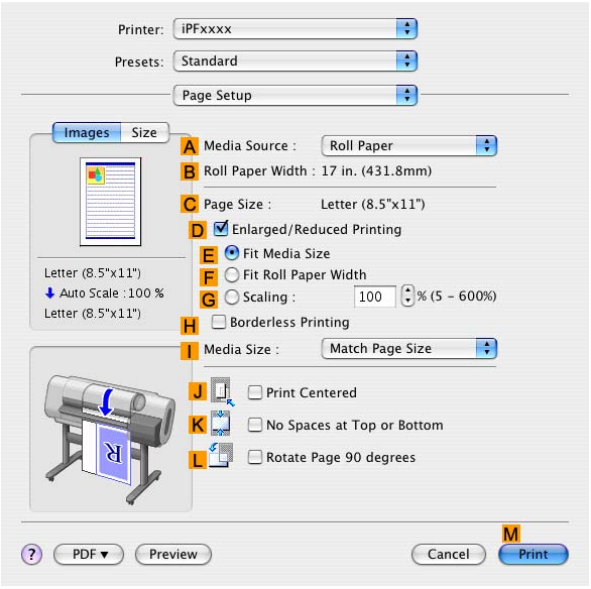
2. Select the print target in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

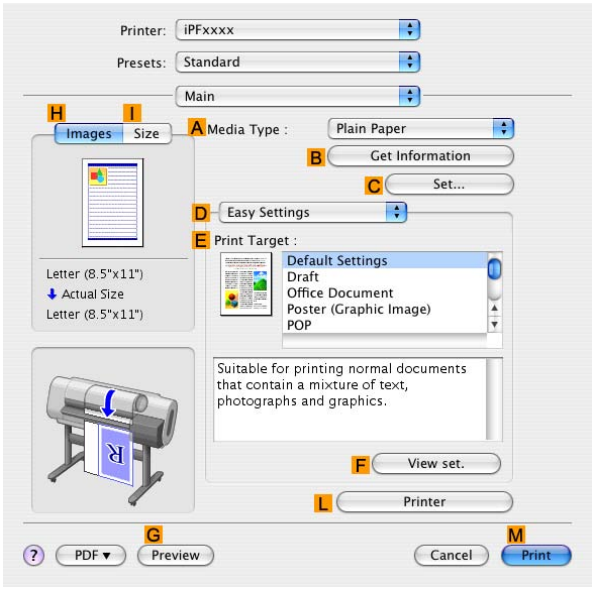
8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
10. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Paper Width** -in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

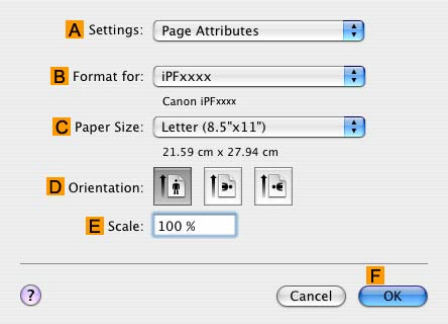
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

11. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



12. Select the K **No Spaces at Top or Bottom** check box.

13. Confirm the print settings, and click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

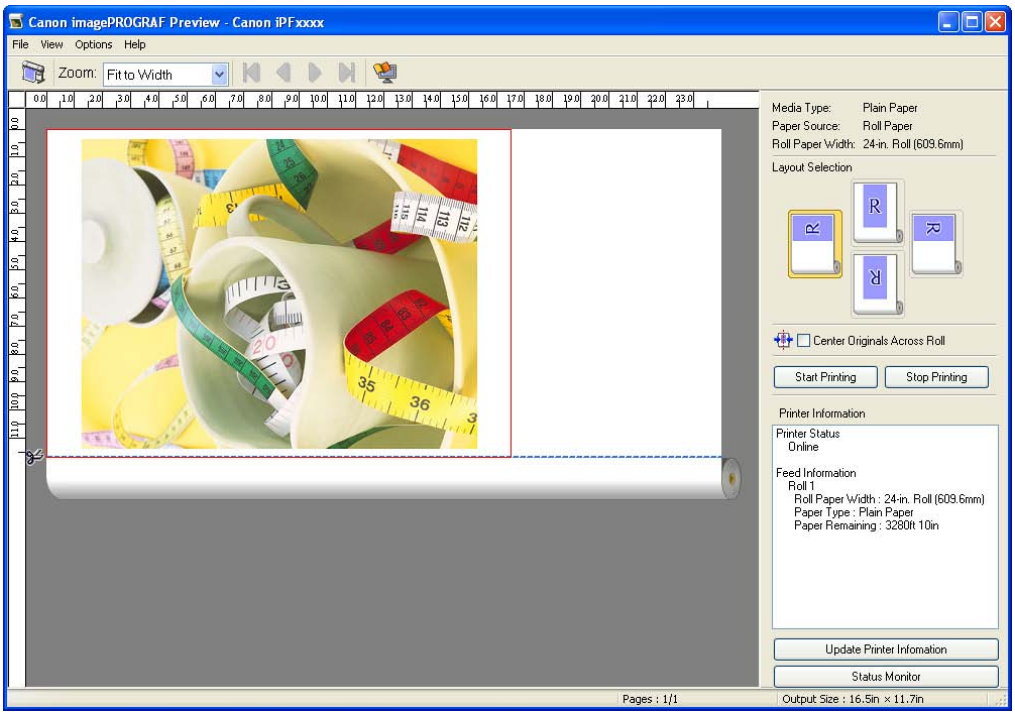
Checking Images Before Printing

Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing

You can check the print layout on the preview screen.

Open Preview When Print Job Starts (Windows)

While viewing the preview screen, you can also adjust orientation or other settings, and your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen.



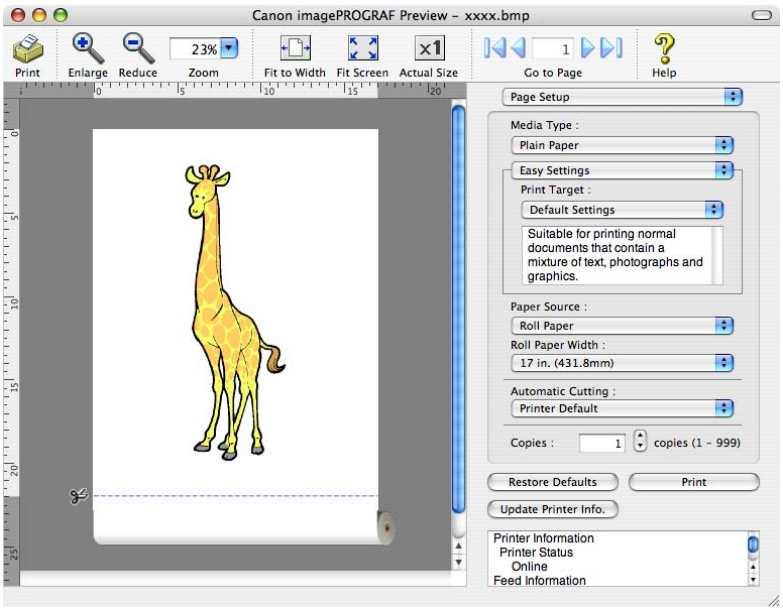
Note

- Under some settings and in some environments, PageComposer may be started.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Preview (Macintosh)

While viewing the preview screen, you can also adjust layout or size settings, and your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen.



Important

- The driver must be installed from the User Software CD-ROM to use this function.

For instructions on how to check the layout before printing, refer to the following topics:

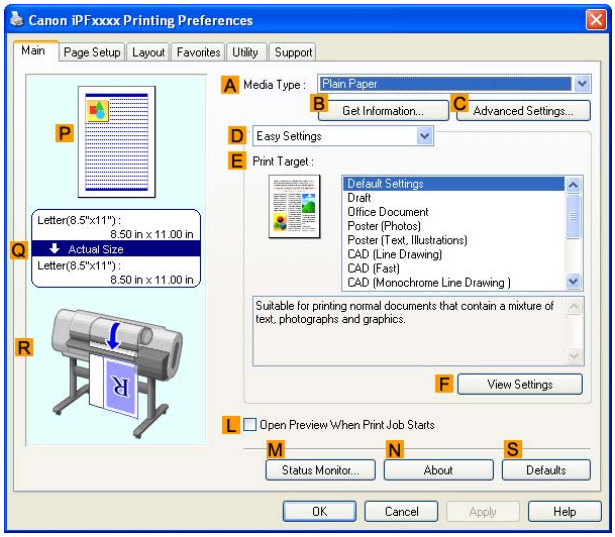
- Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows) (→P.313)
- Checking the Layout Before Printing (Mac OS X) (→P.315)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

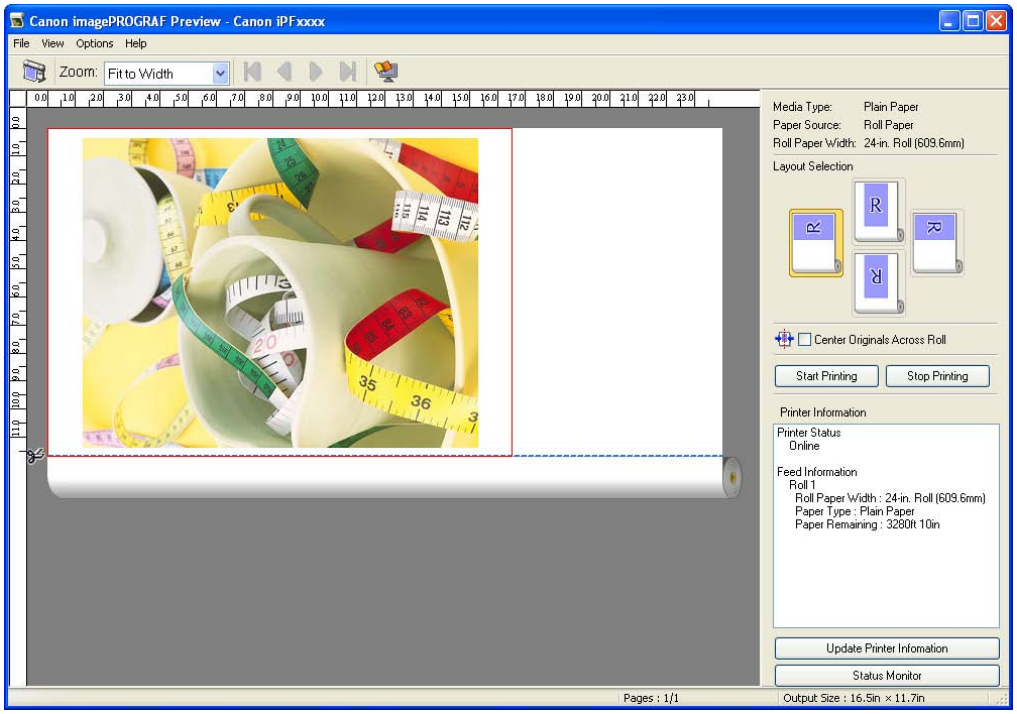
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows)

This topic describes how to preview images of print jobs before actually printing them.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. Select the **L** **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** check box.
5. After you click **OK**, when you print a job, the **imagePROGRAF Preview** window will be displayed.



Note

- If PageComposer is running, access the **Special Settings** dialog box from the **Layout** sheet and clear **Enable Preview Switching**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

6. On the main window, you can check the layout and change settings as needed.
7. To print, click **Start Printing** in the **File** menu.

Note

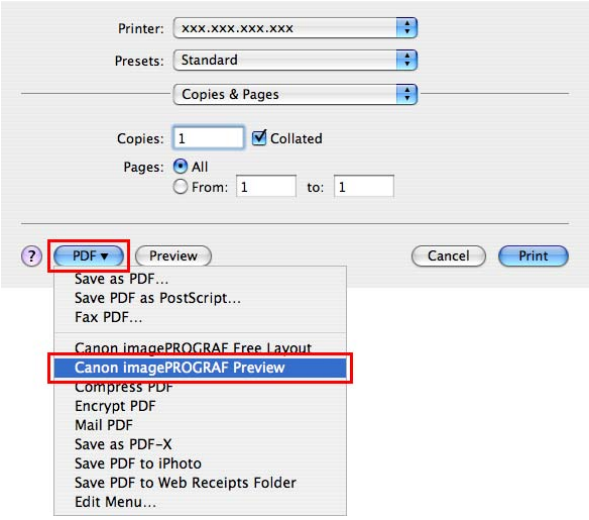
- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, see Preview .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

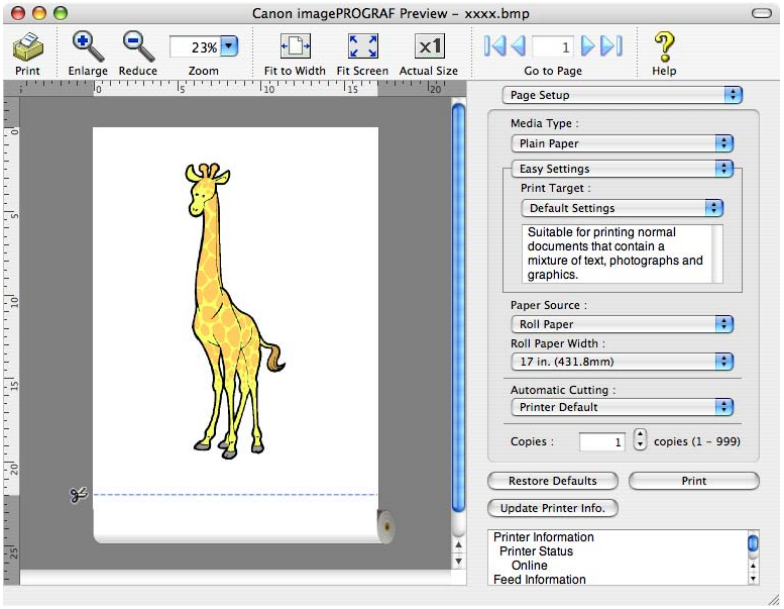
Checking the Layout Before Printing (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to check the layout before printing using the **Preview** function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Click **PDF** and select **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview**.



3. The **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window is displayed.



4. Check the layout and adjust settings in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window as desired.
5. Print from the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** menu.

Note

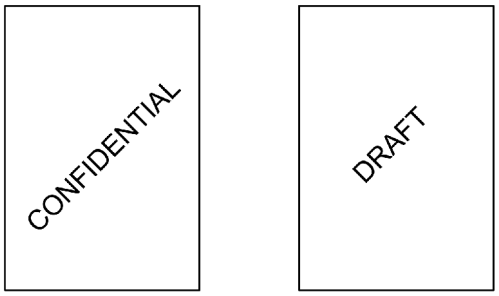
- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, refer to Preview .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Other useful settings

Printing With Watermarks

You can add watermarks (background images) to documents that require special handling.



Watermark

Watermarks are applied to all pages of your document.

Important

- Watermarks are not printed if you select poster as the type of page layout.

The following watermarks are provided:

- CONFIDENTIAL
- COPY
- DRAFT
- FILE COPY
- FINAL
- PRELIMINARY
- PROOF
- TOP SECRET

You can also create your own watermarks. Specify the following options to customize your watermark.

- Watermark string: Specify the font, size, color, and so on. Surround the watermark with a frame, if desired.
- Watermark position: Specify the position on the page, the angle, and so on.
- Watermark printing method: Specify whether to print the watermark superimposed or under the document image. You can also print the watermark only on the first page, if desired.

Note

- Watermarks are supported in Windows.
- In addition to the provided watermarks, you can create up to 50 original watermarks in Windows.

For detailed instructions on printing with watermarks, refer to the following topics:

- Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows) (→P.317)

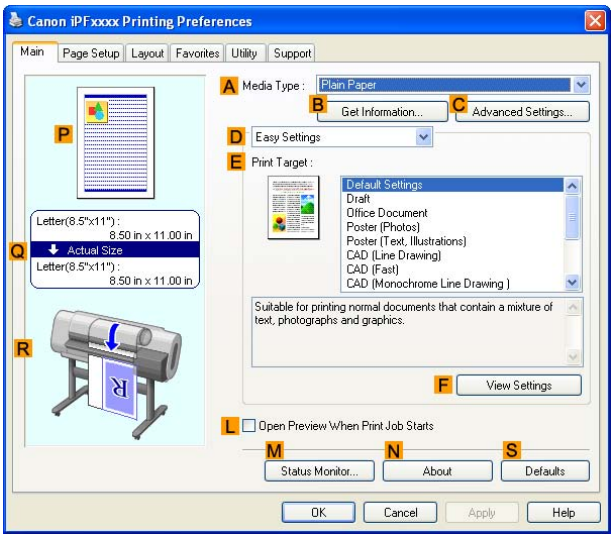
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows)

This topic describes how to print office documents with a watermark (in this case, “FILE COPY”) based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A2 (420.0 × 594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



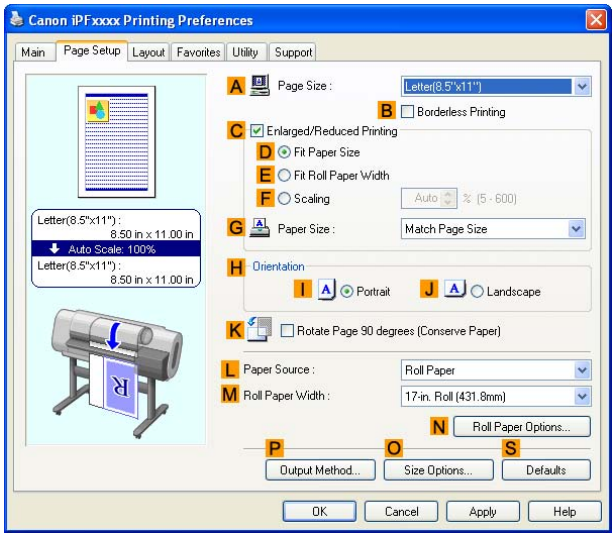
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

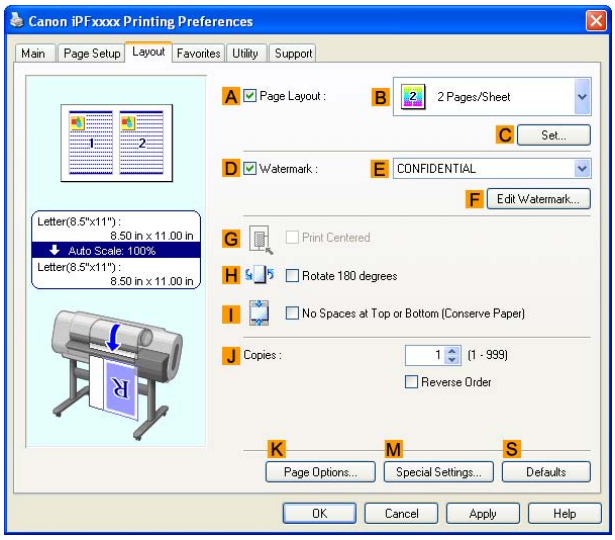
- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
10. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



11. Select the D **Watermark** check box.
12. Click **FILE COPY** in the E **Watermarks** list.

Note

- To create your own, original watermark, click F **Edit Watermark**. Refer to the printer driver help for instructions on modifying watermarks to create your own.

13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

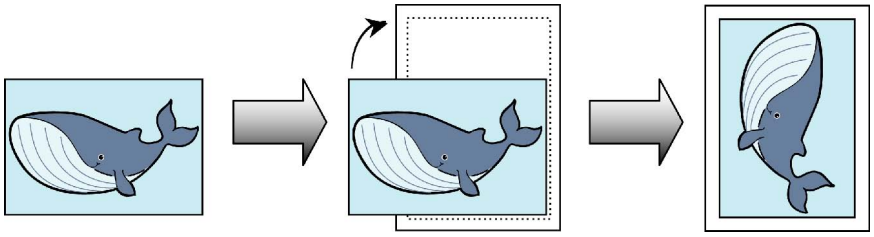
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation

You can specify the original orientation to match the orientation of the paper for printing.

Orientation

Paper is usually loaded in the printer in portrait orientation. When you have an original in landscape orientation, you can specify the printing orientation so that the original is printed in landscape orientation.



Rotate 180 degrees

The original is rotated 180 degrees to print it upside down.

Mirror

A mirror image of the original is printed.

For instructions on specifying the original orientation before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows) (→P.320)
- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X) (→P.322)

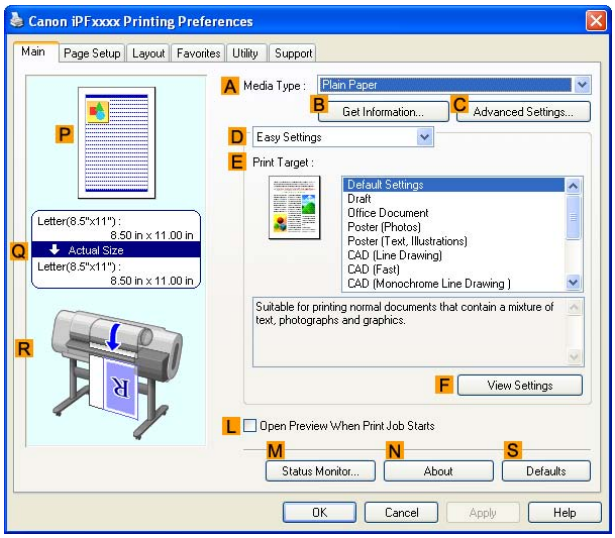
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows)

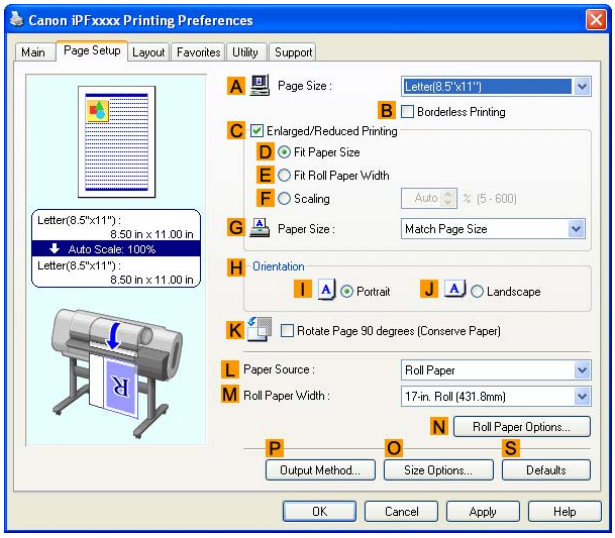
This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. In H **Orientation**, click J **Landscape**.
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.
10. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

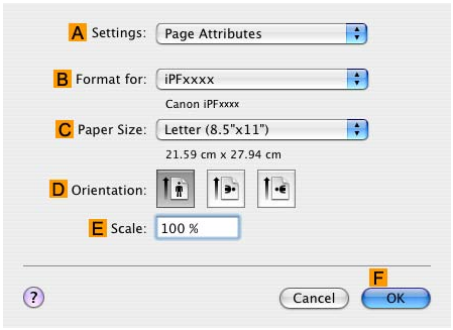
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X)

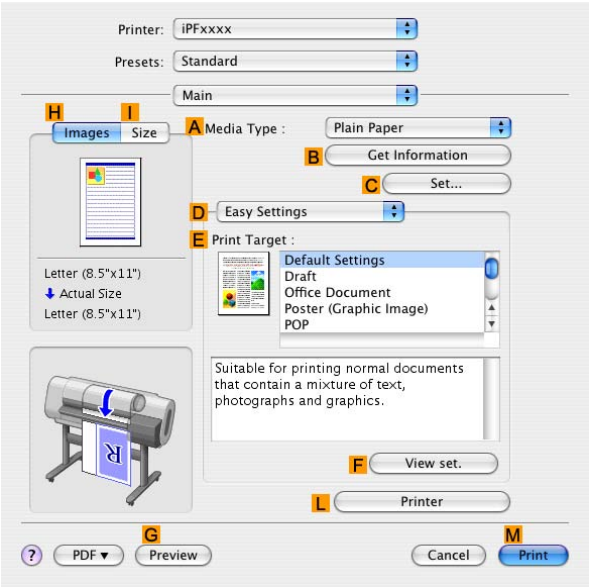
This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



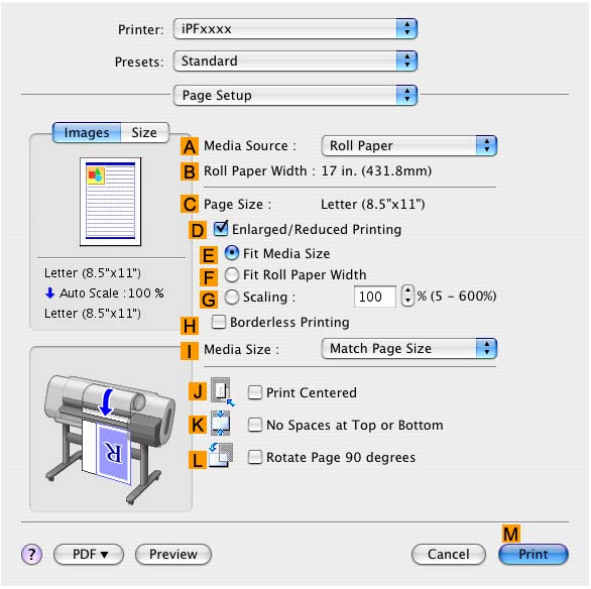
2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. In D **Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.
5. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
9. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

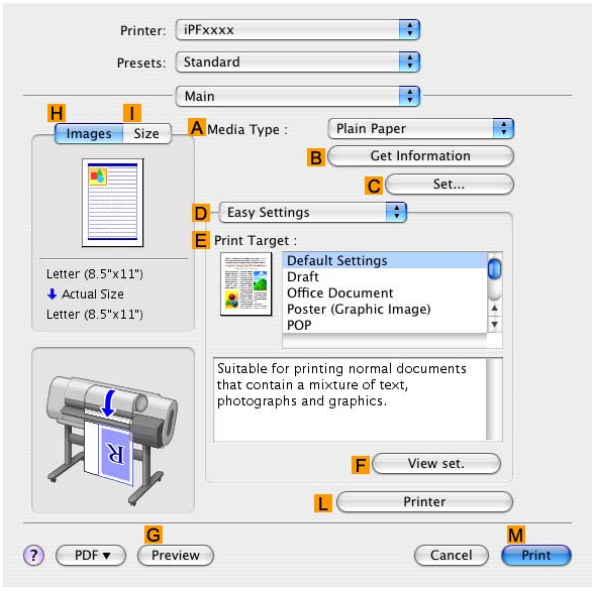


11. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

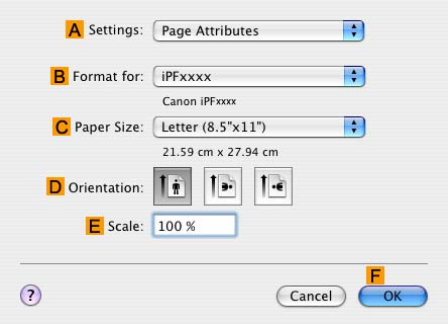
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



14. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using Favorites

You can register print settings as **Favorites** to reuse settings from a particular job that met your expectations, or settings for a particular page size that you will use repeatedly.

Favorites

Registering a favorite for later use. You can choose the settings you have registered from a list before printing, and you can check the settings details.

Note

- You can also save the favorite settings as files. Using these files is a convenient way to print under the same conditions on another computer. (In Windows.)

For instructions on using favorites to print, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Using Favorites (Windows) (→P.326)
- Using Favorites (Mac OS X) (→P.328)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

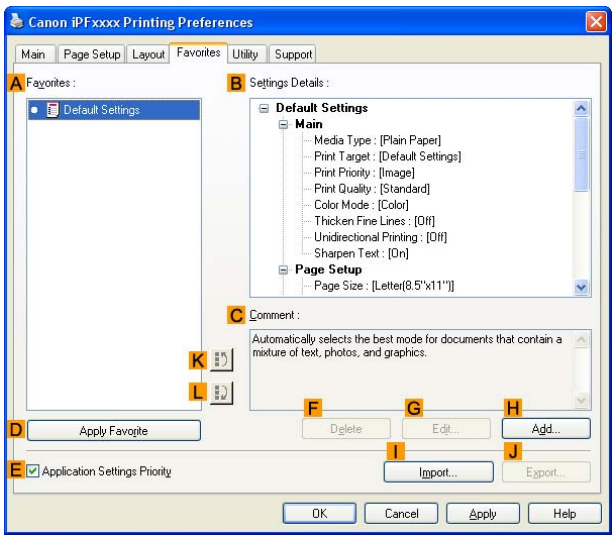
Using Favorites (Windows)

This topic describes how to register favorites and print using favorite settings.

Registering a favorite

Follow the steps below to save the current print settings as a favorite.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Complete the print settings.
4. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



5. Click H **Add** to display the **Add** dialog box.
6. Complete the following settings in the **Add** dialog box.
   - Enter a desired name in **Name**, such as “Photos for Presentations” or “Monthly Report.”
   - Choose a fitting icon for these print settings in the **Icon** list.
   - In **Comment**, enter a description of the favorite to be added, as desired.
7. Click **OK** to close the **Add** dialog box.

   The favorite you have added is now displayed in A **Favorites**.

Note

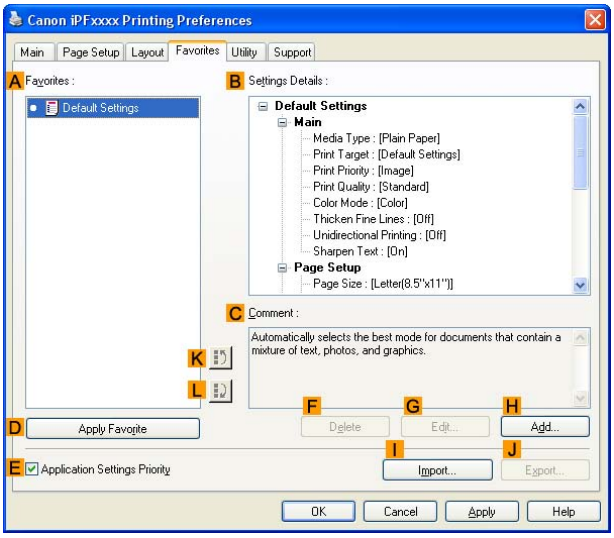
- To save a favorite as a file, click J **Export** and specify the file to save.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing using the favorite

Follow the steps below to print using the favorite you have registered.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



4. In the A **Favorites**, choose the favorite you registered.

Note

- To import a favorite, click I **Import** and specify the favorite file.

5. Click D **Apply Favorite** to replace the favorite settings with the current print settings.
6. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using Favorites (Mac OS X)

You can use the **Presets** function in Mac OS X for favorite-based printing.

Note

- In the printing dialog box, click **Save As** in the **Presets** list to save the current print settings. This is a standard feature of the operating system. For details, refer to the Mac OS documentation.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cutting Roll Paper After Printing

Roll paper can be automatically cut after printing.

Note

- It may not be possible to cut certain types of paper, such as adhesive paper. For details on types of paper that cannot be used with the auto cut feature, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)

Automatic Cutting

Roll paper is cut automatically after printing. If you prefer, you can print continuously without cutting the roll, or you can print a cut line.
For instructions on cutting roll paper after printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows) (→P.330)
- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X) (→P.331)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

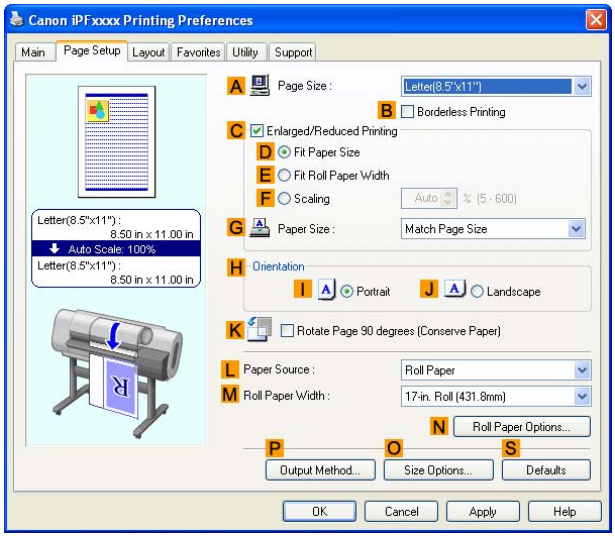
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows)

This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically (using the auto cut function) after printing, as well as how to print a cut line to cut the paper manually.

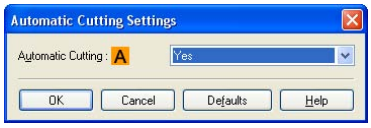
Note

- Auto cut function is activated on the printer by factory default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function after it is disabled, or to change the setting for printing a cut line instead.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



4. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.
5. Click N **Auto Cut** to display the **Automatic Cutting Settings**dialog box.



6. To enable automatic cutting, click **Yes** in the A **Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.
7. Click **OK** to close the **Automatic Cutting Settings** dialog box.
8. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

Roll paper will be automatically cut after printing.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

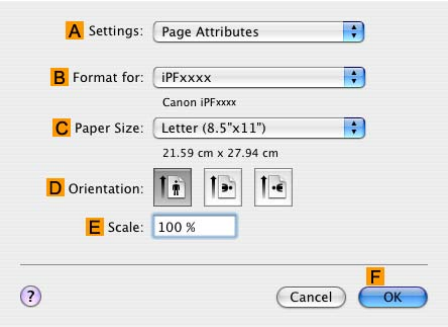
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically (using the auto cut function) after printing, as well as how to print a cut line to cut the paper manually.

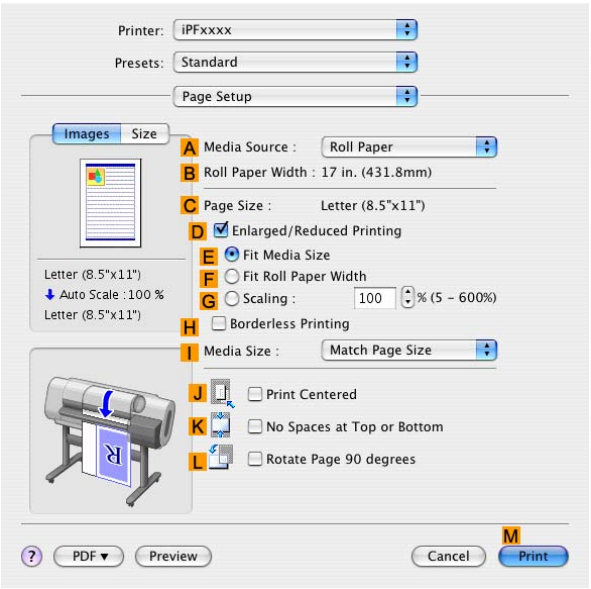
Note

- The auto cut function is activated on the printer by factory default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function once disabled, or select the setting for printing a cut guideline instead.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



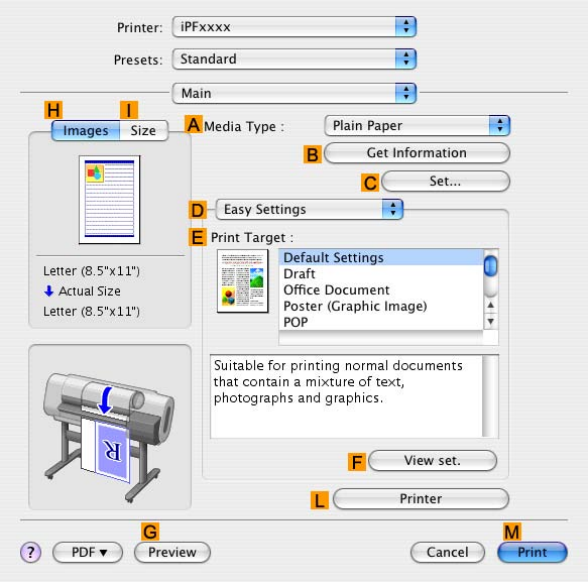
2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



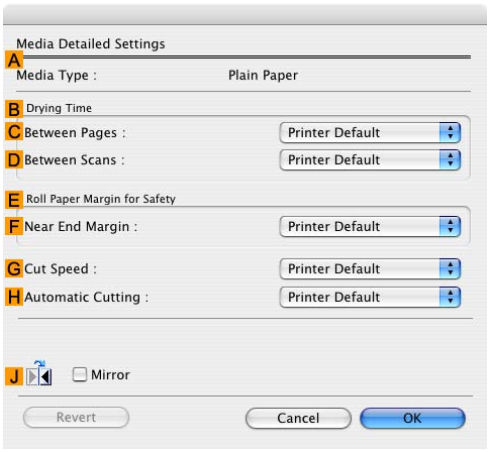
7. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Access the **Main** pane.



9. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
10. Click C **Set** to display the **Media Detailed Settings**dialog box.



11. To enable automatic cutting, click **Printer Default** in the H **Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.

Important

- If the automatic cut function has been deactivated on the printer, change the auto cut setting on the printer Control Panel.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box.
13. Confirm the print settings, and click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.382)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Windows Software

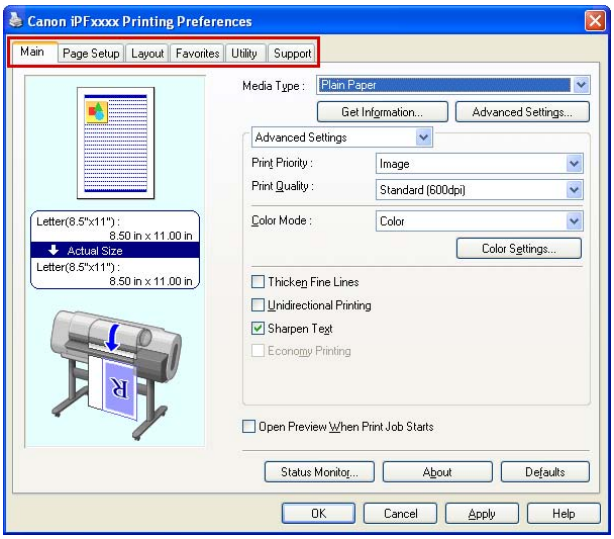
Printer Driver

Printer Driver Settings (Windows)

For instructions on accessing the Windows printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) (→P.343)
- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows) (→P.345)

For information on the Windows printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.



- Main Sheet (Windows) (→P.347)

  You can specify the type of paper, color processing, print quality, print preview, and other settings. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

  - Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.351)
  - View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows) (→P.352)
  - Color Adjustment Sheet: Color (Windows) (→P.353)
  - Matching Sheet (Windows) (→P.355)
  - Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome (Windows) (→P.357)
- Page Setup Sheet (Windows) (→P.359)

  You can specify the page size of the original, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, the orientation, the paper size and feed source, and automatic cutting.

  - Paper Size Options Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.361)
- Layout Sheet (Windows) (→P.362)

  You can specify the page layout, watermarks, the orientation, the number of copies, and print processing options.

  - Page Options Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.364)
  - Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.365)
- Favorites Sheet (Windows) (→P.366)

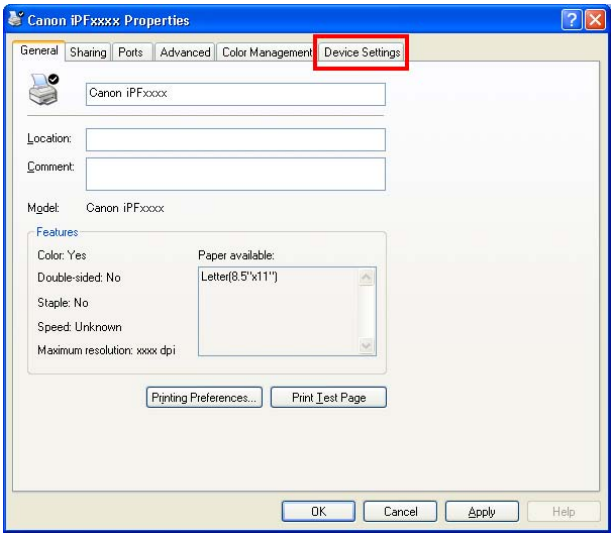
  Groups of print settings you select on each sheet can be saved as a favorite. Favorites you have added can be edited or used at the time of printing as desired.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Utility Sheet (Windows) (→P.368)

  You can specify settings related to maintenance for the Printhead and feed amount, as well as settings for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.
- Support Sheet (Windows) (→P.369)

  You can view support information and the user manual.



- Device Settings Sheet (Windows) (→P.370)

  You can display settings for optional equipment installed on the printer and see the printer driver version.

imagePROGRAF Free Layout is a feature for freely arranging originals from various source applications on a single page as desired before printing. For details, see Free Layout .

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy is a feature for automatic enlargement and printing of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

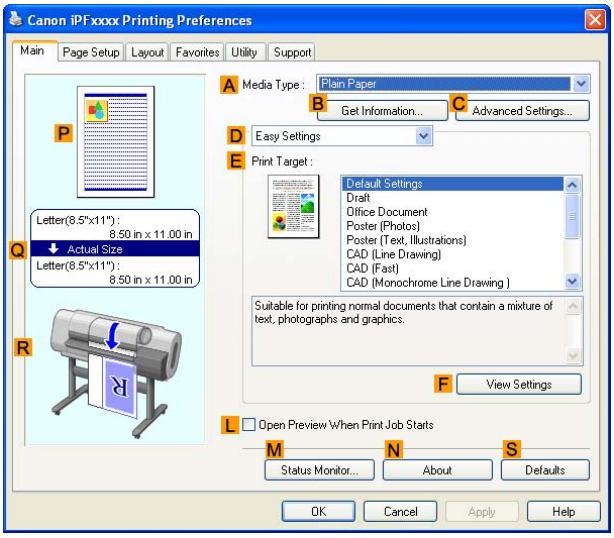
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

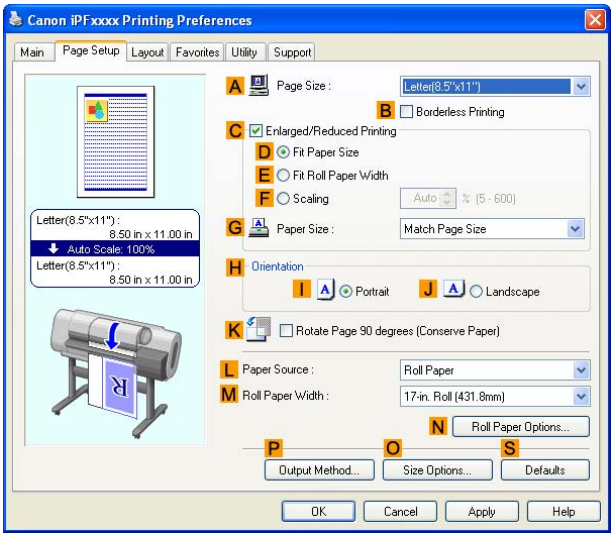
Important

- Always specify the same type and size of paper in the printer menu and printer driver.
  If the type and size do not match, an error message will be displayed and printing is not possible.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the A **Page Size** list, select the size of the original as specified in the application.
7. In the L **Paper Source** list, select how paper is supplied.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in **L Paper Source**, select the width of the loaded roll in **M Roll Paper Width**.

Note

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications.
  For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.333)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

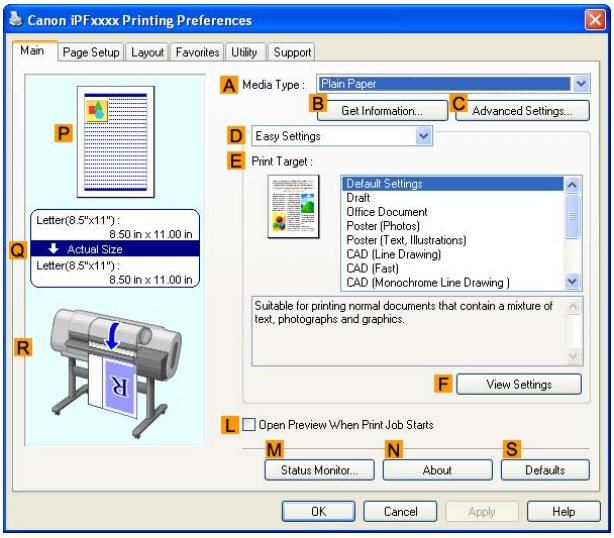
Confirming Print Settings (Windows)

There are two ways to confirm the print settings, as follows.

- Checking a preview of the settings (→P.337)
- Checking a print preview (→P.338)

Checking a preview of the settings

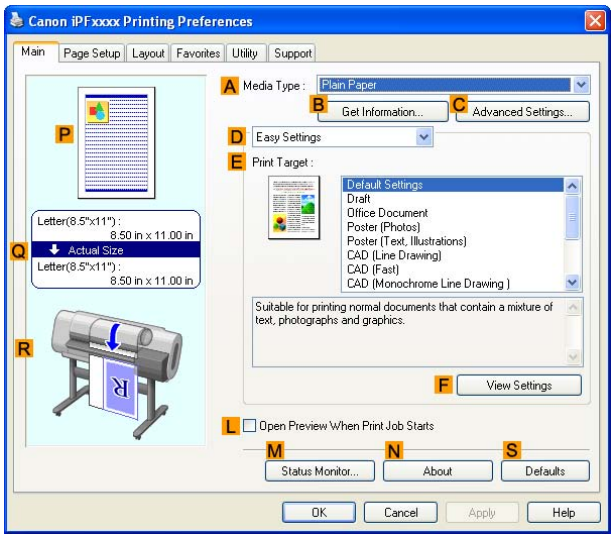
A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main**, **Page Setup**, and **Layout** sheets. By checking illustrations and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, paper source, layout, and so on.



Display Area	Information Displayed
P **Top illustrations**	Illustrations indicate the orientation, page layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information.
Q **Middle, bordered area**	The page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction are indicated.
R **Bottom illustrations**	Illustrations indicate the feed source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.

Note

- To confirm the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings**, click F **View Settings** on the **Main** sheet to display the **View Settings** dialog box.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Checking a print preview

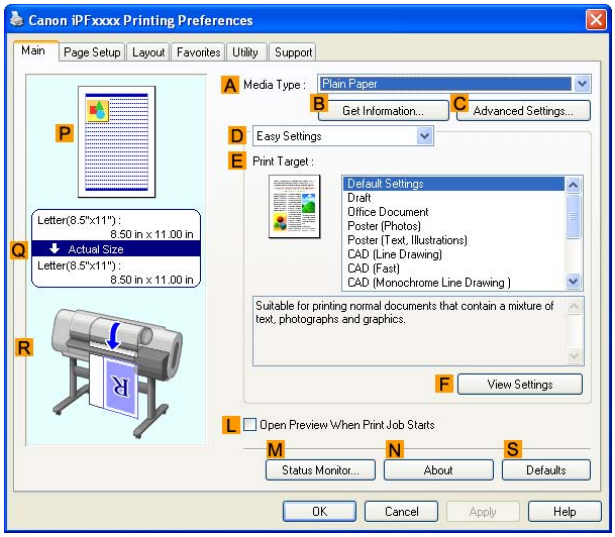
You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.
When you activate this feature, imagePROGRAF Preview or PageComposer is started before printing.
Confirming how documents will be printed this way helps prevent printing errors.
For details on print previews, see “Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing”. (→P.311)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

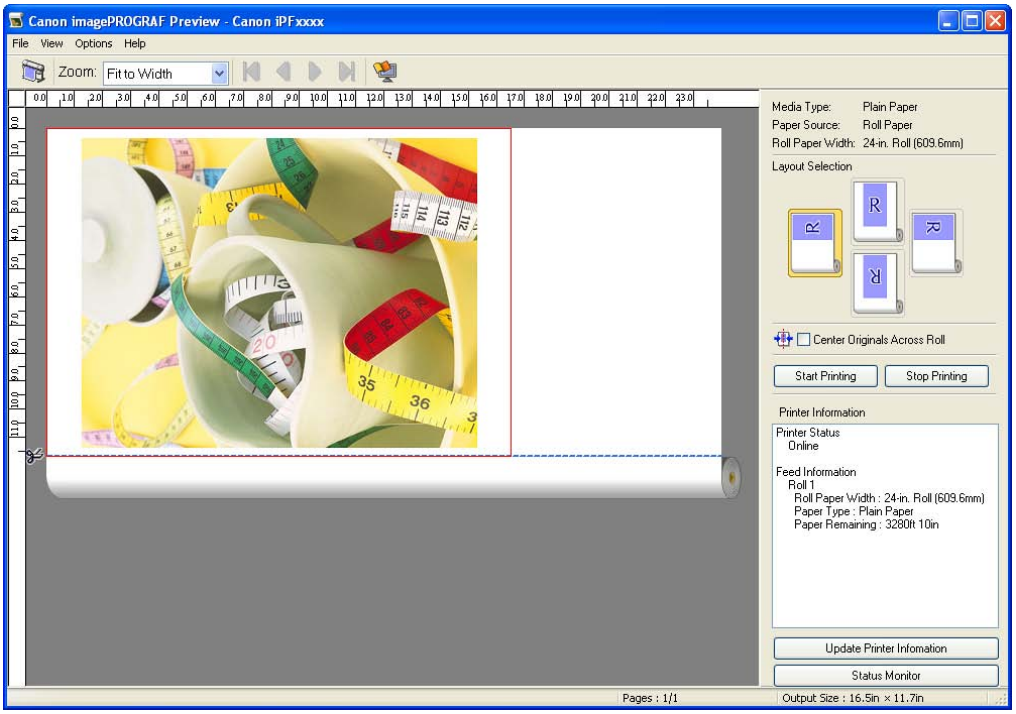
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows)

This topic describes how to preview images of print jobs before actually printing them.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. Select the **L** **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** check box.
5. After you click **OK**, when you print a job, the **imagePROGRAF Preview** window will be displayed.



Note

- If PageComposer is running, access the **Special Settings** dialog box from the **Layout** sheet and clear **Enable Preview Switching**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

6. On the main window, you can check the layout and change settings as needed.
7. To print, click **Start Printing** in the **File** menu.

Note

- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, see Preview .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

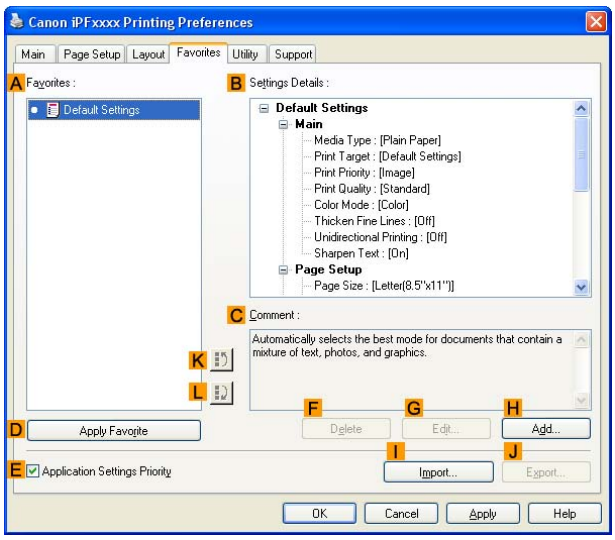
Using Favorites (Windows)

This topic describes how to register favorites and print using favorite settings.

Registering a favorite

Follow the steps below to save the current print settings as a favorite.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Complete the print settings.
4. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



5. Click H **Add** to display the **Add** dialog box.
6. Complete the following settings in the **Add** dialog box.
   - Enter a desired name in **Name**, such as “Photos for Presentations” or “Monthly Report.”
   - Choose a fitting icon for these print settings in the **Icon** list.
   - In **Comment**, enter a description of the favorite to be added, as desired.
7. Click **OK** to close the **Add** dialog box.

   The favorite you have added is now displayed in A **Favorites**.

Note

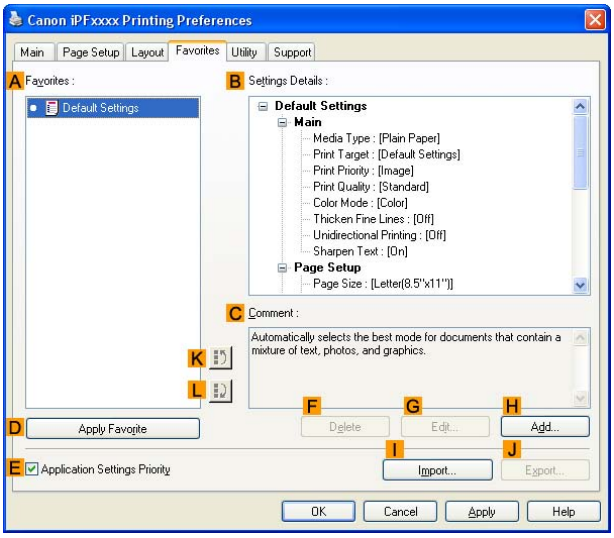
- To save a favorite as a file, click J **Export** and specify the file to save.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing using the favorite

Follow the steps below to print using the favorite you have registered.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



4. In the A **Favorites**, choose the favorite you registered.

Note

- To import a favorite, click I **Import** and specify the favorite file.

5. Click D **Apply Favorite** to replace the favorite settings with the current print settings.
6. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.337)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

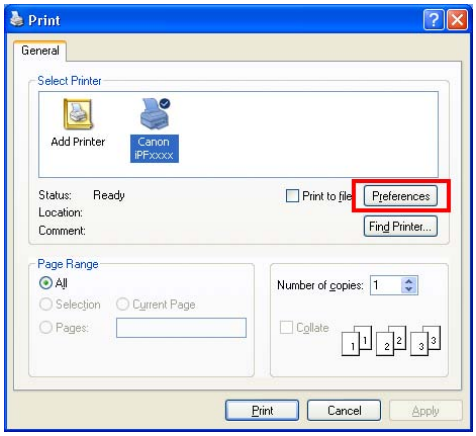
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)

1. Choose **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer driver dialog box.

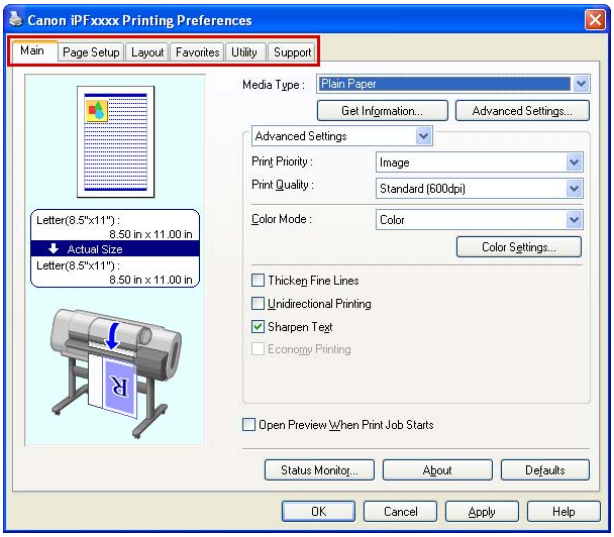
Note

- The dialog box for specifying printing conditions varies depending on the source application. In some cases, when you select the printer, a sheet for configuring the printer driver is added to the dialog box. In the following case, click **Preferences**.

■Example: Print dialog box displayed by the application software



Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



Note

- The titles of dialog boxes may vary depending on the application, and sheets other than these six sheets may be displayed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

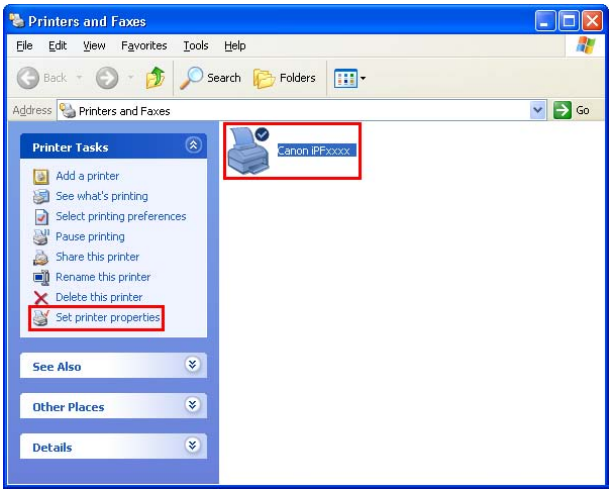
Important

- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the source application, changes you make to the settings will only apply temporarily to that application. Because these are sizes you specify temporarily in the printer driver, the sizes will not be available after you exit the application.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from the Windows system menu.
  see “Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)”. (→P.345)

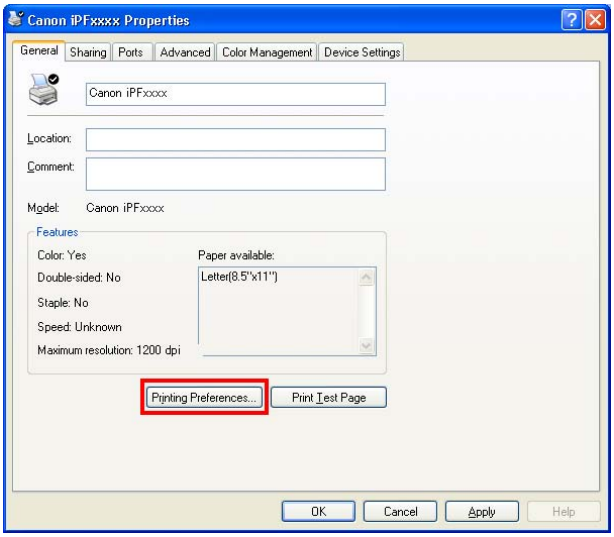
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)

1. Click **start** > **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**).
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer properties dialog box.



3. Click **Printing Preferences** to display the **Printing Preferences** dialog box, titled with the name of this printer.

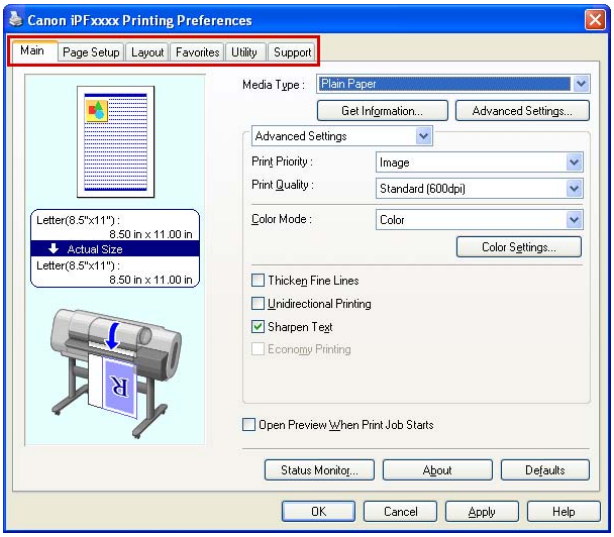


Note

- The **Device Settings** sheet is also an extension of the printer driver. (→P.370)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



Important

- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the operating system menu, changes you make to the settings will apply to all applications you use for printing.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from applications.
  see “Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)”. (→P.343)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

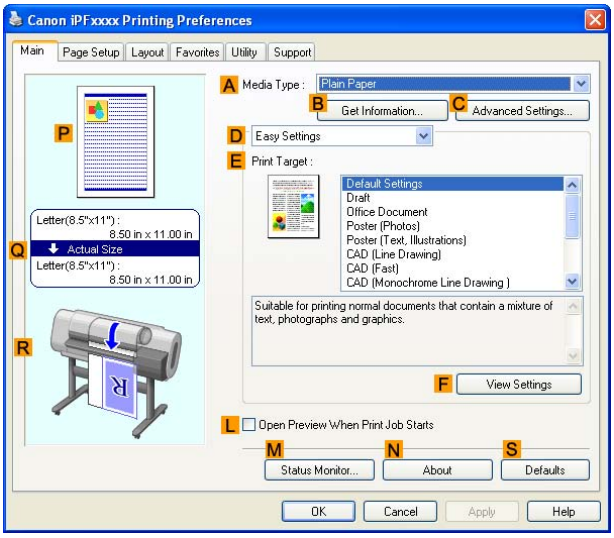
Main Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Main** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help file.

Note

- On the **Main** sheet, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the particular printing application, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

Configuration using Easy Settings

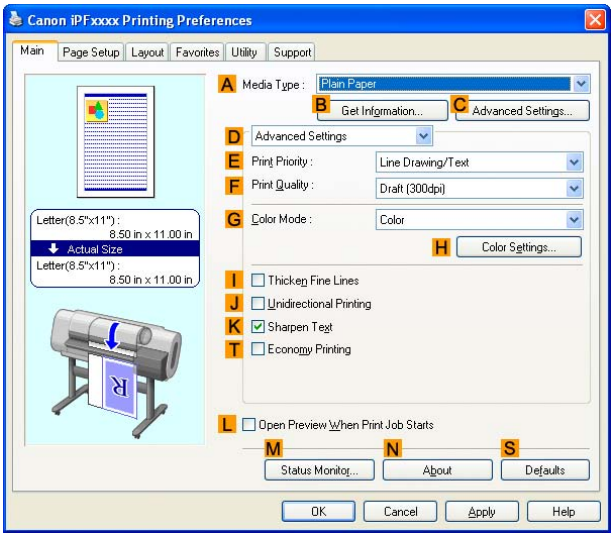


Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the type of paper. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)
	B Get Information	Click to display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, which shows the types and sizes of paper specified on the printer for each feed source. When you select a feed source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the feed source, type of paper, and roll width.
	C Advanced Settings	Click to display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the type of paper.
E Print Target		Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed. Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X) (→P.144) Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS X) (→P.153) Printing Office Documents (→P.163) Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.
	F View Settings	Click to display the **View Settings** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the selected item from the **E Print Target** list or change the order of items listed in **E Print Target**.
L Open Preview When Print Job Starts		Activate this option to check on-screen previews of documents before printing. Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (→P.311)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Setting Item	Description
M Status Monitor	Click to start imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, which enables you to confirm the status of the printer and print jobs. You can also set up email notification if printer errors occur by completing the **Email Notice** settings. For details, refer to the **Status Monitor** help file.
N About	Click to confirm version information for the printer driver.
S Defaults	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Configuration using Advanced Settings



Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the type of paper. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)
	B Get Information	Click to display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, which shows the types and sizes of paper specified on the printer for each feed source. When you select a feed source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the feed source, type of paper, and roll width.
	C Advanced Settings	Click to display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the type of paper.
E Print Priority		Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.180)
F Print Quality		Choose the level of print quality. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.180)
G Color Mode		Choose the color mode. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.180) Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Color Mode** options may not be available.
	H Color Settings	Click to display the **Color Settings** dialog box for more advanced color settings. Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.172)

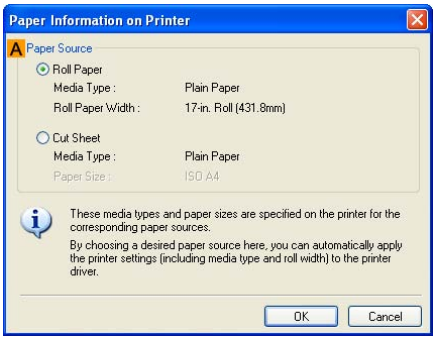
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Setting Item	Description
I **Thicken Fine Lines**	Activate this option to print fine lines more distinctly.
J **Unidirectional Printing**	Although unidirectional printing is slower, it can help prevent misaligned lines and ensure better results.
K **Sharpen Text**	Activate this option to print text more sharply.
T **Economy Printing**	When this mode is selected, less ink is consumed than in regular printing, but the quality is diminished. Select this mode if you want to conserve ink when checking drawings, for example. Depending on the **Media Type** and **Print Quality** settings, this mode may not be available.
L **Open Preview When Print Job Starts**	Activate this option to check on-screen previews of documents before printing. Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (→P.311)
M **Status Monitor**	Click to start imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, which enables you to confirm the status of the printer and print jobs. You can also set up email notification if printer errors occur by completing the **Email Notice** settings. For details, refer to the **Status Monitor** help file.
N **About**	Click to confirm version information for the printer driver.
S **Defaults**	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Windows)

On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver settings for the paper source and media type.


Paper Information on Printer
A
Paper Source
Roll Paper
Media Type :
Plain Paper
Roll Paper Width :
17-in. Roll (431.8mm)
Cut Sheet
Media Type :
Plain Paper
Paper Size :
ISO A4
These media types and paper sizes are specified on the printer for the corresponding paper sources.
By choosing a desired paper source here, you can automatically apply the printer settings (including media type and roll width) to the printer driver.
OK
Cancel

Note

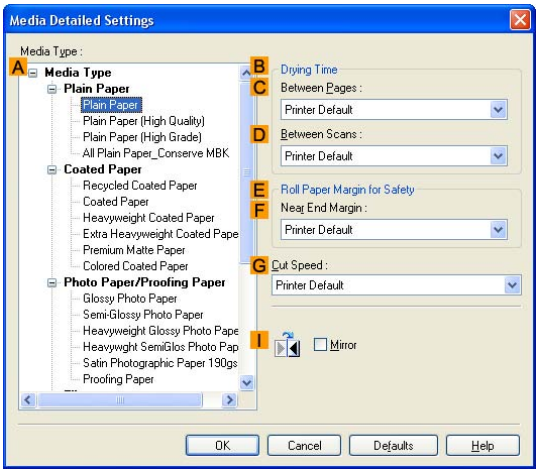
- To display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, on the **Main** sheet, click **Get Information** by **Media Type**. (→P.347)

Setting Item	Description
A **Paper Source**	Shows the **Paper Source** supported by the printer, as well as information about the loaded paper. To update the **Paper Source** and media type settings in the printer driver, select the desired **Paper Source** option and click **OK**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Note

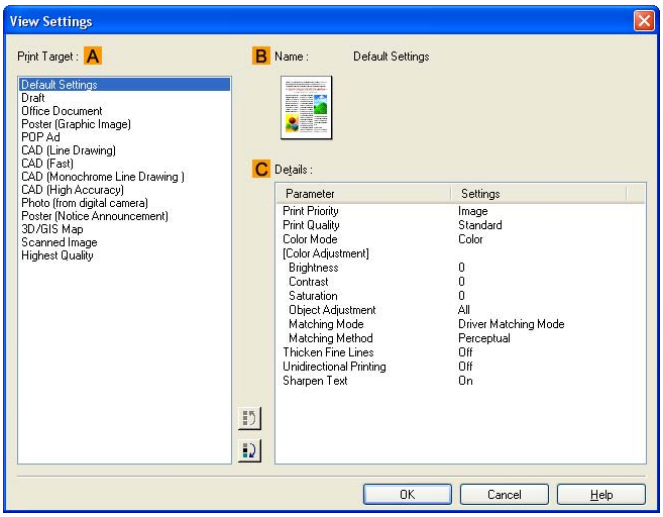
- To display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** sheet, click **Settings** by **Media Type**. (→P.347)

Setting Item		Description
A **Media Type**		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)
B **Drying Time**		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.120)
	C **Between Pages**	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D **Between Scans**	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E **Roll Paper Margin for Safety**		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen.
	F **Near End Margin**	Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G **Cut Speed**		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
I **Mirror**		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows)

In the **View Settings** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



Note

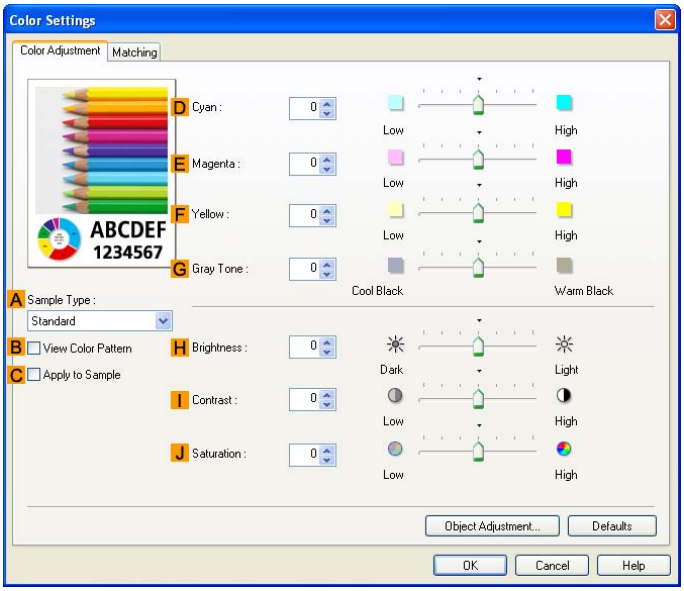
- To display the **View Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** sheet, click **View Settings** by **Print Target**. (→P.347)

Setting Item	Description
A **Print Target**	Shows all **Print Target** options (settings items for the printing application).
B **Name**	Identifies the item selected in **Print Target** by its name and an icon.
C **Details**	Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each listed item for the selected **Print Target**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Color Adjustment Sheet: Color (Windows)

If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**. (→P.347)

Setting Item	Description
A **Sample Type**	Choose a sample image from **Standard**, **Portrait**, **Landscape**, or **Graphics**.
B **View Color Pattern**	Clicking to select this check box will display the color pattern.
C **Apply to Sample**	Clicking to select this check box will apply the revised settings to the sample image.
D **Cyan**	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.
E **Magenta**	
F **Yellow**	
G **Gray Tone**	Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose **Cool Black** (tinged with blue) or **Warm Black** (tinged with red).
H **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
I **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
J **Saturation**	Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the **Saturation** setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the **Saturation** makes colors more subdued.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

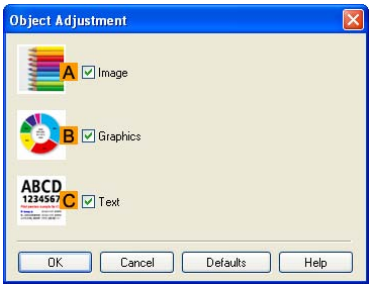
Setting Item	Description
K **Object Adjustment**	Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.
S **Defaults**	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.172)

Object Adjustment dialog box

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



Note

- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.

Setting Item	Description
A **Image**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.
B **Graphics**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.
C **Text**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

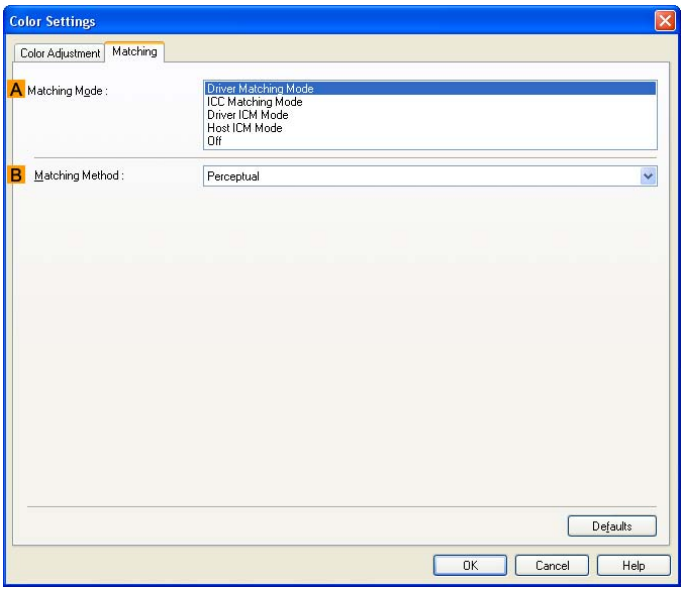
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Matching Sheet (Windows)

On the **Matching** sheet, you can specify color matching to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices.

Driver Matching Mode

The following options are available when you select **Driver Matching Mode** in the **Matching Mode** list.



Note

- To display the **Matching** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click the **Matching** sheet. (→P.347)

Setting Item	Description
A **Matching Mode**	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired. Normally, select **Driver Matching Mode**. For color matching based on ICC profiles, select **ICC Matching Mode**, **Driver ICM Mode**, or **Host ICM Mode**, depending on your color matching system. If you prefer not to use the printer driver for color matching, select **No**.
B **Matching Method**	Select the color matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various **Matching Method** options are available depending on your selection in **Matching**.

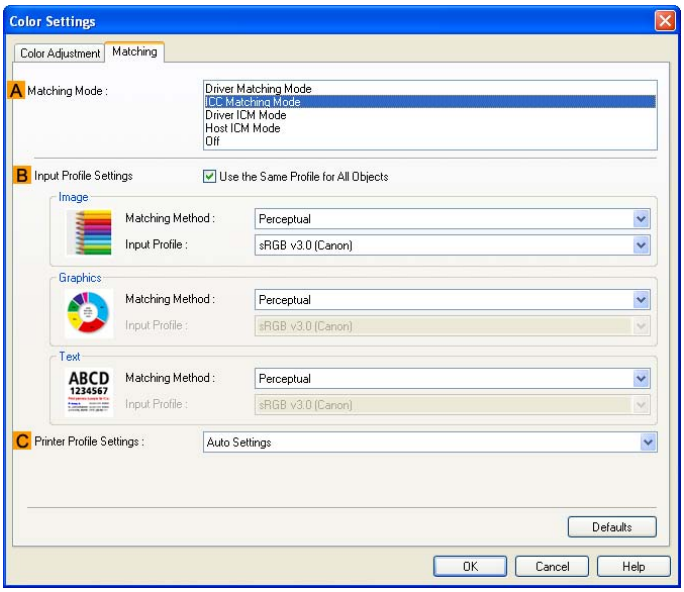
Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.172)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

ICC Matching Mode, Driver ICM Mode and Host ICM Mode

On the **Matching** sheet, you can specify color matching to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices. The following options are available when you select **ICC Matching Mode**, **Driver ICM Mode**, or **Host ICM Mode** on the **Matching Mode** sheet.



Note

- To display the **Matching** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click the **Matching** sheet. (→P.347)

Setting Item	Description
A **Matching Mode**	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.
B **Input Profile Settings**	You can select **Image**, **Graphics**, or **Text**. You can choose **Matching Method** and **Input Profile**. Various options are available depending on your selected **Matching Mode**. To apply the same input profile automatically for **Graphics** and **Text**, select **Use the Same Profile for All Objects**. To apply separate input profiles to **Graphics** and **Text**, clear **Use the Same Profile for All Objects** and specify the individual settings.
C **Printer Profile Settings**	Specify the printer profile as desired. Normally, select **Auto Settings**.

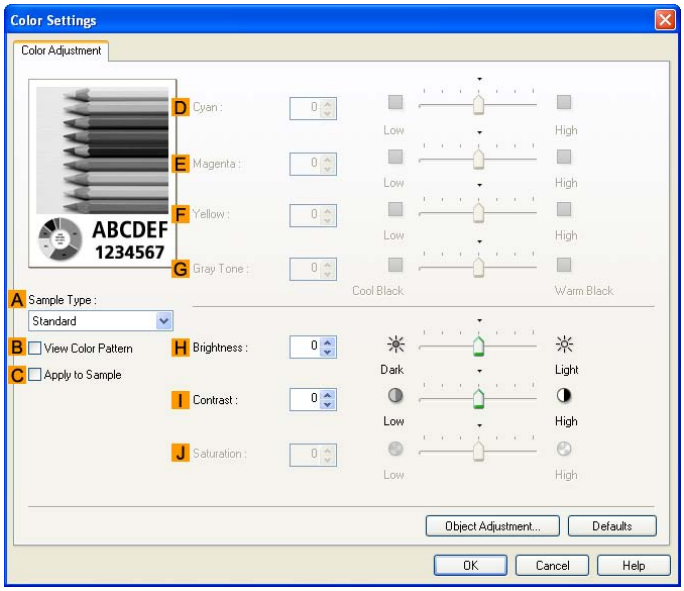
Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.172)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome (Windows)

On the **Color Adjustment** sheet for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**. (→P.347)

Setting Item	Description
A Sample Type	Choose a sample image from **Standard**, **Portrait**, **Landscape**, or **Graphics**.
B View Color Pattern	Clicking to select this check box will display the color pattern.
C Apply to Sample	Clicking to select this check box will apply the revised settings to the sample image.
D Cyan	Not available.
E Magenta	
F Yellow	
G Gray Tone	Not available.
H Brightness	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
I Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
J Saturation	Not available.
K Object Adjustment	Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.
S Defaults	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

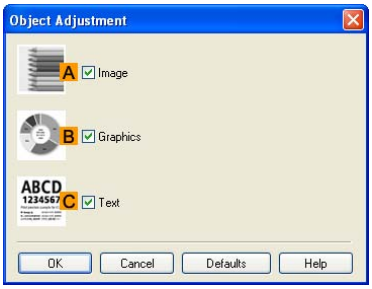
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.172)

Object Adjustment dialog box

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



Note

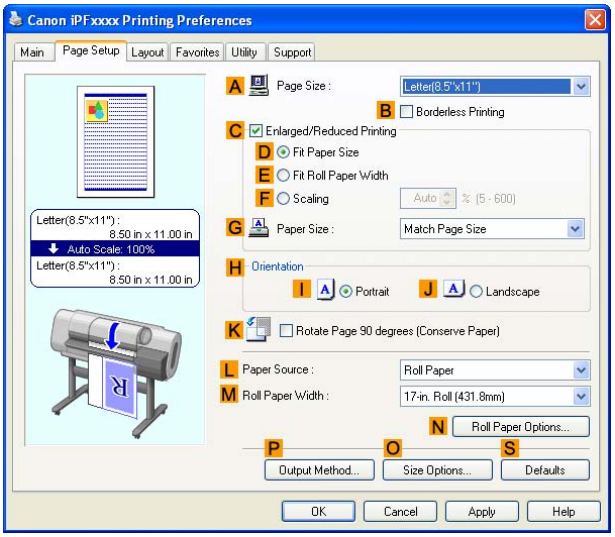
- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.

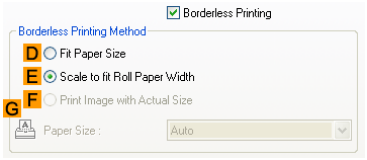
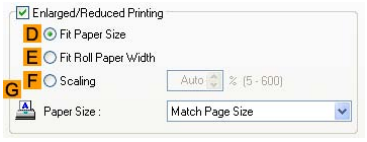
Setting Item	Description
A **Image**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.
B **Graphics**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.
C **Text**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

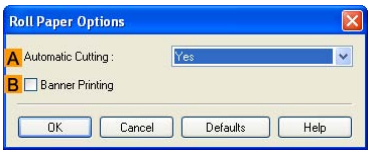
Page Setup Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help file.



Setting Item	Description
A Page Size	Select the page size as specified in the source application. For details on available page sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.101)
B Borderless Printing 	Borderless printing is available if **Roll Paper** is selected in the **L Paper Source** list. Choose from the following options when this setting is activated. Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.232) Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.239) Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.225)
D Fit Paper Size	Scales the document image to match the paper size.
E Scale to fit Roll Paper Width	Scales the document image to match the roll width.
F Print Image with Actual Size	Prints documents at their actual size. This function is available when you have selected the size same as the width of **Roll Paper** for either the length or width of the document from the **A Page Size** list.
G Paper Size Available when **Fit Paper Size** is selected.	Choose the size of the paper you will print on. For details on available paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.101) Paper sizes compatible with borderless printing are shown in the list.
C Enlarged/Reduced Printing 	Choose from the following options when this setting is activated. Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.196) Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.202) Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.208)

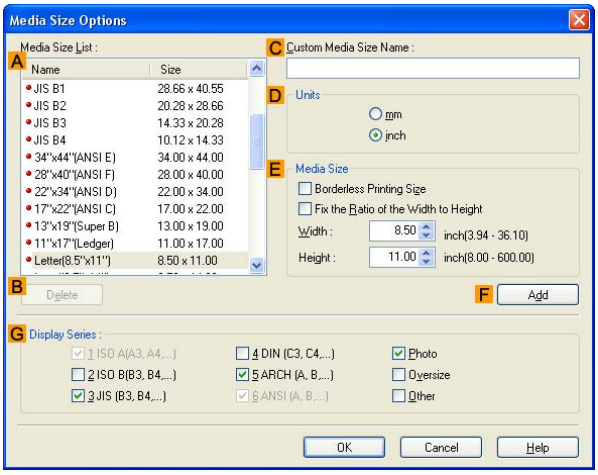
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Setting Item		Description
	D Fit Paper Size	Scales the document image to match the paper size.
	E Fit Roll Paper Width	Scales the document image to match the roll width.
	F Scaling	Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of “5-600.”
	G Paper Size	Choose the size of the paper you will print on. For details on available paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.101)
H Orientation		Choose the printing orientation. Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (→P.319)
K Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)		Activate this setting to rotate the document image by 90 degrees before printing. Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.299)
L Paper Source		Choose the feed source, as desired. Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in **Media Type** on the **Main** sheet.
M Roll Paper Width		Choose the roll width. For details on available roll widths, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.101)
N Roll Paper Options		Complete optional roll paper settings. Click to display the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box.  Under **A Automatic Cutting**, you can specify **Yes** or **No** and **Print Cut Guideline**. Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (→P.329) Select **B Banner Printing** when printing multiple pages continuously. Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (→P.274)
P Output Method		Click to display the **Output Method** dialog box, which enables you to complete the **Output Method** and **Name of data to be saved** settings.
O Size Options		Click to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, which enables you to register additional paper sizes or select the size system for use.
S Defaults		Restores all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper Size Options Dialog Box (Windows)

In the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, you can create and register your own **Custom Paper Size**. The sizes you define are listed with standard paper sizes for selection later as needed.



Note

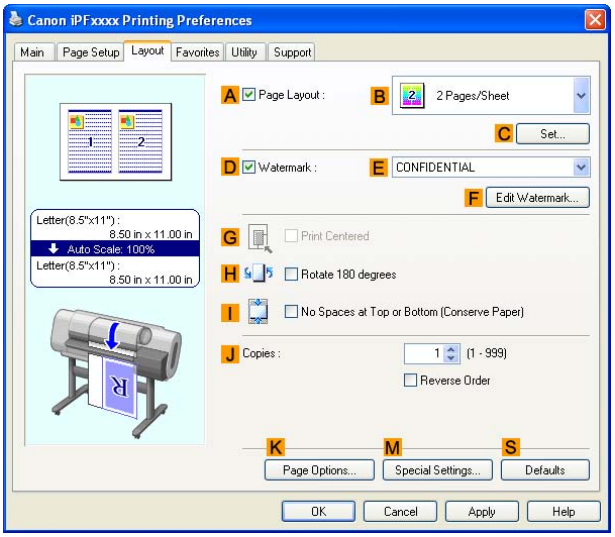
- To display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, on the **Page Setup** sheet, click **Paper Size Options**. (→P.359)

Setting Item	Description
A **Paper Size List**	Shows the names and sizes of paper that can be used with the printer driver.
B **Delete**	Custom paper sizes created by users can be deleted from the **Paper Size List**, as needed. However, they cannot be deleted in the following situations. • If a standard paper size of the printer driver is selected. • If an oversized paper size is selected. • If a paper size in a red box is selected.
C **Custom Paper Size Name**	You can name **Custom Paper Size** as desired.
D **Units**	Specify the desired unit of measure for the **Custom Paper Size** height and width.
E **Paper Size**	Specify the desired **Width** and **Height**. You can make your selection from sizes that are compatible with **Borderless Printing** by selecting **Borderless Printing Size**. To maintain the aspect ratio of the **Width** and **Height** as you resize the paper, select **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height**.
F **Add**	Enables you to register the custom paper size you have specified or overwrite an existing custom paper size.
G **Display Series**	You can limit the number of options shown in **Page Size**, **Paper Size**, and **Paper Size List**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Layout Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Layout** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help file.



Setting Item		Description
A Page Layout		Activate this setting to select a particular page layout. Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (→P.279) Printing Posters in Sections (→P.285) Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (→P.268) Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (→P.374)
	C Set	Click to display one of the following dialog boxes depending on the selection in **A Page Layout**. In these dialog boxes, you can specify layout details and which pages to print, as well as other settings. • **Page Layout Printing** • **Pages to Print** • **Free Layout Settings**
D Watermark		Activating this option makes two settings available, **E Watermarks** and **F Edit Watermark**. Printing With Watermarks (→P.316)
	E Watermarks	Lists the provided watermarks. Choose the watermark to print.
	F Edit Watermark	Click to display the **Edit Watermark** dialog box for creating your own, original watermark.
G Print Centered		Activate this setting to print document images in the center of the paper. Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (→P.288) Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (→P.294)
H Rotate 180 degrees		Activate this option to rotate document images by 180 degrees before printing.
I No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)		Activate this setting to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper. Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.305)
J Copies		Enter the number of copies to print, in a range of “1-999.”
	Reverse Order	Activate this option to print pages in reverse order.

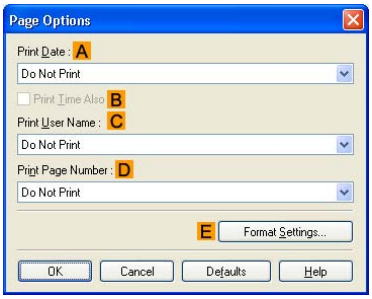
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Setting Item	Description
K **Page Options**	Click to display the **Page Options** dialog box, which enables you to complete settings for printing the user name, date, or page number in the header or footer.
M **Special Settings**	If the printing results are not as you expected, click this option to change how printing is processed.
S **Defaults**	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

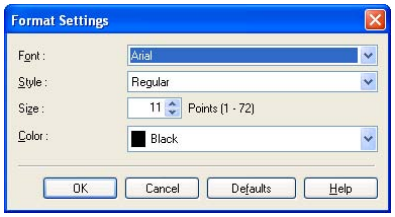
Page Options Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Page Options** dialog box offers the following settings.



Note

- To display the **Page Options** dialog box, on the **Layout** sheet, click **Page Options**. (→P.362)

Setting Item	Description
A **Print Date**	Select where the date is printed, as desired. To print the time as well, select B **Print Time Also**.
C **Print User Name**	Select where the user name is printed, as desired.
D **Print Page Number**	Select where the page number is printed, as desired.
E **Format Settings**	Click to display the **Format Settings** dialog box, which enables you to complete format-related settings. 

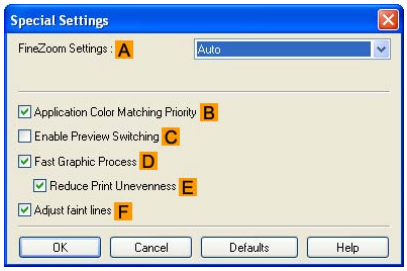
Note

- If you specify the same position for multiple items, the items are printed from left to right in this order: date, user name, and page number.
- When you print multiple pages per sheet using **Page Layout Printing** or similar functions, these items will be printed for each page.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows)

If the printing results are not as you expected, you can change how printing is processed in the **Special Settings** dialog box.



Note

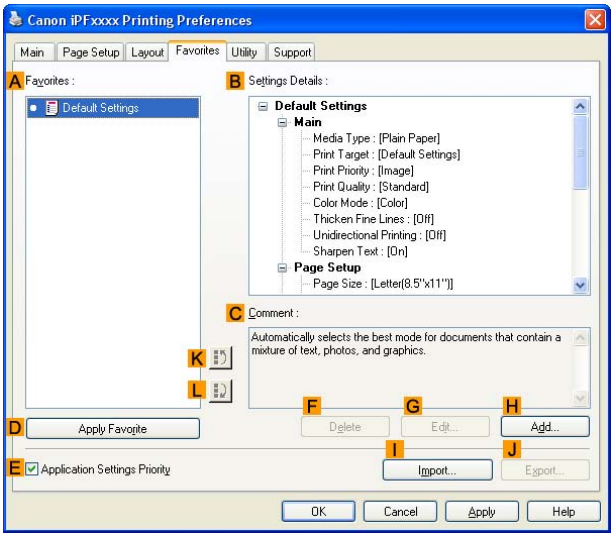
- To display the **Special Settings** dialog box, on the **Layout** sheet, click **Special Settings**. (→P.362)

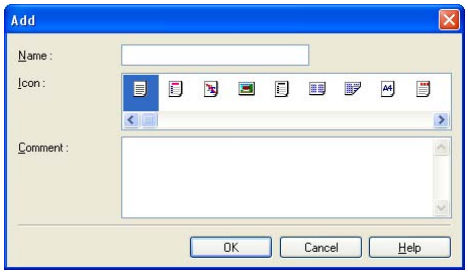
Setting Item	Description
A **FineZoom Settings**	This function is used in large-format printing. Normally, choose **Auto**. If documents are not printed correctly on large-format paper, it may help to select **Yes**, and if fine lines are not visible or if images are distorted when printed, it may help to select **No**.
B **Application Color Matching Priority**	You can give applications priority in color management.
C **Enable Preview Switching**	Selecting this option will start PageComposer if you print when **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** is selected on the **Main** sheet.
D **Fast Graphic Process**	If image colors are inconsistent in printed documents or if lines are printed in varying thicknesses, clearing this option may help produce the expected results.
E **Reduce Print Unevenness**	If you are concerned about uneven colors, selecting this option may improve printing results. However, printing may take longer for some images.
F **Adjust faint lines**	If fine lines are printed in colors that do not match the colors of other shapes, clearing this option may help produce the expected results. However, lines in some colors may appear broken.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Favorites Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Favorites** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Setting Item	Description
A Favorites	Printing favorites you have created are listed with **Default Settings** favorites. Using Favorites (→P.325)
B Settings Details	Displays details of the favorite selected in the **A Favorites**.
C Comment	Displays notes registered in the favorite.
D Apply Favorite	Click to change the current print settings to those of the favorite selected in the **A Favorites**.
E Application Settings Priority	Activate this setting to use settings values specified in the source application in preference to favorite settings selected in the **A Favorites**, when clicking **D Apply Favorite**. For details on the settings items used in preference, refer to the printer driver help.
F Delete	Click to delete the selected favorite from the **A Favorites** list.
G Edit	Click to display the **Edit** dialog box, which enables you to change the name and icon for the favorite selected in the **A Favorites** list.
H Add	Click to display the **Add** dialog box, which enables you to add the current print settings as a favorite. 
I Import	Click to display the **Open** dialog box, which enables you to import favorite settings saved as a file.
J Export	Click to display the **Save As** dialog box, which enables you to save the favorite settings as a file.

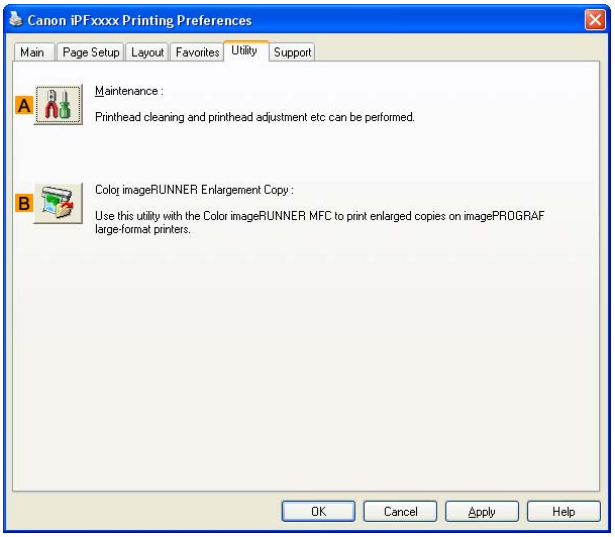
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Setting Item	Description
K **Up**	Click to move the selected favorite up in the A **Favorites** list.
L **Down**	Click to move the selected favorite down in the A **Favorites** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Utility Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Utility** sheet. For details on the utilities, refer to the relevant utility help.



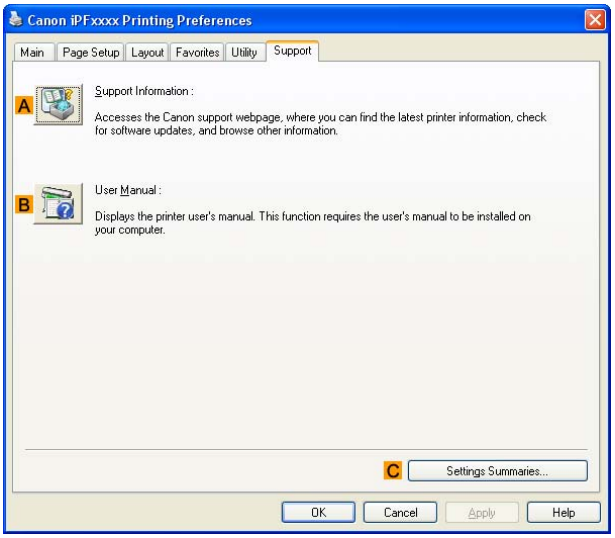
Button	Corresponding Utility
A **Maintenance**	Click to start the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, which offers the following maintenance for the printer. • Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) check • Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning • Head alignment adjustment • Feed amount adjustment
B **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**	Click to launch Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (*1) (iR enlargement copy), which enables you to create hot folders used for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy and assign print settings to hot folders. Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) (→P.168)

*1: For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Support Sheet (Windows)

On the **Support** sheet, you can view support information and the user's manual.

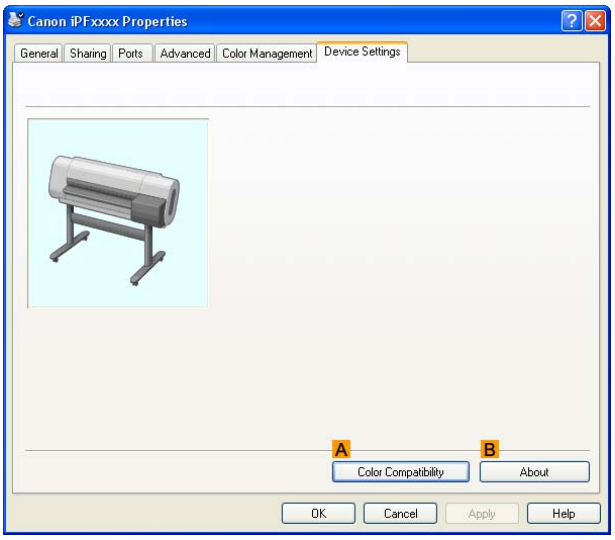


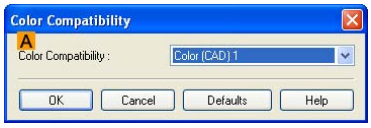
Button	Corresponding Utility
A **Support Information**	Click to access the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for printer driver updates, and browse other information.
B **User Manual**	Click to view the printer user's manual. This function requires the user's manual to be installed on your computer.
C **Settings Summaries**	Click to display the **View Settings** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, and **Favorites** sheets.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Device Settings Sheet (Windows)

Many settings items on the printer properties sheets are controlled by Windows applications. However, the **Device Settings** sheet is for configuring the printer, and it is an extension of the printer driver.
The following settings are available on the **Device Settings** sheet.

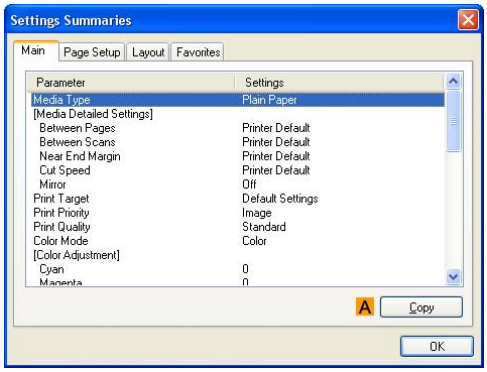


Setting Item	Description
A **Color Compatibility**	Click to display the **Color Compatibility** dialog box, which enables you to adjust colors if you have selected **Color Mode** > **Color (CAD)**. 
B **About**	Displays version information for the printer driver.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Settings Summaries Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Settings Summaries** dialog box enables you to confirm the settings for the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, and **Favorites** sheets.



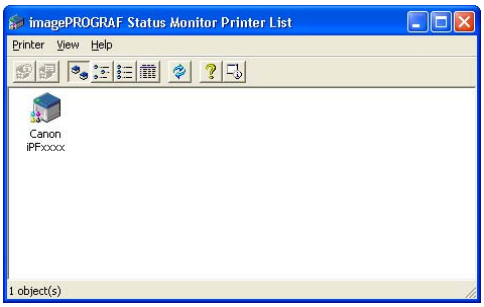
Button	Corresponding Utility
A **Copy**	Click to copy the settings information to the clipboard. You can paste the settings information into a file created with a text editor or similar application.

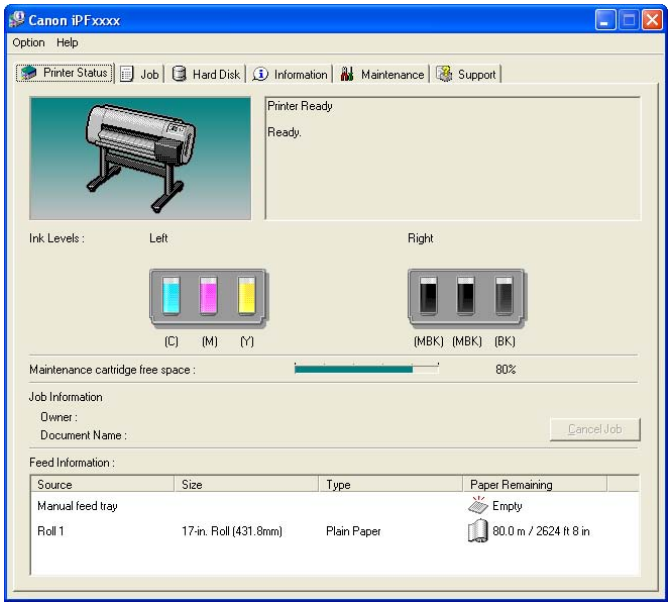
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Status Monitor

imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

imagePROGRAF Status Monitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.
Two screens are available in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor : “Printer List” shows a list of printers, and “Status Monitor” shows details for each printer.





- You can view a list of the printers for which printer drivers have been installed on your computer, printers connected to your computer, and printers found on the network.
- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- Images of Ink Tanks are shown, with different images for various types of ink. An icon and warning message will notify you when ink levels are low.
- The type of paper loaded in each media source is identified. You can also check to see if paper has run out.
- This way, the utility enables you to check printer information and take care of printer maintenance for optimal printing results.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.

Note

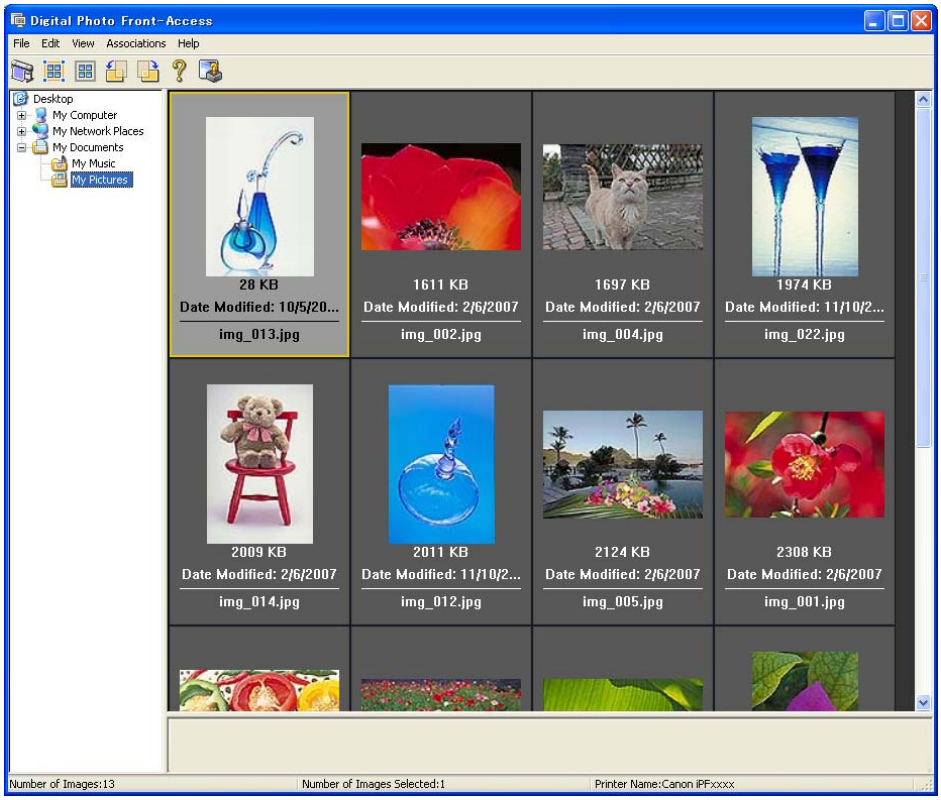
- For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Digital Photo Front-Access

Digital Photo Front-Access

Digital Photo Front-Access is an application that links photos from Canon digital cameras and other image files on your computer with various other applications.



- Simply select an image and click the icon of the application you want to start to launch the application.
- You can also print from Digital Photo Front-Access. In short, Digital Photo Front-Access can help you manage images in many ways from editing to printing as an effective way to work with other applications.
- Digital Photo Front-Access also enables image retouching. For automatic retouching, select an image for retouching and click Image Adjustment.
- Because this application automates the workflow from retouching to display for all of your images, it can save time and work in retouching.

Note

- For details, refer to the Digital Photo Front-Access help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

PosterArtist

Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals

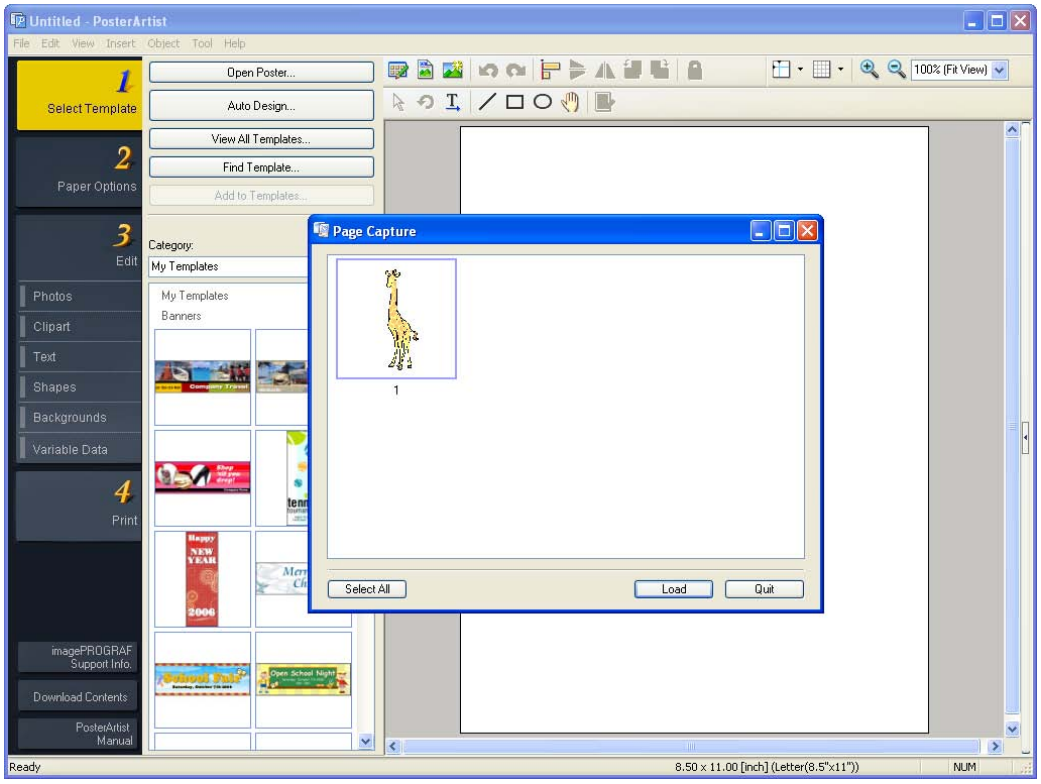
You can print a variety of source documents from word-processing or spreadsheet programs or screen shots from web browsers after composing an original with them using PosterArtist.

Important

- PosterArtist (sold separately) must be installed to use this function.

Edit Using PosterArtist

PosterArtist offers a wide range of features, including features to insert source documents in posters and compose an original with them.



Important

- This function is only supported in Windows.

For detailed instructions on editing with PosterArtist, refer to the following topic:

- Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows) (→P.375)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

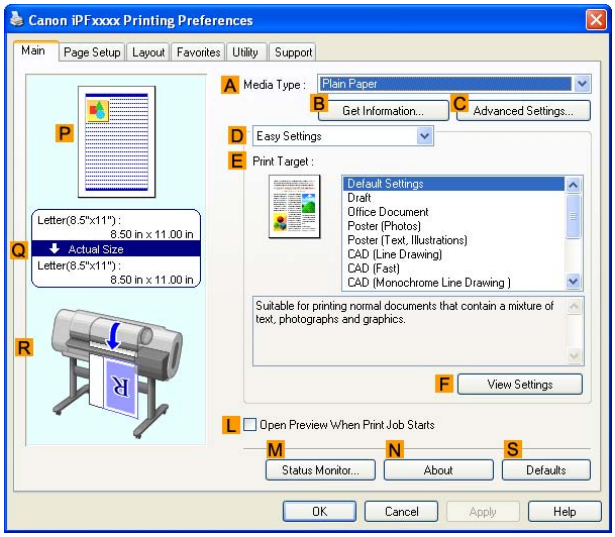
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows)

This topic describes how to use PosterArtist to compose originals from multiple applications, creating a poster layout for printing.

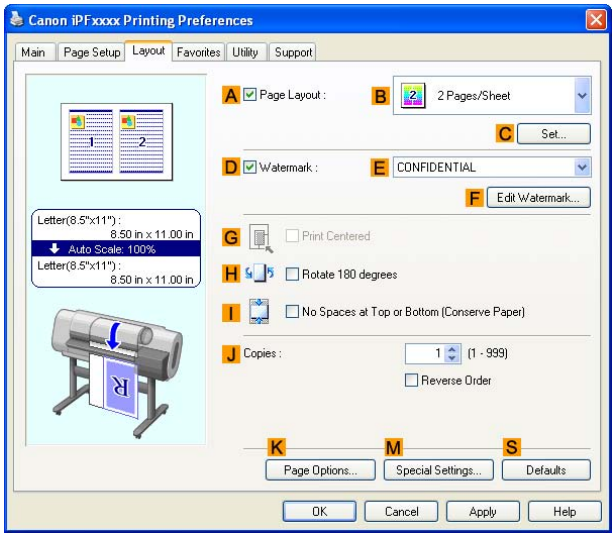
Important

- PosterArtist (sold separately) must be installed to use this function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.343)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



5. Select the A **Page Layout** check box.
6. Click in the **Edit Using PosterArtist** in the B **Page Layout** list.
7. When you attempt to print, PosterArtist starts up and the PageCapture window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)
8. Choose the page to load in PosterArtist.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Edit and rearrange the image in the PosterArtist window as desired.

Important

- Without closing the PosterArtist window, repeat steps 1-8 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.

Note

- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the PosterArtist Manual.

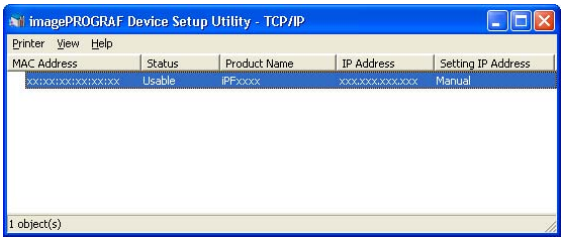
10. Print from the PosterArtist menu.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Device Setup Utility

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility is a utility to establish communication between the printer and your computer by completing relevant settings. After the printer is installed, for example, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility to complete the network settings initially.



- Starting imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility will show a list of printers found on the network. In this list, select the printer (specifically, the printer's MAC address) that you want to set up, and then configure the basic settings from your computer, such as the printer's IP address and the network frame type.
- You can see which printers are online in the network by checking the printer list. Communication between your computer and these printers is possible.

Note

- We recommend that your network or printer administrator complete the setup work using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
- For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility help.

Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

Install imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer as follows:

Important

- In Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista, you must log on with administrative rights equivalent to the "Administrator" account.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. On the **Setup Menu** window, click **Install Individual Software**.
3. Click **Install** in imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to proceed with the installation.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

From a computer running Windows, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility provided with the printer to configure the printer's IP address. This topic describes how to configure the IP address using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as "Administrator" account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility". (→P.377)

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.
2. In the **Product Name** list displayed, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. In the **Setting IP Address** list, choose **Manual**.
5. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.
6. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message dialog box is displayed.
7. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Note

- To configure the IP address automatically, choose **Auto** in the **Setting IP Address** list and select **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP**.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

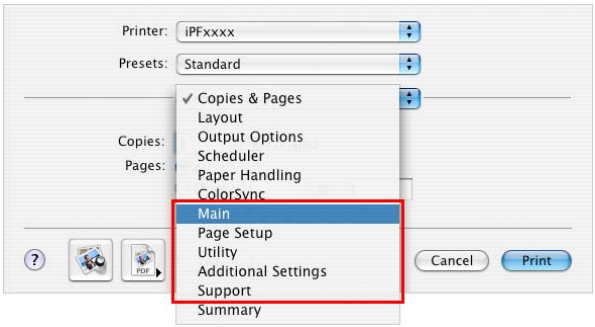
Mac OS X Software

Printer Driver

Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)

For instructions on accessing the Mac OS X printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X) (→P.386)



For information on the Mac OS X printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.

- Main Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.387)

  You can specify the media type, color processing, print quality, print preview, and other settings. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

  - Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X) (→P.390)
  - View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X) (→P.391)
  - Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X) (→P.392)
  - Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X) (→P.394)
- Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.395)

  You can specify the page size of the original, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, the orientation, the paper size and source, and automatic cutting.
- Utility Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.397)

  You can specify settings related to maintenance for the Printhead and feed amount, as well as settings for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.
- Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.398)

  You can specify settings for how print jobs are sent to the printer.
- Support Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.399)

  You can view support information and the user's manual.

With the **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** feature, you can arrange originals from various source applications on a single page before printing. For details, see Free Layout .

With the **imagePROGRAF Preview** feature, you can check the layout before printing and adjust layout or size settings while viewing a preview screen. For details, see Preview .

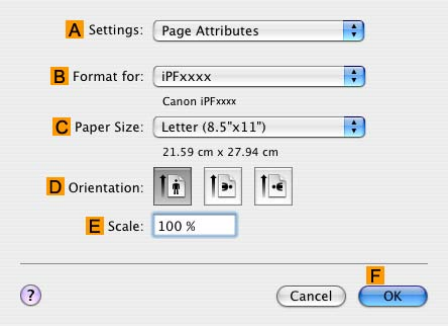
With the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** feature, you can automatically enlarge and print scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

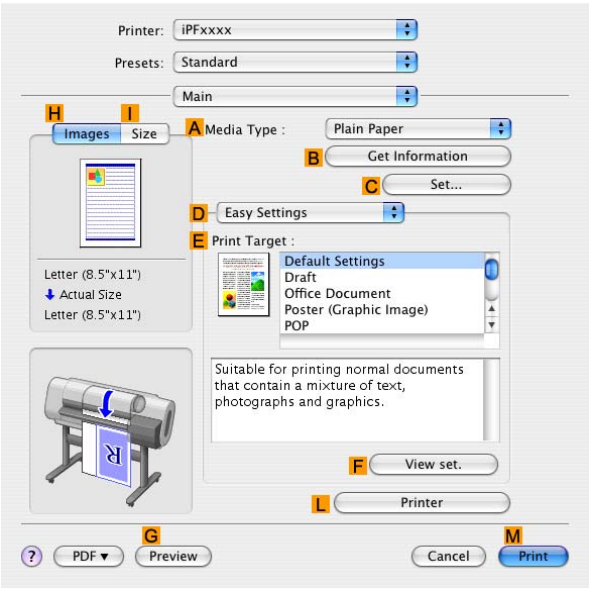
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



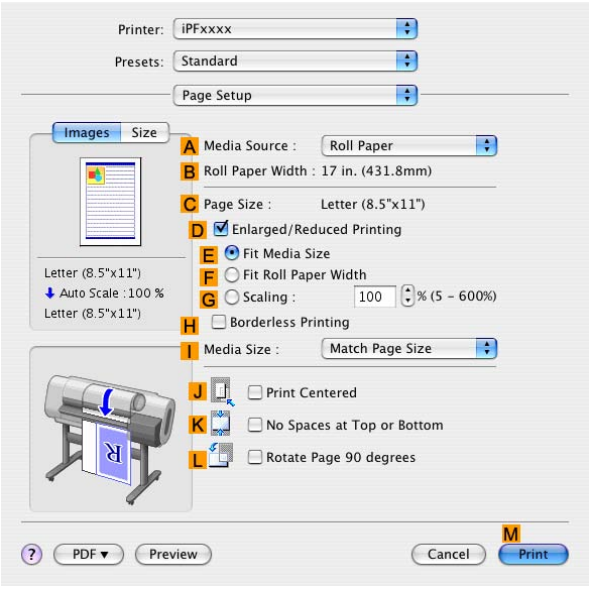
2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

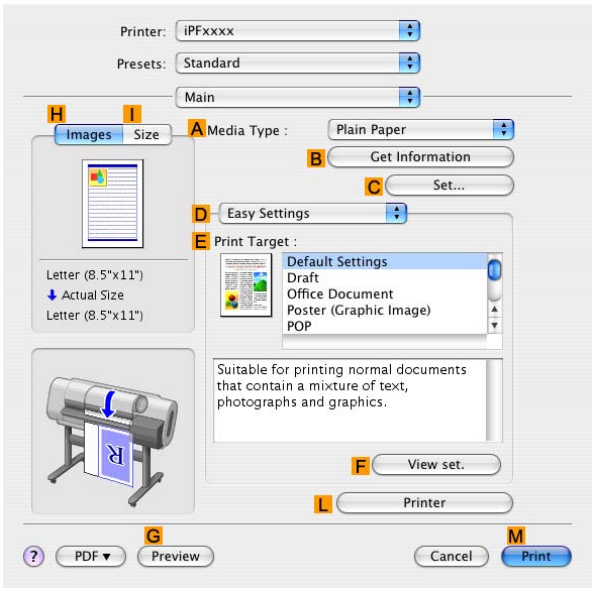
8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. In the A **Media Source** list, select how paper is supplied.
10. If you have selected **Cut Sheet** or **Manual** in A **Media Source**, make sure the size as selected in **Page Setup** is displayed in C **Page Size**. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in A **Media Source**, make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



Note

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications.
  For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.379)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

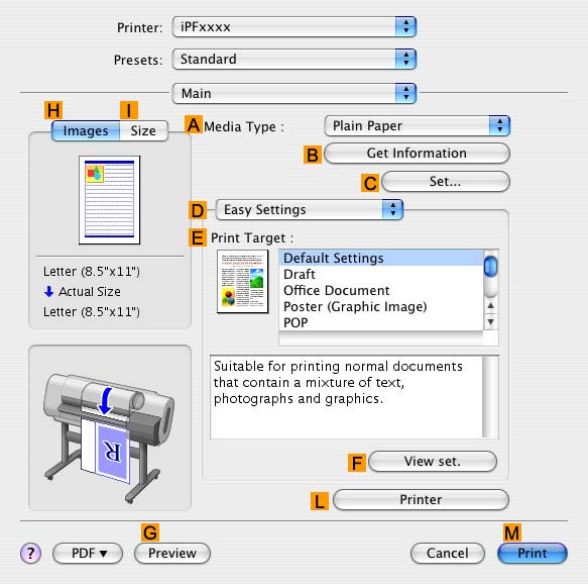
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)

There are two ways to confirm what printing conditions have been specified, as follows.

- Checking a preview of the settings (→P.382)
- Checking a print preview (→P.383)

Checking a preview of the settings

A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Utility**, and **Additional Settings** panes.By checking images and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, paper source, and so on.

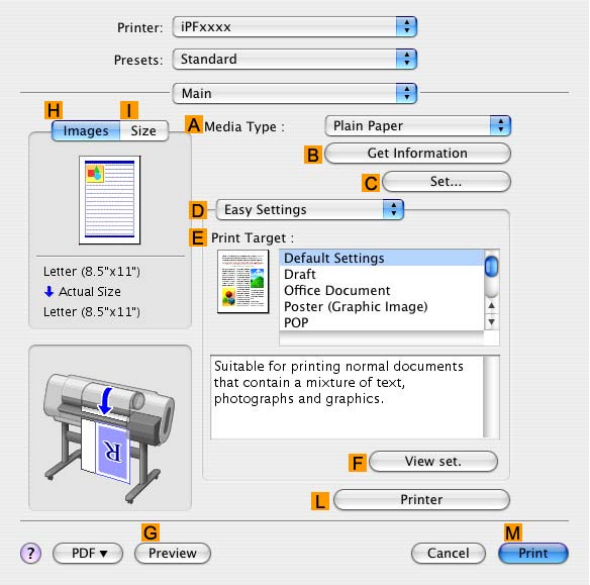


Display Area	Information Displayed
Pane displayed when the H **Images** tab is clicked	On top, illustrations indicate the page size of the original, the paper size, orientation, layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information. Under this, the page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction is displayed.
Pane displayed when the I **Size** tab is clicked	Paper size details are indicated numerically.
Pane with printer and paper illustrations	Illustrations indicate the paper source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- To confirm the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings**, click **F** **View set.** on the **Main** pane to display the **View settings** dialog box.



Checking a print preview

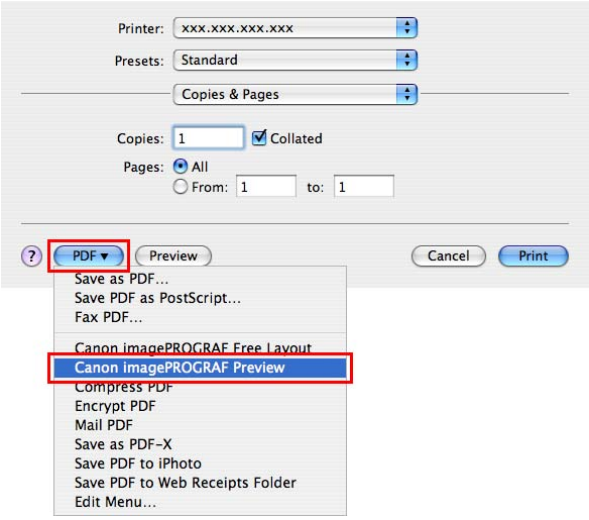
You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.
Confirming the image of print jobs beforehand helps prevent printing errors.
For details on print previews, see “Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing”. (→P.311)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

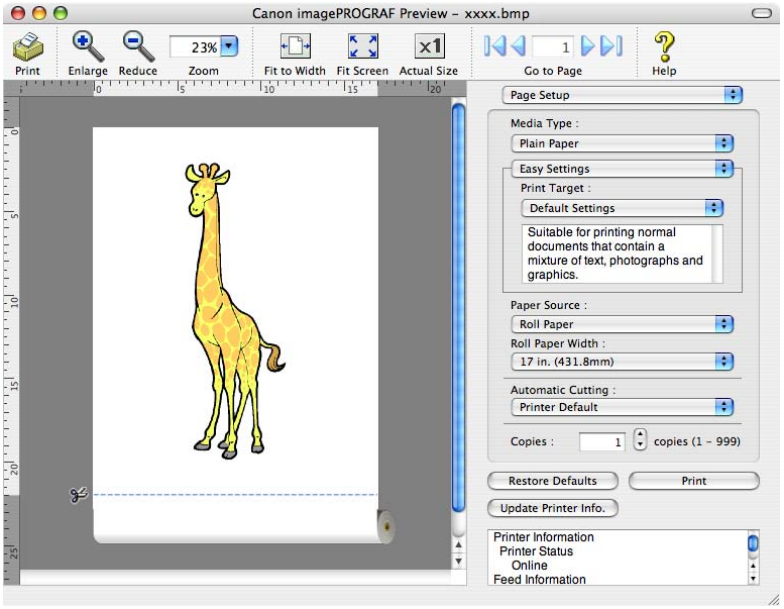
Checking the Layout Before Printing (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to check the layout before printing using the **Preview** function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Click **PDF** and select **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview**.



3. The **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window is displayed.



4. Check the layout and adjust settings in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window as desired.
5. Print from the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** menu.

Note

- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, refer to Preview .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using Favorites (Mac OS X)

You can use the **Presets** function in Mac OS X for favorite-based printing.

Note

- In the printing dialog box, click **Save As** in the **Presets** list to save the current print settings. This is a standard feature of the operating system. For details, refer to the Mac OS documentation.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

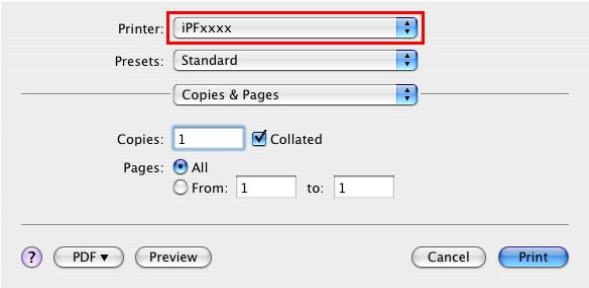
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X)

1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

   Note

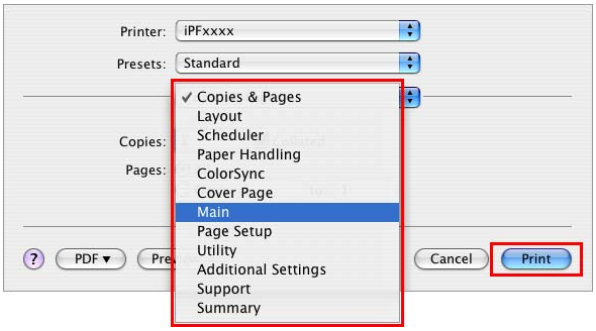
   - This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2. Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



3. Click **Print** to start printing.

   As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

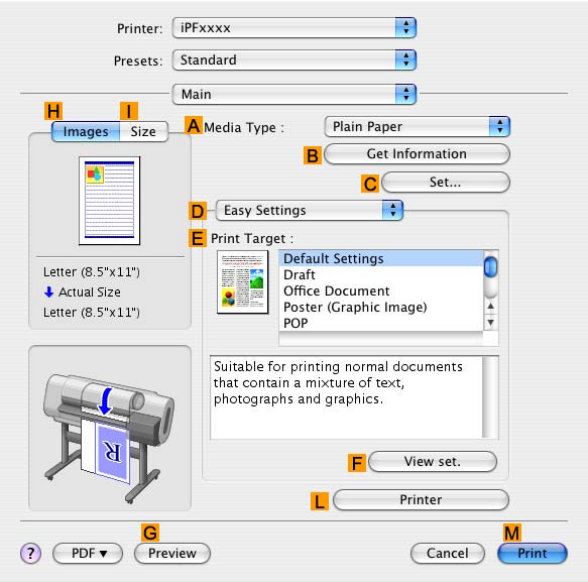
Main Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Main** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

Note

- On the **Main** pane, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the print target, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

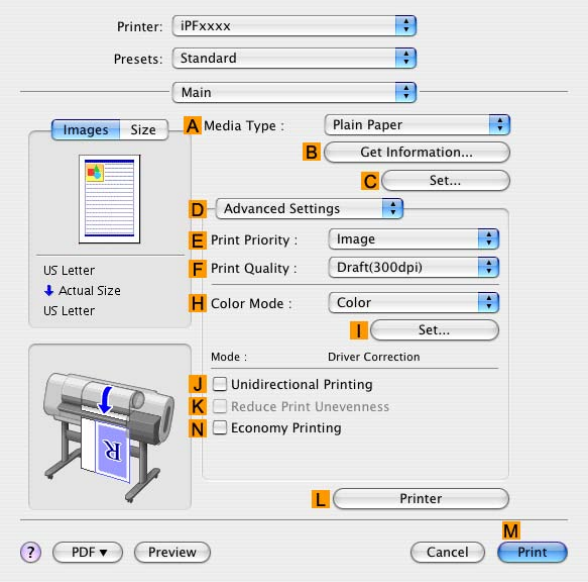
Configuration using Easy Settings



Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)
	B Get Information	Click to display the **Get Information** dialog box, which shows media types specified on the printer for each media source. When you select a media source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the media source and media type.
	C Set	Click to display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
E Print Target		Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed. Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X) (→P.144) Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS X) (→P.153) Printing Office Documents (→P.163)
	F View set.	Click to display the **View settings** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the selected item from the **E Print Target** list or change the order of items listed in **E Print Target**.
L Printer		Click to display the **Printer** dialog box, which indicates the ink levels and gives other information about the printer.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuration using Advanced Settings

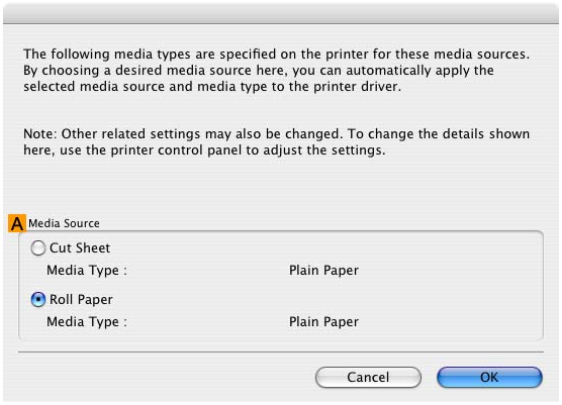


Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)
	B Get Information	Click to display the **Get Information** dialog box, which shows media types specified on the printer for each media source. When you select a media source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the media source and media type.
	C Set	Click to display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
E Print Priority		Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.180)
F Print Quality		Choose the level of print quality. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.180)
H Color Mode		Choose the color mode. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.180)
	I Set	Click to display the **Color Settings** dialog box for more advanced color settings. Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.172)
J Unidirectional Printing		Although unidirectional printing is slower, it can help prevent misaligned lines and ensure better results.
K Reduce Print Unevenness		This option is displayed if you have selected Plain Paper in **A Media Type** and **Office Document** in **E Print Priority**. Activate this option for two-pass printing to reduce color shading.
N Economy Printing		When this mode is selected, less ink is consumed than in regular printing, but the quality is diminished. Select this mode if you want to conserve ink when checking drawings, for example. Depending on the **Media Type** and **Print Quality** settings, this mode may not be available.
L Printer		Click to display the **Printer** dialog box, which indicates the ink levels and gives other information about the printer.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Mac OS X)

On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver media type setting.


The following media types are specified on the printer for these media sources. By choosing a desired media source here, you can automatically apply the selected media source and media type to the printer driver.
Note: Other related settings may also be changed. To change the details shown here, use the printer control panel to adjust the settings.
A Media Source
Cut Sheet
Media Type : Plain Paper
Roll Paper
Media Type : Plain Paper
Cancel
OK

Note

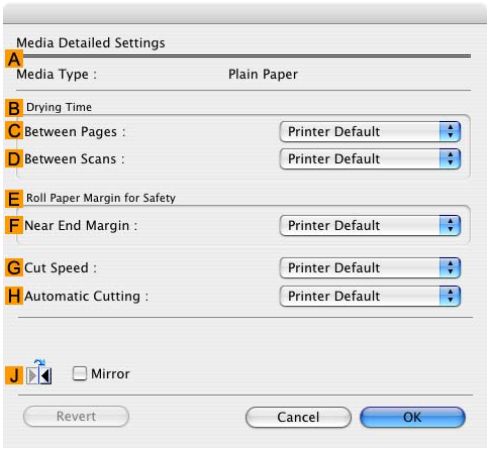
- To display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **Get Information** by **Media Type**. (→P.387)

Setting Item	Description
A **Paper Source**	Shows the **Paper Source** supported by the printer, as well as the type of paper loaded. To update the media type setting in the printer driver, select the desired **Paper Source** option and click **OK**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X)

The **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Note

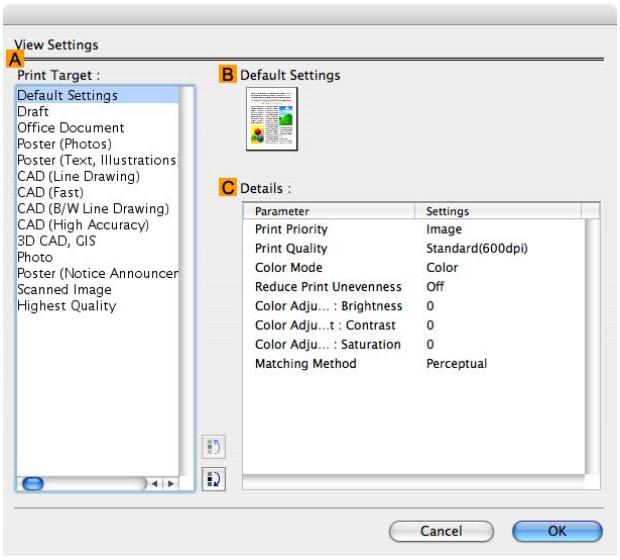
- To display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **Settings** by **Media Type**. (→P.387)

Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)
B Drying Time		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.120)
	C Between Pages	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D Between Scans	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E Roll Paper Margin for Safety		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen.
	F Near End Margin	Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G Cut Speed		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
H Automatic Cutting		You can activate or deactivate **Automatic Cutting** and printing of cut lines, as desired. In this list, specify **Yes**, **No**, or **Print Cut Guideline**.
J Mirror		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X)

In the **View Settings** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



Note

- To display the **View Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **View Settings** by **Print Target**. (→P.387)

Setting Item	Description
A **Print Target**	Shows all **Print Target** options (settings items for the printing application).
B **Name**	Identifies the item selected in **Print Target** by its name and an icon.
C **Details**	Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each item selected in the **Print Target** list.

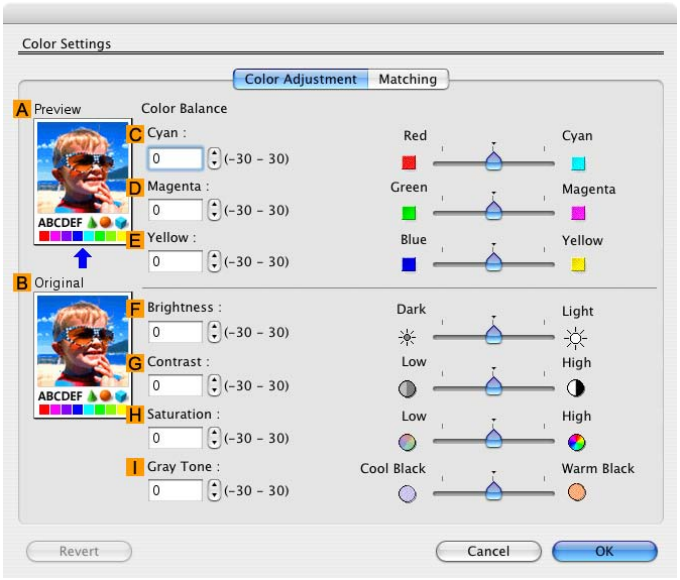
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X)

In general, make any needed adjustments to the color of documents in the application used to create them. However, if the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can also adjust the color in the printer driver.

Color Adjustment pane: color

If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** pane.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** pane, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**. (→P.387)

Setting Item	Description
A **Preview**	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the pane, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B **Original**	The image at right shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the **Preview** image.
C **Cyan**	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.
D **Magenta**	
E **Yellow**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H **Saturation**	Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the **Saturation** setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the **Saturation** makes colors more subdued.
I **Gray Tone Adjustment**	Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose **Cool Black** (tinged with blue), **Warm Black** (tinged with red), and so on.

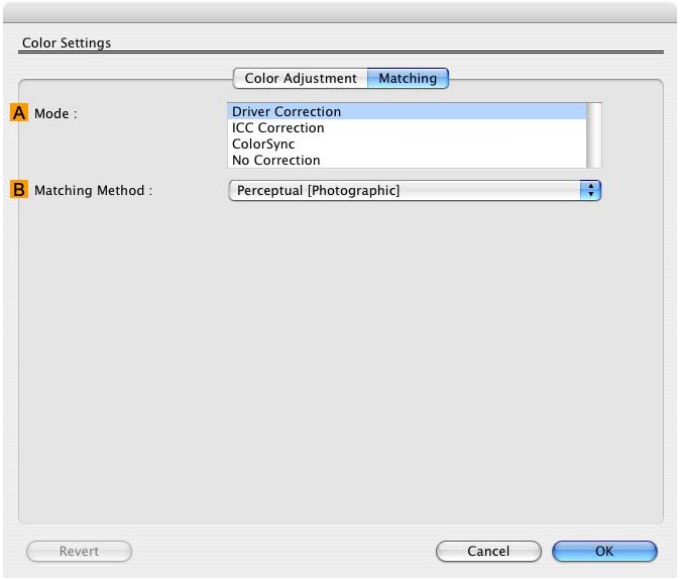
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.172)

Matching pane

On the **Matching** pane, you can specify color matching, to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices.



Note

- To display the **Matching** pane, on the **Main** pane, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Matching**. (→P.387)

Setting Item	Description
A **Matching Mode**	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.
B **Matching Method**	Select the matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various **Matching Method** options are available depending on your selection in **Matching**.

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.172)

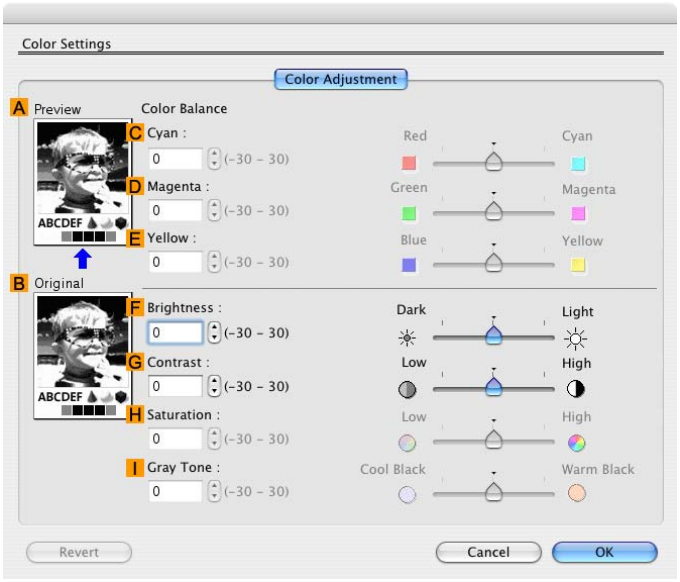
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Color Settings** pane for monochrome printing.

Color Adjustment pane: monochrome

On the **Color Adjustment** pane for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** pane, click **Color Settings** in **Advanced Settings**. (→P.387)

Setting Item	Description
A Preview	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the pane, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B Original	The image at right shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the **Preview** image.
C Cyan	Not available.
D Magenta	
E Yellow	
F Brightness	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H Saturation	Not available.
I Gray Tone	Not available.

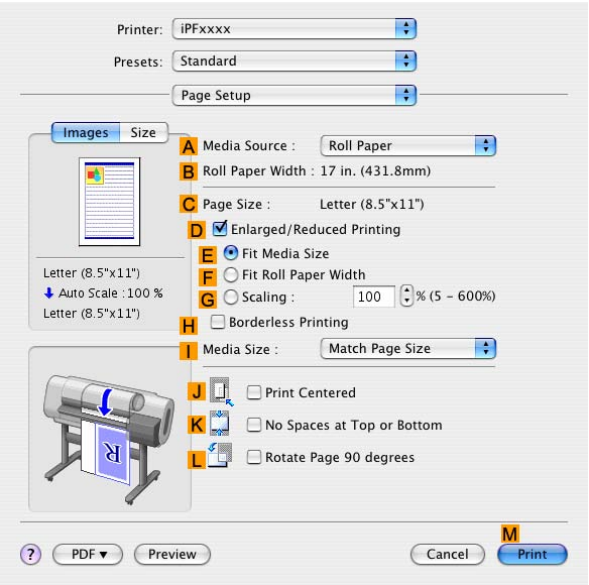
Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.172)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Setting Item		Description
A **Media Source**		Choose how paper is supplied. Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in A **Media Type** in the **Main** pane.
B **Roll Paper Width**		Displays the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer. **Unknown** is displayed if the printer cannot detect the roll paper width.
C **Page Size**		Displays the size of the original, as specified in the page settings of the application. For details on page sizes available in the application.see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.101)
D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**		Choose from the following options when this setting is activated. Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.196) Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.202) Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.208)
	E **Fit Media Size**	Resizes the document image to match the paper size.
	F **Fit Roll Paper Width**	Resizes the document image to match the roll width.
	G **Scaling**	Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of “5-600.”
H **Borderless Printing**		Borderless printing is available if **Roll Paper** is selected in the A **Media Source** list. Activate this setting for borderless printing to match the size and width of the paper. Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.232) Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.239) Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.225)
I **Media Size**		Choose the size of the paper you will print on. Click **Display all selections for Paper Size** to list available sizes. For details on available paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.101)

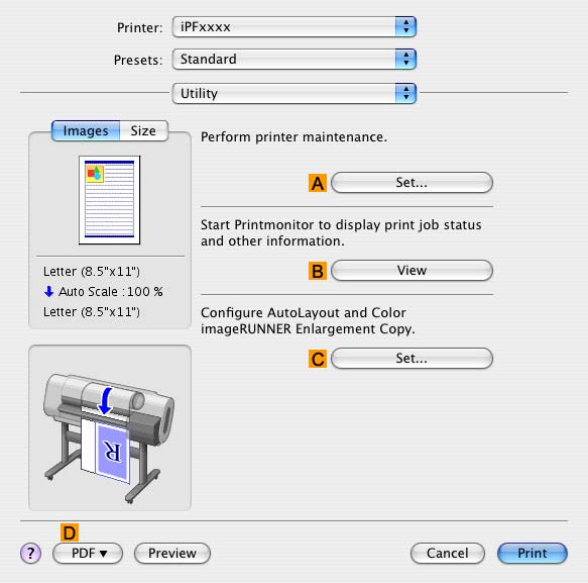
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Setting Item	Description
J **Print Centered**	Activate this setting to print document images in the center of the paper. Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (→P.288) Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (→P.294)
K **No Spaces at Top or Bottom**	Activate this setting to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper. Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.305)
L **Rotate Page 90 degrees**	Activate this setting to rotate the original 90 degrees before printing. Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.299)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Utility Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Utility**pane.



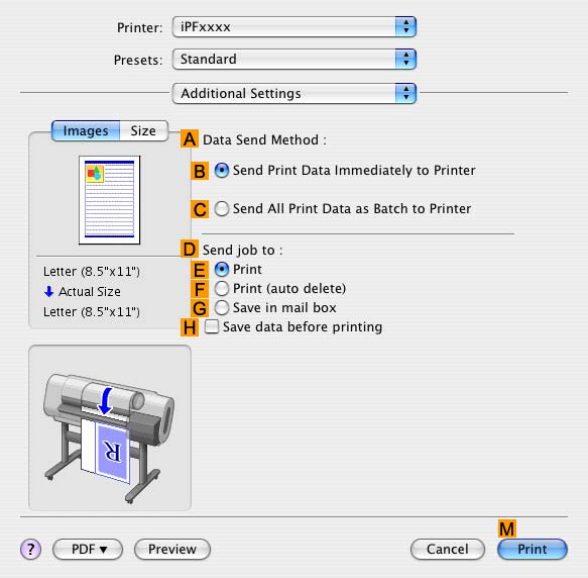
Setting Item	Description
A **Set**	Click to display the **Printer** dialog box, which offers the following maintenance for the printer. • Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning • Head alignment adjustment • Feed amount adjustment
B **View**	Click to start **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**, which enables you to view the status of print jobs.
C **Set**	Click to complete the settings for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (iR enlargement copy).

*1: For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Additional Settings** pane.

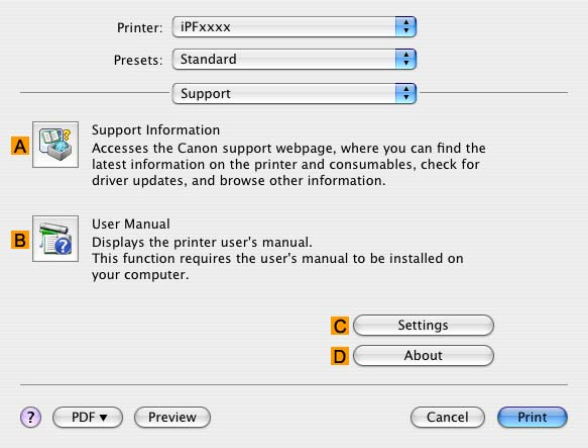


Setting Item	Description
A Data Send Method	Choose how print data is sent to the printer. • **B Send Print Data Immediately to Printer** • **C Send All Print Data as Batch to Printer**
D Send job to	Click to display the **Send job to** dialog box, which enables you to specify how print jobs are stored on the printer's hard disk. • **E Print** • **F Print (auto delete)** • **G Save in mail box**
H Save data before printing	Jobs are printed after they are saved on the hard disk.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Support Pane (Mac OS X)

On the **Support** pane, you can view support information and the user's manual.



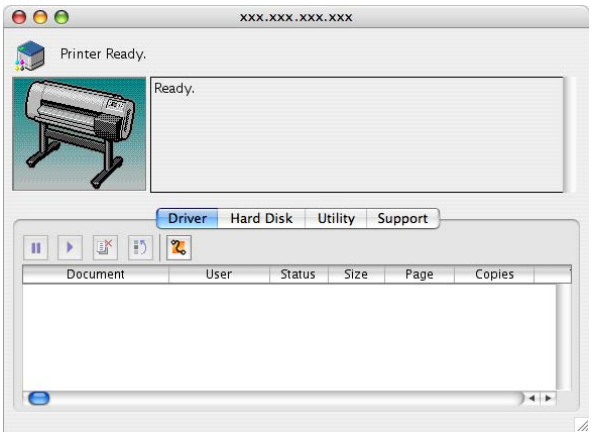
Button	Corresponding Utility
A **Support Information**	Click to access the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for printer driver updates, and browse other information.
B **User Manual**	Click to view the printer user's manual. This function requires the user's manual to be installed on your computer.
C **Settings**	The settings can be saved as a file. Click to display the **Export** dialog box, which enables you to specify where to save the file.
D **About**	You can display version information for the printer driver.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printmonitor

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.



- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- You can check the status of print jobs, cancel jobs, and manage them as needed.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.

Note

- If the status of the desired printer is not shown in **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**, select the printer again as follows.
  1. Make sure the printer is on and connected to the network or to a local port.
  2. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer.
     After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.
  3. If information about the printer is not shown in step 2, choose **Search Printer** in the **Printer** menu.
  4. Select the zone to search (or select ***(My Zone)** if no zones have been set up) and click the **Search** button.
     Printer names listed in the **Printer** menu are updated with the printers that are now detected.
  5. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer.
     After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Network Setting

Network Setting

Network Environment

System requirements

The system requirements, which vary depending on your network, are as follows.

- Printing over a TCP/IP network
  - Compatible operating systems
    - Windows 2000 (Professional or Server)
    - Windows XP (Home Edition or Professional)
    - Windows Server 2003 (Standard Edition)
    - Windows Vista (Home Basic/Business/Ultimate)
    - Mac OS X 10.2.8 or later
  - Compatible computer
    - A computer that runs one of the above operating systems
- Printing over an AppleTalk network
  - Compatible operating systems
    - Mac OS X 10.2.8 or later
  - Compatible computer
    - A computer that runs one of the above operating systems

Note

- The printer cannot be used over a LocalTalk network.
- Compatible with EtherTalk Phase 2.

- Printing over a NetWare network
  - Compatible servers
    - Novell NetWare 4.2/5.1/6.0
  - Compatible clients
    - Windows 2000 (Professional or Server)
    - Windows XP (Professional)
  - Compatible computer
    - A computer that runs one of the above operating systems

Note

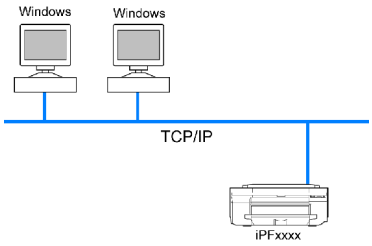
- In NetWare 6.0, iPrint is not supported.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Network environment

After confirming what type of network environment you will connect the printer to, set up the printer and computers as needed.

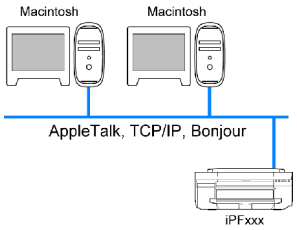
- Example of a Windows network
  In Windows networks, print over TCP/IP.



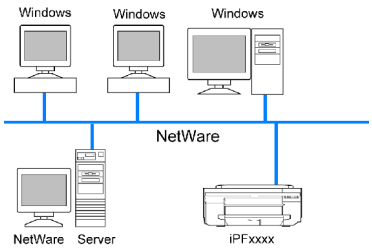
Note

- NetBIOS is not supported.

- Example of a Macintosh network
  In Macintosh networks, print over AppleTalk (EtherTalk) or TCP/IP, using Bonjour(Zeroconf) functions.



- Example of a NetWare network



Note

- Even if there is a NetWare server in your network environment, you can use both TCP/IP and AppleTalk. In this case, complete the settings for each protocol you will use.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the IP Address on the Printer

You must configure the printer's IP address before using the printer in a TCP/IP network.
The printer's IP address is configured automatically when you install the printer driver following the instructions in the Quick Start Guide.
Configure the IP address by using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, the printer Control Panel, or ARP or PING commands, if the IP address is changed, or if you change the printer connection mode to a network connection. For details on configuring the IP address, refer to the following topics.

- Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (→P.404)
- Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel (→P.405)
- Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands (→P.406)

Important

- If you use a DHCP server for automatic assignment of the printer's IP address, printing may no longer be possible after the printer is turned off and on. This is because an IP address different from before has been assigned. Thus, when using DHCP server functions, consult your network administrator and configure the settings in one of the following ways.
  - Configure the setting for dynamic DNS updating
    In RemoteUI, activate the setting **Enable DNS Dynamic Update**. (→P.408)
  - Configure the setting for assignment of the same IP address each time the printer starts up

Note

- We recommend configuring the printer's IP address even if you will use the printer in networks other than TCP/IP networks. Configuring the printer's IP address enables you to use RemoteUI to configure the network settings and manage the printer with a web browser.
  For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.407)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

From a computer running Windows, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility provided with the printer to configure the printer's IP address. This topic describes how to configure the IP address using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as "Administrator" account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility". (→P.377)

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.
2. In the **Product Name** list displayed, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. In the **Setting IP Address** list, choose **Manual**.
5. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.
6. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message dialog box is displayed.
7. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Note

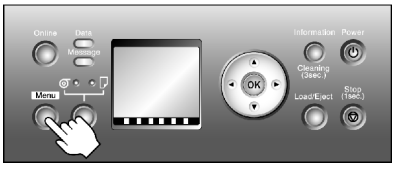
- To configure the IP address automatically, choose **Auto** in the **Setting IP Address** list and select **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP**.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel

This topic describes how to configure the printer's IP address on the Control Panel.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



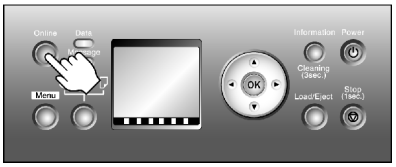
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **TCP/IP**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IP Setting**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IP Address**, and then press the ► button.
6. After pressing ◄ or ► to select the input field, press the **OK** button to enable numerical input.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the number, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- Pressing the ▲ button increases the number by 1. The maximum value is "255," after which "0" is displayed.
- Pressing the ▼ button decreases the number by 1. The minimum value is "0," after which "255" is displayed.
- Hold down ▲ or ▼ to increase or decrease the value continuously.

8. Repeat steps 3-4 to enter the IP address assigned to the printer.
9. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

   If any of the settings are changed, a message for confirmation is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.



Important

- Be sure to complete step 9. This will activate the values you have entered.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway on the Control Panel.

Note

- If an error message is displayed, check the settings and correct any invalid values.
- To cancel the setup process, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands

This topic describes how to configure the IP address using ARP and PING commands.
To use the ARP and PING commands, you will need to know the printer's MAC address. You can confirm the MAC address on the Control Panel.

1. Check the printer's MAC address.

   You can confirm the MAC address on the Control Panel as follows:

   1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.
   2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.
   3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Driver**, and then press the ► button.
   4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **MAC Address**, and then press the ► button.

   Note

   - You can investigate the MAC address by printing a Status Print report.
     (→P.67)

2. In Windows, open a command prompt, or in Mac OS X, start Terminal.
3. Execute the following command to add entries to the ARP table for managing IP addresses and corresponding MAC addresses.

   arp -s [IP address] [the printer's MAC address you have verified]

   Example: arp -s xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx 00-00-85-xx-xx-xx

   Note

   - In Mac OS X when using Terminal, enter the arp command in the format "arp -s xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx 00:00:85:xx:xx:xx." For details, refer to the help file for the command line.

4. Execute the following command to send the IP address to the printer and configure it.

   ping [IP address as specified in the ARP command] -l 479

   Example: ping xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx -l 479

   Note

   - In "-l," the "l" is the letter "l".
   - In Mac OS X when using Terminal, enter the ping command in the format "ping -s 479 xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx." For details, refer to the help file for the command line.

Note

- The subnet mask and default gateway will be set to "0.0.0.0." Use RemoteUI to change the subnet mask and default gateway to match your network settings.
  For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.407)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using RemoteUI

Enter the printer's IP address in a web browser to display the RemoteUI page. After you log on to RemoteUI from the page, you can check and change the status of the printer and print jobs, and configure network settings.

To access RemoteUI, start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
http://"printer IP address or name"/
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
For details on configuring printer settings for networks, refer to the following topics.

- Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings (→P.408)
- Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings (→P.410)
- Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings (→P.411)
- Specifying Printer-Related Information (→P.413)

Note

- RemoteUI also offers many other features. You can display the ink levels, check error messages and other status information, and cancel print jobs.
- By factory default, the English screen is displayed. To change the display language, select the desired language under **Language** before logging on in administrator mode.

Important

- Use Netscape Navigator 6.0 or later, Internet Explorer 5.01 or later, or Firefox 1.5 or later as a web browser. In Mac OS X, you can also use Safari 1.32 or later or Safari 2.03 or later.
- Access is not possible via a proxy server. In environments where a proxy server is used, add the printer's IP address to **Exceptions** (addresses accessed without a proxy server) in the web browser proxy server settings. (Settings may vary depending on the network environment.)
- Enable JavaScript and cookies in the web browser.
- If you access RemoteUI with the printer name instead of its IP address, make sure the DNS settings are correctly configured.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the TCP/IP network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **TCP/IP** group to display the **Edit TCP/IP Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the TCP/IP Settings Items table to complete the settings.

TCP/IP Settings Items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Use DHCP	Activate this setting to use DHCP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Use BOOTP	Activate this setting to use BOOTP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Use RARP	Activate this setting to use RARP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Enable DNS Dynamic Update	Activate this setting to perform DNS server registration automatically.	Off
Use Zeroconf Function	Activate this setting to use Bonjour.	On
IP Address	Specify the printer's IP address.	0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask	Specify the printer's subnet mask.	0.0.0.0
Gateway Address	Specify the printer's default gateway.	0.0.0.0
LPD Printing	Activate this setting to use LDP Printing.	On
IPP Printing	Activate this setting to use IPP Printing.	On
IPP Printer URI	Specify the URI of the printer used for IPP printing using up to 252 characters. When using a standard Windows port for IPP printing, enter an URL less than 255 bytes for all characters for "http://"IP address"/IPP-URI."	printer
RAW Printing	Activate this setting to use Raw Printing.	On

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Item	Details	Default Setting
RAW Mode Bi-direction	Activate this setting to use Raw mode bidirectional communication.	Off
FTP Printing	Activate this setting to use FTP Printing.	On
SMTP Server Address	Specify the SMTP server's IP address.	0.0.0.0
Primary DNS Server Address	Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS Server Address	Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.	0.0.0.0
DNS Host Name	Specify the printer host name, up to 63 characters (1-63 characters). Use single-byte letters, numbers, and "-" (hyphens). Do not use numbers or "-" for the first character or "-" for the last character.	NB-17FBxxxxxxxxxxx
DNS Domain Name	Specify the printer domain name, up to 63 characters. Use single-byte letters, numbers, "-" (hyphens), and "." (periods). Do not use numbers, "-", or "." for the first character, or "-" or "." for the last character.	blank
Multicast DNS Service Name	Specify the printer's Multicast DNS service name. (1-63 characters) This name will be displayed when Bonjour functions are used.	Canon iPFxxxx (xxxxxx)

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Note

- If you specify to configure the IP address using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, there must be a server that supports such protocol running in the network.
- If you specify to configure the IP address using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, the IP address obtained by this method is used first. If you cannot obtain the IP address, the address specified in **IP Address** is used.
- It takes a minute or two to determine whether DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP are available. We recommend clearing check boxes of options you will not use.
- If you are using a DNS server, select **Enable DNS Dynamic Update** and enter the IP Address for DNS servers, DNS host name, and DNS domain name in **Primary DNS Server Address**, **Secondary DNS Server Address**, **DNS Host Name**, and **DNS Domain Name**, respectively.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the AppleTalk network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **AppleTalk** group to display the **Edit AppleTalk Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the AppleTalk Settings Items table to complete the settings.

   AppleTalk Settings Items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Phase Type	Specify whether to use AppleTalk. If you will use AppleTalk, choose **Phase 2**. If you will not use AppleTalk, choose **Disabled**.	Disabled
Name (*1)	Specify the object name used by AppleTalk (in up to 31 single-byte or 15 double-byte characters). However, do not use the following single-byte characters: @ * : =	Canon NB-17FB (xxxxxx)
Zone (*2)	Specify the printer zone name, up to 31 single-byte characters. However, do not use the following single-byte characters: @ : = Also avoid using "*" (which represents the default zone) in the middle of a string.	*

   *1:The object name you have specified in **Name** is displayed in **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in Mac OS X. If you use multiple printers in the same zone, assign a unique name to each printer. By default, the network interface name is "Canon NB-17FB (xxxxxx)." (Here, xxxxxx is the last six digits of the printer's MAC address.)

   2: If zones have been created on the network, enter the name of the printer's zone. If there are no zones, leave the asterisk "" entry (for the default zone) as it is. If you enter a network zone name that does not match created zones, the printer will not be detected by Macintosh computers. Consult your network administrator for information on zone names.

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the NetWare network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **NetWare** group to display the **Edit NetWare Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the NetWare Settings Items table to complete the settings.

NetWare Settings Items

Item		Details	Default Setting
Frame Type		Specify the type of frame to use in NetWare.	Disabled
NCP Burst Mode		Activate this setting to use NCP Burst Mode. This mode supports fast data transfer when printing in queue server mode. Normally, leave the setting On.	On
Print Application		Choose the print service. • **Bindery PServer** • **RPrinter** • **NDS PServer** • **NPrinter**	NDS PServer
Packet Signature		Select **If Requested by Server** to use packet signature.	**If Requested by Server**
Bindery PServer	**File Server Name**	Specify the name of a file server that has a NetWare print server. (0-47 characters)	-
	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0-47 characters)	-
	Print Server Password	Set a password for the print server. (0-20 characters)	-
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval to confirm jobs. (1-15 seconds)	5
RPrinter	**Print Server Name**	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0-47 characters)	-

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Item		Details	Default Setting
	Printer Number	Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server. (0-15)	0
NDS PServer	**Tree Name**	Specify the name of an NDS tree that has a NetWare print server. (0-32 characters)	-
	Context Name	Specify the name of a context that has a NetWare print server. (0-255 characters)	-
	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0-64 characters)	-
	Print Server Password	Set a password for the print server. (0-20 characters)	-
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval to confirm jobs. (1-255 seconds)	5
NPrinter	**Print Server Name**	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0-47 characters)	-
	Printer Number	Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server. (0-254)	0

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying Printer-Related Information

Follow the steps below to specify device information and security settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://“printer IP address or name”/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Information** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Information** page.
5. To display the relevant settings page, click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of **Device Information** or **Security**, depending on what information you want to specify.
6. Refer to the table of settings for device information, security, and email notification as you complete these settings.

Device Information Settings

Item	Details	Default Setting
Device Name	Enter a device name. (0-32 characters)	blank
Location	Enter the location where the device is installed. (0-32 characters)	blank
Administrator	Enter the administrator’s name. (0-32 characters)	blank
Phone	Enter the administrator’s contact information. (0-32 characters)	blank
Comments(E-mail)	Enter any comments regarding the administrator. (0-32 characters)	blank

Security Settings

Item	Details	Default Setting
Old Password	Enter the current device password. (0-14 characters)	blank
New Password	Enter the new password. (0-14 characters)	blank
Confirm	Enter the new password again to confirm it. (0-14 characters)	blank

Besides entering a password, you can specify other security-related information, such as IP address-based SNMP or TCP usage restrictions, MAC address-based access restrictions, or IPP and FTP authentication settings.

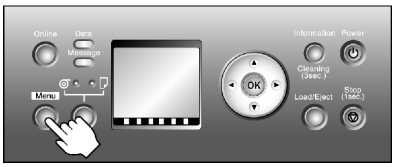
7. Click **OK** to activate the settings.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

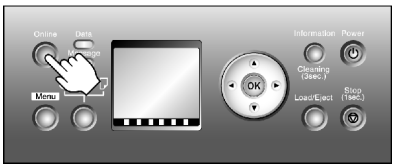
Configuring the Communication Mode Manually

This topic gives instructions for configuring the communication mode manually.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



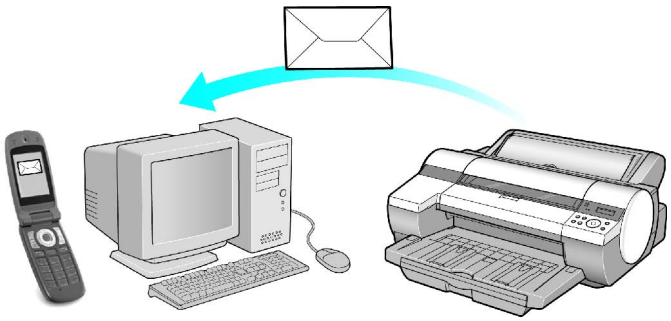
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press ►.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Driver**, and then press ►.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Detect**, and then press ►.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Off**, and then press **OK**.
   Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Comm.Mode**, and then press ►.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the communication mode, and then press the **OK** button.
   Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Type**, and then press ►.
9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Ethernet type, and then press **OK**.
   Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.
10. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Spanning Tree**, and then press ►.
11. Press ▲ or ▼ to enable or disable spanning tree support, and then press **OK**.
    Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.
12. Press the **Online** button.
    After the confirmation message is displayed, press **OK**.
    The printer will now restart.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur

The printer can notify you of the printer status by email. Even when you are away from the printer, you can know when printing is finished or if errors occur. Receive notification via email on your mobile phone or at your computer.



Use the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) function to set up email recipients and message timing. Besides being informed of finished print jobs or errors, you can also complete settings for email notification when service is needed or it's time to replace consumables. For detailed instructions,see "Specifying Printer-Related Information". (→P.413)

Note

- For details on email notification using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (in Windows), refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Initializing the Network Settings

Use RemoteUI to restore the network settings to the default values as follows.

Important

- Initializing the network settings will also restore the default value of the printer's IP address. As a result, the RemoteUI page cannot be displayed in the web browser after this procedure.
- For instructions on reconfiguring the IP address, see "Configuring the IP Address on the Printer". (→P.403)
- For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.407)

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Reset to Default settings** in the lower-right corner of the **Network Interface** group.
6. After confirming the message, click **OK** to restore the network settings to the default values.

Note

- You can also use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility or the Control Panel to restore the default network settings.
- If you use the Control Panel to initialize the network settings, press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**, and then press ▲, ▼, and ► to select **Interface Setup** → **Ethernet Driver** → **Init. Settings** → **Yes** (in this order), and finally press the **OK** button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Network Setting (Windows)

Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows)

This topic describes how to specify the printer driver destination if the printer's IP address is changed, or if you will use the printer over a network connection instead of via USB connection.
The procedure described below is the configuration based on the LPR or Raw protocol using the standard TCP/IP port in Windows (**Standard TCP/IP Port**).

Important

- If you will use the printer in a TCP/IP network, make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly.
  - Configuring the IP Address on the Printer (→P.403)

1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window.
2. Right-click the icon of this printer and choose **Properties** to open the printer properties window.
3. Click the **Port** tab to display the **Port** sheet.
4. Click **Add Port** to display the **Printer Ports** dialog box.
5. In the **Available Port** list, select **Standard TCP/IP Port**.
6. Click **New Port**.
   After the wizard starts, a window is displayed for the **Welcome to the Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard**.
7. Click **Next**.
8. In **Printer Name or IP Address**, enter the printer's IP address.
9. Follow the instructions on the screen to add a printer port.
10. Click **Close** to close the **Printer Ports** dialog box.
11. Make sure the printer port you added is displayed under **Ports**, and that the port is selected.
12. Click **Close** to close the printer properties window.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

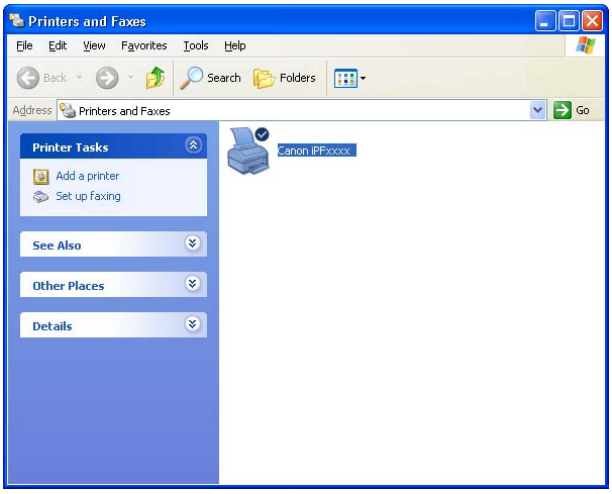
Sharing the Printer in Windows

If you set up a computer as a print server in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, or Windows Server 2008, the computer can receive print jobs sent from other computers (clients) connected to it for printing. This topic describes how to share the printer in Windows.

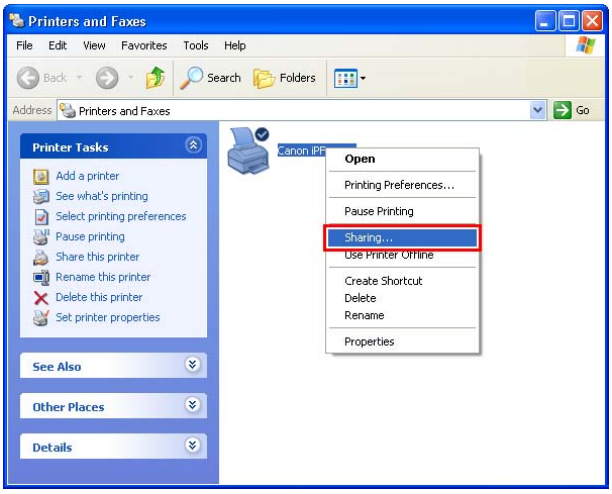
Important

- We recommend that your network administrator configure your network for printer sharing.

1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window.

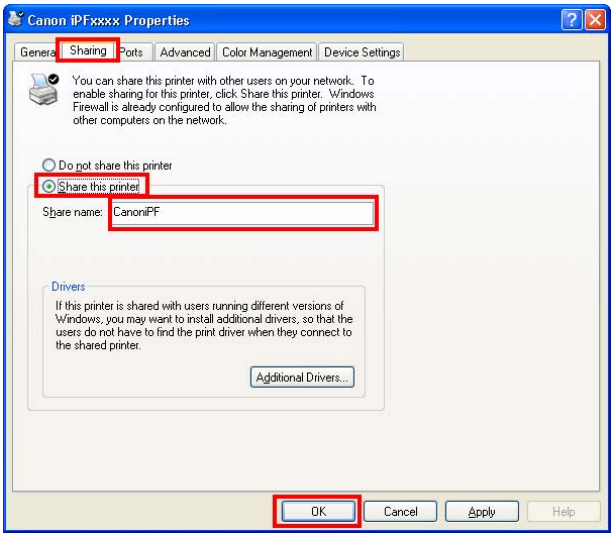


2. Right-click the icon of this printer and choose **Sharing** to open the printer properties window.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

3. On the **Sharing** sheet, click **Share this printer** and enter the shared name.


Canon iPFxxxx Properties
General
Sharing
Ports
Advanced
Color Management
Device Settings
You can share this printer with other users on your network. To enable sharing for this printer, click Share this printer. Windows Firewall is already configured to allow the sharing of printers with other computers on the network.
Do not share this printer
Share this printer
Share name:
CanoniPF
Drivers
If this printer is shared with users running different versions of Windows, you may want to install additional drivers, so that the users do not have to find the print driver when they connect to the shared printer.
Additional Drivers...
OK
Cancel
Apply
Help

4. To print jobs from clients running other versions of Windows, click **Additional Drivers** and follow the instructions to install the printer driver of the corresponding version.
   If you are prompted to choose the location of the printer driver file, insert the provided User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive and specify the folder where the printer driver is located.
5. Click **OK**.

Important

- When installing the printer driver on client computers, select "Network Printer" on the connection type screen in the printer wizard, and then select the printer shared from the computer set up as the print server.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the NetWare network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **NetWare** group to display the **Edit NetWare Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the NetWare Settings Items table to complete the settings.

NetWare Settings Items

Item		Details	Default Setting
Frame Type		Specify the type of frame to use in NetWare.	Disabled
NCP Burst Mode		Activate this setting to use NCP Burst Mode. This mode supports fast data transfer when printing in queue server mode. Normally, leave the setting On.	On
Print Application		Choose the print service. • **Bindery PServer** • **RPrinter** • **NDS PServer** • **NPrinter**	NDS PServer
Packet Signature		Select **If Requested by Server** to use packet signature.	**If Requested by Server**
Bindery PServer	**File Server Name**	Specify the name of a file server that has a NetWare print server. (0-47 characters)	-
	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0-47 characters)	-
	Print Server Password	Set a password for the print server. (0-20 characters)	-
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval to confirm jobs. (1-15 seconds)	5
RPrinter	**Print Server Name**	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0-47 characters)	-

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Item		Details	Default Setting
	Printer Number	Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server. (0-15)	0
NDS PServer	**Tree Name**	Specify the name of an NDS tree that has a NetWare print server. (0-32 characters)	-
	Context Name	Specify the name of a context that has a NetWare print server. (0-255 characters)	-
	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0-64 characters)	-
	Print Server Password	Set a password for the print server. (0-20 characters)	-
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval to confirm jobs. (1-255 seconds)	5
NPrinter	**Print Server Name**	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0-47 characters)	-
	Printer Number	Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server. (0-254)	0

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying the Printer's Frame Type

To enable communication between the printer and computers on your network, specify the Ethernet frame type in your NetWare environment.
Follow the steps below to specify the frame type by using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility or the printer Control Panel.

Note

- You can specify the frame type by using RemoteUI if the printer's IP address is configured.

Important

- Before specifying the frame type, make sure the printer is on and connected to the network.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility". (→P.377)

Specifying the Frame Type Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
2. In the list of printers, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. In the **NetWare Frame Type** list, select the frame type.
5. Click **ETHERNET II** under **Frame Type** in **TCP/IP**.
6. In **IP Address**, enter the IP address assigned to the printer, and then enter the subnet mask in **Subnet Mask** and the default gateway in **Gateway Address**.

   Important

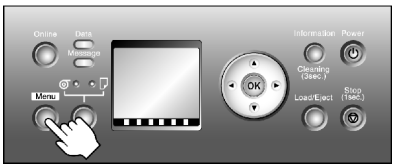
   - You must specify the IP address here to be able to configure NetWare protocol settings using RemoteUI.

7. Click **Set**.
8. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message dialog box is displayed.
9. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

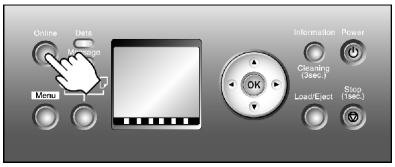
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying the Frame Type Using the Printer Control Panel

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **NetWare**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **NetWare**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.
   Return to the **NetWare** menu.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Frame Type**, and then press the ► button.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the frame type to use, and then press the **OK** button.
   Return to the **NetWare** menu.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Service**, and then press the ► button.
9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired print service, and then press the **OK** button.
   Return to the **NetWare** menu.
10. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.
    If any of the settings is changed, a message for confirmation is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.



Important

- Be sure to complete step 10. This will activate the values you have entered.

Note

- If an error message is displayed, check the settings and correct any invalid values.
- To cancel the setup process, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying NetWare Print Services

Before printing in a NetWare network, you must configure print services such as print servers, print queues, and so on. You can configure the print service settings from a computer using any of the following software.

- NWADMIN
- PCONSOLE
  (from Novell, provided with NetWare)

Important

- If you use NWADMIN to configure the print service settings, Novell Client (the Novell NetWare client software) must be installed as the client software application.
- NetWare networking is unsupported in Windows Vista.

This topic gives instructions for configuring NetWare print services. The order of this procedure may vary depending on the environment.

Choosing the type of print services

Before completing print service settings, choose the type of print service. Refer to the following descriptions as needed.

Note

- In NetWare 5.1 or 6.0, NDPS may also be used as the print service. If you use NDPS, use the Novell printer gateway included with NetWare. For details on configuring NDPS, refer to the NetWare documentation.

- NDS (Novell Directory Service) and bindery
  NDS and bindery are both supported. Use the mode that is compatible with your network environment.
- Queue server mode and remote printer mode
  Queue server mode and remote printer mode are both supported.
  - Queue server mode
    When using queue server mode, all print server functions are supported, so there is no need for other print server software or hardware. In NDS queue server mode (NDS PServer), the NDS print server is used for printing. In bindery queue server mode (Bindery PServer), the bindery print server is used for printing. Note that if you use queue server mode, a NetWare user license is required for each network interface.
  - Remote printer mode
    In remote printer mode, the printer is controlled by the NetWare print server. Thus, a NetWare print server is required. In NDS remote printer mode (NPrinter), the NDS print server is used for printing, and in bindery remote printer mode (RPrinter), the bindery print server is used for printing.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using NWADMIN or PCONSOLE to set up the print server

Use NWADMIN to set up the print server if NDS queue server mode or remote printer mode is used.

1. Log into NetWare as Administrator or with equivalent rights, and then start NWADMIN.
2. Run Quick Setup.
   1. Choose **Print Services Quick Setup** in the **Tools** menu.
   2. Enter a desired name in **Print Server Name**. To use an existing print server, click the button at right and choose the name from the list.
   3. Enter a desired printer name in **Name**.
   4. To use the printer in queue server mode, choose **Other/Unknown** in **Type**. To use the printer in remote printer mode, choose **Parallel** in **Type**, click **Communications**, and set **Ports** to **LPT1** and **Connection Type** to **Manual Load**.
   5. Enter a desired queue name in **Name**.
   6. In **Volume**, enter the volume object (that is, the object representing the physical volume on the network) where the print queue will be created. Click the button at right to choose from a list.
   7. Complete other settings as needed and click **OK**.

   Note
   - The print server name will be required when configuring the printer's protocol settings. Write down the print server name for future reference.
   - When running Quick Setup, the printer is assigned printer number "0." When using the printer in queue server mode, do not change the printer number from "0."
3. Set a password.
   1. Right-click the print server created in step 2 and choose **Details**.
   2. Click **Change Password** to open the password input dialog box. Enter the password.
   3. Click **OK** to close the password input dialog box.
   4. Click **OK** or **Cancel** to close the details dialog box.
4. To use the printer in remote printer mode, start the print server.

   To use the NetWare file server as the print server, enter "LOAD PSERVER.NLM" at the file server and press the Enter key.

   Note
   - This procedure is not required when using queue server mode.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Use PCONSOLE to set up the print server if bindery queue server mode or remote printer mode is used.

1. Log into NetWare as Supervisor and start PCONSOLE.
2. Switch to bindery mode.
3. If the print server has not been created, create it.
    1. In **Available Options**, select **Quick Setup** and press the Enter key.
    2. Enter the name of the new print server, the new printer, and the queue.

    Note
    - The print server name will be required when configuring the printer's protocol settings. Write down the print server name for future reference.

4. Specify the printer type.
    1. To use the printer in queue server mode, choose **Other/Unknown** in **Type**. To use remote printer mode, set **Printer Type** to **Parallel** and **Position** to **Manual Load**.
    2. Press the Esc key.
    3. After the confirmation message is displayed, choose **Yes** and press the Enter key.
5. Set a password.
    1. In **Available Options**, select **Print Servers** and press the Enter key.
    2. Select the print server created in step 2 and press the Enter key.
    3. Select **Password**, and press the Enter key to display the password input dialog box.
    4. Enter the password and press the Enter key.
6. Press the Esc key several times to display the dialog box for confirming that PCONSOLE is finished.
7. Click **Yes** to exit PCONSOLE.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying NetWare Protocols

Follow the steps below to configure NetWare protocol settings other than the frame type by using RemoteUI.

Note

- For details on RemoteUI, see “Using RemoteUI”. (→P.407)

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://“printer IP address or name”/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **NetWare** group to display the **Edit NetWare Protocol Settings** page.
6. Make sure the **Frame Type** indicates the frame type used on the NetWare network.
7. To use burst mode, choose **On** for **NCP Burst Mode**.

   Note

   - Burst mode supports fast data transfer when printing in queue server mode. Normally, choose **On**.

8. In **Print Application**, click the print service to be used.

   Note

   - Only one print service selected here will be enabled. Multiple print services are not available at the same time.

9. For packet signature, click **If Requested by Server** in **Packet Signature**.
10. Complete the following settings based on the selected service.
    - If you have selected Bindery PServer: Queue Server Mode (Using a Bindery Print Server)
      1. In **File Server Name**, enter the file server name.
      2. In **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.424)"
      3. In **Print Server Password**, enter the password of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.424)"
      4. In **Polling Interval**, specify the interval at which the printer checks the NetWare print queue.
    - If you have selected RPrinter: Remote Printer Mode (Using a Bindery Print Server)
      1. In **Print Server Name**, enter the advertising name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.424)"
      2. In **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number specified in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.424)"

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- If you have selected NDS PServer: Queue Server Mode (Using an NDS Print Server)
  1. In **Tree Name** and **Context Name**, enter the tree and context name of the print server.
  2. In **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.424)"
  3. In **Print Server Password**, enter the password of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.424)"
  4. In **Polling Interval**, specify the interval at which the printer checks the NetWare print queue.
- If you have selected NPrinter: Remote Printer Mode (Using a NDS Print Server)
  1. In **Print Server Name**, enter the advertising name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.424)" Usually, the advertising name is the same as the name of the print server.
  2. In **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number specified in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.424)"

11. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.
12. Click **Reset** to activate the settings.

For a list of NetWare protocol settings items, see “Configuring the Printer’s NetWare Network Settings”. (→P.411)

Note

- If you use RemoteUI to display the print log in RPrinter or NPrinter mode, the document and user information cannot be obtained. Thus, **Document Name** only indicates **Unknown**, and the **User Name** information is identified as **RPRINTER/NPRINTER**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring NetWare Network Settings

To print over a NetWare network, configure the network environment as follows.

Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as “Administrator” account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.

1. Specify the Ethernet frame type for communication between the printer and computers.
   For instructions, see “Specifying the Printer’s Frame Type”. (→P.422)
2. Specify the NetWare print services, including the print server and queue.
   For instructions, see “Specifying NetWare Print Services”. (→P.424)
3. Specify NetWare protocol details besides the frame type.
   For instructions, see “Specifying NetWare Protocols”. (→P.427)
   After you have completed the steps above, configure each computer for printing over the NetWare network.
4. Connect to the NetWare network.
   Install NetWare client software on each computer to be used for printing over the network, and log in to the NetWare server or tree. For instructions on connection, refer to the NetWare and operating system documentation.
5. Install the printer driver.
   Follow the instructions of your network administrator to install the printer driver on each computer to be used for printing. When installing the printer driver, choose **Network Printer** as the printer destination, and then choose the print queue created from the NetWare print service settings.
6. Follow these steps to configure the printer port. This step is not necessary if you specified the printer destination during installation of the printer driver.
   1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window.
   2. Right-click the printer icon and choose **Properties**.
   3. Click the **Port** (or **Advanced**) tab to display the **Port** (or **Advanced**) sheet.
   4. As the destination port, specify the print queue created by configuring the NetWare print service settings.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

Install imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer as follows:

Important

- In Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista, you must log on with administrative rights equivalent to the “Administrator” account.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. On the **Setup Menu** window, click **Install Individual Software**.
3. Click **Install** in imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to proceed with the installation.

Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

From a computer running Windows, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility provided with the printer to configure the printer’s IP address. This topic describes how to configure the IP address using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as “Administrator” account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see “Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility”. (→P.377)

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.
2. In the **Product Name** list displayed, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. In the **Setting IP Address** list, choose **Manual**.
5. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.
6. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message dialog box is displayed.
7. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Note

- To configure the IP address automatically, choose **Auto** in the **Setting IP Address** list and select **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP**.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Network Setting (Mac OS X)

Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh)

Specify the printer driver destination as follows if the printer's IP address is changed, or if you will use the printer over a network connection instead of via USB connection.

- If you switch to printing in an AppleTalk network, see "Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)". (→P.433)
- If you switch to printing in a TCP/IP network, or if the printer's IP address is changed, see "Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh)". (→P.436)
- If you switch to printing in a Bonjour network, see "Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)". (→P.438)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the AppleTalk network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **AppleTalk** group to display the **Edit AppleTalk Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the AppleTalk Settings Items table to complete the settings.

AppleTalk Settings Items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Phase Type	Specify whether to use AppleTalk. If you will use AppleTalk, choose **Phase 2**. If you will not use AppleTalk, choose **Disabled**.	Disabled
Name (*1)	Specify the object name used by AppleTalk (in up to 31 single-byte or 15 double-byte characters). However, do not use the following single-byte characters: @ * : =	Canon NB-17FB (xxxxxx)
Zone (*2)	Specify the printer zone name, up to 31 single-byte characters. However, do not use the following single-byte characters: @ : = Also avoid using "*" (which represents the default zone) in the middle of a string.	*

*1: The object name you have specified in **Name** is displayed in **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in Mac OS X. If you use multiple printers in the same zone, assign a unique name to each printer. By default, the network interface name is "Canon NB-17FB (xxxxxx)." (Here, xxxxxx is the last six digits of the printer's MAC address.)

2: If zones have been created on the network, enter the name of the printer's zone. If there are no zones, leave the asterisk "" entry (for the default zone) as it is. If you enter a network zone name that does not match created zones, the printer will not be detected by Macintosh computers. Consult your network administrator for information on zone names.

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)

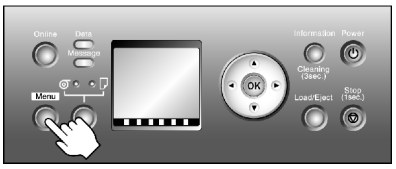
To print over an AppleTalk network, activate the AppleTalk protocol and configure the destination as follows.

Activating AppleTalk on the printer

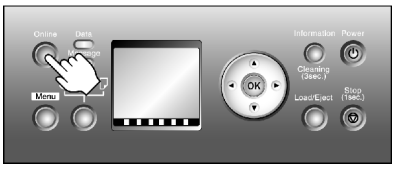
Important

- By factory default, the AppleTalk protocol is disabled on the printer.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **AppleTalk**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.
   If any of the settings is changed, a message for confirmation is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.



Important

- Be sure to complete step 5. This will activate the values you have entered.

Note

- By using RemoteUI, you can also specify the object name used by AppleTalk, as well as the printer zone name.
  For details on RemoteUI, see “Using RemoteUI”. (→P.407)

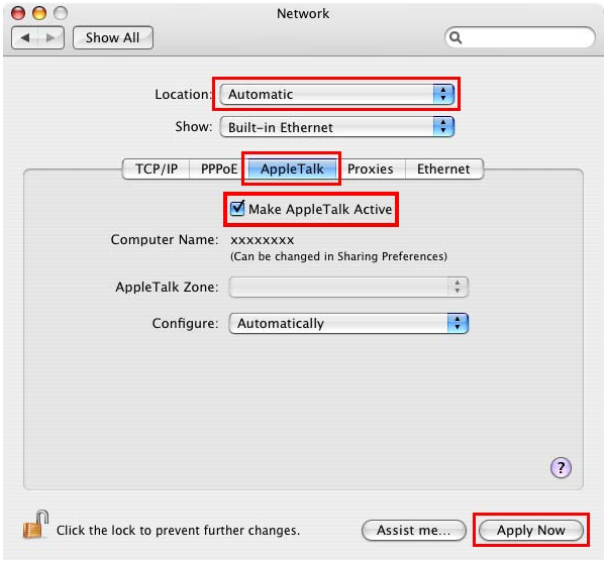
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X)

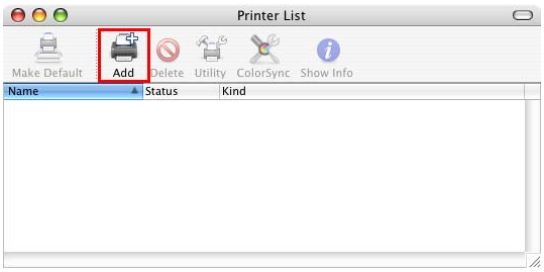
Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of configuring the destination varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

1. In **System Preferences**, click **Network** to display the **Network** window.
2. In **Show**, choose **Built-in Ethernet**. Next, click **AppleTalk**, select **Make AppleTalk Active**, and click **Apply now**.

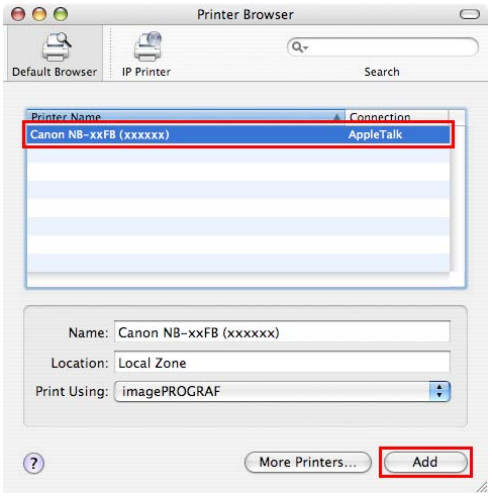


3. Close the **Network** window and save the settings.
4. Choose **Utilities** (or **Applications**) in the **Go** menu of **Finder**.
5. Click **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in the **Utilities** folder.
6. If the printer name is not displayed in **Printer List**, click **Add**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Select the printer from the list in the **Printer Browser** window and click **Add**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh)

Follow the steps below to configure the destination if you will use the printer in a TCP/IP network.

Important

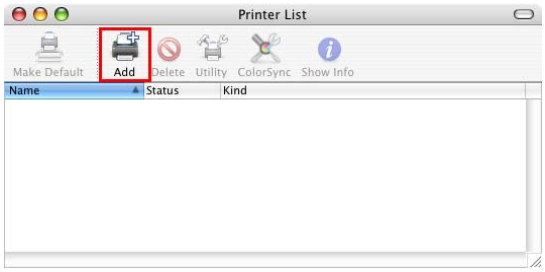
- If you will use the printer in a TCP/IP network, make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly.
  - Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel (→P.405)

Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X)

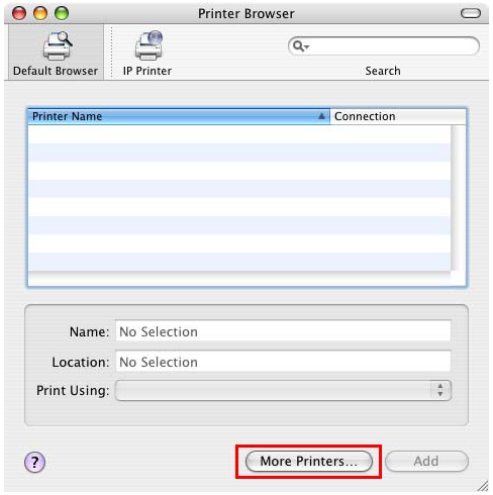
Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of configuring the destination varies depending on the version of Mac OS X. If you use other versions, refer to the help for the **Printer Setup Utility** (or the **Print Center**).

1. Choose **Utilities** (or **Applications**) in the **Go** menu of **Finder**.
2. Click **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in the **Utilities** folder.
3. Click **Add** to display the **Printer Browser** window.

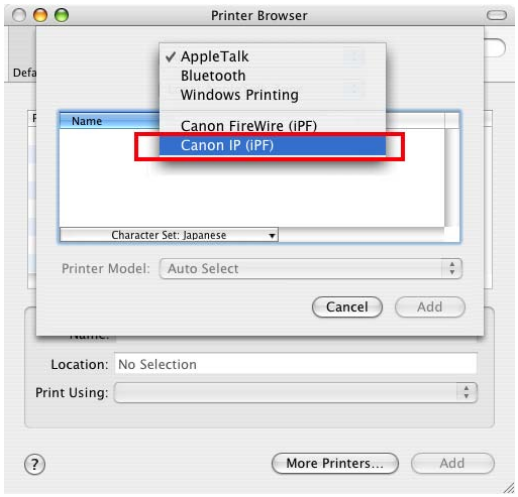


4. Click **More Printers**.

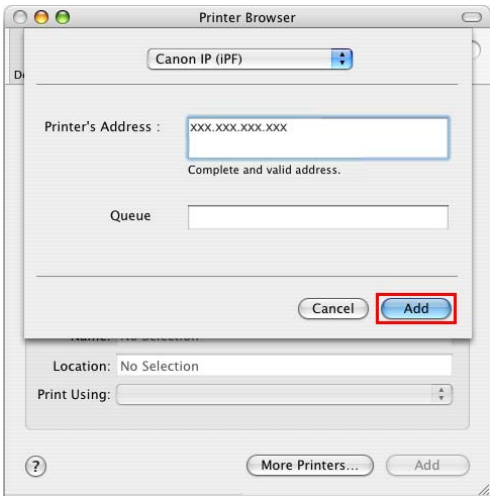


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

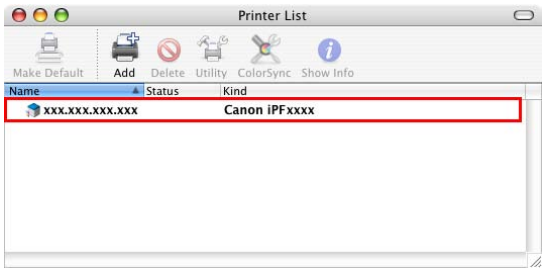
5. In the list of connection methods, click **Canon IP(iPF)**.



6. Enter the printer's IP address in **Printer's Address** and click **Add**.



7. Make sure the printer has been added, and then close the **Printer List** window.



Important

- If **imagePROGRAF Generic** is indicated in **Kind**, the printer information is not properly acquired. Make sure the printer is on and connected to the network. (→P.565)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

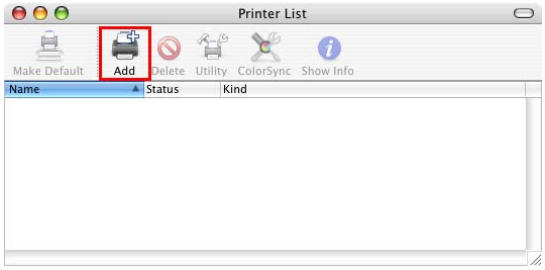
Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)

In Mac OS X 10.2.8 and later, use Bonjour functions to easily connect the printer to the network. Follow the steps below to configure the destination if you use the printer on TCP/IP network.

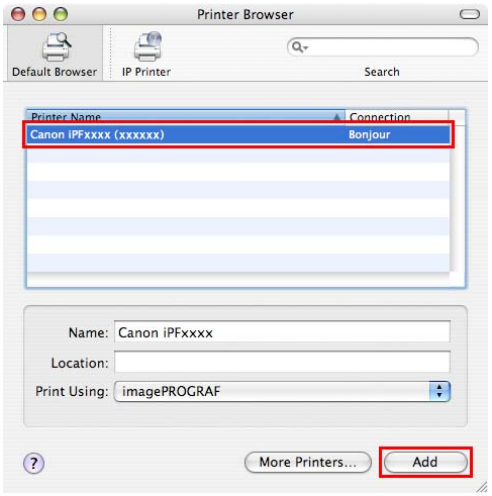
Important

- Bonjour and **IP Print (Auto)** do not support printing to a printer on other network groups that require a router for connection. Make sure the computer and printer are on the same network. For information about network settings, ask your network administrator.
- By default, Bonjour is activated on the printer. The printer name as displayed in **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in Mac OS X is predefined as the **Multicast DNS Service Name**. You can activate or deactivate the Bonjour function or change the printer name by using RemoteUI. For instructions on changing it, see “Using RemoteUI”. (→P.407)

1. Choose **Utilities** (or **Applications**) in the **Go** menu of **Finder**.
2. Click **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in the **Utilities** folder.
3. If the printer name is not displayed in **Printer List**, click **Add**.



4. Select the printer from the list in the **Printer Browser** window and click **Add**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Hard Disk

Hard Disk

Printer Hard Disk Operations

Printer hard disk operations are available from the following programs and interfaces.

- Printer driver
- imagePROGRAF HDI Driver
- imagePROGRAF Free Layout
- Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy
- imagePROGRAF Status Monitor
- imagePROGRAF Printmonitor
- RemoteUI
- Control Panel

The hard disk operations available through each interface are as follows.

Windows		**Printer driver**	**image-PROGRAF Free Layout**	**image-PROGRAF Status Monitor**	**RemoteUI**	**Control Panel**
		image-PROGRAF HDI Driver	**Color image-RUNNER Enlargement Copy**			
Mac OS		**Printer driver**	**Color image-RUNNER Enlargement Copy**	**image-PROGRAF Printmonitor**		
Operation		**Availability**	**Availability**	**Availability**	**Availability**	**Availability**
Saving print jobs	Print	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
	Print (auto delete)	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
	Save in mail box	Yes	No	No	No	No
	Save data before printing(*1)	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Operations with saved jobs	Print saved jobs	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Delete saved jobs	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

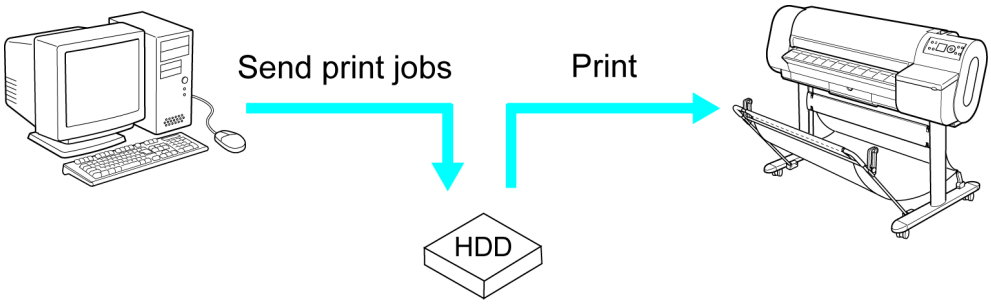
Windows		Printer driver	image-PROGRAF Free Layout	image-PROGRAF Status Monitor	RemoteUI	Control Panel
		image-PROGRAF HDI Driver	Color image-RUNNER Enlargement Copy			
Mac OS		Printer driver	Color image-RUNNER Enlargement Copy	image-PROGRAF Printmonitor		
Operation		**Availability**	**Availability**	**Availability**	**Availability**	**Availability**
Job queue management	Display job queue	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Delete	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Priority	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Mail box management	Move saved jobs	No	No	Yes	Yes	No
	Modify saved jobs	No	No	Yes	Yes	No
	Modify mail boxes	No	No	Yes	Yes	No
	Print a list of saved jobs	No	No	No	No	Yes
	Display a list of saved jobs	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Other operations	Display free hard disk space	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Initialize hard disk	No	No	No	No	Yes
	Recover after errors	No	No	No	No	Yes
Display error messages		No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes

*1: This option is available with **Print**, **Print (auto delete)**, and **Save in mail box**. Print jobs are saved and then printed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Saved Print Jobs

Saving print jobs refers to the process of sending print jobs from a computer and storing them on the printer's hard disk. By saving print jobs, you can print them repeatedly as needed without sending them from a computer again.



Save print jobs

Saving print jobs enables you to do the following things.

- Save the time spent using a computer

  When you send a print job to the printer, you can either print it and save it on the printer at the same time or simply save it on the printer without printing it yet. Saved print jobs can be printed in the required quantity later without the need to use a computer again.
- Simplify reprinting, if any errors occur

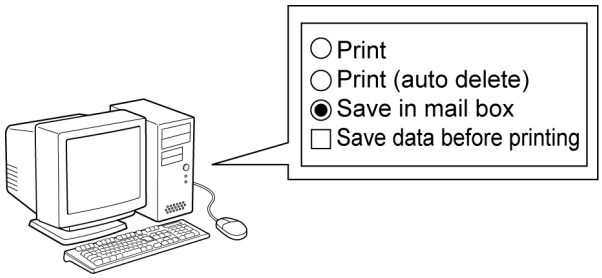
  If errors occur in the middle of printing (as when paper runs out), you can resume printing after clearing the error without resending the print job from a computer.
- Streamline printing work

  Without using a computer, you can select print jobs and print in the desired quantity. You can also select multiple print jobs to print during the same period. This enables unattended operation at night, for example.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Output Method (Send job to)

To save print jobs on the printer's hard disk, select **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS X). Three options are available in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS X): **Print**, **Print (auto delete)**, and **Save in mail box**. Optionally, you can also select **Save data before printing**.



- **Print**
  Save print jobs automatically at the same time they are printed. (This is the default format.)
- **Print (auto delete)**
  Save print jobs temporarily at the same time they are printed and delete them after printing.
- **Save in mail box**
  Save print jobs on the printer without printing them.
- **Save data before printing**
  This option is available in combination with **Print**, **Print (auto delete)**, and **Save in mail box**. Print jobs are saved on the hard disk and then printed.

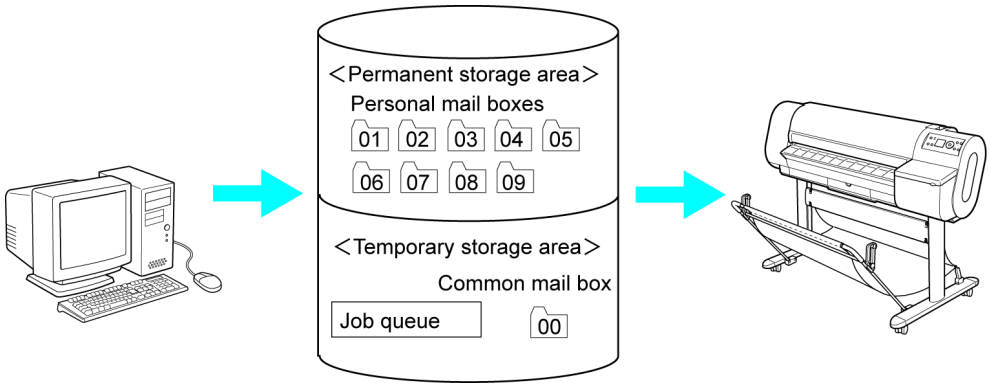
Note

- The option in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS X) cannot be specified during HP-GL/2 printing. The option in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS X) is **Print**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Storage destination

The storage area on the printer's hard disk is divided into a temporary storage area and a permanent storage area. Print jobs in the "job queue" or "Common Box" are saved in the temporary storage area. Jobs in "Personal Boxes" are saved in the permanent storage area.



- Job queue

  Print jobs in progress(*1) are temporarily saved in the job queue, a storage space where jobs are saved in the order they will be printed.

  Up to ten jobs can be stored in the queue. Subsequent jobs are treated as "standby" jobs, to be processed when possible.

  *1: Jobs that are being saved, received, processed, printed, or deleted, or jobs that have been interrupted or are waiting to print

- Common Box

  If you have selected **Print** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS X) as the format for print jobs sent from the computer, the jobs are saved in the common box.

  There is one Common Box, numbered "00". A password cannot be set for the Common Box.

  Up to 100 print jobs can be saved here, but they will be deleted one after another starting with the oldest job in the following situations.

  - If there are more than 100 jobs in the Common Box and job queue combined
  - If the temporary storage area becomes full during reception of print jobs for which you have selected **Print** or **Print (auto delete)** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS X)
  - If there is not enough space in the temporary and permanent storage areas during reception of print jobs for which you have selected **Save in mail box** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS X)

- Personal Boxes

  You can store jobs in Personal Boxes in either of the following ways.

  - By moving a job stored in the Common Box into a Personal Box
  - By selecting **Save in mail box** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS X)

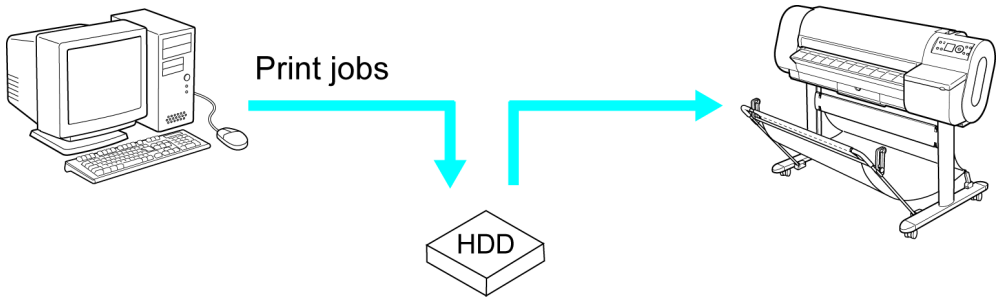
  There are nine Personal Boxes, numbered "01" to "09". You can specify a name and password for each Personal Box.

  Up to 100 print jobs can be saved in all Personal Boxes combined.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Saving Print Jobs Sent from Sources Other than the Printer Driver

To save print jobs sent from software or systems other than the printer driver provided with the printer, complete the **Output Method** and **Save and Print** settings in the printer menu.

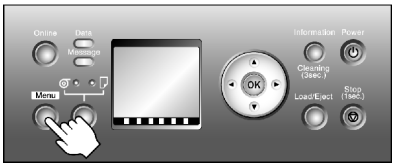


Important

- Contact the software or system developer for information about support for this printer function.

Specifying Output Method

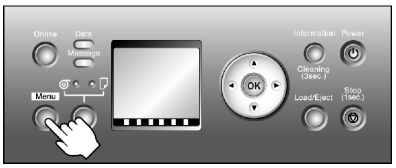
1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Output Method**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the output method, and then press the **OK** button.
   - **Print**
     Save print jobs automatically at the same time they are printed. (This is the default format.)
   - **Print (Auto Del)**
     Save print jobs temporarily at the same time they are printed and delete them after printing.
   - **Save: Box 01** (Here, the number represents a box number)
     Save print jobs on the printer. If you select this option, go to step 5 and select the box for saving print jobs.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the box, and then press the **OK** button.

Specifying Save and Print

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

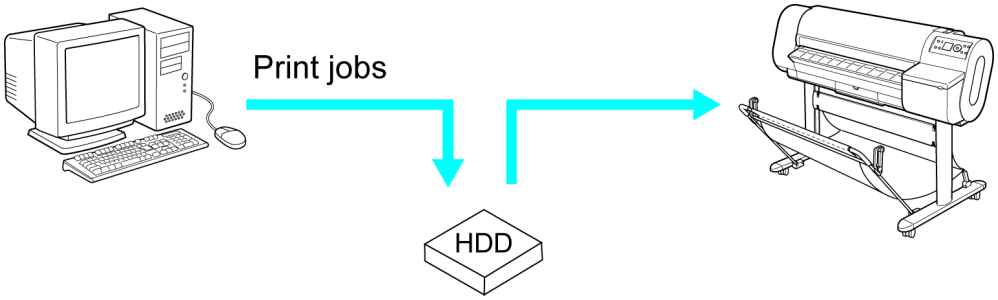


2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Save and Print**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, or **Off**, and then press the **OK** button.
   If you select **On**, print jobs are saved on the hard disk and then printed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Saving Print Jobs

You can save print jobs on the printer's hard disk.

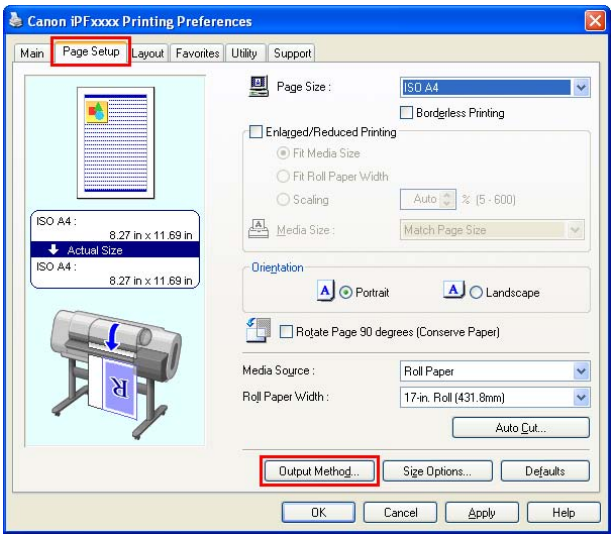


Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk as follows.

- Using the printer driver (Windows) (→P.445)
- Using imagePROGRAF HDI Driver (Windows)
  See "Output Method Setting" in the HDI Driver Guide.
- Using imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Windows)
  See the section on the **Output Method** dialog box in the Free Layout Guide For Windows.
- Using Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (Windows)
  See the section on the **Output Method** button on the Output Settings sheet in the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide For Windows.
- Using the printer driver (Mac OS X) (→P.447)
  Using Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (Mac OS)
  See the section on the **Output Method** button on the Output Settings sheet in the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide For Macintosh.

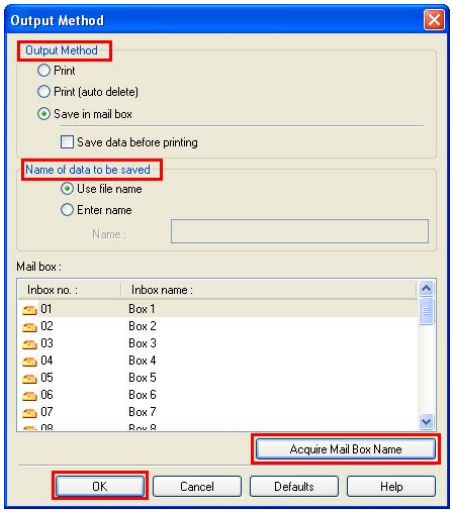
Using the printer driver (Windows)

1. Access the **Page Setup** sheet.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Click **Output Method** to display the **Output Method** dialog box.



3. Choose an **Output Method**.
   - **Print**
     Save print jobs automatically at the same time they are printed. (This is the default format.)
   - **Print (auto delete)**
     Save print jobs temporarily at the same time they are printed and delete them after printing.
   - **Save in mail box**
     Save print jobs on the printer without printing them.
     If you choose **Save in mail box**, also specify the destination Personal Box in the **Mail box** list.

Note

   - Click **Acquire Mail Box Name** to display Personal Box names in the **Mail box** list, as acquired from the printer.
   - **Save data before printing**
     This option is available in combination with **Print**, **Print (auto delete)**, and **Save in mail box**. Print jobs are saved on the hard disk and then printed.

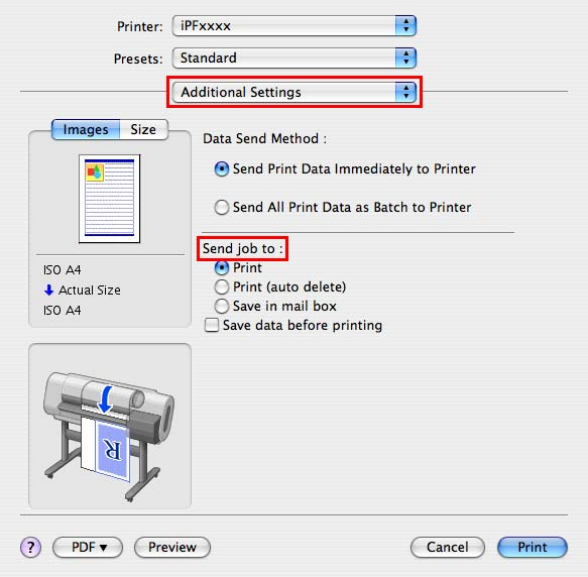
4. In **Name of data to be saved**, specify how to name saved print jobs.
   - To use the file name, choose **Use file name**.
   - Otherwise choose **Enter name** and enter a name in **Name**.

5. Click **OK** to close the **Output Method** dialog box.

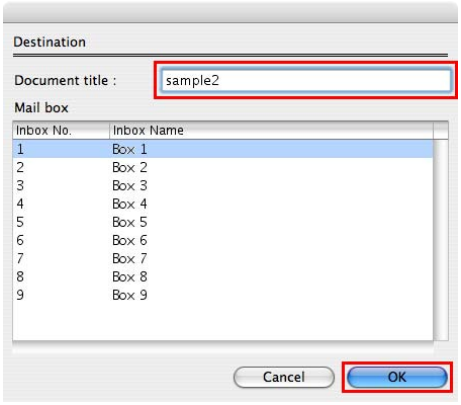
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using the printer driver (Mac OS X)

1. Access the **Additional Settings** pane.



2. Choose an **Send job to**.
   - **Print**
     Save print jobs automatically at the same time they are printed.
   - **Print (auto delete)**
     Save print jobs temporarily at the same time they are printed and delete them after printing.
   - **Save in mail box**
     Save print jobs on the printer without printing them.
     The **Destination** dialog box is displayed if you select **Save in mail box**. Here, specify the name and Personal Box number for saved print jobs.



   1. In **Document title**, enter a name to identify saved print jobs.
   2. Select the Personal Box number in the **Mail box** list.
   3. Click **OK** to close the **Destination** dialog box.

Note

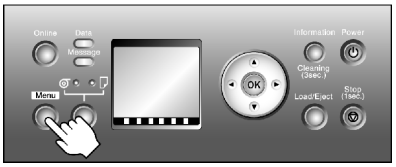
- **Save data before printing**
  This option is available in combination with **Print**, **Print (auto delete)**, and **Save in mail box**. Print jobs are saved on the hard disk and then printed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Do Not Save Print Jobs in the Common Box

If you have selected **Print** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS X) in the printer driver as the format for print jobs sent from the computer, the jobs are saved in the common box. (→P.441)
You can select **Save: Shared Box** > **Off** in the printer menu so that print jobs for which you have selected **Output Method** > **Print** in the printer driver are deleted from the common box after printing.
Use this function when printing highly confidential documents.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

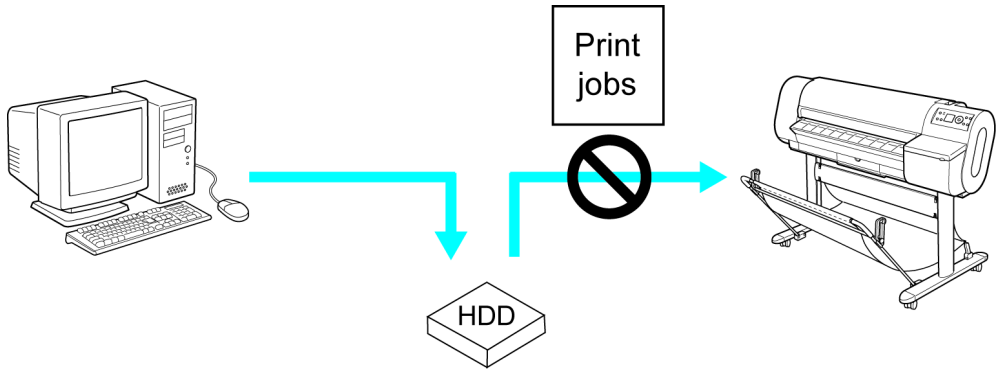


2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Save: Shared Box**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Off**, and then press the **OK** button.

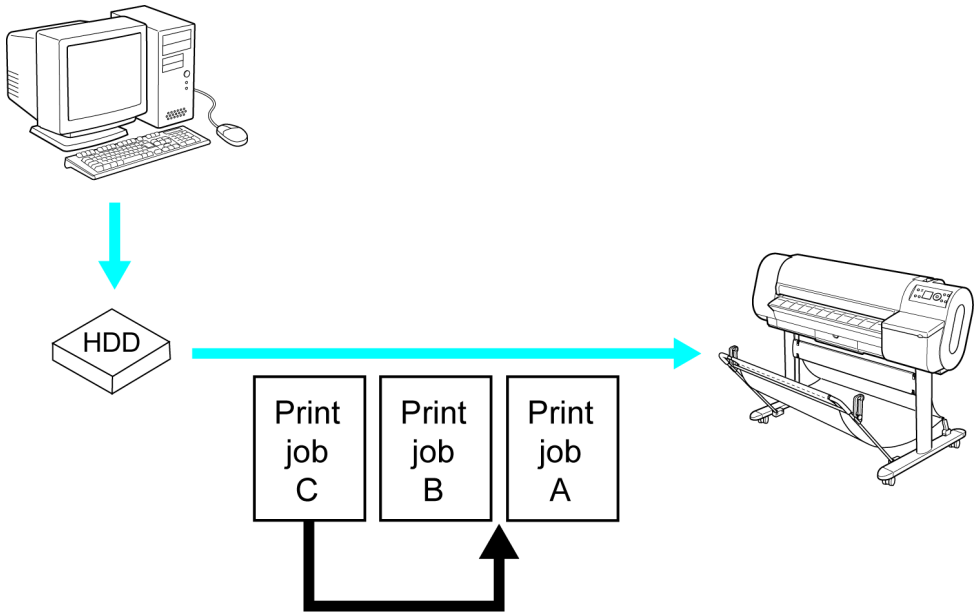
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Managing Queued Jobs (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs)

You can delete queued jobs.



You can also select queued jobs and give them first priority, to print them immediately after the printer has printed jobs that are currently being processed or printed.



Note

- You cannot interrupt jobs that are currently being saved, processed, printed, or deleted by printing other jobs before these processes are finished.

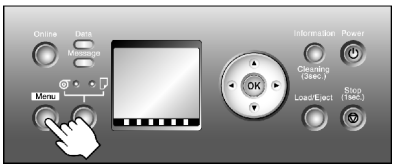
You can manage queued print jobs as follows.

- Using the Control Panel
- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using the Control Panel

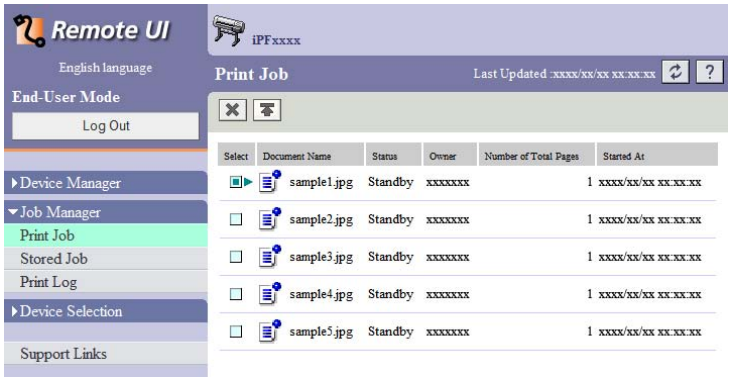
1. Press the **Menu** button to display **Menu Durng Prtng**.



2. You can manage queued jobs as follows.
   - Deleting queued jobs
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Mgmt Menu**, and then press the **OK** button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Queue Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the print job to delete, and then press the ► button.
     4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Delete**, and then press the **OK** button.
   - Changing the order of printing
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Mgmt Menu**, and then press the **OK** button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Queue Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the job to print first, and then press the ► button.
     4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Priority**, and then press the **OK** button.

Using RemoteUI

On the **Print Job** page, select the job to manage and how to manage it. For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

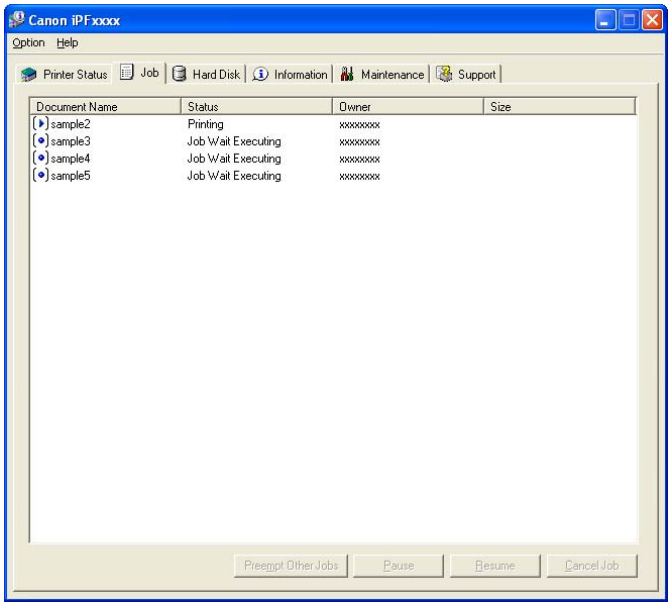


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

On the **Job** sheet, select the job and the desired function. The following functions are available.

- Preempting other jobs
- Pausing printing
- Resuming printing
- Canceling print jobs

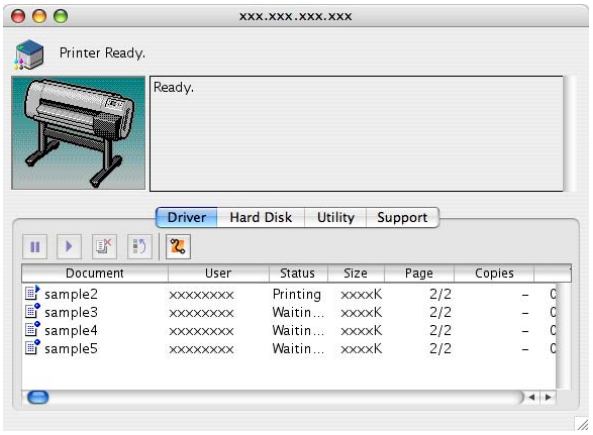


For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

On the **Driver** pane, select the job and the desired function. The following functions are available.

- Preempting other jobs
- Pausing printing
- Resuming printing
- Canceling print jobs

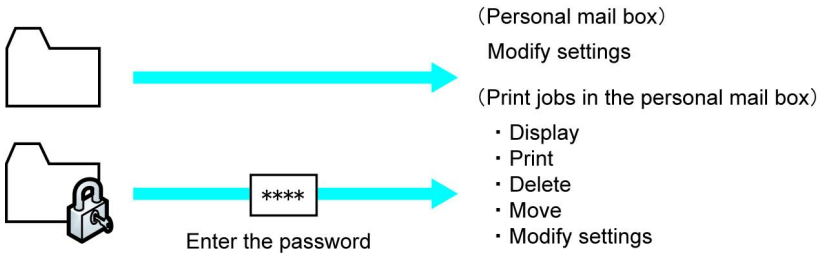


For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Setting Passwords for Personal Boxes

By default, no passwords are set for personal boxes. For greater security, you can set passwords for each personal box. After you set a password, it will be required to modify the personal box settings, as well as to display, print, delete, move, and modify jobs saved in the personal box.



Note

- A password cannot be set for the common box.
- Enter a four-digit number as the password, in the range 0001-9999.
- Even if you have set passwords, they are not required to access personal boxes in Administrator Mode in RemoteUI.

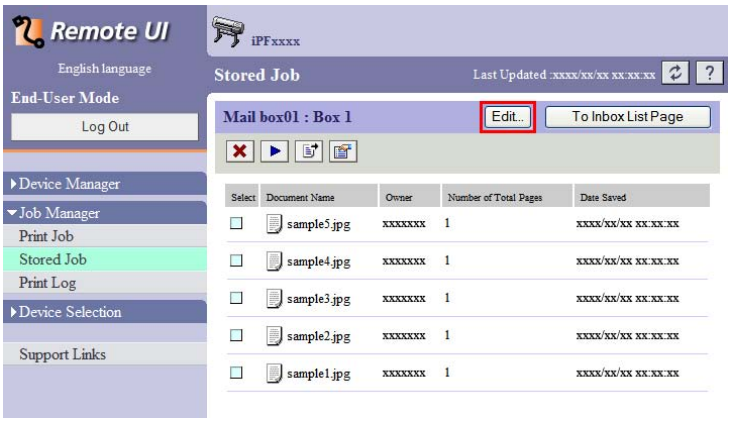
You can set a password for a personal box as follows.

- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using RemoteUI

1. On the **Stored Job** page, select the personal box for a password.
2. Click **Edit**.



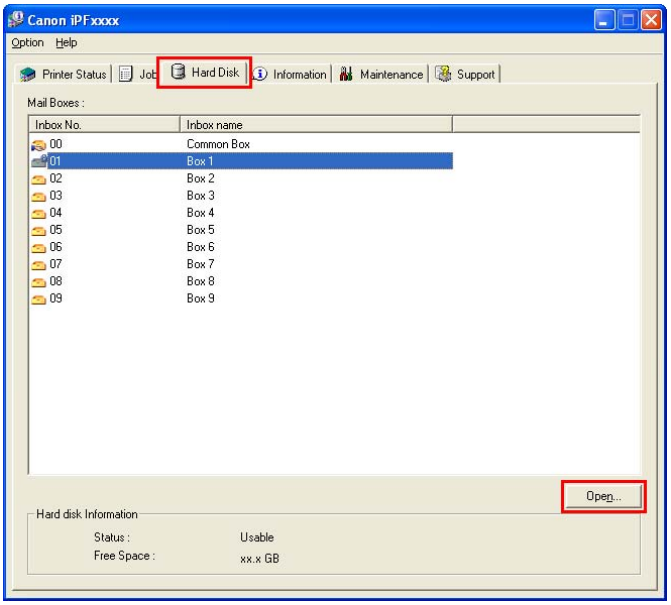
3. In the **Set/Register User's Inbox** dialog box, specify the password and click **OK**.
   - **Set Password** : Select the check box.
   - **Password** : Enter the password. (This field is limited to four digits in the range 0001-9999.)
   - **Confirmation Number** : Re-enter the password to confirm it.

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

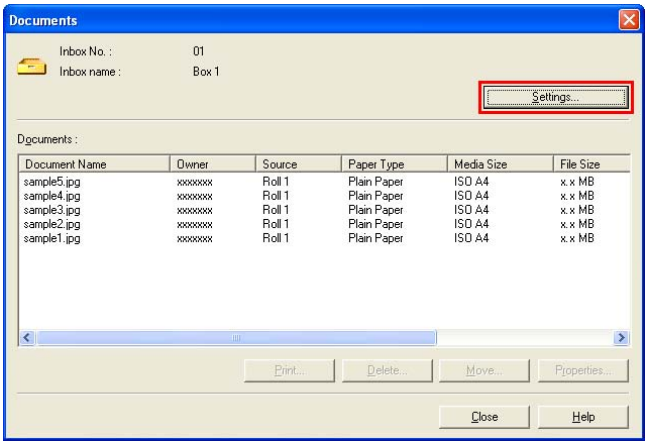
1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a listed personal box for a password and click **Open**.



Note

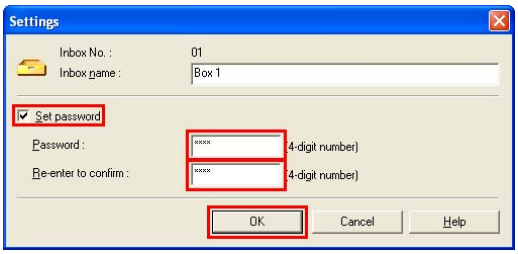
- Enter a password if one has been set for the personal box.

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, click **Settings**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

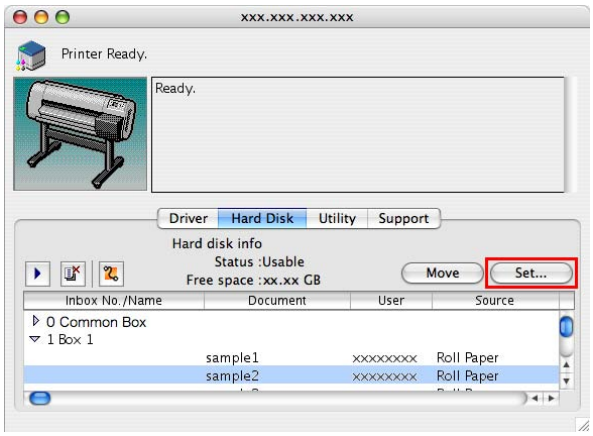
3. In the **Settings** dialog box, specify the password and click **OK**.
   - **Set password** : Select the check box.
   - **Password** : Enter the password. (This field is limited to four digits in the range 0001-9999.)
   - **Re-enter to confirm** : Re-enter the password to confirm it.



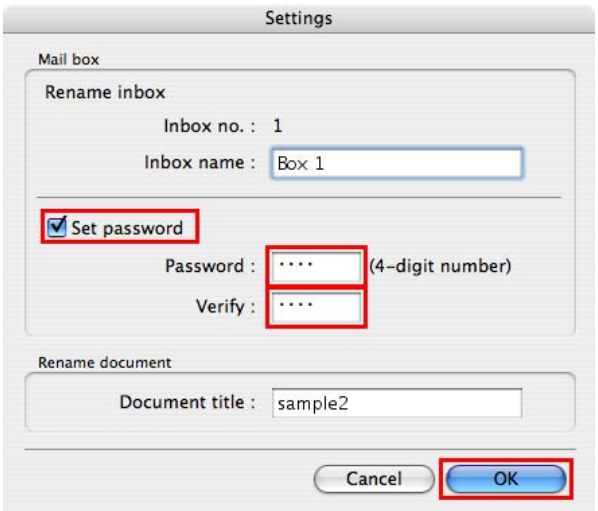
For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

1. In the **Hard Disk** pane, click "►" next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs. Select a saved job and click **Set**.



2. In the **Settings** dialog box, specify the password and click **OK**.
   - **Set password** : Select the check box.
   - **Password** : Enter the password. (This field is limited to four digits in the range 0001-9999.)
   - **Verify** : Re-enter the password to confirm it.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

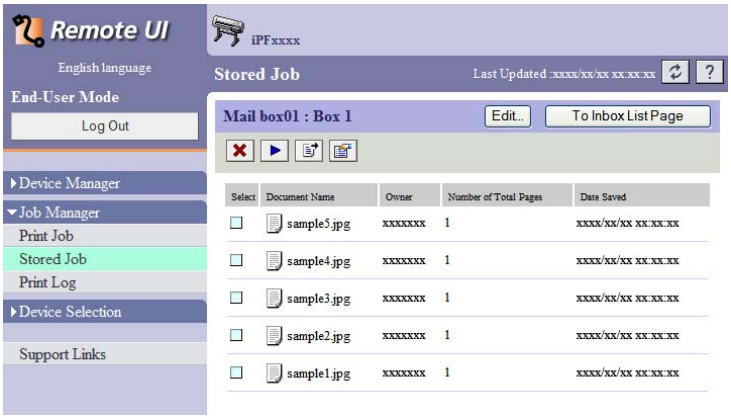
Naming Personal Boxes

By default, personal boxes are unnamed. You can name them for easier management.
You can assign a name to a personal box as follows.

- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

Using RemoteUI

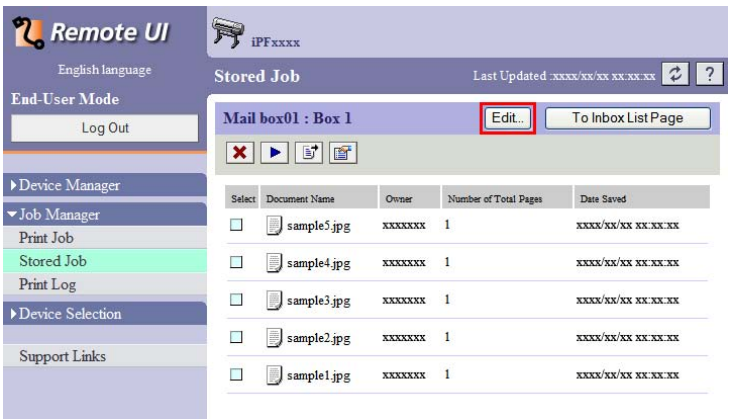
1. On the **Stored Job** page, select the personal box to identify.



Note

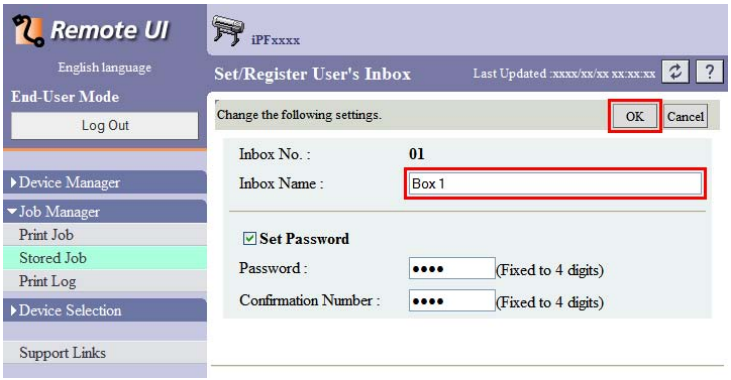
- Enter a password if one has been set for the personal box.

2. Click **Edit**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

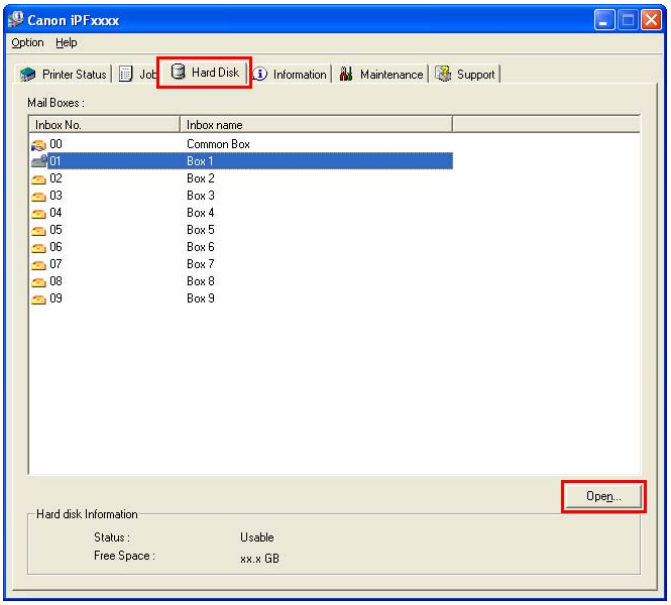
3. In the **Set/Register User's Inbox** dialog box, enter the personal box name in **Inbox Name** and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a listed personal box to identify and click **Open**.

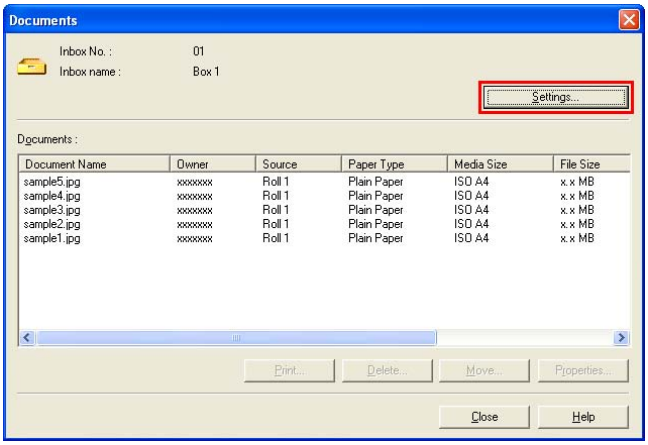


Note

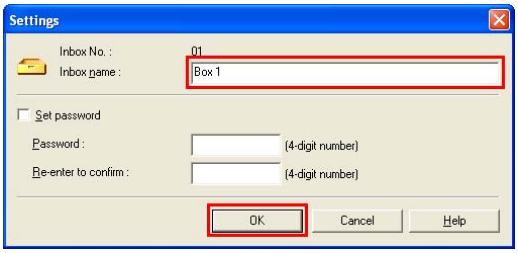
- Enter a password if one has been set for the personal box.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, click **Settings**.


Documents
Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1
Settings...
Documents :
Document Name | Owner | Source | Paper Type | Media Size | File Size
sample5.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample4.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample3.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample2.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample1.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
Print...
Delete...
Move...
Properties...
Close
Help

3. In the **Settings** dialog box, enter the personal box name and click **OK**.

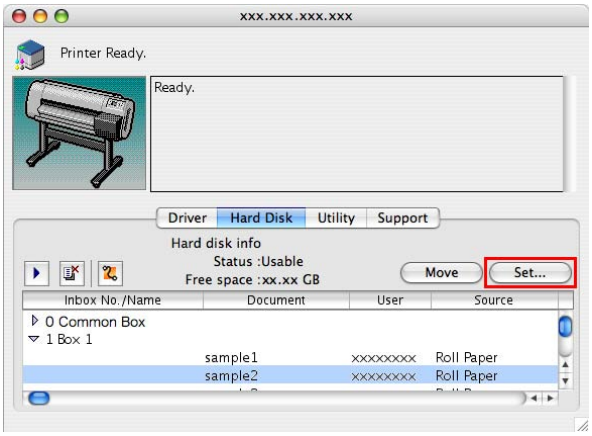


For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

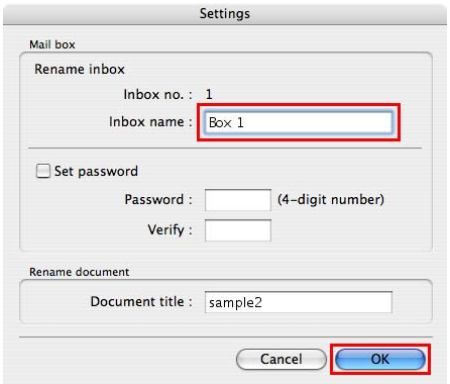
1. On the **Hard Disk** pane, click "►" next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs. Select a saved job and click **Set**.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.

2. In the **Settings** dialog box, enter the personal box name and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

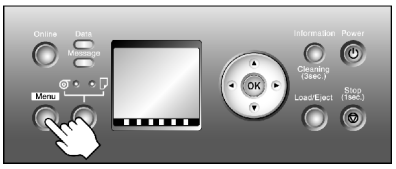
Displaying a List of Saved Jobs

You can display saved print jobs in the Common Box and each Personal Box.
You can view a list of stored print jobs as follows.

- Using the Control Panel
- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

Using the Control Panel

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Display a list of saved print jobs.
   - To display jobs saved in the Common Box
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Com. BOX Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to select **Job List**.
   - To display jobs saved in Personal Boxes
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Psnl. BOX Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the folder, and then press the ► button.
     4. Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the ► button.
     5. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to select **Job List**.

Note

- You can check a list of print jobs in the queue by choosing **Job Management** → **Job Queue Ope.**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

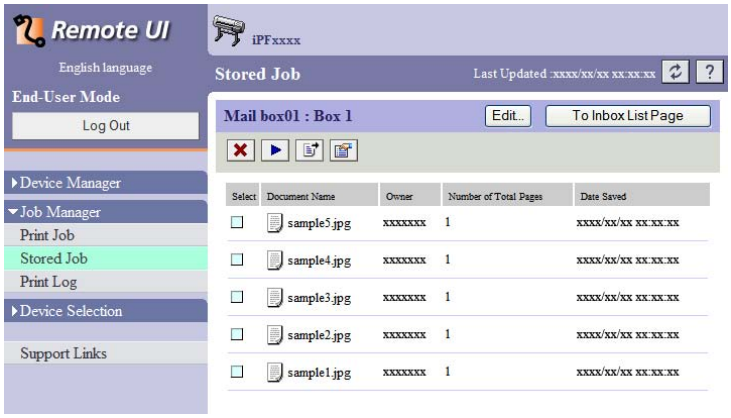
Using RemoteUI

Choose a mail box on the **Stored Job** page to display a list of jobs saved in that mail box.

Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

Jobs saved in the mail box are listed.



Note

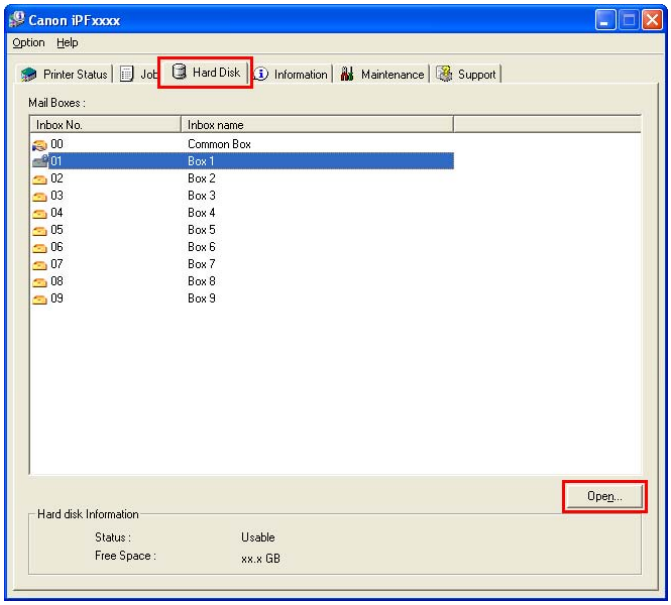
- Document and owner names during HP-GL/2 printing
  A job number is automatically assigned by the printer as the document name or title. GL2 JOB#001 (Range: 001-210)
  The owner name is blank.

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

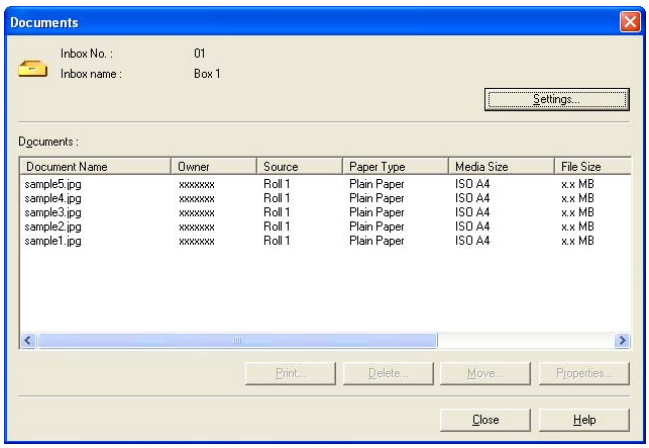
On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a mail box in the list and click **Open**.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

Jobs saved in that mail box are displayed in the **Documents** dialog box.



Note

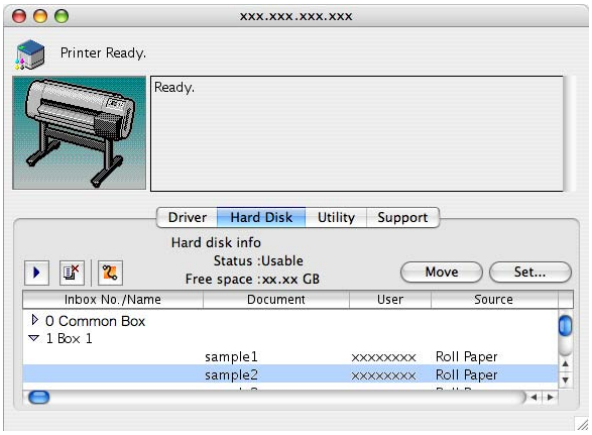
- Document and owner names during HP-GL/2 printing
  A job number is automatically assigned by the printer as the document name or title. GL2 JOB#001 (Range: 001-210)
  The owner name is blank.

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

In the **Hard Disk** pane, click "►" next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs.



Note

- Document and user names during HP-GL/2 printing
  A job number is automatically assigned by the printer as the document name or title. GL2 JOB#001 (Range: 001-210)
  The user name is blank.

Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.

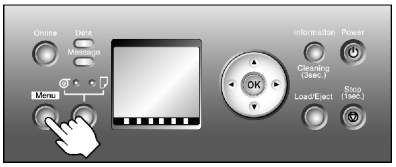
For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing a List of Saved Jobs

You can print a list of saved print jobs in the common box and each personal box.
You can also print a list of print jobs by using the Control Panel.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



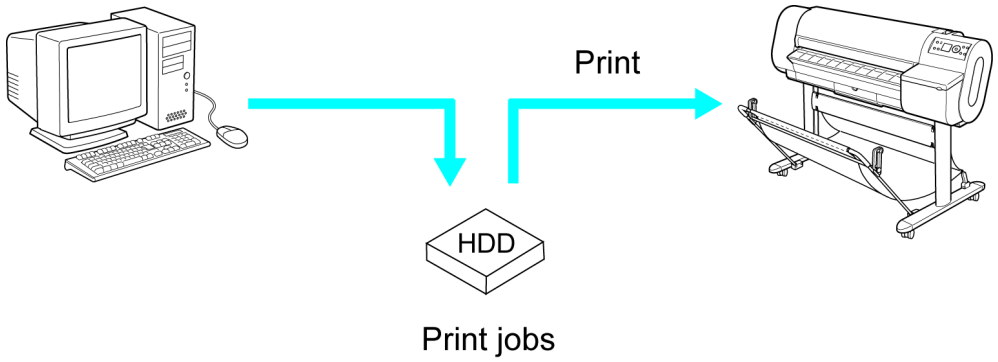
2. Print a list of saved print jobs.
   - To print a list of jobs saved in the Common Box
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Com. BOX Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Job List**, and then press the ► button.
     4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   - To print a list of jobs saved in Personal Boxes
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Psnl. BOX Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the folder, and then press the ► button.
     4. Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the **OK** button.
     5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Job List**, and then press the ► button.
     6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Saved Jobs

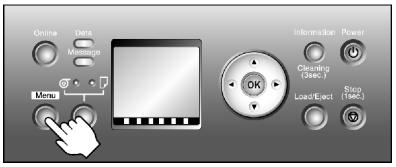
You can print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk as follows.

- Using the Control Panel
- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)



Using the Control Panel

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

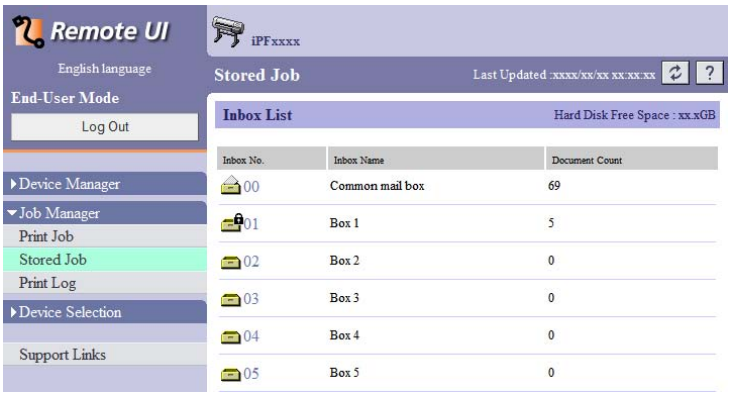


2. Print the saved job.
   - Printing jobs in the common box
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Com. BOX Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job List**, and then press the ► button.
     4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the saved job to print, and then press the ► button.
     5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the ► button.
     6. Confirm the paper to use for printing and press the **OK** button.
     7. Specify the number of copies and press the **OK** button.
   - Printing jobs in personal boxes
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Psnl. BOX Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the folder, and then press the ► button.
     4. Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the ► button.
     5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job List**, and then press the ► button.
     6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the saved job to print, and then press the ► button.
     7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the ► button.
     8. Confirm the paper to use for printing and press the **OK** button.
     9. Specify the number of copies and press the **OK** button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using RemoteUI

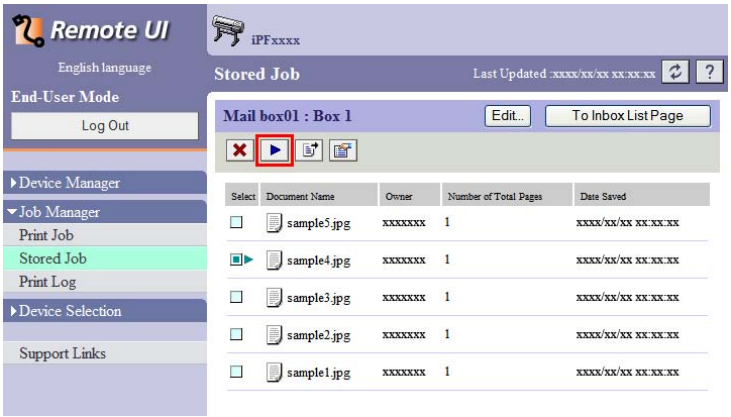
1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the mail box.



Note

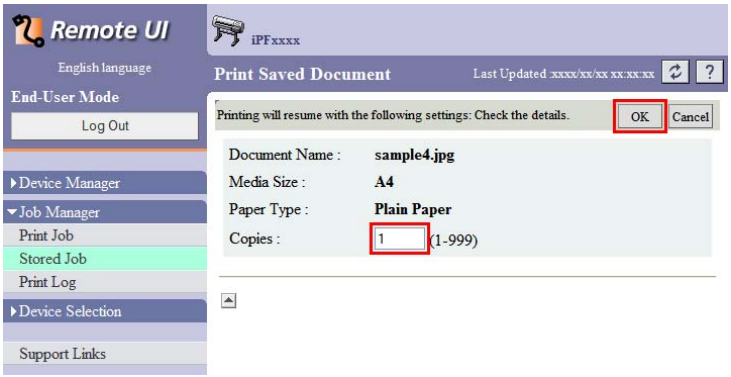
- Enter a password if one has been set.

2. Select the print job in the list and click **Print**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

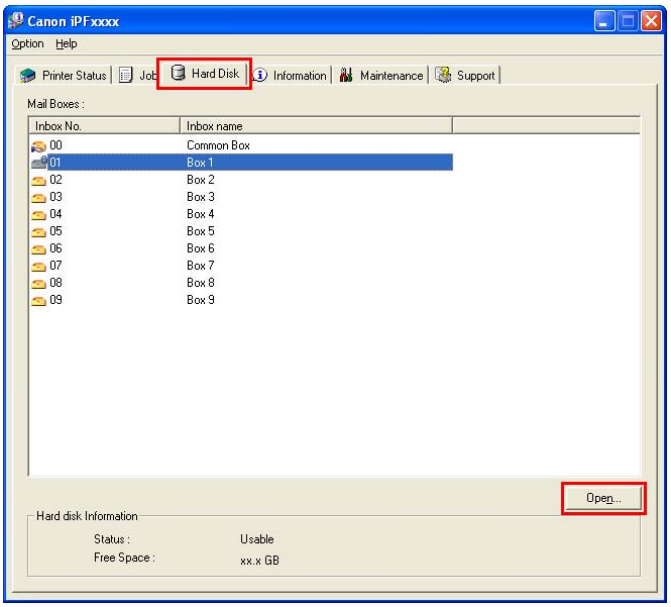
3. On the **Print Saved Document** page, enter the quantity to print in **Copies** and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a mail box in the list and click **Open**.

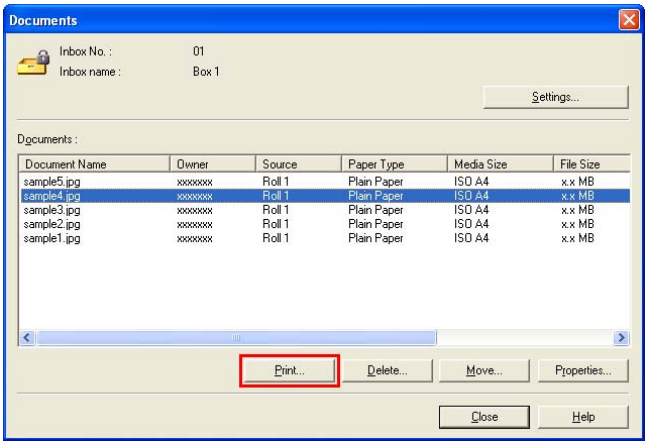


Note

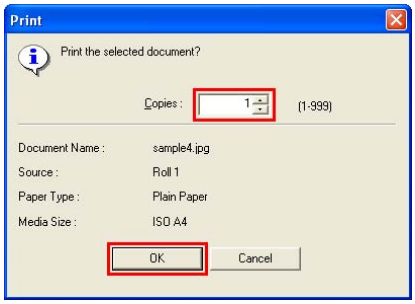
- Enter a password if one has been set.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job in the list and click **Print**.


Documents
Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1
Settings...
Documents :
Document Name | Owner | Source | Paper Type | Media Size | File Size
sample5.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample4.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample3.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample2.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample1.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
Print...
Delete...
Move...
Properties...
Close
Help

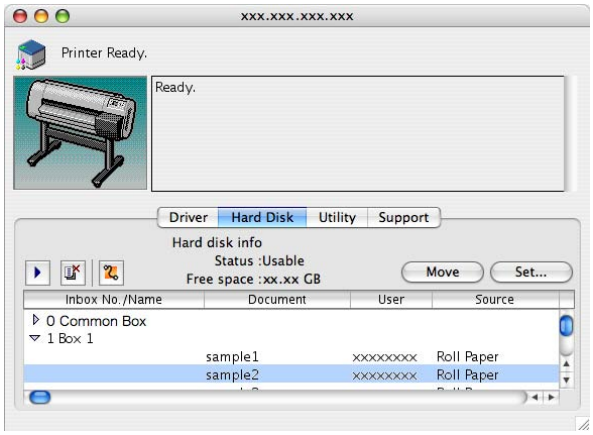
3. In the **Print** dialog box, enter the quantity to print in **Copies** and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

1. In the **Hard Disk** pane, click "►" next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs.

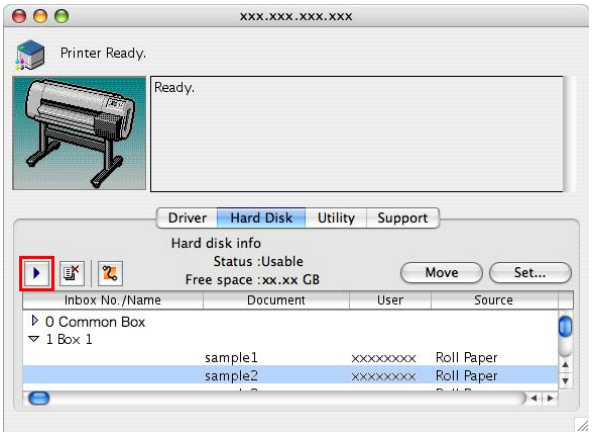


Note

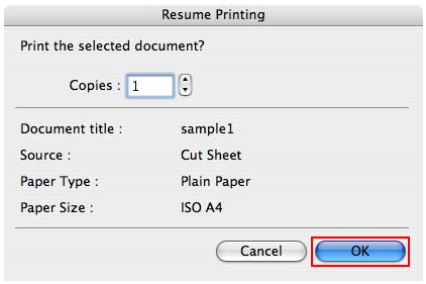
- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Resume Printing** to display the **Resume Printing** dialog box.



3. Specify the number of copies and click the **OK** button.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

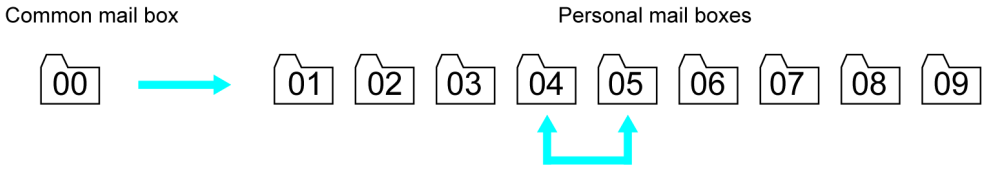
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Moving saved jobs

Print jobs for which **Print** is selected as the format in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS X) are saved in the Common Box, number “00”. However, jobs in this mail box will be deleted one after another starting with the oldest job in the following situations.

- If there are more than 100 saved jobs in the Common Box and job queue combined
- If the temporary storage area becomes full during reception of print jobs for which you have selected **Print** or **Print (auto delete)** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS X)
- If the temporary and permanent storage areas no longer have enough space during reception of print jobs for which you have selected **Save in mail box** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS X)

You can move jobs to Personal Boxes “01” to “09” to prevent them from being deleted. (Up to 100 jobs can be stored here.)
You can also move saved jobs from one Personal Box to another.



You can move stored print jobs as follows.

- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

Note

- Jobs saved in Personal Boxes cannot be moved to the Common Box.

Using RemoteUI

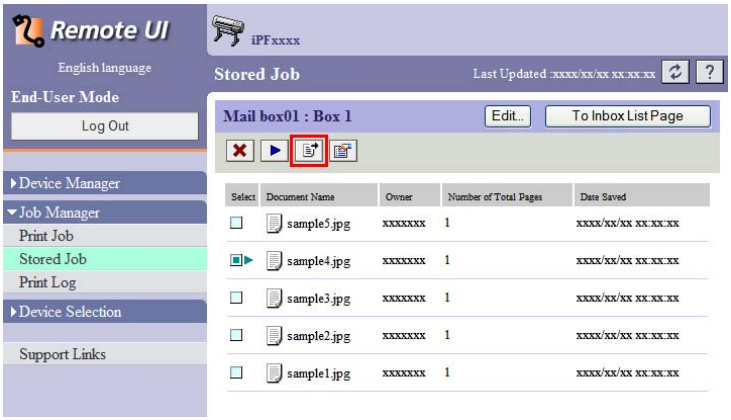
1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the mail box.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

2. Select the print job in the list and click **Move**.



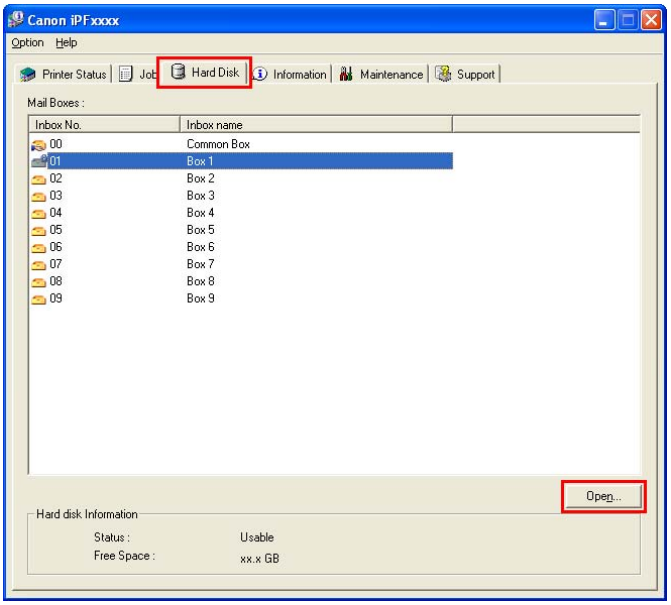
3. On the **Move Document** page, select the name or number of the destination Personal Box in the **Destination mail box** list and click **OK**.

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

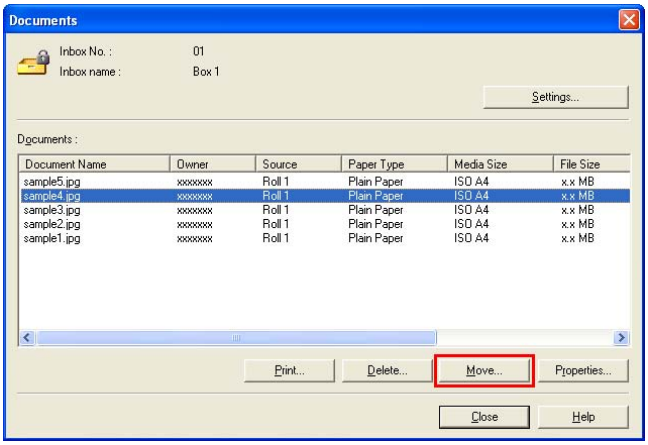
1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a mail box in the list and click **Open**.



Note

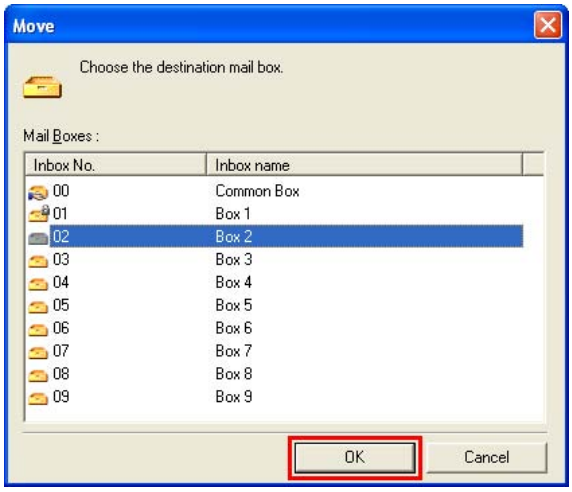
- Enter a password if one has been set.

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job in the list and click **Move**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

3. In the **Move** dialog box, select the destination Personal Box and click **OK**.

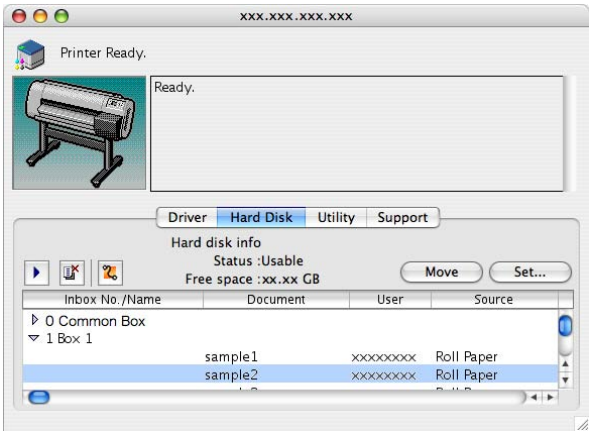


For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

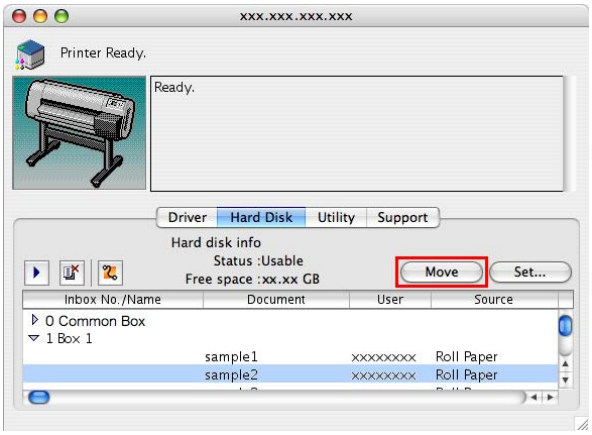
1. In the **Hard Disk** pane, click "►" next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs.



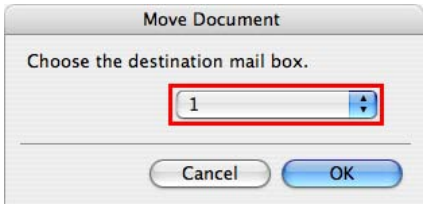
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.

2. Select the print job in the list and click **Move**.



3. In the **Move Document** dialog box, select the destination Personal Box and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Displaying Details of Saved Jobs

You can view details of stored print jobs as follows.

- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

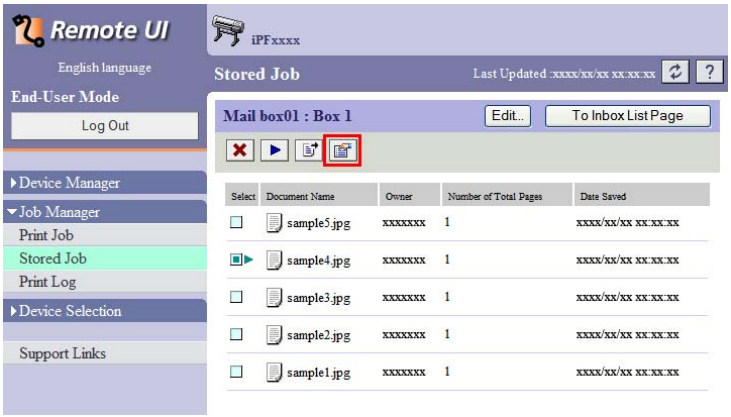
Using RemoteUI

1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the mail box.

Note

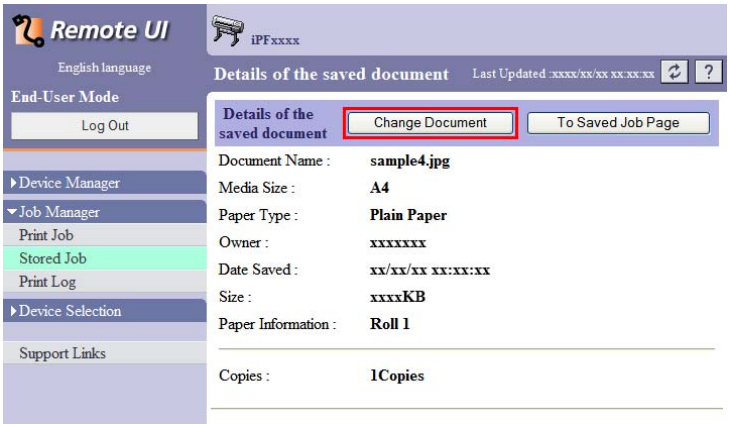
- Enter a password if one has been set.

2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Details**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

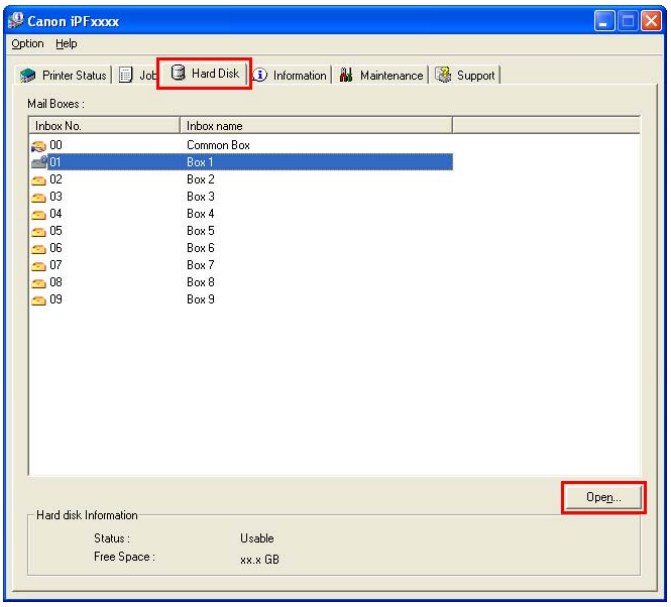
The **Details of the saved document** page is displayed.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a mail box in the list and click **Open**.

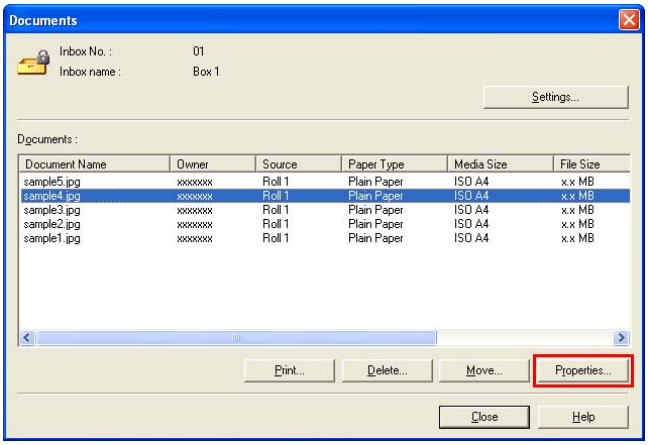


Note

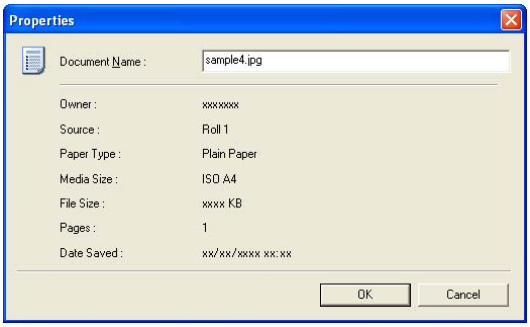
- Enter a password if one has been set.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the saved job in the list and click **Properties**.


Documents
Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1
Settings...
Documents :
Document Name | Owner | Source | Paper Type | Media Size | File Size
sample5.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample4.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample3.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample2.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample1.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
Print...
Delete...
Move...
Properties...
Close
Help

The **Properties** dialog box is displayed.

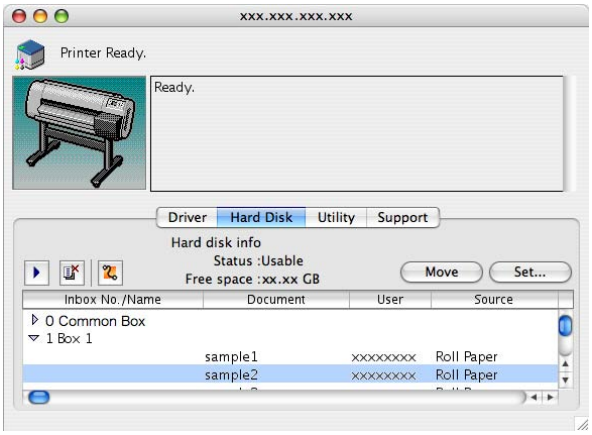


For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

1. On the **Hard Disk** pane, click ► next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Renaming Saved Jobs

You can rename stored print jobs as follows.

- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

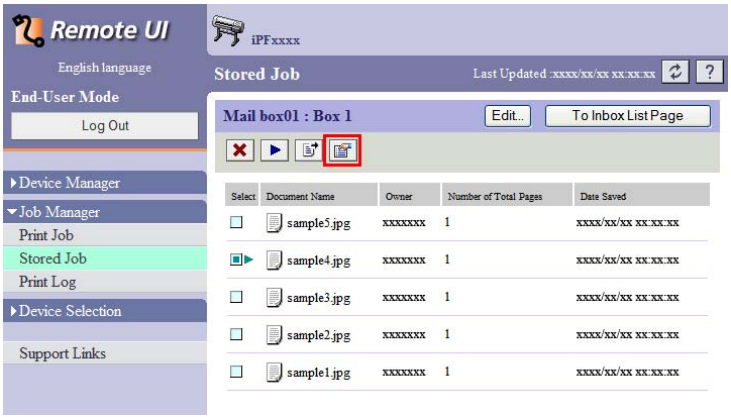
Using RemoteUI

1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the mail box.

Note

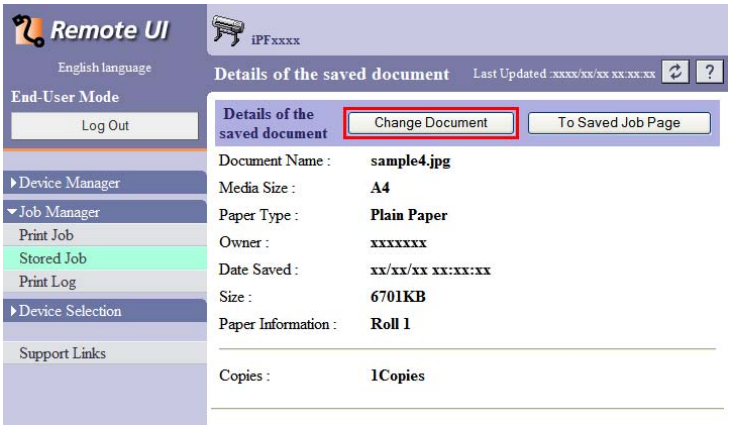
- Enter a password if one has been set.

2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Details**.

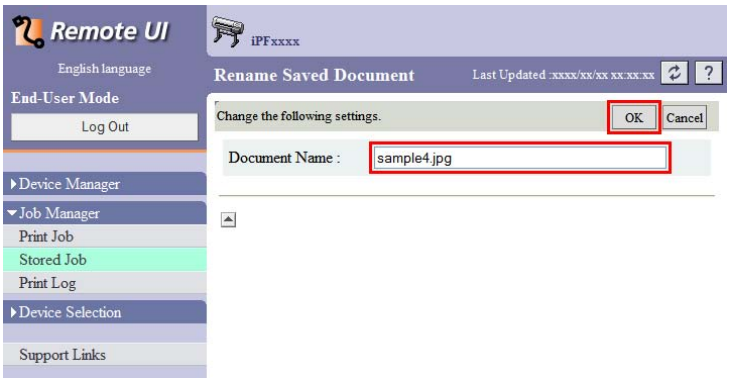


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

3. On the **Details of the saved document** page, click **Change Document**.



4. On the **Rename Saved Document** page, enter the new job name in **Document Name** and click **OK**.

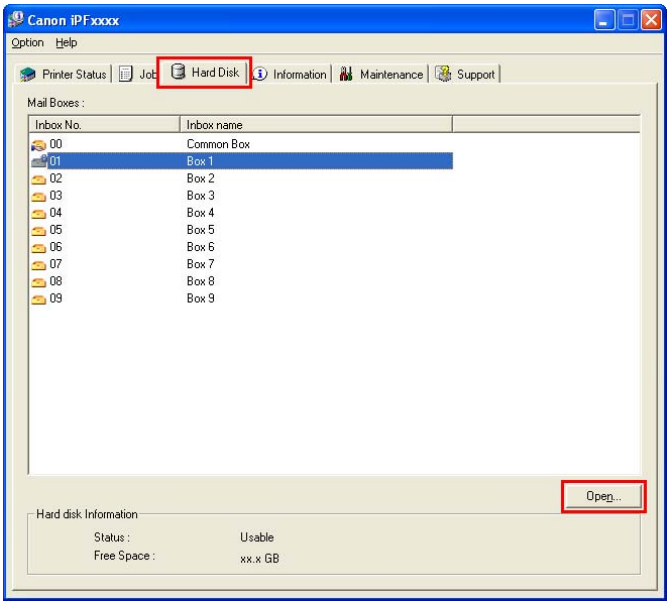


For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

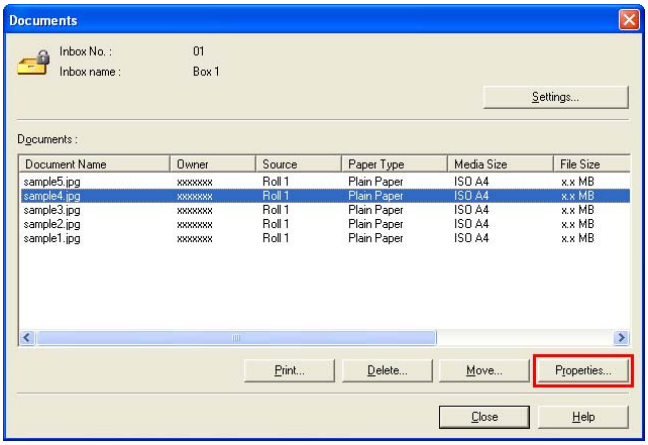
1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a mail box in the list and click **Open**.



Note

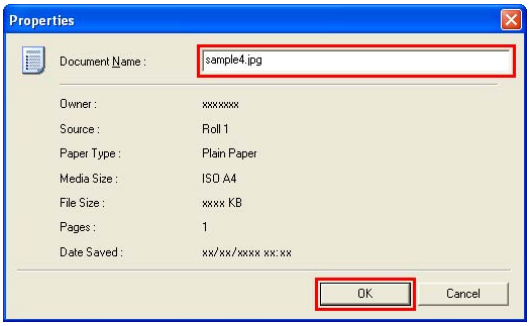
- Enter a password if one has been set.

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the saved job in the list and click **Properties**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

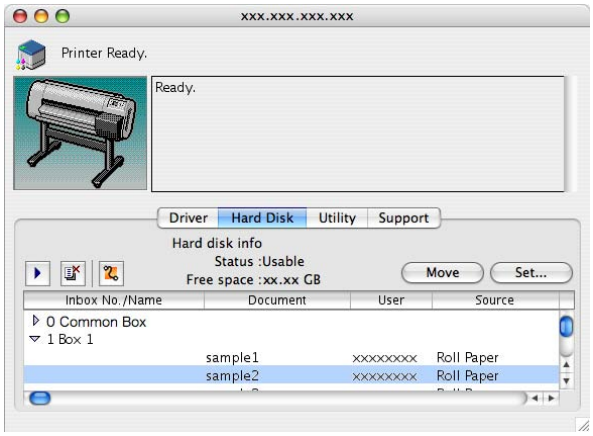
3. In the **Properties** dialog box, enter the new job name and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

1. On the **Hard Disk** pane, click ► next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs.

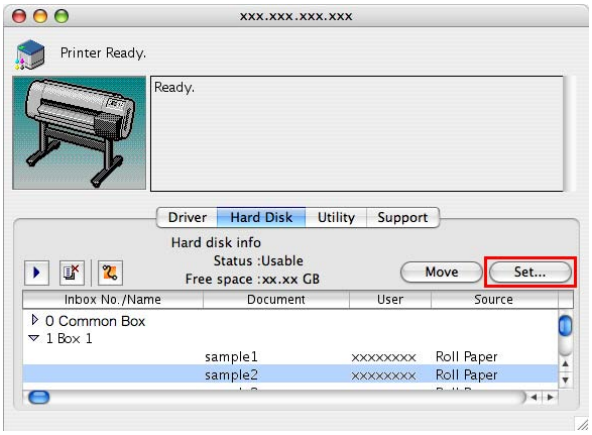


Note

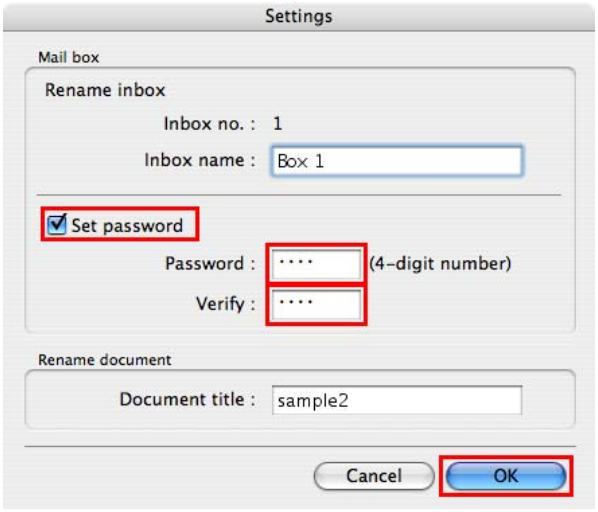
- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Set**.



3. In the **Settings** dialog box, enter the new job name and click **OK**.
Documents cannot be renamed unless a password has been set. In this case, specify a password. After renaming, you can cancel the password as needed.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

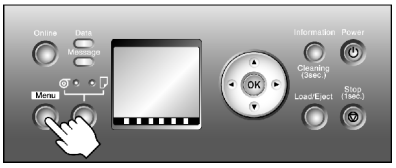
Deleting Saved Jobs

You can delete saved jobs in the box shared among all users and in each personal box.
Delete stored print jobs as follows.

- Using the Control Panel
- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

Using the Control Panel

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

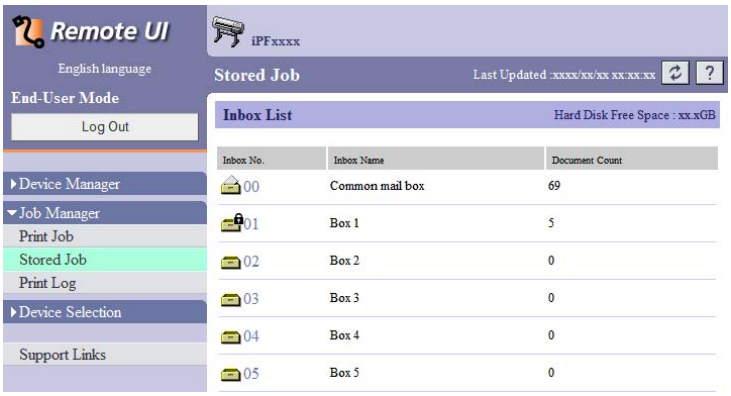


2. Delete the saved job.
   - To delete saved jobs in the Common Box
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Com. BOX Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job List**, and then press the ► button.
     4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the saved job to delete, and then press the ► button.
     5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Delete**, and then press the ► button.
     6. Confirm the print job for deletion and press the **OK** button.
   - To delete saved jobs in Personal Boxes
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Psnl. BOX Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the folder, and then press the ► button.
     4. Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the **OK** button.
     5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job List**, and then press the ► button.
     6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the saved job to delete, and then press the ► button.
     7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Delete**, and then press the ► button.
     8. Confirm the print job for deletion and press the **OK** button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using RemoteUI

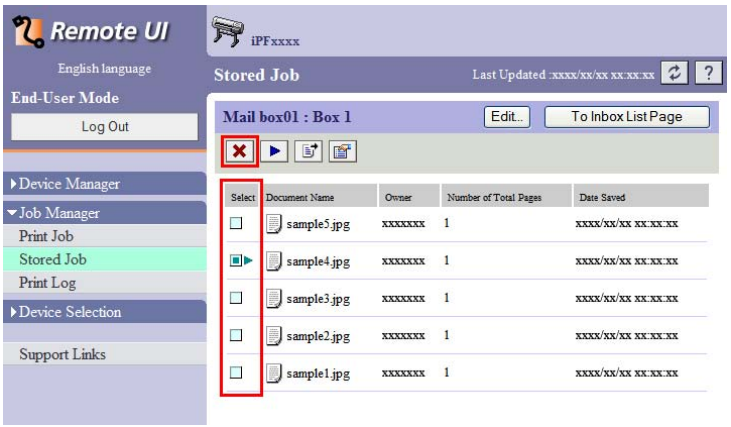
1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the mail box.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Delete**.

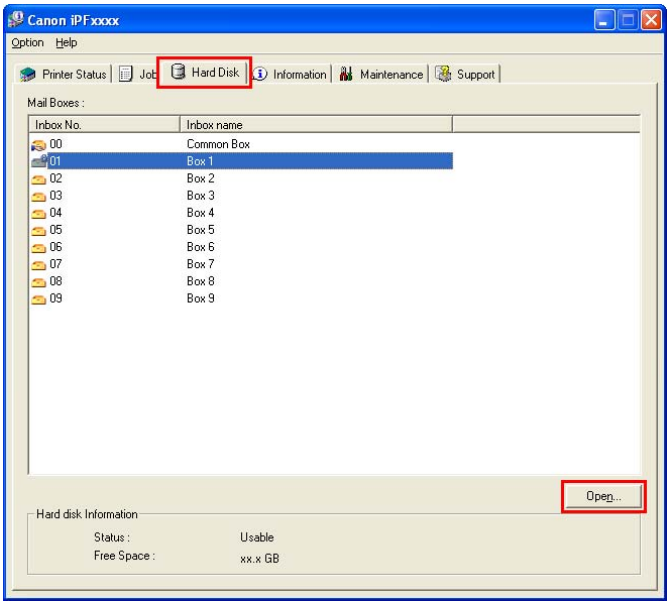


For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

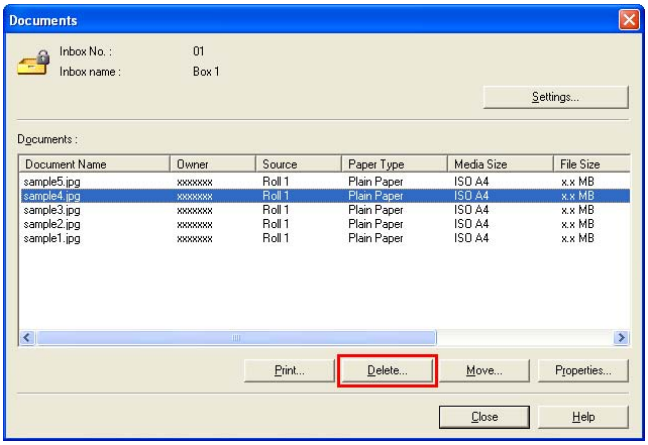
1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a mail box in the list and click **Open**.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job in the list and click **Delete**.

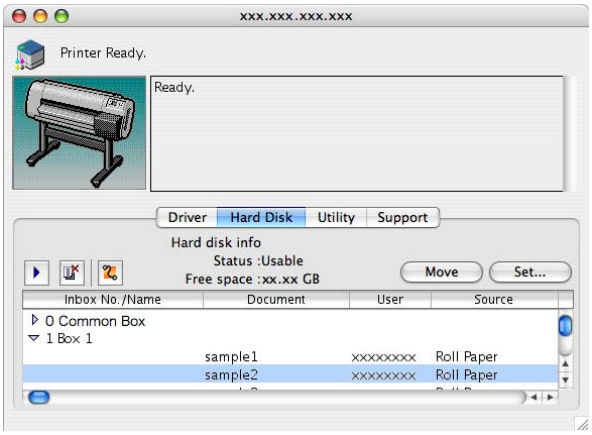


For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

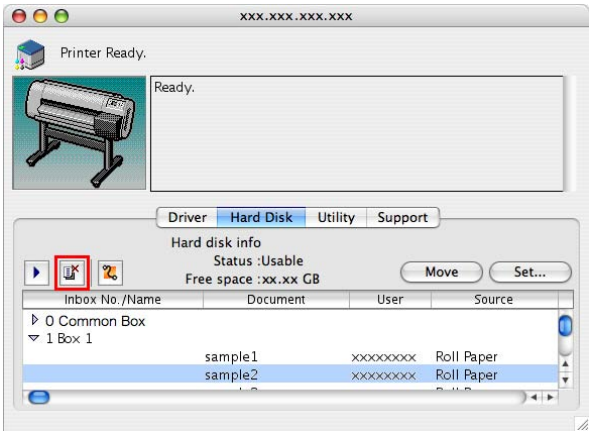
1. On the **Hard Disk** pane, click ► next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.

2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Delete**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

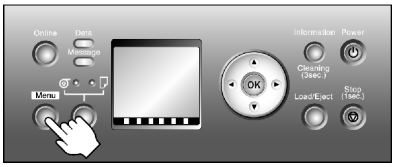
Checking the Free Hard Disk Space

You can check the space available on the printer's hard disk as follows.

- Using the Control Panel
- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

Using the Control Panel

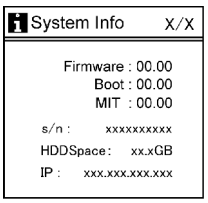
1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Information**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **HDD Information**, and then press the ► button.

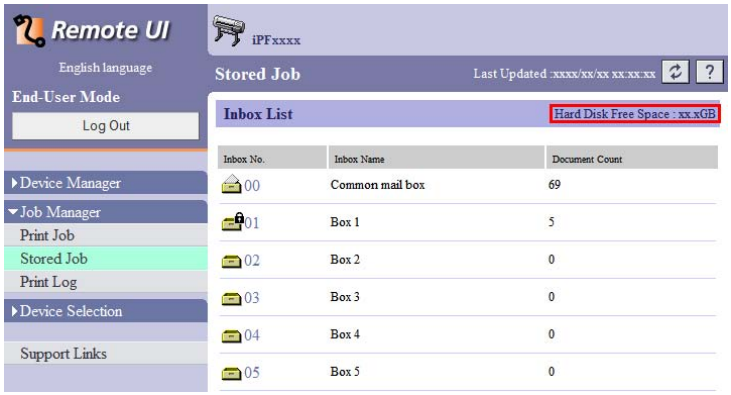
Note

- You can also check the free hard disk space by pressing the **Information** button three times.



Using RemoteUI

To view the box list, select **Stored Job** in Job Management. On the **Stored Job** page, the free hard disk space is shown in the upper-right corner when boxes are listed.



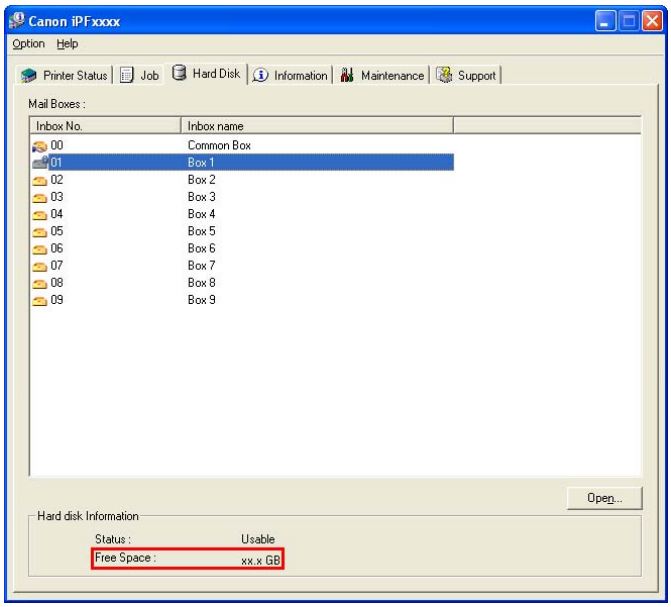
For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

The **Hard Disk** sheet shows the free hard disk space.

■Hard Disk Sheet in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

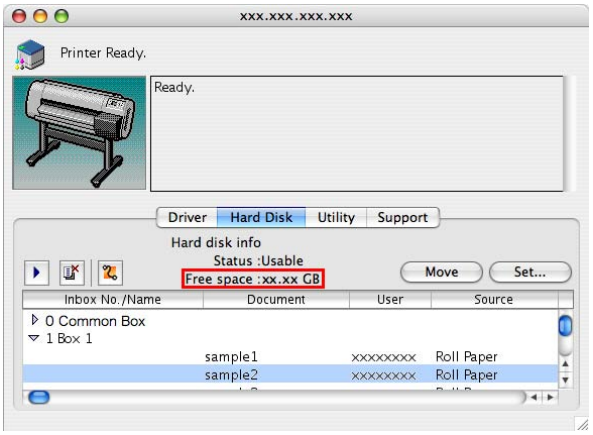


For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

The **Hard Disk** pane shows the free hard disk space.

■Hard Disk Pane in imagePROGRAF Printmonitor



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk

You can erase data on the printer's hard disk from the Control Panel.

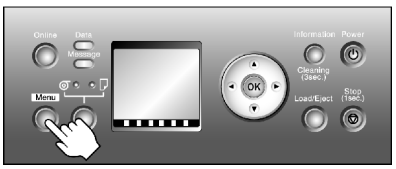
There are three ways to erase the data, as follows.

Erasure Method	Time Required	Details
High Speed	A few seconds	Erases file management data for print job data stored on the printer's hard disk. Choose this method for relatively fast erasure. Because only the file management data is erased, the print job data itself is not erased. Note that it may be possible to read this data using commercial data recovery software.
Secure High Spd.	About 40 minutes	Overwrites the entire hard disk with random data. No verification is performed to check if the data was correctly written. Choose this method to erase highly confidential data. Note that it may be possible to read the overwritten data using specialized data recovery tools.
Secure	About 20 hours	Overwrites the entire hard disk with 00, FF, and random data (one time each). Verification is performed to check if the data was correctly written. Choose this method to erase especially confidential data. It is virtually impossible to recover the overwritten data. Conforms to the DoD5220.22-M standard of the U.S. Department of Defense.

Note

- For a more secure method of preventing data recovery, we recommend physically or magnetically destroying the hard disk. In this case, the hard disk can no longer be used.
- **Erase HDD Data** is not available if there is a job queue.
  Also note that during execution of **Erase HDD Data**, print jobs cannot be processed.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Erase HDD Data**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the method of erasure, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button to display the confirmation screen.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button to start erasure.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjustments for Better Print Quality

Adjusting the Printhead

Correcting Print Misalignment

If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, adjust the Printhead alignment. Adjust the Printhead alignment automatically or manually by using a printed test pattern.
For instructions on automatic adjustment, see “Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically”. (→P.491)
For instructions on manual adjustment, see “Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually”. (→P.493)

Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically

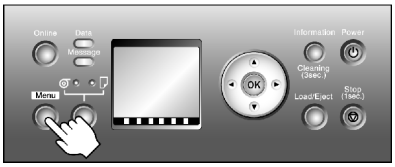
If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, adjust the Printhead alignment. Adjust the Printhead alignment automatically or manually by printing and reading a test pattern.
There are two modes for automatic adjustment: **Standard Adj.** and **Advanced Adj.**. **Standard Adj.** will fix most slight image distortion or color misalignment, but if not, try **Advanced Adj.**.
If using special media or printing does not improve even after performing automatic adjustment using advanced adjustment, try manual adjustment. For instructions on manual adjustment, see “Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually”. (→P.493)
Follow these steps for standard automatic adjustment of the Printhead.

1. Prepare one unused sheet A4/Letter-sized or larger when **Standard Adj.** is selected or five when **Advanced Adj.** is selected.
   When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.
   - Loading the Sheet in the Printer (→P.133)
   - Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder (→P.107)
   - Loading Rolls in the Roll Holder Slot (→P.109)
   - Loading the Roll in the Printer (→P.110)

   Note
   - Use **Standard Adj.** if you have switched to another type of paper or if you want the boundaries between colors to appear as attractive as possible.
   - Use **Advanced Adj.** to fine-tune the space between nozzles or colors if you have switched the printhead or if you want printed documents to appear as vivid as possible. We recommend using **Advanced Adj.** for printing at a higher level of image quality.
   - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.
   - We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for adjustment.
   - This function is not available for CAD Tracing Paper, CAD Translucent Matte Film, or CAD Clear Film. If adjustment is not possible as expected using highly transparent film or similar media, try another type of media or adjust the Printhead alignment manually. (→P.493)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Head Adj.**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Advanced Adj.**, and then press the ► button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

   A test pattern is printed for printhead adjustment.

   After reading the pattern, the printer automatically adjusts the Printhead alignment.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually

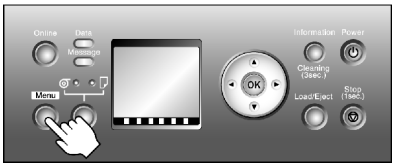
If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, adjust the Printhead alignment. Adjust the Printhead alignment automatically or manually by using a printed test pattern.
You can adjust the Printhead alignment automatically or manually. Normally, choose automatic adjustment. If using special media or printing does not improve even after performing automatic adjustment using advanced adjustment, try manual adjustment. For instructions on automatic adjustment, see “Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically”. (→P.491)
Follow these steps for standard manual adjustment of the Printhead.

Note

- If **Manual Head Adj** is unusable although displayed in the menu, choose **Advanced Adj.** in **Auto Head Adj.**. **Manual Head Adj** is available in the menu after you try **Auto Head Adj.** once.

1. When using sheets, have an unused sheet A4/Letter-sized or larger ready.
   When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.
   - Loading the Sheet in the Printer (→P.133)
   - Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder (→P.107)
   - Loading Rolls in the Roll Holder Slot (→P.109)
   - Loading the Roll in the Printer (→P.110)

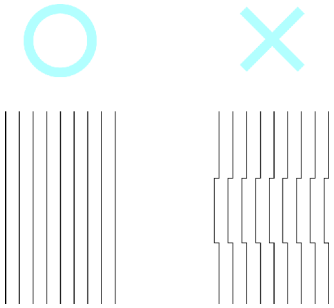
   Note
   - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.
   - We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for feed amount adjustment.
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual Head Adj**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   A test pattern is printed for printhead adjustment.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **D**, and then press the ► button.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **D-1**, and then press the ► button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Examine test pattern **D-1** for printhead adjustment. After you determine the pattern with straight lines, press ▲ or ▼ to choose the pattern number, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

- If lines seem straightest in two patterns but you cannot decide which one is better, choose an intermediate value. For example, choose 11 if you cannot decide whether pattern 10 or 12 is better.

9. Repeat steps 7 and 8 to specify the adjustment value for **D-2** to **D-5** and **D-7** to **D-11**.
10. Press the ◄ button.
11. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Register Setting**, and then press the ► button.
12. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
    The printer now goes online.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

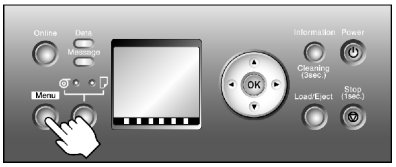
Adjusting the Printhead Orientation

If printed lines are misaligned, try adjusting the angle of the Printhead. Even slight misalignment can be corrected. Adjust the Printhead orientation by printing and reading a test pattern.

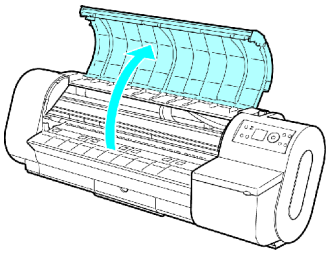
1. When using sheets, have an unused sheet A4/Letter-sized or larger ready.
   When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.
   - Loading the Sheet in the Printer (→P.133)
   - Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder (→P.107)
   - Loading Rolls in the Roll Holder Slot (→P.109)
   - Loading the Roll in the Printer (→P.110)

   Note
   - When loading paper, specify the correct paper type. Using paper that you have not specified on the printer may cause feeding problems and affect the printing quality.
   - We recommend loading a type of paper that you use often.

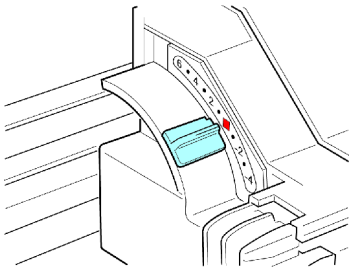
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Select **Adjust Printer Head Inc. Adj.** → **Yes** and press the **OK** button.
   After the Printhead is moved, a message is displayed prompting you to open the Top Cover.
4. At this point, open the Top Cover.



5. Align the Angle Adjustment Lever with the red square and close the Top Cover.

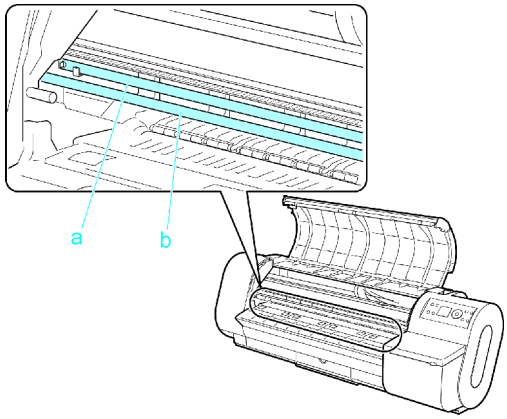


   A test pattern is printed for adjustment.

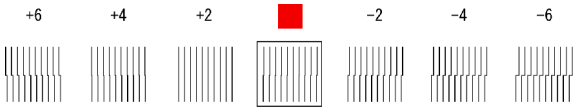
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).



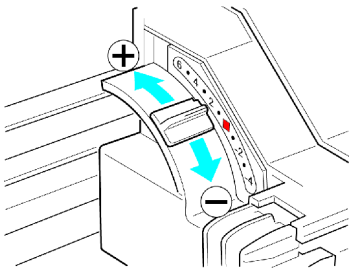
6. Examine the test pattern for adjustment. Determine the straightest set of lines.



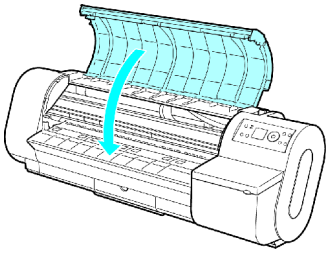
Note

- If no single set of lines is perfectly straight, choose the two sets of lines that are least misaligned.

7. Open the Top Cover and move the Angle Adjustment Lever to match the number (or the square) of the straightest set of lines.
If no single set of lines is perfectly straight, move the Angle Adjustment Lever to a position between the numbers (or between the number and the square) of the two sets of lines that are least misaligned.



8. Close the Top Cover.



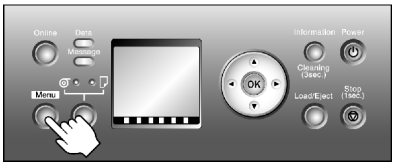
The Printhead orientation is adjusted, and the printer goes online.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjusting the Printhead Height

If printed documents rub against the printer during printing or if the edge of paper is wrinkled from rubbing, it may help to raise the Printhead.
If image edges are blurred, it may help to lower the Printhead.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Height**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Printhead height, and then press the **OK** button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjusting the feed amount

Adjusting the Feed Amount Automatically

If printed images are affected by banding in different colors, adjust the amount that paper is fed. There are two modes for adjusting the amount paper is fed, **Standard Adj.** and **Advanced Adj.**. **Advanced Adj.** offers a wider range of adjustment than **Standard Adj.**. If using **Standard Adj.** does not eliminate streaks, or if streaks are quite noticeable, try **Advanced Adj.**.
Follow the steps below for standard automatic adjustment of the feed amount.
When using highly transparent media for which automatic adjustment is not supported, you must adjust the feed amount manually. For instructions on manual adjustment, see “Adjusting the Feed Amount Manually”. (→P.501)

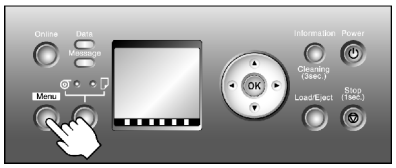
Note

- To adjust the measurement scale and ensure accuracy (so that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length, for example), specify the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage when adjusting the feed amount. (→P.504)
- This may take some time, depending on the type of paper.

Important

- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.
- To apply the results of adjusting the feed amount in printing, you must first set **Feed Priority** to **Band Joint**. Note that if you select **Automatic**, the results of adjustment will only be applied in printing if you set **Print Priority** in the printer driver to **Image** or **Office Document**. (→P.180)
  Follow these steps to change the **Feed Priority** setting.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Band Joint**, and then press the **OK** button.

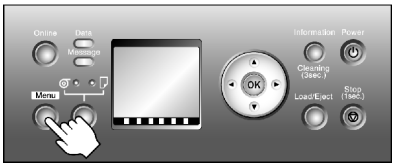
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Follow the steps below to adjust the feed amount automatically.

1. Prepare one unused sheet A4/Letter-sized or larger when **Standard Adj.** is selected or two when **Advanced Adj.** is selected (or one when using a sheet A2-sized or larger).
   When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.
   - Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder (→P.107)
   - Loading Rolls in the Roll Holder Slot (→P.109)
   - Loading the Roll in the Printer (→P.110)
   - Loading the Sheet in the Printer (→P.133)

   Note
   - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Band Adj.**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Standard Adj.** or **Advanced Adj.**, and then press the ► button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   A test pattern is printed for band adjustment.
   After reading the pattern, the printer automatically adjusts the feed amount and returns to online mode.

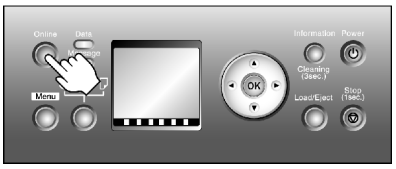
Note
- In some cases, the feed amount cannot be adjusted automatically. If so, choose **Advanced Adj.** in **Auto Band Adj.** (→P.50)
- If printed documents are still affected by uneven contrast or banding in different colors at regular intervals after this adjustment, you can adjust the feed amount during printing. (→P.500)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

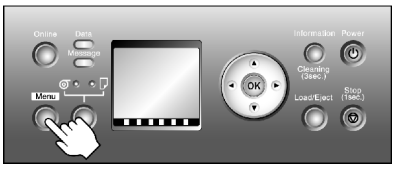
Adjusting the feed amount during printing

If, during printing, the contrast is uneven sideways across the paper or banding in different colors appears every 40 mm (1.6 in) or so, try adjusting the feed amount as follows. However, note that because printing is paused, colors may be slightly different.

1. Press the **Online** button to pause printing.



2. Press the **Menu** button to display **Menu Durng Prtng**.

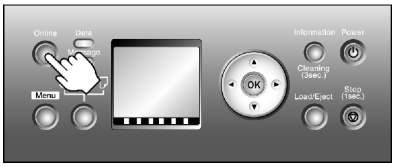


3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Fine Band Adj.**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to change the value, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- The supported range is -5 to +5.

5. Press the **Online** button to resume printing.



Note

- The **Fine Band Adj.** value set during printing is also applied to the next print job. However, the value is reset to 0 if you execute **Auto Band Adj.**, **Manual Band Adj**, or **Adjust Length**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjusting the Feed Amount Manually

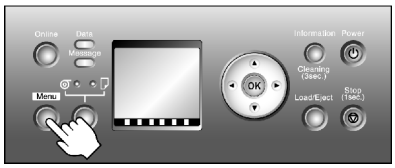
If printed images are affected by banding in different colors, adjust the amount that paper is fed.
This topic describes how to adjust the feed amount manually.
When using highly transparent media for which automatic adjustment is not supported, adjust the feed amount manually. We recommend automatic adjustment for other types of media. For instructions on automatic adjustment, see “Adjusting the Feed Amount Automatically”. (→P.498)

Note

- To adjust the measurement scale and ensure accuracy (so that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length, for example), specify the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage when adjusting the feed amount. (→P.504)

Important

- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.
- To apply the results of adjusting the feed amount in printing, you must first set **Feed Priority** to **Band Joint**. Note that if you select **Automatic**, the results of adjustment will only be applied in printing if you set **Print Priority** in the printer driver to **Image** or **Office Document**. (→P.180)
  Follow these steps to change the **Feed Priority** setting.
  1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



  2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
  3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
  4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the ► button.
  5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Band Joint**, and then press the **OK** button.

Follow the steps below to adjust the feed amount manually.

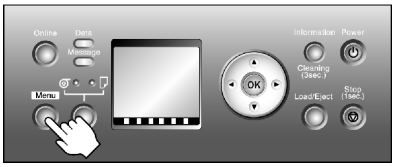
1. When using sheets, have two unused sheets A4/Letter-sized or larger ready.
   When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.
   - Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder (→P.107)
   - Loading Rolls in the Roll Holder Slot (→P.109)
   - Loading the Roll in the Printer (→P.110)
   - Loading the Sheet in the Printer (→P.133)

   Note

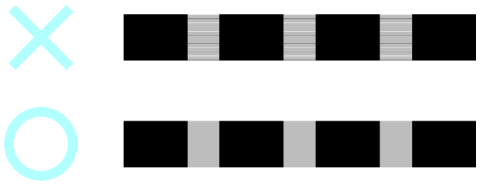
   - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual Band Adj**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   Test pattern A is printed for band adjustment.
6. Examine test pattern A for band adjustment.After you determine the pattern in which streaks are least noticeable, press ▲ or ▼ to choose the pattern number, and then press the **OK** button.



   Test pattern B is printed for band adjustment.

   Note
   - If streaks seem least noticeable in two patterns but you cannot decide which one is better, choose an intermediate value. For example, choose 11 if you cannot decide whether pattern 10 or 12 is better.

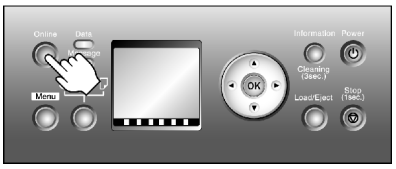
7. Examine test pattern B for band adjustment.After you determine the pattern in which streaks are least noticeable, press ▲ or ▼ to choose the pattern number, and then press the **OK** button.
   The feed amount is adjusted, and the printer goes online.
   If printed documents are still affected by uneven contrast or banding in different colors at regular intervals after this adjustment, you can adjust the feed amount during printing. (→P.503)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

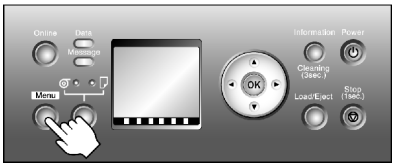
Adjusting the feed amount during printing

If, during printing, the contrast is uneven sideways across the paper or banding in different colors appears every 40 mm (1.6 in) or so, try adjusting the feed amount as follows. The results of adjustment are applied to printing in progress, enabling you to check the results immediately. However, note that because printing is paused, colors may be slightly different.

1. Press the **Online** button to pause printing.



2. Press the **Menu** button to display **Menu Durng Prtng**.

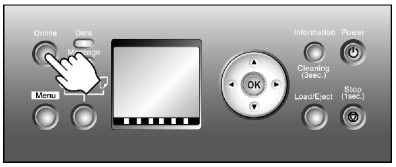


3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Fine Band Adj.**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to change the value, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- The supported range is -5 to +5.

5. Press the **Online** button to resume printing.



Note

- The **Fine Band Adj.** value set during printing is also applied to the next print job. However, the value is reset to 0 if you execute **Auto Band Adj.**, **Manual Band Adj**, or **Adjust Length**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjusting the Measurement Scale for Better Accuracy

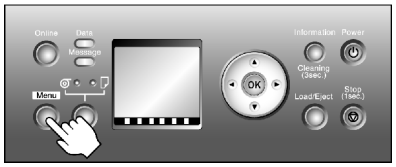
To adjust the measurement scale and ensure accuracy (so that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length, for example), specify the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage when adjusting the feed amount.

Note

- If printed images are affected by banding in different colors, adjust the amount that paper is fed. (→P.501)

Important

- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.
- To apply the results of adjusting the measurement scale for better accuracy in printing, you must first set **Feed Priority** to **Print Length**. Note that if you select **Automatic**, the results of adjustment will only be applied in printing if you set **Print Priority** in the printer driver to **Line Drawing/Text**. (→P.180)
  Follow these steps to change the **Feed Priority** setting.
  1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



  2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
  3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
  4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the ► button.
  5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Length** or **Automatic**, and then press the **OK** button.

Follow these steps to adjust the scale for better accuracy.

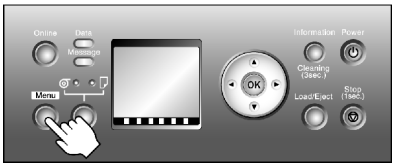
1. When using sheets, load one unused sheet A4/Letter-sized or larger.
   When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.
   - Loading the Sheet in the Printer (→P.133)
   - Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder (→P.107)
   - Loading Rolls in the Roll Holder Slot (→P.109)
   - Loading the Roll in the Printer (→P.110)

   Note

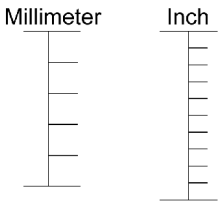
   - When loading paper, specify the correct paper type. When the paper type is not specified, the printing quality may be affected without the correct adjustment of the feeding.
   - We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for feed amount adjustment.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Length**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   A test pattern is printed for adjustment based on the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage.
   The scale bar shows “Millimeter” in 50 mm units and “Inch” in 1 inch units.



6. Measure the length of the adjustment pattern. Calculate the difference between the measured length and actual length. Enter it as a percentage and press the **OK** button.
   You can adjust the value in 0.02% increments. Press ▲ to increase the value and ▼ to decrease it.
   If the scale is printed shorter than actual size, set the value toward the positive side; if it is printed longer, set the value toward the negative side.

Note

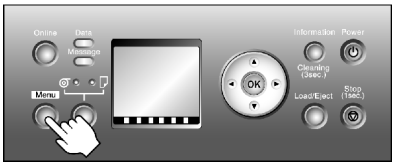
- You can also specify the adjustment value by selecting **Paper Details** → **Adjust Length**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjusting the Vacuum Strength

When printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily, if paper rubs against the printer or the edge is wrinkled from rubbing, adjusting the level of suction against paper on the Platen may improve results.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **VacuumStrngth**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the level of suction against paper on the Platen, and then press the **OK** button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Maintenance

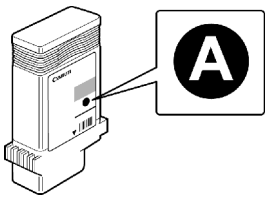
Ink Tanks

Ink Tanks

An Ink Tank that can be used in the printer is labeled with a white letter “A” in a black circle on the side. When purchasing an Ink Tank, make sure an “A” is printed on the label, along with the following Ink Tank part numbers.

- BK Ink Tank PFI-102BK
- MBK Ink Tank PFI-102MBK
- C Ink Tank PFI-102C
- M Ink Tank PFI-102M
- Y Ink Tank PFI-102Y

  130 ml (4.4 fl oz) per color



Note

- For instructions on replacing Ink Tank, see “Replacing Ink Tanks”. (→P.508)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Replacing Ink Tanks

Compatible Ink Tank

An Ink Tank that can be used in the printer is labeled with a white letter “A” in a black circle on the side. Request an Ink Tank with the same label when you purchase a new Ink Tank. For more information, see “Ink Tanks”. (→P.507)

Precautions when handling an Ink Tank

Take the following precautions when handling an Ink Tank.

Caution

- For safety, keep an Ink Tank out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.

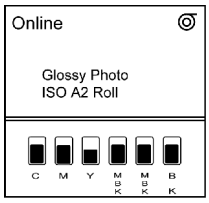
Important

- Before removing an Ink Tank from the pouch for installation, shake it gently seven or eight times. If you do not shake the Ink Tank, the ink may sediment, which may affect printing quality.
- Do not remove and shake an Ink Tank that has already been installed in the printer. Ink may leak out.
- Avoid dropping the Ink Tank after removing it from the pouch. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- There may be ink around the ink holes of Ink Tank you remove. Handle an Ink Tank carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- We recommend using up an Ink Tank in the course of printing within six months after breaking the seal. Using an old Ink Tank may affect the printing quality.
- Do not remove the Ink Tank if the printer is not used for a long period (a month or more). Ink remaining in the printer may become clogged and cause of printing problems.
- Coverage may be uneven if you replace the ink during a print job.

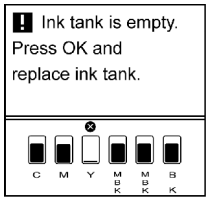
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Replacing an Ink Tank

1. Make sure no print jobs are in progress.
   You can replace Ink Tank if the Display Screen indicates the printer is **Online** or **Offline**, or if messages advise you to check the amount of ink left or replace the Ink Tank.



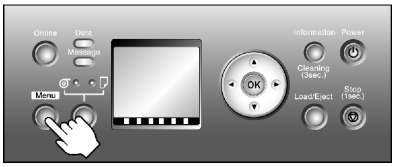
   If a message prompts you to replace the Ink Tank, press the **OK** button. Steps 2-4 are unnecessary in this case. Go to step 5 and remove the Ink Tank.



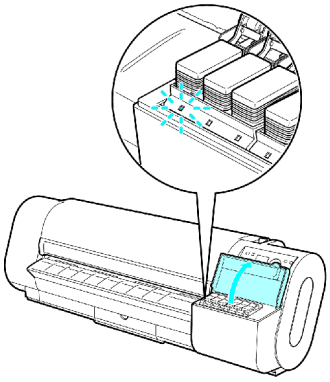
   Do not remove an Ink Tank during initialization immediately after turning on the printer, or during printing or printhead cleaning.

   Note
   - Ink Tank replacement is possible even when print jobs are being canceled or if paper is being fed.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

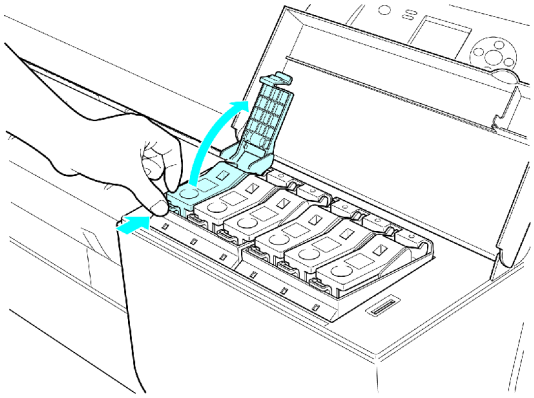


3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Rep. Ink Tank**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   A message on the Display Screen advises you to open the Ink Tank Cover. Next, remove the Ink Tank.
5. Open the Ink Tank Cover and check the Ink Lamp.
   The Ink Lamp flashes quickly if there is no ink left.

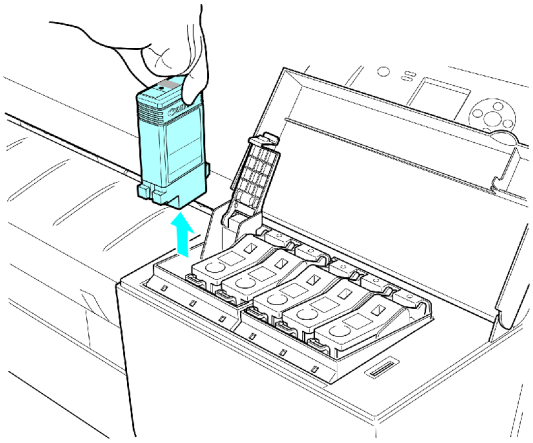


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

6. Press the tip of the Ink Tank Lock Lever of the color for replacement and lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever to open it.

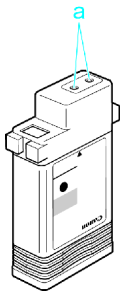


7. Hold the empty Ink Tank by the grip to remove it, and press the **OK** button.



Note

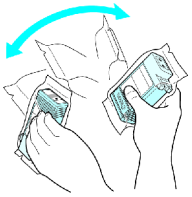
- If there is still some ink left in the Ink Tank you removed, store the ink tank with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains. Put the Ink Tank in a plastic bag and seal it.



- Dispose of used Ink Tank according to local regulations.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

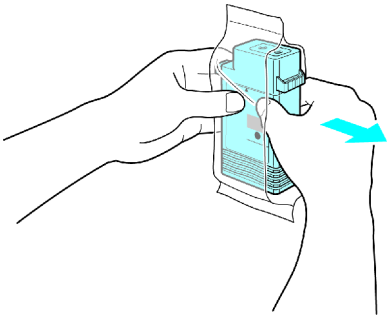
8. Before opening the pouch, shake the Ink Tank gently seven or eight times. Agitate the ink in the Ink Tank by slowly turning the Ink Tank upside-down and right side up several times.



Note

- If you do not shake the Ink Tank, the ink may sediment, which may affect printing quality.

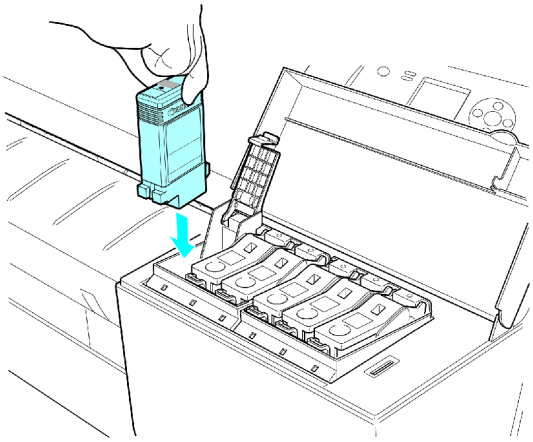
9. Open the pouch and remove the Ink Tank.



Note

- Never touch the ink holes or metal contacts. This may cause stains, damage the Ink Tank, and affect printing quality.
- Avoid dropping the Ink Tank after removing it from the pouch. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- Do not remove and shake an Ink Tank that has already been installed in the printer. Ink may leak out.

10. Press the **OK** button and insert the Ink Tank into the holder facing as shown in the figure, with the ink holes down.

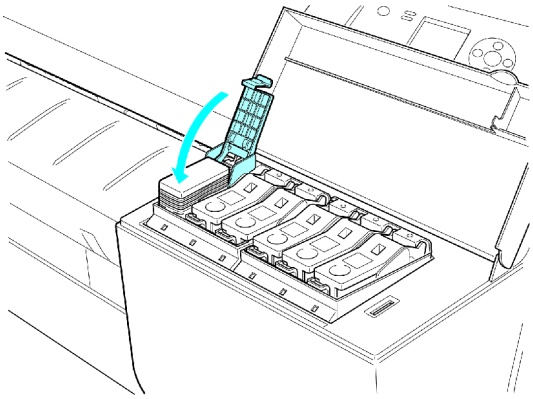


Important

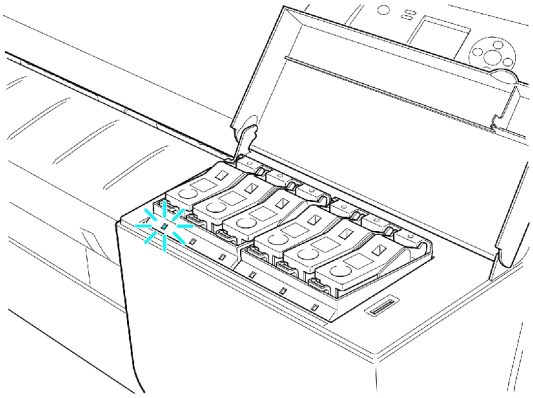
- Ink Tank cannot be loaded in the holder if the color or orientation is wrong.
  If the Ink Tank does not fit in the holder, do not force it into the holder. Make sure the color of the Ink Tank Lock Lever matches the color of the Ink Tank, and check the orientation of the Ink Tank before reloading it.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

11. Close the Ink Tank Lock Lever until it clicks.



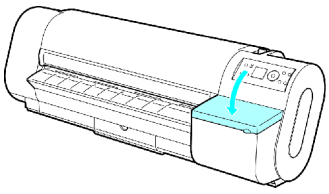
12. Make sure the Ink Lamp is lit in red.



Note

- Ink Lamp flashes when there is little ink left.

13. Close the Ink Tank Cover.



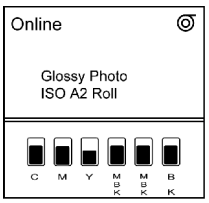
The printer returns to the mode before replacement of Ink Tank.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

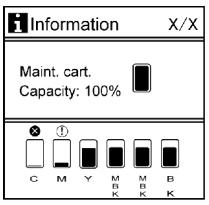
Checking Ink Tank Levels

On the Display Screen, you can check how much ink is left in the Ink Tank.

The Display Screen indicates the remaining ink levels, unless an error message is displayed.



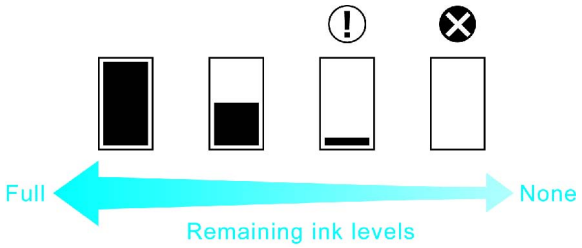
During error messages, press the **Information** button to view the ink levels on the Display Screen.



These levels shown on the Display Screen correspond to the inks identified by the Color Label on the bottom of the Display Screen.

These symbols may be displayed above the ink level: “!” if ink is low, “×” if no ink is left, and “?” if you have deactivated ink level detection.

The remaining ink level is indicated as shown below.



If the Display Screen indicates to replace the Ink Tank, replace the Ink Tank. If a message is displayed indicating to check the remaining ink levels, or after tasks that consume a lot of ink such as large-format printing or head cleaning, check the remaining levels and replace Ink Tank as needed. (→P.508)

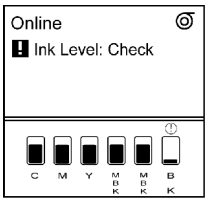
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

When to Replace Ink Tanks

Replace or prepare to replace Ink Tank in the following situations.

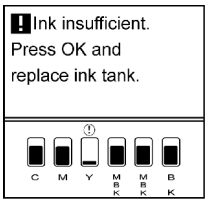
If a message for checking the ink is shown on the Display Screen

When there is little ink left, the Message lamp is lit and **Ink Level: Check** is shown on the Display Screen. You can continue to print, but prepare to replace the Ink Tank. (→P.513)



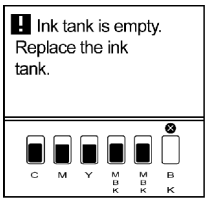
Before print jobs and maintenance that consume a lot of ink

If little ink is left, there may not be enough for large-format printing, head cleaning, and maintenance, which require a lot of ink. In this case, replace or prepare to replace the Ink Tank before maintenance.



If a message for ink replacement is shown on the Display Screen

When ink runs out, the Message lamp flashes, a message regarding Ink Tank replacement is shown on the Display Screen, and printing is disabled. Replace the Ink Tank at this point.

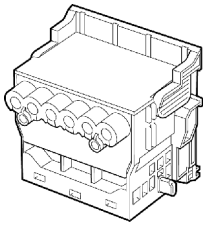


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printheads

Printhead

- Printhead PF-03



Note

- For instructions on replacing the Printhead, see “Replacing the Printhead”. (→P.518)

Checking the Print Quality

If printing is faint or streaked in different colors, make sure the Printhead nozzles are clear by printing a test pattern to check the nozzles.
For instructions, see “Checking for Nozzle Clogging”. (→P.516)

Improving the Print Quality

If printing is faint or streaked in different colors, make sure the Printhead nozzles are clear by printing a test pattern to check the nozzles. Clean the Printhead if the printed test pattern was faint.
For instructions on cleaning the Printhead, see “Cleaning the Printhead”. (→P.517)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

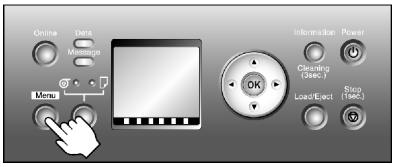
Checking for Nozzle Clogging

If printing is faint or streaked in different colors, make sure the Printhead nozzles are clear by printing a test pattern to check the nozzles.

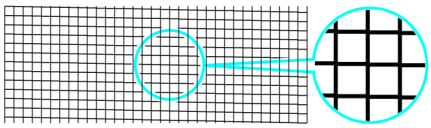
Note

- You can specify a number of pages in the printer's **Noz. Check Freq.** menu for automatic nozzle checking every time you finish printing that quantity. (→P.50)

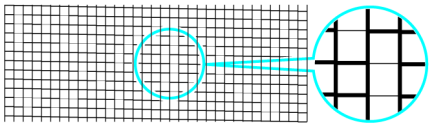
1. Load unused paper.
   - Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder (→P.107)
   - Loading Rolls in the Roll Holder Slot (→P.109)
   - Loading the Roll in the Printer (→P.110)
   - Loading the Sheet in the Printer (→P.133)
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Nozzle Check**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The printer goes online and prints a test pattern.
6. Check the printing results.
   If the horizontal lines are not faint or incomplete, the nozzles are clear.



   If some sections of the horizontal lines are faint or incomplete, the nozzles for those colors are clogged.



   If horizontal lines are faint or incomplete, follow the steps below and check again for nozzle clogging.
   1. Clean the Printhead. (→P.517)
   2. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.

Note

- If you repeat these steps several times but the horizontal lines are still faint or incomplete, contact your Canon dealer.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cleaning the Printhead

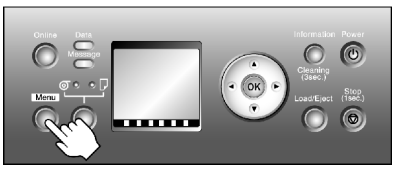
Cleaning the Printhead may help clear nozzles that are clogged.

Note

- You can specify a number of pages in the printer's **Noz. Check Freq.** menu for automatic nozzle checking and cleaning every time you finish printing that quantity. (→P.50)
- You can start **Head Cleaning A** by holding down the **Information** button for three seconds or more.

Cleaning the Printhead

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Cleaning**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of cleaning, and then press the **OK** button.
   - **Head Cleaning A**
     Use **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint or contains foreign substances. This method of cleaning consumes the least amount of ink. It takes about three minutes to complete.
   - **Head Cleaning B**
     Use **Head Cleaning B** if no ink comes out of the printhead, or if **Head Cleaning A** does not solve the problem. It takes about four minutes to complete.

   The printhead is cleaned, and the printer goes online.
4. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles, and determine whether cleaning has cleared the nozzles. (→P.516)

Note

- If printing does not improve after **Head Cleaning A**, try **Head Cleaning B**. If this does not solve the problem, repeat **Head Cleaning B** two or three times. If this still does not improve printing, the Printhead may have reached the end of its useful life. Contact your Canon dealer.

Caution

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge or Ink Tanks during cleaning.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Replacing the Printhead

When to replace the Printhead

Replace the Printhead in the following situations.

- If the printing quality does not improve even after two cycles of **Head Cleaning B** from the printer menu
- If the Display Screen indicates **Open top cover and replace the printhead.**
- If your Canon dealer has advised you to replace the Printhead

Compatible Printhead

For information on the compatible Printhead, see “Printhead”. (→P.515)

Precautions when handling the Printhead

Take the following precautions when handling the Printhead.

Caution

- For safety, keep the Printhead in a place inaccessible for children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.
- Do not touch the Printhead immediately after printing. The Printhead becomes extremely hot, and there is a risk of burns.

Important

- Avoid dropping or shaking the Printhead. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- There may be ink around the nozzles of the Printhead you remove. Handle the Printhead carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- Do not open the Printhead pouch until immediately before installation. After removing the Printhead from the pouch, install it right away. If the Printhead is left after the pouch is opened, the nozzles may dry out, which may affect printing quality.
- If you need to store a Printhead temporarily before installation, do not keep the nozzles and metal contacts (→P.522) facing down. If the nozzles or metal contacts are damaged, it may affect the printing quality.
- Never attempt to take apart or modify a Printhead. This may damage the printer.
- Never touch the Printhead nozzles or the metal contacts. This may cause printing problems.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

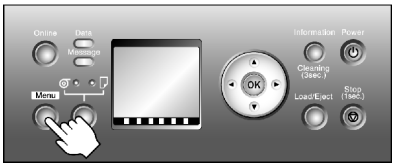
Replacing the Printhead

Follow the steps below to replace the Printhead. Failure to follow this procedure may cause ink leak from the Printhead, which may cause stains.

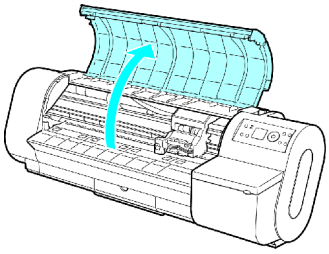
Note

- Prepare a new Ink Tank when ink levels are low.
- Your hands may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Use the gloves provided with the new Printhead for replacement.
- Choose **On** in **Auto Print** to have the printer automatically adjust the Printhead alignment after replacement of the Printhead. (→P.50)

1. If the roll is not ejected because of the cutting method selected, cut it manually and remove it. (→P.329)
2. Clean inside the Top Cover. (→P.538)
3. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



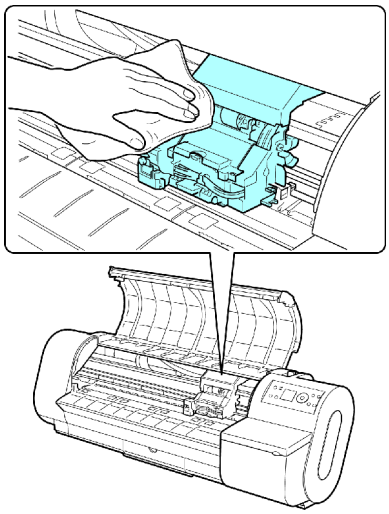
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Replace P.head**, and then press the ► button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   Ink is now filled.
   After about three minutes, a message is shown on the Display Screen instructing you to open the Top Cover.
7. Open the Top Cover.



Instructions are now shown on the Display Screen regarding Printhead replacement.

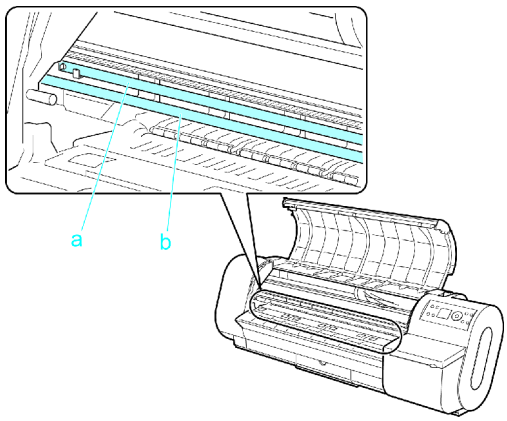
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. If the Printhead Fixer Cover or Printhead Fixer Lever is dirty, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe it clean.



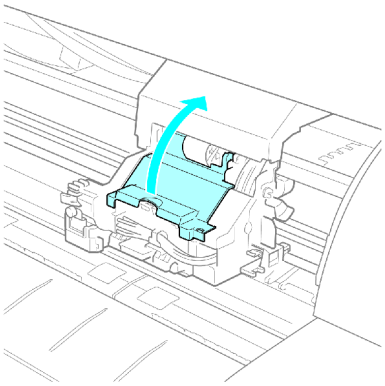
Important

- Never touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).



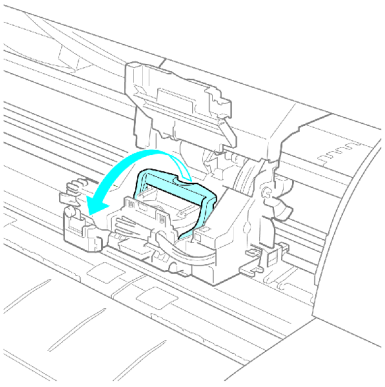
- Never touch the metal contacts of the Carriage. This may damage the printer.

9. Lift the Carriage Cover to open it fully.

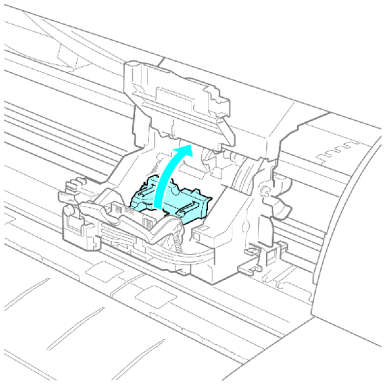


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

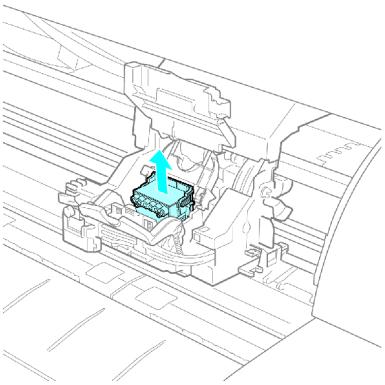
10. Pull the Printhead Fixer Lever forward all the way to open it completely.



11. Pull up the Printhead Fixer Cover to open it completely.



12. Remove the used Printhead.



Caution

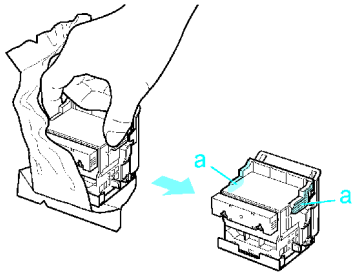
- When replacing the Printhead immediately after printing, wait a few minutes before replacing it. The metal parts of the Printhead become hot during printing, and there is a risk of burns from touching these parts.

Note

- Dispose of the used Printhead in accordance with local regulations.

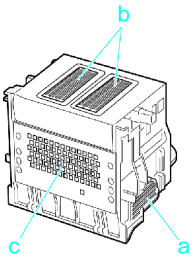
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Holding the new Printhead by the grips (a), remove it from the case.

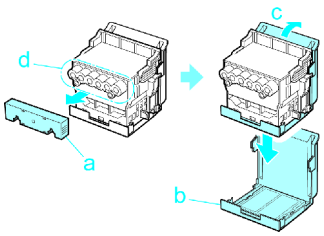


Important

- When handling the Printhead, always hold it by the grips (a). Never touch the nozzles (b) or the metal contacts (c). This may damage the Printhead and affect printing quality.



14. While firmly holding the Printhead you have removed, use your other hand to remove the orange Safety Cap 1 (a). Squeeze the grips (c) of Safety Cap 2 (b) and pull it down to remove it.

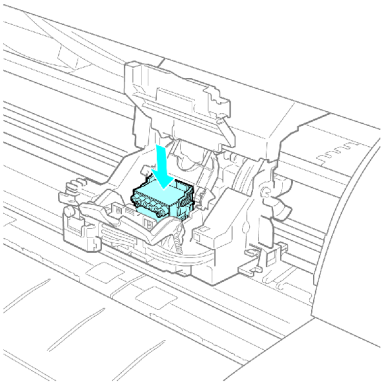


Important

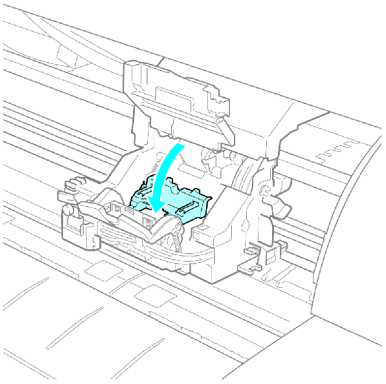
- Safety Cap 1 (a) may be coated with ink to protect the Printhead. Be careful not to touch areas other than the grips.
- Never touch the ink supply section (d). This may cause printing problems.
- The inside surface of Safety Cap 2 (b) is coated with ink to protect the nozzles. Handle it carefully to avoid touching the nozzles or spilling ink. Spilled ink may cause stains. The Printhead contains ink to protect the nozzles. If this ink is accidentally spilled, it may stain the printer or surrounding area. We recommend removing the Safety Cap 2 (b) on top of the Printhead package or safely out of the way. Wipe off any spilled ink with a dry cloth. This ink is non-toxic.
- Do not reattach the Safety Cap or protective material. Dispose of these materials in accordance with local regulations.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

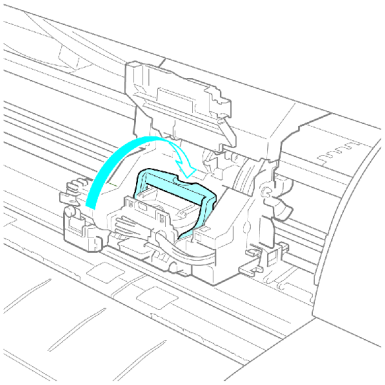
15. With the nozzles facing down and the metal contacts toward the back, insert the Printhead into the Carriage. Making sure that the metal contacts do not touch the Carriage, carefully push the printhead firmly into the carriage.



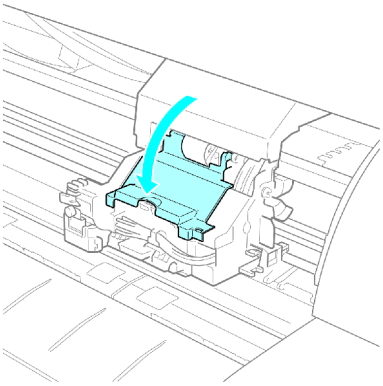
16. Pull the Printhead Fixer Cover down toward the front to lock the Printhead in place.



17. Push the Printhead Fixer Lever toward the back of the printer until it clicks.

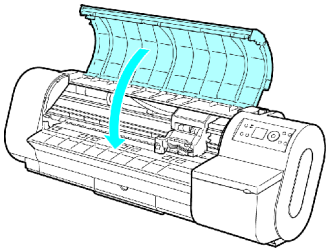


18. Push the Carriage Cover forward until it clicks.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

19. Close the Top Cover.



Ink now fills the system.

After about 13 minutes, the Printhead alignment will be automatically adjusted, and the printer will go online.

If no paper has been loaded, a message is displayed requesting you to load paper.

Important

- Never remove an Ink Tank while the system is filling with ink.
- If **Auto Print** is **Off** in the printer menu, the Printhead alignment will not be adjusted. In this case, adjust the alignment after Printhead replacement by accessing **Auto Head Adj.** in **Advanced Adj.**. (→P.491)

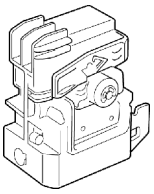
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cutter Unit

Cutter Unit

A reaplacement Cutter Unit.

- Cutter Unit CT-05



Note

- For instructions on replacing the Cutter Unit, see “Replacing the Cutter Unit”. (→P.526)

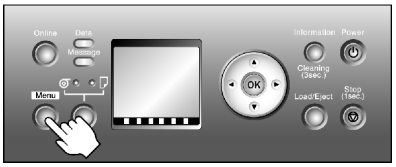
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Replacing the Cutter Unit

Note

- For information on compatible Cutter Unit, see “Cutter Unit”. (→P.525)
- During Cutter Unit replacement, do not open the Carriage Cover. Ink will automatically fill the Printhead after the Carriage Cover is opened, which consumes ink.

1. Turn the printer on. (→P.22)
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

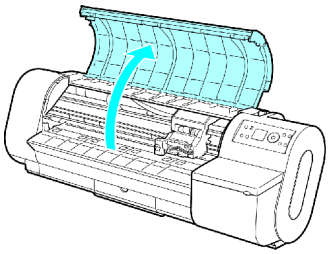


3. Select **Maintenance** → **Change Cutter** → **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   After the Carriage is centered, a message is shown on the Display Screen instructing you to open the Top Cover.

Note

- If you do not respond within two minutes, cutter replacement is canceled and the printer goes online automatically. In this case, repeat the steps above.

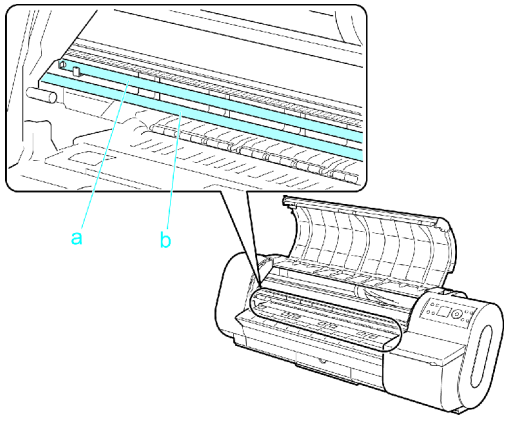
4. Open the Top Cover.



5. If the Cutter Unit or Carriage is dirty, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe it clean.

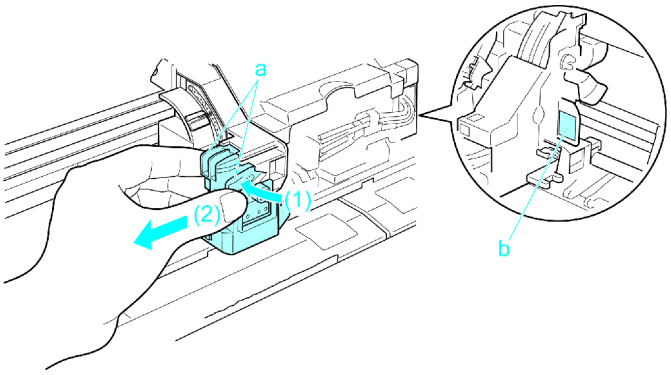
Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

6. Hold the Cutter Unit by the grip (a). Pushing down at the position indicated (b), remove it from the Carriage.



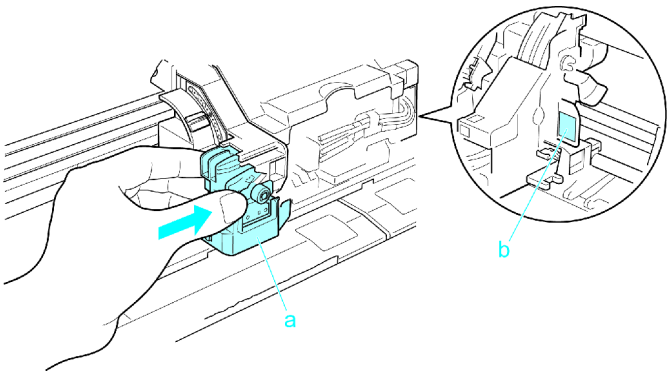
Important

- Never touch any part of the Cutter Unit except the grips (a) and (b). This poses a risk of injury and may stain your hands. Also, it may damage the printer.

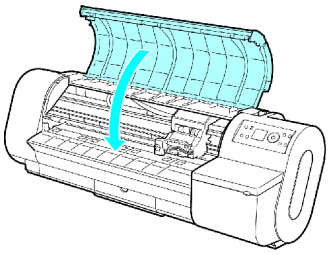
Caution

- Dispose of the used Cutter Unit according to local regulations.
- Do not disassemble the Cutter Unit. Touching the blade may cause injury.

7. Hold the new Cutter Unit by the grip (a). Pushing down at the position indicated (b), attach it to the Carriage until it clicks into place.



8. Close the Top Cover.



The Carriage moves into position and a confirmation message is displayed regarding resetting the cut counter.

9. Press the **OK** button.

The printer now goes online.

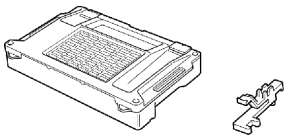
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Maintenance Cartridge

Maintenance Cartridge

A replacement Maintenance Cartridge. Maintenance Cartridge includes a Shaft Cleaner.

- Maintenance Cartridge MC-07



Note

- For instructions on replacing the Maintenance Cartridge, see “Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge”. (→P.528)

Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge

Compatible Maintenance Cartridge

For information on the compatible Maintenance Cartridge, see “Maintenance Cartridge”. (→P.528)

Precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge

Take the following precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge.

Caution

- For safety, keep the Maintenance Cartridge out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.

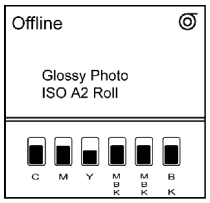
Important

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge except to replace it.
- To prevent ink from leaking from a used Maintenance Cartridge, avoid dropping the cartridge or storing it at an angle. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- Ink adheres to the top of the Maintenance Cartridge after it has been used. Handle the Maintenance Cartridge carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- Do not install a used Maintenance Cartridge in another printer.

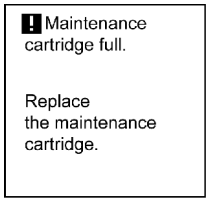
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge

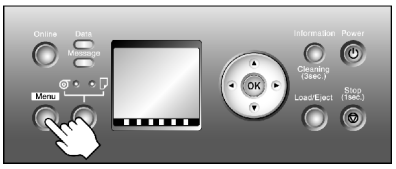
1. Make sure no print jobs are in progress.
   You can replace the Maintenance Cartridge if the Display Screen indicates the printer is **Offline** or if messages advise you to replace the Maintenance Cartridge.



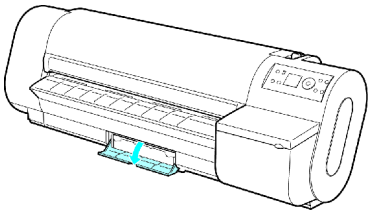
   If a message prompts you to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, go to step 6 and remove the Maintenance Cartridge.



   Do not replace the Maintenance Cartridge during initialization immediately after turning on the printer, during Printhead cleaning, or while ink is being filled.
   If you pause printing to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, it may cause the printed images to be blurry.
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

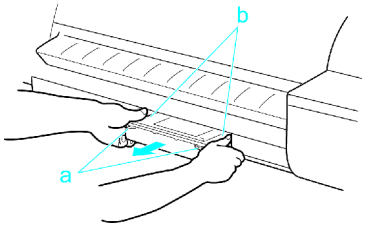


3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Repl. maint cart**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. At this point, open the Maintenance Cartridge Cover.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

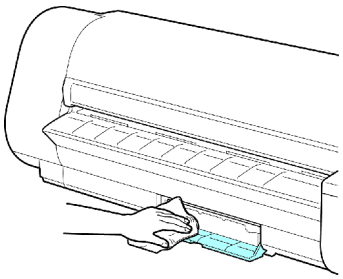
7. Hold the handle (a) of the used Maintenance Cartridge and pull out the cartridge. Grasp the handles on both sides (b) and keep the cartridge level as you remove it.



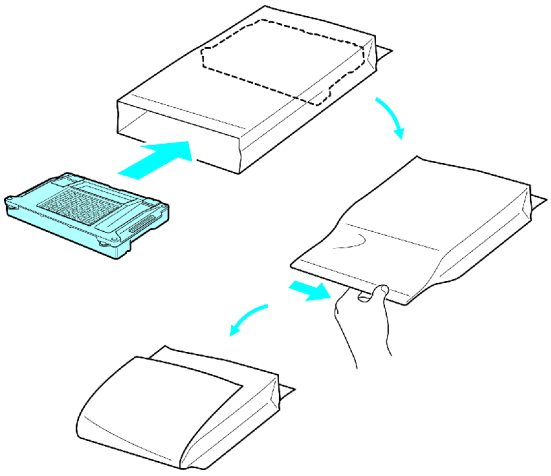
Important

- Used Maintenance Cartridge is heavy. Always grasp the cartridge handles on both sides firmly and keep the cartridge level during removal and storage. If you drop a used Maintenance Cartridge or store it at an angle, ink may leak and cause stains.

8. Wipe away any soiling on the Maintenance Cartridge Cover.

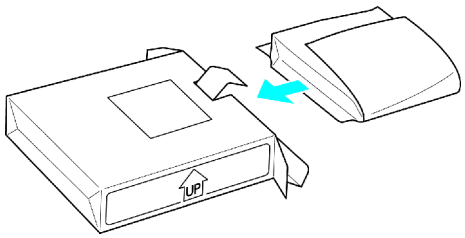


9. Keeping the used Maintenance Cartridge level, insert it in the plastic bag of the new Maintenance Cartridge. Expel excess air and seal the zipper. After making sure the zipper is firmly sealed, fold the bag in two.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

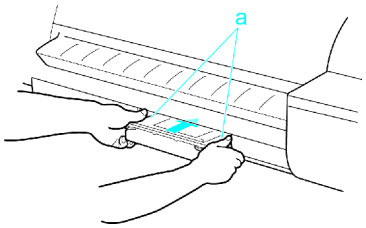
10. Confirm the Maintenance Cartridge is right-side up, put it in the box, and store it so that it stays level.



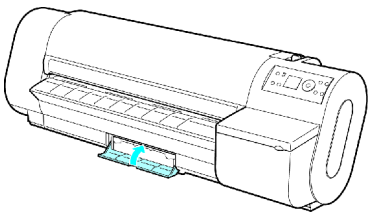
Important

- Always put the used Maintenance Cartridge back in the box and store the box on a flat surface. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- In accordance with its active and ongoing policy to protect the environment, Canon collects used Maintenance Cartridge. Follow the instructions provided with the new Maintenance Cartridge that describe how to process the used Maintenance Cartridge.

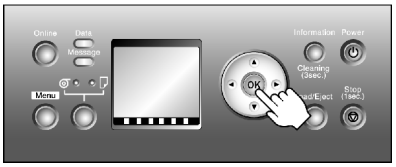
11. Holding the handles on both sides of the new Maintenance Cartridge (a), insert it completely, keeping it level.



12. Close the Maintenance Cartridge Cover.



13. Press the **OK** button.



The printer now initializes the Maintenance Cartridge.

After about five seconds when initialization is finished, a message prompts you to replace the Shaft Cleaner.

14. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

After the Carriage is moved, the Display Screen indicates **Open top cover.**.

Note

- If you select **No**, the printer goes back online.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

15. Replace the Shaft Cleaner. Replacing the (→P.533)

The printer returns to the mode before replacement of the Maintenance Cartridge. If a message is displayed advising you to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, printing is not possible. Make sure that the Maintenance Cartridge is installed correctly.

If a print job was in progress when the Maintenance Cartridge was replaced, printing is resumed.

Important

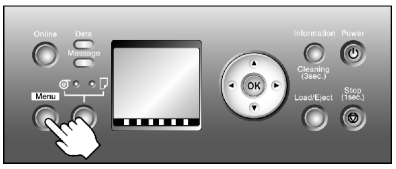
- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge during about the first five seconds after the printer goes back online. This may damage the Maintenance Cartridge.
- If you replace the Maintenance Cartridge when the printer is off, do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge during about the first five seconds after you turn the printer on again after replacement. This may damage the Maintenance Cartridge.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

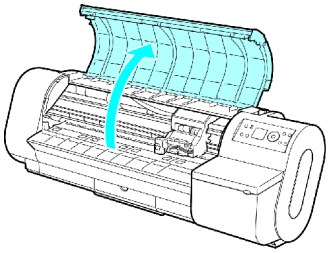
Replacing the Shaft Cleaner

Replace the Shaft Cleaner when you replace the Maintenance Cartridge. New Shaft Cleaner is included with replacement Maintenance Cartridge.
After Maintenance Cartridge replacement, a message on the Display Screen prompts you to replace the Shaft Cleaner. Select **Yes** and press the **OK** button. Next, go to step 3.

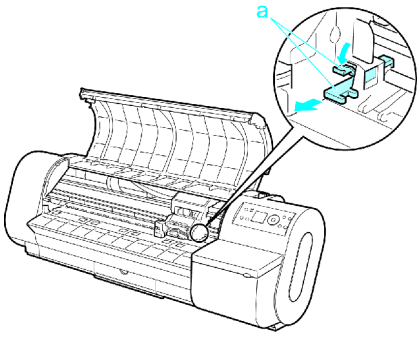
1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Repl. S. Cleaner**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   After the Carriage is moved, the Display Screen indicates **Open top cover.**.
5. Open the Top Cover.



6. Hold the Shaft Cleaner on the right side of the Carriage by the grips (a) and pull it toward you to remove it.

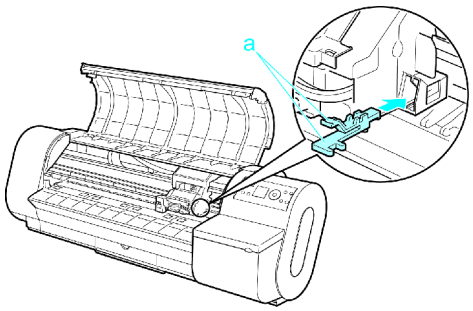


Important

- Never touch parts other than those mentioned in the instructions. This may stain your hands and damage the printer.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

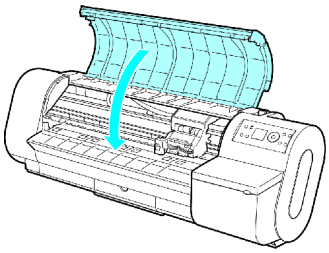
7. After removing the cap of the new Shaft Cleaner, hold it by the grips (a) and attach it to the Carriage.
Push the Shaft Cleaner until it clicks into place.



Note

- Attach the cap from the new Shaft Cleaner on the used one. Be sure to put the used Shaft Cleaner in the small box before putting it in the larger box with the used Maintenance Cartridge for disposal.

8. Close the Top Cover.

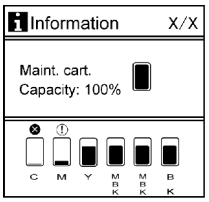


The Carriage is moved, and the printer goes online.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity

The Maintenance Cartridge absorbs excess ink from borderless printing, printhead cleaning, and other processes. You can confirm the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge by checking the Maintenance Cartridge capacity shown on the Display Screen.
Press the **Information** button to display the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge on the Display Screen.



If the Display Screen indicates to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. If a message is displayed indicating to check the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge, or before tasks that deplete much of the capacity such as head cleaning or preparations to move the printer, check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and replace the Maintenance Cartridge as needed. (→P.528)

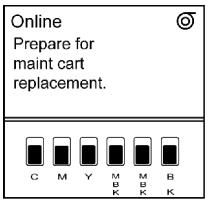
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge

Replace or prepare to replace the Maintenance Cartridge in the following situations.

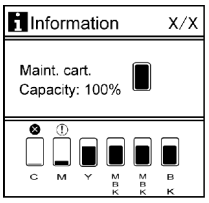
If a message for checking the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen

When the Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low, the Message lamp is lit and **Prepare for maint cart replacement.** is displayed. You can continue to print, but check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and prepare to replace the Maintenance Cartridge with a new one. (→P.535)



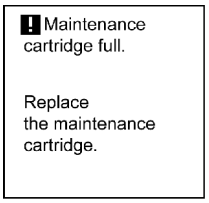
When much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity is depleted

Printhead cleaning, Printhead replacement, and preparations to transfer the printer deplete much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity. (In particular, preparing to move the printer depletes a lot of the capacity.) To check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity, press the **Information** button. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge and perform related maintenance as needed.



If a message for the Maintenance Cartridge replacement is shown on the Display Screen

When the Maintenance Cartridge is full, the Message lamp flashes and a message to replace the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen. Printing is disabled, and you cannot replace the Printhead or transfer the printer. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge with a new one.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cleaning the Printer

Cleaning the Printer Exterior

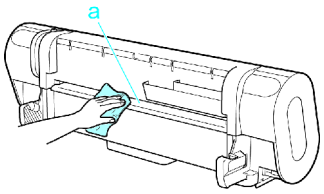
Clean the printer regularly to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems.
About once a month, clean the printer exterior.

1. Turn the printer off. (→P.22)
2. Unplug the power cord from the outlet.

Caution

- Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning or maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.

3. Using a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely, wipe away any dirt or paper dust from the Paper Feed Slot (a), power cord plug, and so on. Dry these parts with a dry cloth.



Caution

- Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.

Important

- If the Ejection Guide is dirty, it may soil the edge of the paper when the paper is cut. We recommend cleaning the Ejection Guide even if it does not appear dirty, because it may actually be covered with paper dust.

4. Plug the power cord into the outlet.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cleaning Inside the Top Cover

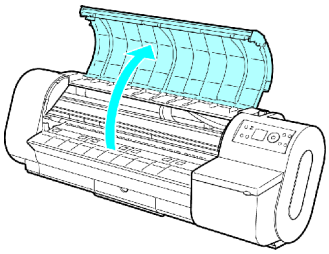
Clean inside the Top Cover about once a month to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems. Also clean inside the Top Cover in the following situations to ensure optimal operation.

- If the printed surface or the underside of paper is dirty after printing
- After you have used up a roll
- After borderless printing
- After printing on small paper
- After printing on paper that generates a lot of cutting debris
- If you have replaced the roll
- After printing on paper that generates a lot of paper dust

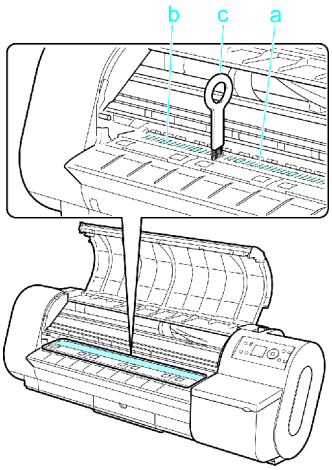
Important

- If the Platen inside the Top Cover becomes dirty, it may soil the underside of paper. We recommend always cleaning the Platen after borderless printing or printing on small paper.
- If the Ejection Guide is dirty, it may soil the edge of the paper when the paper is cut. We recommend cleaning the Ejection Guide even if it does not appear dirty, because it may actually be covered with paper dust.

1. Open the Top Cover.



2. If paper dust has accumulated in the Vacuum holes (a) on the Platen or in the Borderless Printing Ink Grooves (b), use the Cleaning Brush (c), provided with the printer, to wipe it away.

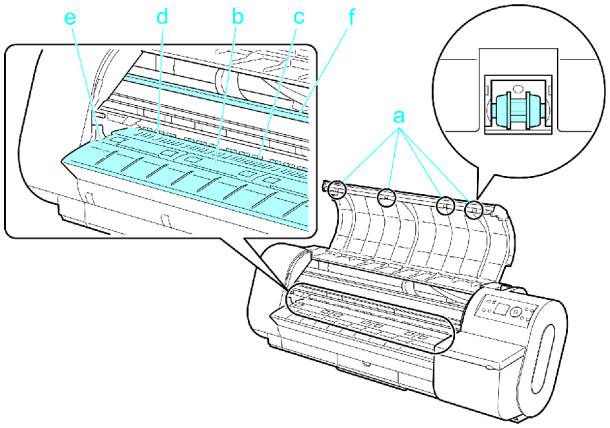


Note

- If the Cleaning Brush is dirty, rinse it in water.

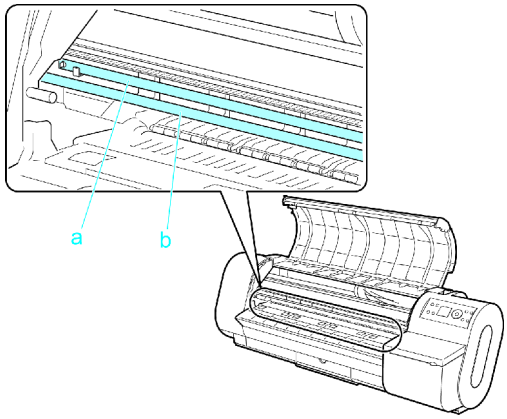
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

3. Using a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely, wipe inside the Top Cover to clean it. Wipe away any ink residue on the Top Cover Roller (a), all over the Platen (b), the Paper Retainer (c), the Borderless Printing Ink Grooves (d), the Ejection Guide (e), and the guide rail (f).

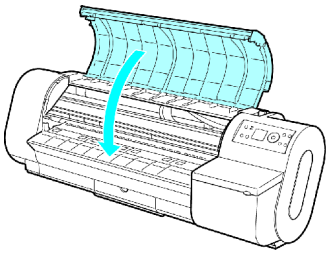


Important

- Do not use a dry cloth to wipe inside the Top Cover. This may create a static charge, which may attract dust and affect the printing quality.
- Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.
- Never touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).



4. Close the Top Cover.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cleaning the Paper Retainer

Clean the Paper Retainer about once a month to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems. Also clean the Paper Retainer in the following situations to ensure the printer offers a comfortable working environment.

- If the printed surface or the underside of paper is dirty after printing
- After printing on small paper

Caution

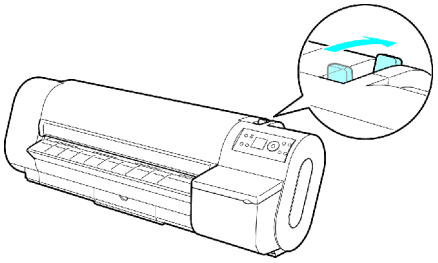
- During cleaning, use a type of paper that does not generate much dust from cutting, such as Plain Paper. It may affect printing quality if you use film or other media that are more likely to generate debris when cut, or that have a surface finish that may come off.

1. Turn the printer off. (→P.22)
2. Unplug the power cord from the outlet.

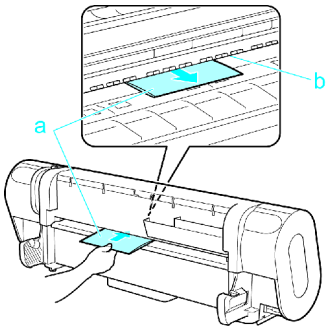
Caution

- Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning and maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.

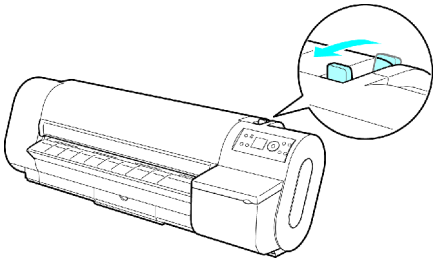
3. Push the Release Lever back.



4. Fold a sheet of Plain Paper two or three times (a) and insert it under the Paper Retainer (b) behind the printer to wipe the entire surface of the Paper Retainer clean.



5. Pull the Release Lever forward.



6. Plug the power cord into the outlet.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cleaning the Printhead

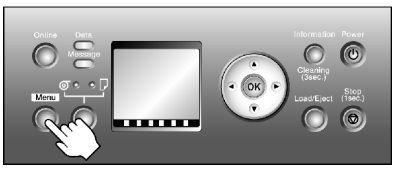
Cleaning the Printhead may help clear nozzles that are clogged.

Note

- You can specify a number of pages in the printer's **Noz. Check Freq.** menu for automatic nozzle checking and cleaning every time you finish printing that quantity. (→P.50)
- You can start **Head Cleaning A** by holding down the **Information** button for three seconds or more.

Cleaning the Printhead

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Cleaning**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of cleaning, and then press the **OK** button.
   - **Head Cleaning A**
     Use **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint or contains foreign substances. This method of cleaning consumes the least amount of ink. It takes about three minutes to complete.
   - **Head Cleaning B**
     Use **Head Cleaning B** if no ink comes out of the printhead, or if **Head Cleaning A** does not solve the problem. It takes about four minutes to complete.

   The printhead is cleaned, and the printer goes online.
4. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles, and determine whether cleaning has cleared the nozzles. (→P.516)

Note

- If printing does not improve after **Head Cleaning A**, try **Head Cleaning B**. If this does not solve the problem, repeat **Head Cleaning B** two or three times. If this still does not improve printing, the Printhead may have reached the end of its useful life. Contact your Canon dealer.

Caution

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge or Ink Tanks during cleaning.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Other Maintenance

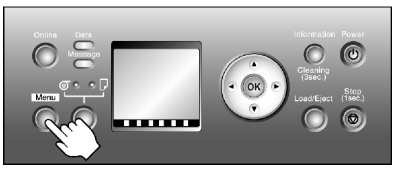
Preparing to Transfer the Printer

To protect the internal parts in transit, always follow the steps below before transferring the printer to a new location. Refer to the Quick Start Guide for details on packing the printer and installing it after transfer.

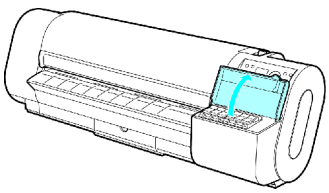
Note

- It is not possible to prepare the printer for transfer if the Display Screen prompts you to replace the Maintenance Cartridge or check the remaining capacity. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge before transfer preparations. (→P.528)
- Do not tilt the printer in transit. Ink inside the printer may leak and cause stains. If it is necessary to stand the printer up or tilt it, contact your Canon dealer.

1. Remove the paper.
   - Rolls (→P.113), (→P.114), (→P.114)
   - Sheet (→P.137)
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

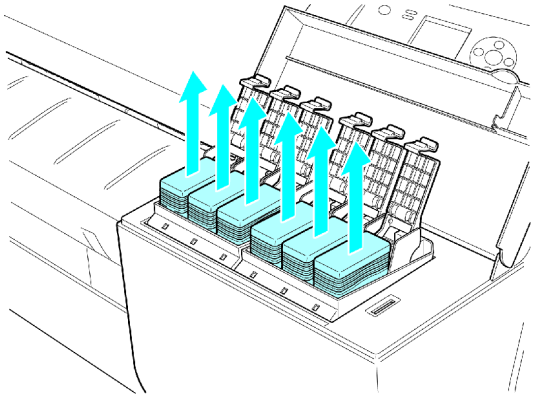


3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Move Printer**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The printer now starts preparing for transfer.
   If a message is shown on the Display Screen requesting you to open the Ink Tank Cover, follow the procedure starting with step 6.
6. Open the Ink Tank Cover.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

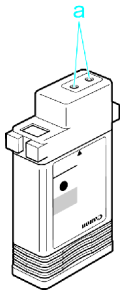
7. Open the Ink Tank Lock Lever and remove every Ink Tank.



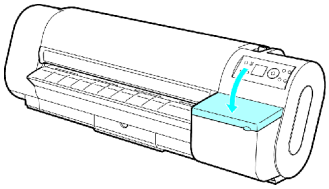
Put the Ink Tank in a plastic bag and seal it.

Note

- Store the Ink Tank you removed with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.



8. Close every Ink Tank Lock Lever, and close the Ink Tank Cover.



At this point, ink is drawn out from inside the tubes.

Important

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge during this process.

When the suction is finished, **Turn Power Off!!** is displayed.

9. Press the **Power** button and turn off the printer.

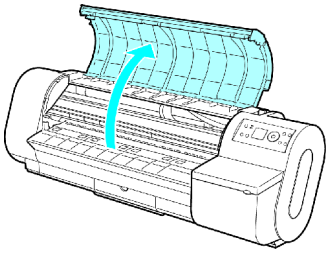
Important

- Turn off the printer before you unplug it. It may damage the printer if you unplug it before it is off and transfer it in that state. If you accidentally unplug the printer, plug it in again, reinstall the Ink Tanks, wait until the printer comes online, and follow this procedure again.

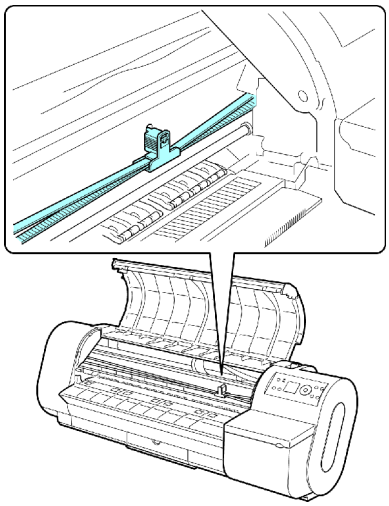
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

10. Disconnect the power cord and interface cable.

11. Open the Top Cover.

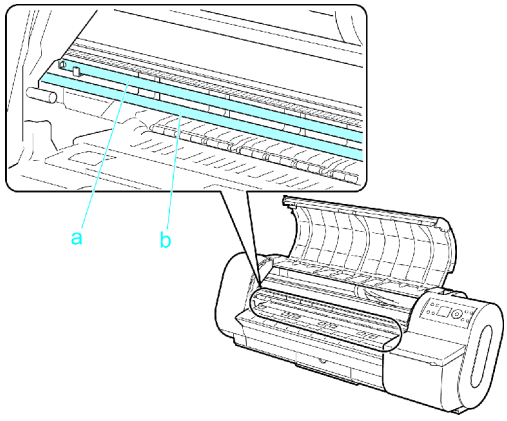


12. Grasp the Belt, insert it between the Belt Stopper, and affix the Belt Stopper to the Carriage Shaft.



Important

- Never touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).

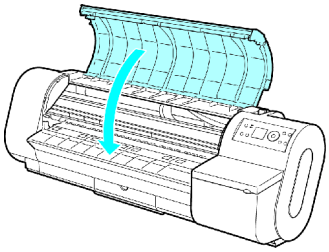


Note

- Here, the Belt Stopper is the one that was removed and stored after initial installation.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Close the Top Cover.



14. Tape down printer covers to secure them, in the reverse order of tape removal during installation.

15. Repack the Roll Holder, Holder Stopper, and printer in shipping materials, and then package them in a shipping box.

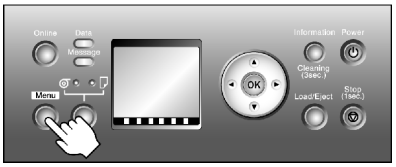
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Updating the Firmware

Update the printer firmware to take advantage of new and improved printer functions.

Confirming the firmware version

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Information**, and then press ►.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Info**, and then press the ► button.
   The firmware version is displayed.

Updating the Firmware

To obtain the latest firmware, visit the Canon website. If the firmware available online is newer than the installed firmware, update the printer firmware. For details on downloading and updating the firmware, visit the Canon website.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Troubleshooting

Frequently Asked Questions

Frequently Asked Questions

This section presents frequently asked questions and answers. To view more detailed explanations, click the hyperlinks in the answer column.

Question	Answer
How do I print on a roll?	When printing on rolls, after loading the roll, specify the paper type and length, both on the Control Panel and in the printer driver. ⇒Loading and Printing on Rolls (→P.82)
How do I print manually?	When printing manually, specify the paper type and size in the printer driver, and then load the paper. ⇒Loading and Printing on Sheets (→P.86)
How do I switch between printing on a roll and printing manually?	Press the **Feeder Selection** button to switch the paper source between the roll and a sheet. ⇒Selecting the Paper Source (→P.104)
How do I change the paper type or size?	Specify the type and size of paper, both on the Control Panel and in the printer driver. • Specifying it in the Printer Driver ⇒Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (→P.191) • Specifying it on the Control Panel Selecting the paper type ⇒Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) (→P.105) ⇒Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet) (→P.132) Selecting the Paper Size ⇒Specifying the Paper Length (Roll) (→P.106)
How do I cut the roll paper after printing?	You can wait until ink dries before cutting the roll, and you can cut rolls at a desired position. ⇒Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls (→P.122)
How do I print without borders?	Borderless printing is possible on rolls. You can also specify borderless printing in the printer driver by adjusting the original size to match the paper size. Borderless printing is not supported on sheets. ⇒Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.232) ⇒Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.239) ⇒Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.225)
How do I print an A4 original enlarged on A2 paper?	In the printer driver, you can adjust the original image to match the paper size or width, or you can specify enlargement or reduction before printing as desired. ⇒Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.196) ⇒Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.202) ⇒Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.208)
How do I print without wasting paper?	To conserve paper, you can specify in the printer driver to rotate originals 90 degrees or to print without top and bottom margins. ⇒Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.299) ⇒Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.305)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Question	Answer
How do I print without wasting all the blank space on the right side when printing an A4-sized original at A3 size?	By specifying to rotate originals 90 degrees in the printer driver, you can print at A4 size to fill the width of A3 paper. ⇒Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.299)
How do I print in landscape (or portrait) orientation?	You can print originals that are in landscape (or portrait) orientation automatically enlarged to fit the roll width. This is an easy way to create vertical or horizontal banners. ⇒Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) (→P.253)
How do I print on a custom paper size?	You can specify custom sizes temporarily in the printer driver. ⇒Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (→P.261)
How do I register custom paper sizes?	You can add desired sizes (Custom Media Sizes) in the **Size Options** dialog box of the printer driver. ⇒Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (→P.261)
How do I print lines thicker?	By specifying **Thicken Fine Lines** in the printer driver, you can print fine lines thicker to make them easier to see. ⇒Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.180)
How do I modify how colors are printed?	You can adjust colors in the printer driver as desired before printing. ⇒Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.172)
How do I use printer driver settings again in subsequent jobs?	By saving settings information in a favorite, you can apply the settings again before printing anytime as needed. ⇒Using Favorites (→P.325)
Can I use the printer in combination with a **Color imageRUNNER** ?	The printer can be used for automatic enlargement and printing of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. ⇒Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (→P.168)
How do I print enlargements of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER** ?	By using Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (iR enlargement copy), you can automatically print enlargements of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. ⇒Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (→P.168)

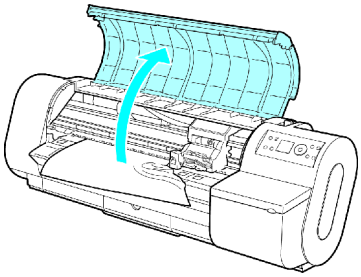
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Problems Regarding Paper

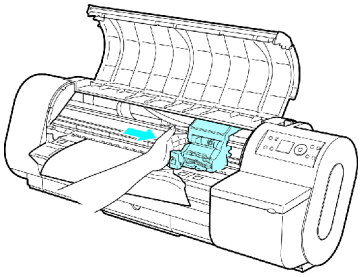
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper

If roll paper jams, follow the steps below to remove jams.

1. Turn the printer off. (→P.22)
2. Open the Top Cover.

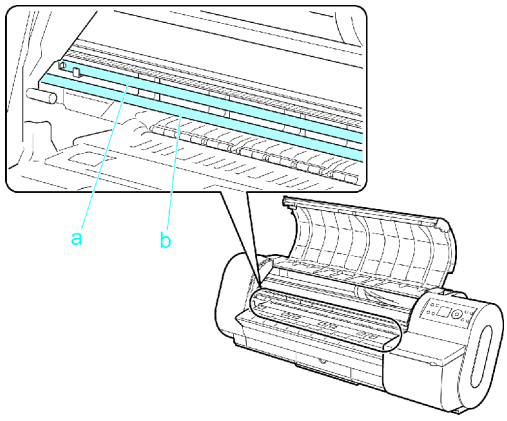


3. If the Carriage is out, move the Carriage to separate it from the paper.



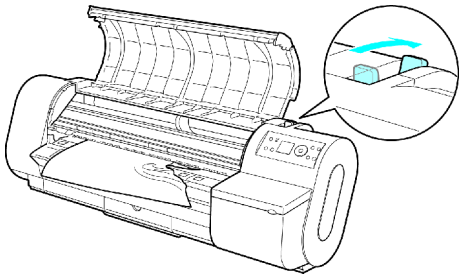
Important

- If you push the Carriage to the left edge, the blade of the Cutter Unit will be lowered in preparation to cut the paper. Be careful not to pinch your fingers between the Carriage and Platen if you have pushed the Carriage to the left edge or if a paper jam occurs during cutting.
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).

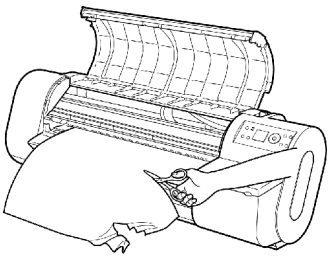


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

4. Push the Release Lever back.



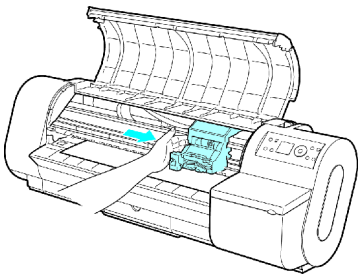
5. Holding the paper on both sides, pull the jammed portion out toward the front. Use a scissors to cut away the printed or wrinkled portion.



Caution

- When cutting paper, be careful to avoid injury and damaging the printer.

6. If the Carriage is on the left, move the Carriage to the right until it stops.

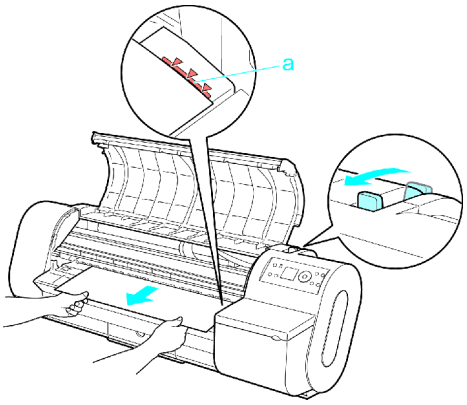


Important

- Always move the Carriage to the right side. If the Carriage is on the left, a Carriage error may occur when you turn on the printer.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

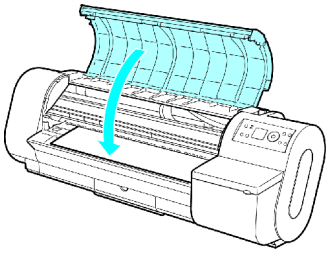
7. Pull the roll edge gently and align it with the Paper Alignment Line (a). Lower the Release Lever toward the front.



Important

- Do not force the roll paper into alignment with the Paper Alignment Line (a). This may prevent the paper from being advanced straight.
- The amount of paper pulled from the roll corresponds to the margin of the leading edge.

8. Close the Top Cover.



9. Turn the printer on. (→P.22)

The roll is now advanced. After it is finished being advanced, you can resume printing.

Note

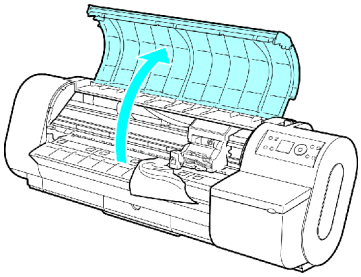
- You can ensure that the edge is cut neatly by following the steps below.
  1. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer offline.
  2. Hold down the ▼ button to advance the paper.
  3. Set **Paper Cutting** to **Yes** in the printer menu, and the edge will be cut.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

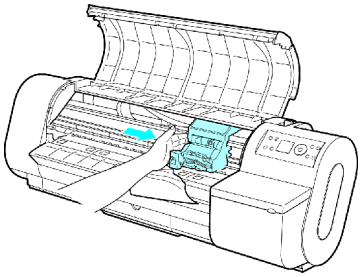
Clearing a Jammed Sheet

If a sheet jams, follow the steps below to remove it.

1. Turn the printer off. (→P.22)
2. Open the Top Cover.

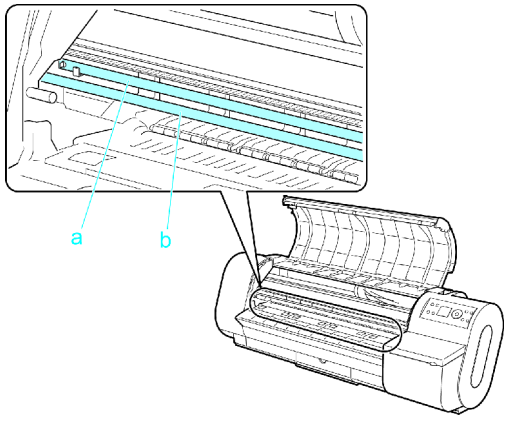


3. If the Carriage is out, move the Carriage to separate it from the paper.

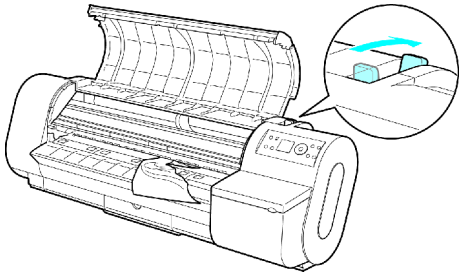


Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).

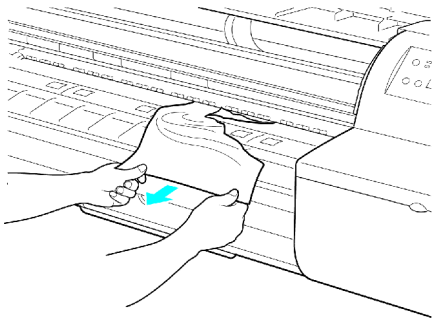


4. Push the Release Lever back.

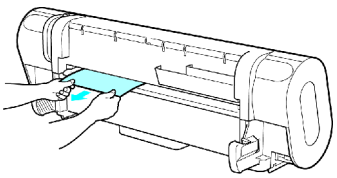


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

5. If the paper is visible, grasp the paper and pull it forward.

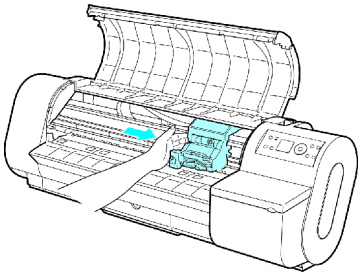


6. If you cannot see the paper, remove the scrap from behind the printer.



After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

7. If the Carriage is on the left, move the Carriage to the right until it stops.



Important

- Always move the Carriage to the right side. If the Carriage is on the left, a Carriage error may occur when you turn on the printer.

8. Turn the printer on. (→P.22)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Roll paper cannot be inserted into the Paper Feed Slot

Cause	Corrective Action
The roll paper is warped.	Straighten out curls and reload the roll.

Cannot Load Sheets

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper source selection is incorrect.	Press the **Feeder Selection** button to activate the **Cut Sheet lamp**.

Paper is not cut neatly

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper is bent or curled at the cut position.	Straighten out any curling by the edges of the paper.
Paper rises by the ends of the cut position before it is cut.	Reload the paper correctly.
The Cutter Unit is installed incorrectly.	Install the Cutter Unit correctly. (→P.526)
The blade of the Cutter Unit is dull.	Replace the Cutter Unit. (→P.526)

Paper cannot be cut

Cause	Corrective Action
In the printer driver, **No** or **Print Cut Guideline** is specified in **Auto Cut**.	Specify **Yes** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver.
In **MAIN MENU**, **Eject** or **Manual** is specified in **Cutting Mode**.	Specify **Automatic** in **Cutting Mode** in **MAIN MENU**.
The Cutter Unit is not installed.	Install the Cutter Unit. (→P.526)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing does not start

The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is not on.	Make sure the power cord is securely plugged in, all the way. Press the **Power** button to turn the printer on.
The printer is not selected in the printer driver. (The printer is in Sleep mode.)	In Windows, select the printer by clicking **Select Printer** or **Printer** in the printing dialog box and try printing again.
	In Mac OS X, select the printer by clicking **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) and try printing again.
The print job is paused. (The printer is in Sleep mode.)	In Windows, restart the print job as follows. 1. Select the printer icon in the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window. 2. Clear **Pause Printing** in the **File** menu to restart the print job.
	In Mac OS X, restart the print job as follows. 1. Open the **Printer Setup Utility** (or the **Print Center**). 2. Select the printer, and then **Start Jobs** in the **Printers** menu to restart the print job.

The Printer Does Not Respond Even if Print Jobs are Sent

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is offline.	Press the **Online** button on the Control Panel to bring the printer online.

The Display Screen indicates the system is filling with ink

Cause	Corrective Action
When the printer was turned off previously, some cleaning operation was terminated.	Wait until the system has been filled with ink. This process may take about ten minutes.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

The printer stops during a print job

An error message is shown on the Display Screen

Status	Corrective Action
An error message is displayed during printing.	Check the error message and take action as necessary. (→P.576)
The last portion of roll paper was used during a print job, and paper could not be advanced because the trailing edge is taped to the roll.	Remove the used roll and insert a new roll. (→P.113) (→P.114) (→P.114) (→P.82)

The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper

Status	Corrective Action
The leading edge of the roll paper was cut to straighten it.	This operation is normal. The printer cuts the leading edge of the roll to straighten it and ejects the scraps when **Trim Edge First** in the printer menu is **On** or when **Trim Edge First** is **Automatic** and the leading edge is slanted. The printer is ready to print after this initial preparation. When **Off** is selected under **Trim Edge First**, the edge is not cut and scraps are not removed.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and make sure the Printhead is in good condition for printing. (→P.516) Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.517)
A print job was received from an incompatible printer driver.	Use the correct imagePROGRAF printer driver for the printer and try printing again.
The printer has received print data that includes HP RTL commands when **Auto Rotate** is **On**.	Set **Auto Rotate** to **Off** before attempting to print again. (→P.50)
The printer is damaged.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving)

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is analyzing the print job.	Either wait a while for printing to resume, or on the printer Control Panel, set **Input Resolution** to **300dpi**. (→P.50)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Problems with the printing quality

Printing is faint

Cause	Corrective Action
You may be printing on the wrong side of the paper.	Print on the printing surface.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (→P.516)
Because the printer was left without Ink Tanks installed for some time, ink has become clogged in the ink supply system.	After the Ink Tank has been installed for 24 hours, run **Head Cleaning B**. (→P.517)
Paper is jammed inside the Top Cover.	Follow the steps below to remove the jammed piece of paper inside the Top Cover. 1. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer offline. 2. Open the Top Cover and make sure the Carriage is not over the Platen. 3. Remove any scraps of paper inside the Top Cover. 4. Close the Top Cover. For tips on clearing paper jams, refer to the following topics. • Clearing Jammed Roll Paper (→P.115) • Clearing a Jammed Sheet (→P.138)
During borderless printing, the ink was not dry enough before cutting.	Specify a longer drying period in the printer menu, in **Roll DryingTime** in **Paper Details**. (→P.50)
Printing may be faint if **Print Quality** in **Advanced Settings** in the printer driver is set to **Standard** or **Draft**.	In **Advanced Settings** in the printer driver, choose **Highest** or **High** in **Print Quality**. (→P.180)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper rubs against the Printhead

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper type as specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer. (*1)	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (→P.110) (→P.133)
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the paper type in the printer driver and try printing again.
Paper has been loaded incorrectly, causing it to wrinkle.	Reload the paper. (→P.110) (→P.133)
The Printhead is set too low.	In **Head Height**, choose **Automatic**. (→P.497)
You are printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily after absorbing ink.	When printing on Heavyweight Coated Paper or other paper-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Strong**, or **Strongest**. If the paper is still scratched, try setting the Printhead level in **Head Height** to **Highest**. (→P.506) (→P.497)
	When printing on CAD Tracing Paper or other film-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Standard**, **Strong**, or **Strongest**. If the paper is still scratched, try setting the Printhead level in **Head Height** to **Highest**. (→P.506) (→P.497)
	When printing on paper 0.1 mm (0.004 in) thin or thinner, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Weakest**. If the paper is still scratched, try setting the Printhead level in **Head Height** to **Highest**. (→P.506) (→P.497)

*1: Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting on the printer.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

The edges of the paper are dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen has become dirty after borderless printing or printing on small paper.	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. (→P.538)
The paper type as specified on the printer does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	Make sure the same paper type is specified on the printer as in the printer driver. (→P.105) (→P.132)
	Make sure the same paper type is specified in the printer driver as on the printer. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the paper type in the printer driver and try printing again.
The paper is wrinkled or warped.	Straighten out the wrinkles or curls and reload the paper. Do not use paper that has been printed on previously. (→P.110) (→P.133)
A cut line is printed because the function to reduce cutting dust has been activated.	If this function is not needed, deactivate **CutDustReduct.** through the printer menu. (→P.50)
The Printhead is set too low.	In **Head Height**, choose **Automatic**. (→P.497)
You are printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily after absorbing ink.	When printing on Heavyweight Coated Paper or other paper-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Strong** or **Strongest**. If paper still rubs against the printhead, try raising the Printhead by setting **Head Height** to **Highest**. (→P.506) (→P.497)
	When printing on CAD Tracing Paper or film-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Standard**, **Strong**, or **Strongest**. If paper still rubs against the printhead, try raising the Printhead by setting **Head Height** to **Highest**. (→P.506) (→P.497)
The Ejection Guide is soiled.	Clean the Ejection Guide. (→P.537)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

The surface of the paper is dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Paper Retainer is soiled.	Clean the Paper Retainer. (→P.540)
You are using a paper that does not dry easily.	Specify a time of about a minute in **Roll DryingTime**.

The back side of the paper is dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen has become dirty after borderless printing or printing on small paper.	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. (→P.538)
The Paper Retainer is soiled.	Clean the Paper Retainer. (→P.540)

Printed colors are inaccurate

Cause	Corrective Action
Color adjustment has not been activated in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver.	In the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, access **Color Settings** in **Color Mode** to adjust colors.
Colors have not been adjusted on the computer or monitor.	Refer to the computer and monitor documentation to adjust the colors.
	Adjust the settings of the color management software, referring to the software documentation as needed.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (→P.516)
In the printer driver, **Application Color Matching Priority** is not selected.	Click **Special Settings** on the **Layout** sheet of the printer driver and select **Application Color Matching Priority** in the dialog box.
Printhead characteristics gradually change through repeated use, and colors may change.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.491) (→P.493)
Color may change slightly even on the same model of printer if you use a different version of the firmware or printer driver, or when you print under different settings or in a different printing environment.	Follow these steps to prepare the printing environment. 1. Use the same version of firmware, printer driver, and other software. 2. Specify the same value for all settings items.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Banding in different colors occurs

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper feed amount is not adjusted correctly.	Adjust the feed amount. (→P.498)
Printing does not proceed smoothly because print jobs are interrupted during transmission.	Exit other applications and cancel other print jobs.
In the printer menu, **Print Length** is specified in **Feed Priority**.	Selecting **Band Joint** may improve printing results. Adjust the feed amount in the printer menu by specifying **Band Joint** in **Feed Priority** and try printing again. (→P.498)
The Printhead is out of alignment.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.491)
Streaks may occur if you set the **Print Quality** too low.	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver and try printing again. (→P.180)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Colors in printed images are uneven

Cause	Corrective Action
Line Drawing/Text is selected when printing images in many solid colors.	Specify **Image** in the printer driver.
You are printing on paper that curls easily.	Printed colors may appear uneven on the leading edge of paper that is susceptible to curling. Increase the level of vacuum holding the paper against the Platen or specify a margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) or more for the leading edge. (→P.506)
Printed colors may be uneven if you set the **Print Quality** too low.	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver. (→P.180)
Color may be uneven between dark and light image areas.	Select **Unidirectional Printing** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver.
When using Borderless Printing, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may not be even at the edges.	Specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver before printing. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Cut the printed document ejected from the printer, then use scissors to cut away the edges on the top and bottom.
	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver. (→P.180)
The Printhead is out of alignment.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.491)
Drying documents stacked on each other may cause uneven colors.	To avoid uneven colors, we recommend drying each sheet separately.
Color density may be uneven if you use Glossy Paper, art paper, or Coated Paper.	In **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, choose **Highest** or **High** in **Print Quality**.

Image Edges are Blurred or White Banding Occurs

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen suction is too strong.	Set **VacuumStrngth** to **Weakest**. (→P.506)
The Printhead is set too high.	Lower the Printhead. (→P.497)

The contrast becomes uneven during printing

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper feed amount is out of adjustment.	Adjust the feed amount. (→P.498)
	Execute **Fine Band Adj.** during printing. (→P.498)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

The length of printed images is inaccurate

Cause	Corrective Action
In the printer menu, **Band Joint** is specified in **Feed Priority**.	To ensure the feed amount matches the paper size, select **Print Length** in **Feed Priority** in the printer menu and enter the amount for adjustment in **Adjust Length**. You can adjust the feed amount in 0.02% increments. (→P.50)

Documents are printed crooked

Cause	Corrective Action
Skew **Skew Check Lv.** has been set to **Loose** or **Off**.	Choose **Standard** in **Skew Check Lv.**.
Width Detection has been set to **Off**.	Choose **On** in **Width Detection**.

Documents are printed in monochrome

Cause	Corrective Action
In the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, **Monochrome**, **Monochrome (BK ink)**, or **Monochrome Bitmap** is specified in **Color Mode**.	In the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, specify **Color** in **Color Mode** and try printing again.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the color ink nozzles and see if they are clogged. (→P.516)

Line thickness is not uniform (Windows)

Cause	Corrective Action
In the **Special Settings** dialog box of the Windows printer driver, **Fast Graphic Process** is selected.	Open the printer driver's **Properties** dialog box from **Print** in the application software's **File** menu, and try printing following the steps below. 1. Remove the check from **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** in the **Main** sheet. 2. Remove the check from **Page Layout** in the **Layout** sheet. 3. Click the **Special Settings** button in the **Layout** sheet to open the **Special Settings** dialog box, and remove the check from **Fast Graphic Process**.

Lines are misaligned

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead alignment is not adjusted.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.491) (→P.493) (→P.495)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Thin lines are not printed after switching to Economy Printing mode

Cause	Corrective Action
You have selected **Economy Printing** in the printer driver before printing.	Clear the **Economy Printing** check box in the printer driver and try printing again.

Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper

For paper-specific troubleshooting tips to improve the printing quality, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cannot print over a network

Cannot connect the printer to the network

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ethernet cable is not connected correctly to the printer's Ethernet port.	1. Make sure the printer is connected to the network with the correct Ethernet cable, and then turn the printer on. For instructions on connecting the cable, refer to the Quick Start Guide. 2. Make sure the Link indicator is lit. The Link indicator is green if the printer is connected via 100 Base-TX and orange if connected via 10Base-T. If the Link indicator is not lit, check the following points. • Make sure the hub is on. • Make sure the end of the Ethernet cable is connected correctly. Insert the Ethernet cable until it clicks and locks in place. • Make sure there is no problem with the Ethernet cable. If there is any problem, replace the Ethernet cable. • Check the communication mode with the hub. Although the printer normally detects the hub communication mode and transmission rate automatically (in auto negotiation mode), sometimes the hub settings cannot be detected. In this case, configure the connection method manually, specifying the communication mode in use. (→P.414)

Cannot print over a TCP/IP network

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer's IP address is not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly. (→P.378) (→P.405)
The printer's TCP/IP network settings are not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's TCP/IP network settings are configured correctly. (→P.408)
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's TCP/IP network settings are configured correctly. (→P.417) (→P.436)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cannot print over a NetWare network

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer's NetWare settings are not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's NetWare settings are configured correctly. In particular, make sure a valid frame type is selected. For details, see "Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings". (→P.411)
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's NetWare settings are configured correctly. For details, see "Configuring NetWare Network Settings". (→P.429)
The NetWare server and services are not configured correctly.	Check the following points. 1. Make sure the NetWare file server is running. 2. Make sure there is enough free disk space on the NetWare file server. Insufficient disk space may prevent you from processing large print jobs. 3. Start NWADMIN or PCONSOLE and confirm that the print service is configured correctly and the print queue is available. 4. If data transmission to a printer on another subnet fails, deactivate NCP burst mode in that printer's network protocol settings. 5. If the printer is used in queue server mode, specify "Other/Unknown" as the printer type.
The printer was turned off and on when not disconnected from the server.	Leave the printer off for at least 30 seconds, and then restore power.

Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks

Cause	Corrective Action
The AppleTalk protocol is not enabled on the printer.	Activate AppleTalk on the printer. (→P.410)
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's AppleTalk settings are configured correctly. (→P.433) (→P.438)
The computer and printer are not on the same network.	Due to the nature of Bonjour, you cannot print if the printer is on another network behind a router. Make sure the computer and printer are on the same network. For information about network settings, ask your network administrator.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Installation problems

The IEEE 1394 Driver Cannot Be Installed Correctly

In Windows, the device interface driver may not be installed correctly in some cases if you connected the IEEE 1394 cable before installing the printer driver.
If so, reinstall the IEEE 1394 device interface driver and the printer driver as follows.

Important

- This procedure is based on an example for Windows XP. The name of the wizard may be different in other operating systems.

1. Right-click **My Computer** and choose **Properties** to display the **System Properties** window.
2. On the **Hardware** sheet, click **Device Manager** to display the **Device Manager** window.
3. Right-click **Other Devices** icon and choose **Properties**.
4. On the **Driver** sheet, click **Update Driver** to start the **Hardware Update Wizard** (or the **Upgrade Device Driver Wizard**.)
5. Follow the instructions on the screen.
6. When the window is displayed to choose the source for driver installation, select the CD-ROM drive. Insert the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer and follow the instructions on the screen.
   The device/interface driver is installed.
   The device is detected, and the **New Hardware Wizard** (or **Add New Hardware Wizard**) is started.
7. Follow the instructions on the screen.
8. When the window is displayed to choose the source for driver installation, select the printer driver folder.
   Choose the CD-ROM drive > **Driver** > **WinXP_2K** > **Driver**, and click **OK**. (For Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003)
9. Follow the instructions on the screen.
   The printer driver is installed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Removing Installed Printer Drivers

Follow these steps to remove installed printer drivers and utilities.

Removing printer drivers (Windows)

Remove the printer driver as follows.

Note

- In Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista/Windows Server 2008, you must log on with administrative rights, such as those of the “Administrator” account.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs** > **Canon Printer Uninstaller** > **imagePROGRAF Printer Driver Uninstaller** to display the **Delete Printer** window.
2. Select the printer in the list and click **Delete**.
3. Click **Yes** after the **Warning** message is displayed.
4. Make sure that the printer has been removed from the list, and then click **Exit**.

Removing printer drivers and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

Remove the printer driver or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor as follows.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Start the printer driver installer included in the User Software CD-ROM.
   Open the **OS X** folder and double-click **iPF Driver Installer X**.
3. In the upper left menu, choose **Uninstall**, and then click **Uninstall**.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove the printer driver or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Removing imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

Remove imagePROGRAF Status Monitor as follows.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs** > **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor** > **Uninstaller (imagePROGRAF Status Monitor)** to start the wizard.
2. In the wizard window, click **Delete**, and then click **Next**.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.

Removing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (Windows)

Remove imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility as follows.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs** > **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** > **Uninstaller (imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility)** to start the wizard.
2. In the wizard window, click **Delete**, and then click **Next**.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

HP-GL/2 problems

With HP-GL/2, printing is misaligned.

Cause	Corrective Action
The plotter origin is incorrect.	Check the printing commands.

Lines or images are missing in the HP-GL/2 data that was printed.

Cause	Corrective Action
The memory is full.	Check the size of the data in the print job.
An HP-GL/2 command not supported by this printer was received.	Check the print job and settings.
The printer has received print data that includes HP RTL commands when **Auto Rotate** is **On**.	Set **Auto Rotate** to **Off** before attempting to print again. (→P.50)

Lines Are Printed Too Thick or Thin During HP-GL/2 Printing

Cause	Corrective Action
The **Line Width** setting in the main menu is incorrect.	Confirm the selection in **Line Width**. If fine lines are printed faint, setting **ThickenFineLines** to **On** in the main menu will print the lines more distinctly. (→P.50)

HP-GL/2 jobs are printed in monochrome (or color).

Cause	Corrective Action
The color mode is incorrect.	On the printer Control Panel, check the color mode setting. (→P.50)

For optimal printhead performance, the printer consumes trace amounts of color ink even in monochrome mode.

Printed Colors in Line Drawings are Inaccurate During HP-GL/2 Printing

Cause	Corrective Action
AdjustFaintLines in the main menu is set to **On**.	Selecting **Off** may help produce the expected results. However, lines in some colors may appear broken.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

HP-GL/2 jobs are printed 6 mm larger than specified

Cause	Corrective Action
The page size of the HP-GL/2 print job, as created in the source application, is incorrect.	In **MAIN MENU**, set **PageSizeProcess1** to **On**. (→P.50)

HP-GL/2 jobs are printed at maximum size, even if a standard size is specified

Cause	Corrective Action
The page size of the HP-GL/2 print job, as created in the source application, is incorrect.	In **MAIN MENU**, set **PageSizeProcess2** or **Conserve Paper** to **On**. The layout will be changed to the optimal layout. (→P.50)

HP-GL/2 printing takes a long time.

Cause	Corrective Action
Large print jobs with a lot of data take longer to print.	On the printer Control Panel, set **Input Resolution** to **300dpi**. (→P.50)

The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving)

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is analyzing the print job.	Either wait a while for printing to resume, or on the printer Control Panel, set **Input Resolution** to **300dpi**. (→P.50)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Other problems

The printer does not go on

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is unplugged.	Plug the power cord into the outlet, and then turn on the printer.
The specified voltage is not supplied.	Check the voltage of the outlet and breaker. (→P.74)

If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound

The following sounds do not indicate a problem with the printer.

- There is a sound of vacuum from the Platen
  To prevent paper from rising, paper is held against the Platen by suction from Vacuum holes under it.
- When a Roll is Rewound, There is a Sound as if the Paper is Pulled Taut
  This sound may be heard when rolls are loaded. When rolls are automatically rewound, you may hear the sound of pulling paper taut.
- Roll paper makes a fluttering sound during printing
  There may be a fluttering sound when large paper is advanced.
- There is a Hissing or Whistling Noise
  Parts inside the printer may resonate with the sound made by the Carriage as it moves quickly.
- The Carriage Makes a Noise When Returning
  This sound may be heard during automatic adjustment of the printhead. Protective parts by the ink tubes, which move in response to the Carriage, may strongly swing when the Carriage returns, causing a sound when the parts touch the inner wall of the printer.
- If you suddenly hear the tone for cleaning operations
  At regular intervals, for printer maintenance, cleaning operations will begin automatically, even if the printer is in Sleep mode.

In other cases, contact your Canon dealer.

Messages advising to check the maintenance cartridge are not cleared

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has not detected the new Maintenance Cartridge that was used to replace the old one.	Remove the new Maintenance Cartridge you have just installed and insert it again firmly.
	Restart the printer.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

The printer consumes a lot of ink

Cause	Corrective Action
Many full-page color images are printed.	In print jobs such as photos, images are filled with color. This consumes a lot of ink. This does not indicate a problem with the printer.
Head Cleaning B is used often.	**Head Cleaning B** consumes a lot of ink. This does not indicate a problem with the printer. Unless the printer has been moved or stored for a long period or you are troubleshooting Printhead problems, we recommend not performing **Head Cleaning B**, to the extent possible.
You have just finished initial installation, when more ink is consumed to fill the system.	After initial installation or at the first-time use after transfer, ink flows into the system between the Ink Tank and Printhead, which may cause the ink level indicators to drop to 80%. This does not indicate a problem with the printer.

Ink Level Detection

Ink level detection will be deactivated if you load ink tanks once emptied.

Ink level detection

Ink tanks specified for this printer feature an ink level detection function to prevent the ink from running out during printing, which prevents printer damage. (→P.507)
This function will not work correctly if you use refill ink tanks. As a result, printing stops. Thus, before using refill ink tanks, you must cancel the ink level detection.
Printing with the ink level detection canceled may lead to printer damage and printing problems. Canon Inc. is not liable for any damage that may occur as a result of refilling ink.

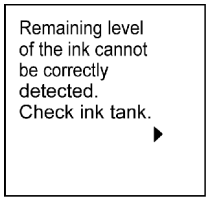
Caution

- After ink level detection has been disabled, this function cannot be reactivated for the currently loaded Ink Tank. To use ink level detection again, replace the Ink Tank with a new ink tank specified for use with the printer.
- Repeatedly removing and inserting an Ink Tank may damage the connection between the Ink Tank and the printer, which may cause ink leakage from the Ink Tank and damage the printer.

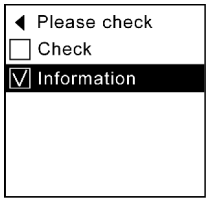
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Disabling ink level detection

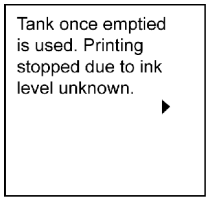
1. On the Display Screen, a message indicates that the ink level cannot be detected. After checking the message, press the ► button.



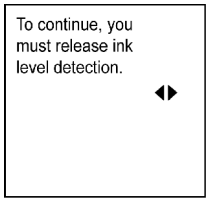
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Information**, and then press the **OK** button.



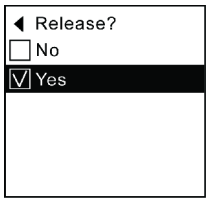
3. A confirmation message is shown on the Display Screen about disabling ink level detection. After checking the message, press the ► button.



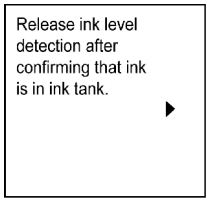
4. After checking the message, press the ► button.



5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

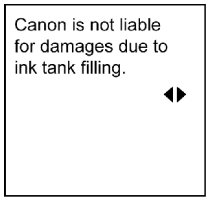


6. Check the message and press the ► button.

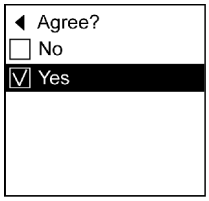


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

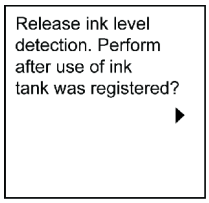
7. Check the message and press the ► button.



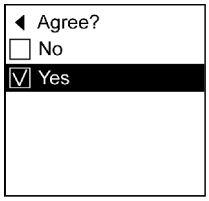
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



9. A confirmation message about updating ink information is shown on the Display Screen. After checking the message, press the ► button.



10. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



Ink level detection is now disabled, and the printer goes online.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Error Message

Responding to Messages

Responding to Messages

Error messages

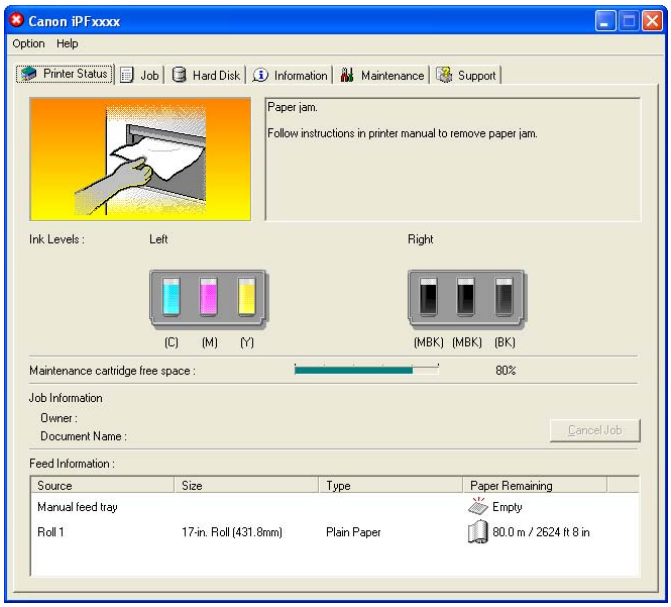
Check the message and take the appropriate action. (→P.576)

Other Messages

These messages do not prevent printer operation. Check the information on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. Messages requiring special attention are as follows:

Note

- Messages are also displayed in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) or **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor** (Macintosh).



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Error Messages

Error messages

Check the message and take the appropriate action.

- Borderless printng not possible. (→P.584)
- Cannot adjust band. (→P.587)
- Cannot adjust printhead. (→P.587)
- Cannot cut this paper. (→P.583)
- Cannot detect papr (→P.582)
- Cannot feed paper. (→P.581)
- Cannot feed paper. (→P.583)
- Cannot print as specified. (→P.587)
- Carriage Cover is open. (→P.595)
- End of paper feed. (→P.583)
- ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) (→P.594)
- Execute printhead cleaning. (→P.589)
- File read error. (→P.591)
- GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number) (→P.594)
- GL2: W0502 The parameter is out of range. (→P.593)
- GL2: W0504 This command is not supported. (→P.593)
- GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full. (xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904) (→P.593)
- Hard disk error. (→P.591)
- Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) (→P.594)
- Ink insufficient. (→P.585)
- Ink Level: Check (→P.586)
- Ink tank error. (→P.586)
- No ink left. (→P.585)
- Insufficient paper for job (→P.579)
- Leading edge detection error. (→P.583)
- Mail box full. Cannot save. (→P.592)
- Mail box full. (→P.591)
- Mail box full. Delete unwanted data (→P.591)
- Mail box full. Now printing without saving data. (→P.591)
- Mail box nearly full. (→P.591)
- Maintenance cartridge full. (→P.590)
- Maintenance cartridge problem. (→P.590)
- Multi-sensor error (→P.595)
- No ink tank loaded. (→P.586)
- No Maintenance Cartridge capacity. (→P.590)
- No maintenance cartridge. (→P.590)
- No sheets. (→P.581)
- Paper jam. (→P.582)
- Paper loaded askew. (→P.582)
- Paper Mismatch (→P.578)
- Paper size not detected. (→P.579)
- Papr Size Mismatch (→P.578)
- Papr Type Mismatch (→P.578)
- Parts replacement time has passed. (→P.595)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- PHead needs cleaning. (→P.588)
- Prepare for maint cart replacement. (→P.590)
- Prepare for parts replacement. (→P.595)
- Printhead error (→P.589)
- Problem with Printhead (→P.588)
- Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded. (→P.581)
- Rel lever is in wrong position. (→P.583)
- Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded. (→P.580)
- Roll printing is selected. (→P.580)
- Sheet printing is selected. (→P.581)
- The roll is empty. (→P.580)
- This paper cannot be used. (→P.579)
- This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2. (→P.593)
- Top cover is open. (→P.595)
- Unknown file. (→P.595)
- Use another paper. (→P.587)

Other Messages

These messages do not prevent printer operation. Check the information on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. Messages requiring special attention are as follows:

- Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected. (→P.586)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Messages regarding paper

Paper Mismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
You printed a test pattern for printer adjustment on several sheets, but sheets of different types or sizes of paper were used.	When printing a test pattern, use sheets of the same type and size of paper.

Papr Type Mismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper type as specified on the printer does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	Make sure the same type of paper is specified on the printer as in the printer driver. (→P.82) (→P.86)
	Follow these steps to ensure the paper type matches on the printer and in the printer driver. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Either change the type of paper specified in the printer driver settings or replace the loaded paper and change the paper type setting on the printer.
	Press the **Online** button to resume printing. However, this may cause a paper jam or printing problem.

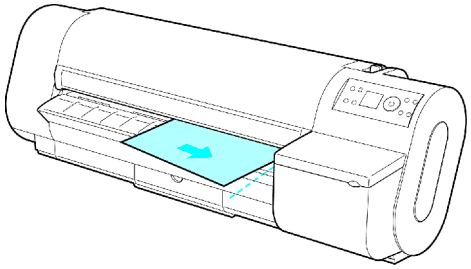
*Printing will continue if you have set **Detect Mismatch** to **Warning** or **None**.

Papr Size Mismatch

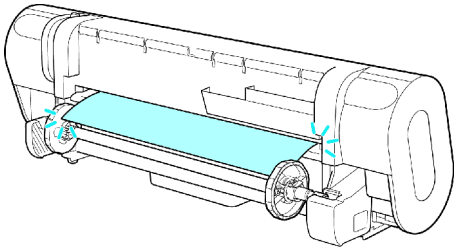
Cause	Corrective Action
The paper size as specified on the printer does not match the size specified in the printer driver.	Adjust the paper size setting in the printer driver to match the size loaded in the printer as follows. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the paper size setting in the printer driver to the size loaded in the printer and try printing again.
	Replace the loaded paper with paper of a size that matches the size setting in the printer driver as follows. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Replace the loaded paper to match the paper size setting in the printer driver and try printing again.
	Press the **Online** button to resume printing. However, this may cause a paper jam or printing problem.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper size not detected.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper has been loaded askew, or warped paper has been loaded. 	Reload paper straight, in the correct position. (→P.110) (→P.133)

Insufficient paper for job

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received a print job longer than the amount of roll paper left. 	Follow the steps below to replace the roll. 1. Remove the roll. (→P.113) (→P.114) (→P.114) 2. Load a roll with enough paper left. (→P.107) (→P.109) (→P.110) 3. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the paper type. (→P.105) 4. Specify the paper length, unless a barcode has been printed on the roll and you have deactivated the automatic detection function of the remaining roll paper. (→P.106)
	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing.
	Press the **Online** button to resume printing. However, the roll paper may run out during the print job and you may not be able to print all of the document.

This paper cannot be used.

Check supported paper sizes.

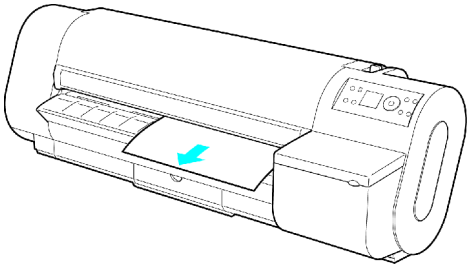
Cause	Corrective Action
Paper that is too large for the printer has been loaded.	Load paper of the correct size. (→P.101)
Paper that is too small for the printer has been loaded.	Load paper of the correct size. (→P.101)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

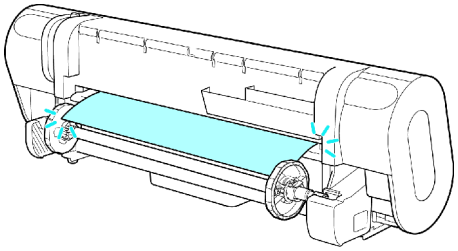
Roll printing is selected.

Cause	Corrective Action
You have attempted to print a test print sheet or other printer status information on a roll, but no roll is loaded.	Load a roll and try printing again.
	To print on a sheet instead, hold the **Stop** button for more than a second to cancel printing, load a sheet, and then print. (→P.86)

Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded.

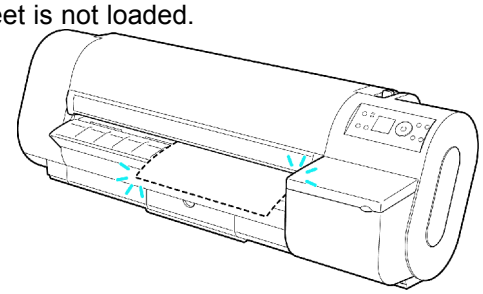
Cause	Corrective Action
A print job for rolls was received when a sheet is loaded. 	Press the **OK** button and remove the sheet. (→P.137) Load a roll and try printing again. (→P.110)
	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing.

The roll is empty.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no more paper left on the roll. 	Follow the steps below to replace the used roll with a new roll of the same type and size. 1. Remove the roll. (→P.113) (→P.114) (→P.114) 2. Load the new roll. (→P.107) (→P.109) (→P.110) 3. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the paper type. (→P.105) 4. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the paper length. (→P.106)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

No sheets.

Cause	Corrective Action
A sheet is not loaded. 	Load paper of the type and size you have specified in the printer driver. (→P.133)
	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing.

Sheet printing is selected.

Cause	Corrective Action
You have attempted to print a test print sheet or other printer status information on a sheet, but no sheet is loaded.	Load a sheet and try printing again.
	To print on a roll instead, hold the **Stop** button for more than a second to cancel printing, load a roll, and then print. (→P.82)

Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded.

Cause	Corrective Action
A print job for printing on sheets was sent when a roll is loaded.	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing.
	Load sheets of the type and size you have specified in the printer driver. (→P.86)
	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing.Change the printer driver settings to match the roll already loaded and try printing again.

Cannot feed paper.

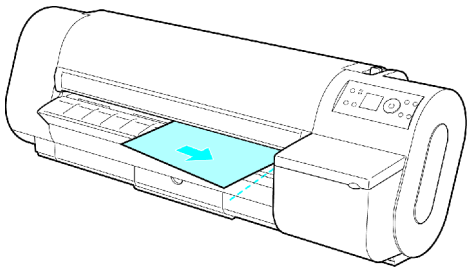
Cause	Corrective Action
The paper has come out of the printer.	Remove the paper, press the **Load/Eject** button, and reload the paper.
A paper jam has occurred.	Lift the Release Lever, remove the jammed paper, and reload paper.
	If the error occurs again, turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper jam.

Cause	Corrective Action
A paper jam occurred in the printer during printing.	Lift the Release Lever and remove the jammed paper. (→P.115) (→P.138)

Paper loaded askew.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper has been loaded askew. 	Follow the steps below to reload the roll. 1. Open the Top Cover. 2. Push the Release Lever back. 3. Align the right edge of the roll paper parallel to the Paper Alignment Line. 4. Pull the Release Lever forward. 5. Close the Top Cover. 6. Select the paper type. (→P.105)
	Follow the steps below to reload the sheet. 1. Open the Top Cover. 2. Push the Release Lever back. 3. Align the right edge of the sheet parallel to the right Paper Alignment Line and the far edge parallel to the inner paper alignment line. 4. Pull the Release Lever forward. 5. Close the Top Cover.

Note

- To disable this message (if it is displayed repeatedly despite reloading paper, for example), choose **Off** or **Loose** in the **Skew Check Lv.** setting of the printer menu. However, this may cause jams as paper may be askew when it is printed. Also, the Platen may become soiled, which may soil the back of the next document when it is printed.

Cannot detect papr

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper has come out of the printer.	Remove the paper that has come out of the printer, press the **Load/Eject** button, and reload the paper. (→P.82) (→P.86)
A paper jam occurred in the printer.	Lift the Release Lever, remove the jammed paper, press the **Load/Eject** button, and reload paper. (→P.115) (→P.138)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Leading edge detection error.

Cause	Corrective Action
A roll has been loaded when sheets are selected as the paper source on the Control Panel.	Either remove the roll and load a sheet or select the roll as the media source on the Control Panel.
The sheet is loaded askew.	Reload the sheet straight, in the correct position. (→P.133)

Cannot feed paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper came out of the feed path during feeding.	Reload the paper correctly and advance it again. (→P.110)
	If the message is displayed when paper is not being advanced, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Cannot cut this paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
There are sheets left on the Ejection Guide.	Remove the paper.
There is a foreign object by the Output Tray, obstructing the Cutter Unit.	Remove the foreign object.
You are not using the printer under the recommended environmental conditions for the paper.	Use the printer only where the recommended environmental conditions for the paper are met. Note that various environmental conditions are recommended for various types of paper. For details on the recommended environmental conditions for paper, see “Types of Paper”. (→P.96)
You are using paper that is not compatible with automatic cutting.	Cut the roll manually. (→P.122)
The Cutter Unit stops in the middle of cutting.	Move the Carriage to the left, remove the paper, and return the Carriage to the right. If the roll cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit, cut the roll manually. (→P.115) (→P.122)
The Cutter Unit is not installed.	Install the Cutter Unit. (→P.526)
In other cases, the Cutter Unit may be damaged.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

End of paper feed.

Cause	Corrective Action
You are pressing the ▲ button on the Control Panel and trying to rewind the roll to the edge.	Release the ▲ button.

Rel lever is in wrong position.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Release Lever is pushed back.	Pull the Release Lever forward.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless printng not possible.

Check roll position.

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper is loaded askew.	Press the **Load/Eject** button and reload the paper. Insert the roll firmly until it touches the flange of the Roll Holder. (→P.107) (→P.109) (→P.110)
	If you press the **Online** button and continue printing, the document will be printed with a border.
The paper loaded is not compatible with borderless printing.	Load paper compatible with borderless printing and try printing again. Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)
Because paper expands or contracts depending on the environment of use, it may become narrower or wider than the supported width for borderless printing.	Use each type of paper only where the recommended environmental conditions are met. For details on environmental conditions for various paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)

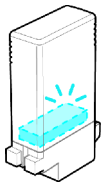
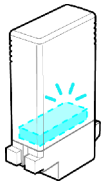
Check supported paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
The print job received specifies a type or width of paper that is not compatible with borderless printing.	Follow these steps to change the settings of the print job to enable borderless printing. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Make sure the correct printer driver for the printer is selected and try printing again. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)
	If you press the **Online** button and continue printing, the document will be printed with a border.

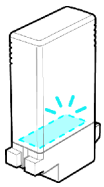
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Messages regarding ink

Ink insufficient.

Cause	Corrective Action
The ink level is low, so you cannot clean the Printhead. 	Press the **OK** button and replace the Ink Tank that is low with a new Ink Tank. (→P.508)
The ink level is low, so there may not be enough ink to finish printing. 	Press the **OK** button and replace the Ink Tank that is low with a new Ink Tank. (→P.508) You can print until the ink runs out by pressing the **Online** button. However, if the ink runs out during printing, the following situation will occur depending on the position of the leading edge when it passes through the printer. 1. **No ink left.** is displayed and printing stops. Press the **Stop** button to cancel printing, or press the **OK** button, replace the ink tank that is low with a new one, and continue printing. However, note that because printing is paused, colors may be slightly different. (→P.508) 2. **Ink tank empty. Canceling printing of this page.** is displayed and printing stops. After the paper is ejected, press the **OK** button and replace the ink tank that is low with a new one. (→P.508)

No ink left.

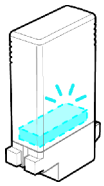
Cause	Corrective Action
There is no ink left. 	Open the Ink Tank Cover and replace the Ink Tank for which the Ink Lamp is flashing. (→P.508)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

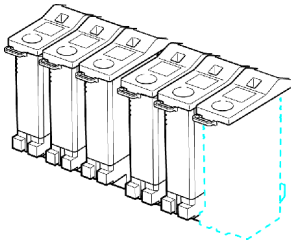
Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected.

Cause	Corrective Action
Ink level detection cannot work correctly if you use refill ink tanks.	The refill ink tank can no longer be used. See the section “Ink level detection” and take the appropriate action. (→P.572)

Ink Level: Check

Cause	Corrective Action
Not much ink is left. 	Prepare a new Ink Tank. We recommend replacing the Ink Tank with a new Ink Tank at this point if you plan to print large-format or high-quantity jobs.

No ink tank loaded.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no Ink Tank of the indicated color in the printer. 	Load or reload the Ink Tank. (→P.508)
There is a problem with the Ink Tank.	Replace it with a new Ink Tank. (→P.508)

Ink tank error.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ink Tank in the printer is incompatible.	Load an Ink Tank specified for use with the printer. (→P.508)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Messages regarding printing or adjusment

Use another paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead and feed amount cannot be adjusted when highly transparent film is loaded.	We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment. (→P.491)
	Adjust the feed amount manually. (→P.501)

Cannot print as specified.

Lift the release lever and replace paper with A4/LTR (vertical) or larger

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is too small.	Switch to paper A4/Letter (vertical) or larger.

Lift the release lever and replace roll with 10 in. wide or larger roll

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is too small.	Load a roll 10 inches wide or larger.

Cannot adjust band.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Follow the steps below to check the nozzles. 1. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (→P.516) 2. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.517)
Highly transparent film is loaded that cannot be used for feed amount adjustment.	Adjust the feed amount manually. (→P.501)

Cannot adjust printhead.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Follow the steps below to check the nozzles. 1. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (→P.516) 2. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.517)
Highly transparent film is loaded that cannot be used for Printhead adjustment.	We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment. (→P.491)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Messages regarding printheads

Cannot adjust printhead.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Follow the steps below to check the nozzles. 1. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (→P.516) 2. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.517)
Highly transparent film is loaded that cannot be used for Printhead adjustment.	We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment. (→P.491)

Cannot adjust band.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Follow the steps below to check the nozzles. 1. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (→P.516) 2. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.517)
Highly transparent film is loaded that cannot be used for feed amount adjustment.	Adjust the feed amount manually. (→P.501)

PHead needs cleaning.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Specify Printhead cleaning options. (→P.517) If the message is still displayed after **Head Cleaning B**, contact the Canon dealer for assistance.

Problem with Printhead

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are becoming clogged.	If printing is faint, clean the Printhead. (→P.517)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printhead error

Cause	Corrective Action
An incompatible Printhead has been installed.	Install a Printhead specified for use with the printer. (→P.518)
There is a problem with the Printhead.	Open the Top Cover. If the Carriage is over the Platen, replace the Printhead with a new one. (→P.518)
	If, after opening the Top Cover, you see that the Carriage is not over the Platen, follow the steps below. 1. Close the Top Cover and press the **Online** button. 2. Replace the Printhead. (→P.518)

Execute printhead cleaning.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Follow these steps to clean the Printhead. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Printhead cleaning options. (→P.517) If this message is still displayed, replace the Printhead. (→P.518)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge

No maintenance cartridge.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is not installed.	Install the Maintenance Cartridge. (→P.528)

Prepare for maint cart replacement.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is almost full.	You can continue to print, but prepare a new Maintenance Cartridge to use when the message for replacement is displayed.

No Maintenance Cartridge capacity.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge cannot absorb enough ink for Printhead cleaning or other operation.	After confirming that the printer has stopped operating, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. (→P.528)

Maintenance cartridge full.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is full.	After confirming that the printer has stopped operating, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. (→P.528)

Maintenance cartridge problem.

Cause	Corrective Action
An incompatible or used Maintenance Cartridge has been installed.	Install a Maintenance Cartridge specified for use with the printer. (→P.528)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Messages regarding the hard disk

Hard disk error.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is a format problem with the printer's hard disk.	Press the **OK** button to start reformatting the hard disk. When formatting is finished, the printer automatically restarts. (Formatting will erase all data on the hard disk.)

File read error.

Cause	Corrective Action
Files on the printer's hard disk have become corrupted.	Restart the printer. Only the corrupted files will be deleted, and the printer will restart.

Mail box full.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no more space on the printer's hard disk.	Press the **Stop** button to cancel the print job.
	Delete print jobs from the queue. (→P.449)
	Delete unneeded jobs stored on the hard disk. (→P.484)

Mail box full. Now printing without saving data.

Cause	Corrective Action
No more space is available on the printer's hard disk, so jobs are now printed without saving them. (Print jobs can no longer be saved on the hard disk.)	After printing, this message is cleared.
	Delete unneeded jobs stored on the hard disk. (→P.484)

Mail box nearly full.

Cause	Corrective Action
The free hard disk space left for Personal Boxes in the printer's hard disk does not have more than 1 GB, combined.	Delete unneeded jobs stored in Personal Boxes. (→P.484)

Mail box full. Delete unwanted data

Cause	Corrective Action
100 jobs are stored in the Personal Box.	Delete unneeded jobs stored in Personal Boxes. (→P.484)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Mail box full. Cannot save.

Cause	Corrective Action
Saved jobs exceed the Personal Box capacity.	Press the **Stop** button to cancel the print job.
	Delete print jobs from the queue. (→P.449)
	Delete unneeded jobs stored on the hard disk. (→P.484)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Messages regarding HP-GL/2

This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2.

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received a HP-GL/2 print job that cannot be printed on the paper that has been advanced.	Replace the paper with a type compatible with HP-GL/2. For details on paper compatible with HP-GL/2, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.96)
	The printer may continue printing, but the printing quality may be affected. Check the printing results.

GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full. (xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904)

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer memory is full.	Because the entire print job could not be received, the printer may not be able to print the entire original. Check the printing results.

GL2: W0502 The parameter is out of range.

Cause	Corrective Action
A parameter specified in a HP-GL/2 command is out of the supported range.	Check the print job.

GL2: W0504 This command is not supported.

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received an unsupported HP-GL/2 command.	Check the print job.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Other Messages

GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number)

Cause	Corrective Action
There is a problem with the print job.	Try printing again, using the correct printer driver.
	It is also possible to continue printing in this state. However, you may not be able to obtain the desired printing results.

ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)

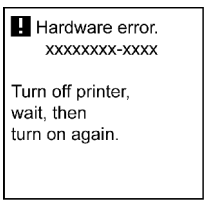
In the following situations, turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring power.
If the message is still displayed, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

- “ERROR” is displayed, followed by the error code and **Call for service.**.

Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)

In the following situations, turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring power. However, keep the printer off and remove the roll if the last portion of roll paper was used during a print job and paper could not be advanced because the trailing edge is taped to the roll. If tape and the Belt Stopper have not been removed from inside the Top Cover, turn off the printer, open the Top Cover, and remove the tape and Belt Stopper before restoring power.
If the message is still displayed, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

- The error message is displayed with the following instructions: **Turn off printer, wait, then turn on again.**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Top cover is open.

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has detected that the Top Cover is open.	Open the Top Cover fully, remove any foreign objects, and close the Top Cover again.
	If the error occurs again, turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power.

Carriage Cover is open.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Carriage Cover is open.	Close the Carriage Cover. (→P.518)
	If the error occurs again, turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power.

Prepare for parts replacement.

Cause	Corrective Action
It is almost time to replace consumables for which service is required.	If **Parts replacement time has passed.** is displayed, you can continue to use the printer for some time. Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Parts replacement time has passed.

Cause	Corrective Action
It is past the recommended time to replace consumables for which service is required.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Unknown file.

Cause	Corrective Action
Invalid data format.	Check the print job and resend it.

Multi-sensor error

Cause	Corrective Action
Direct sunlight or strong lighting may be shining on the printer and causing the sensor to malfunction.	Take steps to ensure the printer is not used when exposed to direct sunlight or strong lighting.
The performance of a sensor inside the printer may be impaired.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Index

A

About This User Manual 1
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X) 386
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) 343
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows) 345
Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X) 398
Adjusting Images 172
Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver 172
- Color Adjustment 172
- Color Mode 172
- Matching 173

Adjusting the feed amount 498
Adjusting the Feed Amount Automatically 498
- Adjusting the feed amount during printing 500

Adjusting the Feed Amount Manually 501
- Adjusting the feed amount during printing 503

Adjusting the Measurement Scale for Better Accuracy 504
Adjusting the Printhead 491
Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically 491
Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually 493
Adjusting the Printhead Height 497
Adjusting the Printhead Orientation 495
Adjusting the Vacuum Strength 506
Adjustments for Better Print Quality 491
An error message is shown on the Display Screen 556
Attaching Accessories to the Roll Holder 129
- Installing the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment 130
- Installing the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment 129

B

Back 14
Banding in different colors occurs 561
Basic Environmental Performance 78
- Packaging materials 78
- Printer 78

Basic Printing Workflow 80
Borderless Printing 232
Borderless Printing at Actual Size 225, 246
- Borderless Printing 225, 246
- Borderless Printing Method 225, 246
- Print Image with Actual Size 226, 247

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) 229, 250
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) 227, 248
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width 239
- Borderless Printing 239
- Borderless Printing Method 239
- Scale to fit Roll Paper Width 240

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) 243
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) 241
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) 236
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) 234
Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size 232
- Borderless Printing 232
- Borderless Printing Method 232
- Fit Paper Size 233

Borderless printng not possible. 584
- Check roll position. 584
- Check supported paper. 584

C

Canceling print jobs 92
Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X 94
Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel 92
Canceling Print Jobs from Windows 93
Cannot adjust band. 587, 588
Cannot adjust printhead. 587, 588
Cannot connect the printer to the network 565
Cannot cut this paper. 583
Cannot detect papr 582
Cannot feed paper. 581, 583
Cannot Load Sheets 554
Cannot print as specified. 587
- Lift the release lever and replace paper with A4/LTR (vertical) or larger 587
- Lift the release lever and replace roll with 10 in. wide or larger roll 587

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cannot print over a NetWare network 566
Cannot print over a network 565
Cannot print over a TCP/IP network.....565
Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks ..566
Carriage.....16
Carriage Cover is open. 595
Centering originals 288
Checking for Nozzle Clogging 516
Checking Images Before Printing.....311
Checking Ink Tank Levels.....513
Checking the Free Hard Disk Space 488
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor 489
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor 489
Using RemoteUI.....488
Using the Control Panel 488
Checking the Layout Before Printing (Mac OS X).....315, 384
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing ..311
Open Preview When Print Job Starts (Windows) 311
Preview (Macintosh).....312
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows) 313, 339
Checking the Print Quality.....515
Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity 535
Choosing a Paper for Printing 188
If the paper type is not listed for selection.....188
Media type.....188
Choosing Paper for Printing 188
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X).....185
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) 183
Cleaning Inside the Top Cover 538
Cleaning the Paper Retainer 540
Cleaning the Printer.....537
Cleaning the Printer Exterior 537
Cleaning the Printhead.....517, 541
Cleaning the Printhead.....517, 541
Clearing a Jammed Sheet.....138, 552
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper 115, 549
Color Adjustment Sheet: Color (Windows) 353
Object Adjustment dialog box.....354
Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome (Windows) ..357
Object Adjustment dialog box.....358
Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X) 392
Color Adjustment pane: color 392
Matching pane.....393
Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X).....394
Color Adjustment pane: monochrome 394
Colors in printed images are uneven.....562
Configuring NetWare Network Settings.....429
Configuring the Communication Mode Manually....414
Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh).....433
Activating AppleTalk on the printer 433
Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X) 434
Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh).....438
Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh).....436
Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X) 436
Configuring the IP Address on the Printer 403
Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands 406
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 378, 404, 430
Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel 405
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh).....431
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows) 417
Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network ettings.....410, 432
Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings 411, 420
Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings 408
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X).....382
Checking a preview of the settings.....382
Checking a print preview.....383
Confirming Print Settings (Windows).....337
Checking a preview of the settings.....337
Checking a print preview.....338
Conserving roll paper 299
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins 305
No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper) 305
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X).....308
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) 306
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees.....299
Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper).....299
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X) 302

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) 300
Control Panel 18, 20
Correcting Print Misalignment 491
Cutter Unit 525
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing 329
Automatic Cutting 329
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X) 331
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows) 330
Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically 126

D

Deleting Saved Jobs 484
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS) 487
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 486
Using RemoteUI 485
Using the Control Panel 484
Detection of the Remaining Roll Paper 119
Device Settings Sheet (Windows) 370
Device Setup Utility 377
Digital Photo Front-Access 373
Displaying a List of Saved Jobs 460
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh) 463
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 462
Using RemoteUI 461
Using the Control Panel 460
Displaying Details of Saved Jobs 475
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS) 478
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 476
Using RemoteUI 475
Do Not Save Print Jobs in the Common Box 448
Documents are printed crooked 563
Documents are printed in monochrome 563

E

Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur 415
End of paper feed. 583
Enhanced Printing Options 172
Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk 490
ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) 594
Error Message 575
Error Messages 576
Error messages 576
Other Messages 577
Execute printhead cleaning. 589

F

Favorites Sheet (Windows) 366
Feeding Roll Paper Manually 118
File read error. 591
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X) 177
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) 174
Frequently Asked Questions 547
Front 13

G

GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number) 594
Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing 180
Advanced Settings 180
Color settings 181
Enhancing printing quality 182
Print Priority 180
Print Quality 181
GL2: W0502 The parameter is out of range. 593
GL2: W0504 This command is not supported. 593
GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full. (xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904) 593

H

Handling Paper 96
Handling rolls 104
Handling sheets 131
Hard Disk 439
Hard disk error. 591
Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) 594
How to use this manual 1
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed 6 mm larger than specified 570
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed at maximum size, even if a standard size is specified 570
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed in monochrome (or color). 569
HP-GL/2 Printing 162
HP-GL/2 printing takes a long time. 570

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

HP-GL/2 problems....569
HTML Version of the Manual for Printing....5
Printing a group of individual topics in the manual....7
Printing a group of topics in the manual....5
Printing selected topics....10

I

IEEE 1394 (FireWire) Expansion Board....73
If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound....571
Image Edges are Blurred or White Banding Occurs....562
imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility....377
imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)....400
imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)....372
Improving the Print Quality....515
Initializing the Network Settings....416
Ink insufficient....585
Ink Level Detection....572
Disabling ink level detection....573
Ink level detection....572
Ink Level: Check....586
Ink Tank Cover (Inside)....17
Ink tank error....586
Ink Tanks....507
Installation problems....567
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility....377, 430
Insufficient paper for job....579
Introduction....1

L

Layout Sheet (Windows)....362
Leading edge detection error....583
Line thickness is not uniform (Windows)....563
Lines are misaligned....563
Lines Are Printed Too Thick or Thin During HP-GL/2 Printing....569
Lines or images are missing in the HP-GL/2 data that was printed....569
Loading and Printing on Rolls....82
Loading and Printing on Sheets....86
Loading Rolls in the Roll Holder Slot....109
Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder....107
Loading the Roll in the Printer....110
Loading the Sheet in the Printer....133

M

Mac OS X Software....379
Mail box full....591
Mail box full. Cannot save....592
Mail box full. Delete unwanted data....591
Mail box full. Now printing without saving data....591
Mail box nearly full....591
Main Menu Operations....33
Accessing Menus....34
Executing menu commands....36
Specifying menu items....35
Specifying numerical values....36
Main Menu Settings....50
Adjust Printer....57
GL2 Settings....55
Information....61
Interface Setup....58
Job Management....54
Maintenance....59
Paper Details....52
Paper Menu....51
System Setup....59
Main Menu Settings (During Printing)....62
Information....63
Job Mgmt Menu....64
Main Pane (Mac OS X)....387
Configuration using Advanced Settings....388
Configuration using Easy Settings....387
Main Sheet (Windows)....347
Configuration using Advanced Settings....348
Configuration using Easy Settings....347
Maintenance....507
Maintenance Cartridge....528
Maintenance cartridge full....590
Maintenance cartridge problem....590
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation....319
Mirror....319
Orientation....319
Rotate 180 degrees....319
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X)....322
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows)....320
Managing Queued Jobs (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs)....449
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor....451

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor 451
Using RemoteUI 450
Using the Control Panel 450
Manually Loading Paper to the Position for Printing 136
Matching Sheet (Windows) 355
Driver Matching Mode 355
ICC Matching Mode, Driver ICM Mode and Host ICM Mode 356
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X) ...390
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows) 351
Menu Structure 37
Main Menu 37
Main menu during printing 48
Submenus 47
Messages advising to check the maintenance cartridge are not cleared 571
Messages regarding HP-GL/2 593
Messages regarding ink 585
Messages regarding paper 578
Messages regarding printheads 588
Messages regarding printing or adjusment 587
Messages regarding the hard disk 591
Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge 590
Moving saved jobs 470
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh) 474
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 472
Using RemoteUI 470
Multi-sensor error 595

N

Naming Personal Boxes 456
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS) 459
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 457
Using RemoteUI 456
Network Environment 401
Network environment 402
System requirements 401
Network Setting 401
Network Setting (Mac OS X) 431
Network Setting (Windows) 417
No ink left. 585
No ink tank loaded. 586
No Maintenance Cartridge capacity. 590
No maintenance cartridge. 590
No sheets. 581

O

Optional accessories 73
Other Maintenance 542
Other Messages 594
Other problems 571
Other useful settings 316
Output Stacker 140

P

Page Options Dialog Box (Windows) 364
Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X) 395
Page Setup Sheet (Windows) 359
Paper 96
Paper cannot be cut 554
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Mac OS X) 389
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Windows) 350
Paper is not cut neatly 554
Paper jam. 582
Paper loaded askew. 582
Paper Mismatch 578
Paper rubs against the Printhead 558
Paper size not detected. 579
Paper Size Options Dialog Box (Windows) 361
Paper Sizes 101
Rolls 101
Sheets 102
Papr Size Mismatch 578
Papr Type Mismatch 578
Parts replacement time has passed. 595
PHead needs cleaning. 588
PosterArtist 374
Prepare for maint cart replacement. 590
Prepare for parts replacement. 595
Preparing to Transfer the Printer 542
Print Area 79
Rolls 79
Sheets 79
Printed colors are inaccurate 560
Printed Colors in Line Drawings are Inaccurate During HP-GL/2 Printing 569
Printer Driver 333, 379
Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X) 379
Printer Driver Settings (Windows) 333
Printer Hard Disk Operations 439

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printer Menu Operations 31
Job Management Menu Operations 32
Main menu operations during printing 31
Main menu operations when no print job is in progress 31
Submenu operations 32
Printer Modes 24
Menu mode, and state of the Control Panel 28
Mode transition 25
Modes 24
Offline, and state of the Control Panel 27
Online, and state of the Control Panel 26
Submenu mode, and state of the Control Panel 28
Printer Parts 13
Printer Specifications 74
Printhead 515
Printhead error 589
Printheads 515
Printing a List of Saved Jobs 464
Printing at full size 218
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X) 222
Printing at Full Size (Windows) 220
Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes 253
Printing CAD Drawings 151
Printing does not start 555
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER 168, 214
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X) 170, 216
Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER. 171, 217
Registering a hot folder on your computer 170, 216
Scanning the original and print an enlargement 171, 217
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) 168, 214
Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER. 169, 215
Registering a hot folder on your computer 168, 214
Scanning the original and print an enlargement 169, 215
Printing enlargements or reductions 196
Printing from Mac OS X 90
Printing from the application software 91
Registering the printer 90
Printing from Windows 89
Printing is faint 557
Printing Large Posters (Windows) 286
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) 156
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) 152, 154
Easy Settings 152
Print Target 152
Print targets for line drawings and text 152
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS X) 153
Easy Settings 153
Print Target 153
Print targets for line drawings and text 153
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other 268
Free Layout (Windows) 268
imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Macintosh) 269
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X) 272
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) 270
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously 274
Roll paper (banner) 274
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X) 277
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) 275
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet 279
Page Layout 279
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X) 282
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) 280
Printing Office Documents 163
Easy Settings 163
Print Target 163
Print targets for office documents 163
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X) 166
Printing Office Documents (Windows) 164
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes 261
Registering non-standard paper size in the printer driver 261
Specifying custom paper sizes for temporary use 261
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X) 266
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) 262
Printing by using Custom Paper Size 264
Printing by using Custom Size 262
Printing on Oversized Paper 218
Oversize 218
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets 80
Roll printing 80
Sheet printing 81

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls 288
Print Centered 288
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X) ..291
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) 289
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets 294
Print Centered 294
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X).....297
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows) 295
Printing Photos and Images 142
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X) 148
Printing Photos and Images (Windows) 142, 146
Easy Settings 142
Print Target.....142
Print targets for photos and images 142
Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X) 144
Easy Settings 144
Print Target.....144
Print targets for photos and images 144
Printing Posters in Sections 285
Page Layout 285
Printing procedure 80
Printing Saved Jobs 465
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS).....468
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 467
Using RemoteUI.....466
Using the Control Panel 465
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) 253
Fit Roll Paper Width 253
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X).....258
Print the banner.....259
Register a Custom Page Size 258
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) 254
Creating the banner in the application.....255
Printing the banner.....255
Registering a Custom Paper Size 254
Printing With Watermarks.....316
Watermark.....316
Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows).....317
Printmonitor 400
Problem with Printhead 588
Problems Regarding Paper 549
Problems with the printing quality.....557
Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper 564

R

Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls 127
Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded. 581
Rel lever is in wrong position.....583
Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected.....586
Removing a Roll from the Roll Holder 114
Removing Installed Printer Drivers.....568
Removing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (Windows) 568
Removing imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 568
Removing printer drivers (Windows) 568
Removing printer drivers and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh) 568
Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder Slot..... 114
Removing the Roll from the Printer 113
Removing the Sheet.....137
Renaming Saved Jobs 479
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS).....482
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 481
Using RemoteUI.....479
Replacing Ink Tanks 508
Compatible Ink Tank.....508
Precautions when handling an Ink Tank.....508
Replacing an Ink Tank 509
Replacing the Cutter Unit 526
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge 528
Compatible Maintenance Cartridge.....528
Precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge.....528
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge 529
Replacing the Shaft Cleaner 533
Replacing the Printhead 518
Compatible Printhead.....518
Precautions when handling the Printhead.....518
Replacing the Printhead 519
When to replace the Printhead.....518
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value.....208
Enlarged/Reduced Printing 208
Scaling.....208
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X).....211

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) 209
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width 202
Enlarged/Reduced Printing 202
Fit Roll Paper Width 202
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)....205
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) 203
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size 196
Enlarged/Reduced Printing 196
Fit Paper Size....196
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)....199
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) 197
Responding to Messages....575
Error messages....575
Other Messages....575
Roll Holder Set 73, 128
Roll paper cannot be inserted into the Paper Feed Slot 554
Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded. 580
Roll printing is selected. 580

S

Saved Print Jobs 441
Output Method (Send job to) 442
Storage destination 443
Saving Print Jobs 445
Using the printer driver (Mac OS X) 447
Using the printer driver (Windows) 445
Saving Print Jobs Sent from Sources Other than the Printer Driver 444
Specifying Output Method 444
Specifying Save and Print 444
Searching Topics 3
Selecting the Paper Source....104, 131
Selecting the Paper Type (Roll)....105, 189
Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet)....132, 190
Setting Passwords for Personal Boxes 452
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS) 455
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 454
Using RemoteUI 453
Settings Summaries Dialog Box (Windows)....371
Sharing the Printer in Windows 418
Sheet printing is selected. 581
Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows) 365
Specifications 74
Hard Disk....77
Ink....75
Interface 75
Paper....76
Printer....74
Printing performance....74
Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings....159
Color Compatibility 159
Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings (Windows) 160
Specifying NetWare Print Services....424
Choosing the type of print services 424
Using NWADMIN or PCONSOLE to set up the print server 425
Specifying NetWare Protocols....427
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver 191
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)....194, 380
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) 192, 335
Specifying Printer-Related Information....413
Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls 122
Eject (waiting for ink to dry after printing)....123
Manual (when using media that cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit) 124
Paper Cutting (to have the roll cut at your specified position)....125
Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls....120
Mac OS X....121
Windows....120
Specifying the Paper Length (Roll)....106
Specifying the Printer's Frame Type....422
Specifying the Frame Type Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility....422
Specifying the Frame Type Using the Printer Control Panel....423
Status Monitor 372
Status Print....67
Checking the information in the Status Print report 67
Printing Status Print Reports....67
Submenu Display 65
GL2 Settings....66
Information of the loaded paper 65
Printer information....66
Remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and ink levels....65
Support Pane (Mac OS X)....399

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Support Sheet (Windows) 369
Switching Modes 29
Switching the printer online/offline.....29
Switching to Menu mode 30

T

The back side of the paper is dirty 560
The contrast becomes uneven during printing 562
The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up.....555
The Display Screen indicates the system is filling with ink 555
The edges of the paper are dirty 559
The IEEE 1394 Driver Cannot Be Installed Correctly 567
The length of printed images is inaccurate.....563
The printer consumes a lot of ink 572
The printer does not go on 571
The Printer Does Not Respond Even if Print Jobs are Sent.....555
The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper.....556
The printer stops during a print job.....556
The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving).....556, 570
The roll is empty. 580
The surface of the paper is dirty.....560
Thin lines are not printed after switching to Economy Printing mode 564
This paper cannot be used.....579
This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2. 593
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet.....268
Top Cover (Inside) 15
Top cover is open. 595
Troubleshooting.....547
Turning the Printer On and Off 22
Turning the printer off 23
Turning the printer on 22
Types of Paper 96
Updating paper information 99
Viewing the Paper Reference Guide 97

U

Unknown file.....595
Updating the Firmware 546
Confirming the firmware version.....546
Updating the Firmware 546
Use another paper.....587
Using Favorites 325
Favorites.....325
Using Favorites (Mac OS X).....328, 385
Using Favorites (Windows) 326, 341
Printing using the favorite.....327, 342
Registering a favorite 326, 341
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals 374
Edit Using PosterArtist 374
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows) 375
Using RemoteUI 407
Using the Output Stacker 140
Using the Printer With a Color imageRUNNER.....168
Utility Pane (Mac OS X) 397
Utility Sheet (Windows) 368

V

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X).....391
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows) 352

W

When to Replace Ink Tanks.....514
Before print jobs and maintenance that consume a lot of ink.....514
If a message for checking the ink is shown on the Display Screen 514
If a message for ink replacement is shown on the Display Screen 514
When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge 536
If a message for checking the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen 536
If a message for the Maintenance Cartridge replacement is shown on the Display Screen ..536
When much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity is depleted.....536
Windows Software.....333
With HP-GL/2, printing is misaligned.....569
Working With Various Print Jobs 142

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

©CANON INC. 2008

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals